

Goblet of the Truth

Kelch der Wahrheit



*** Goblet of the Truth ***

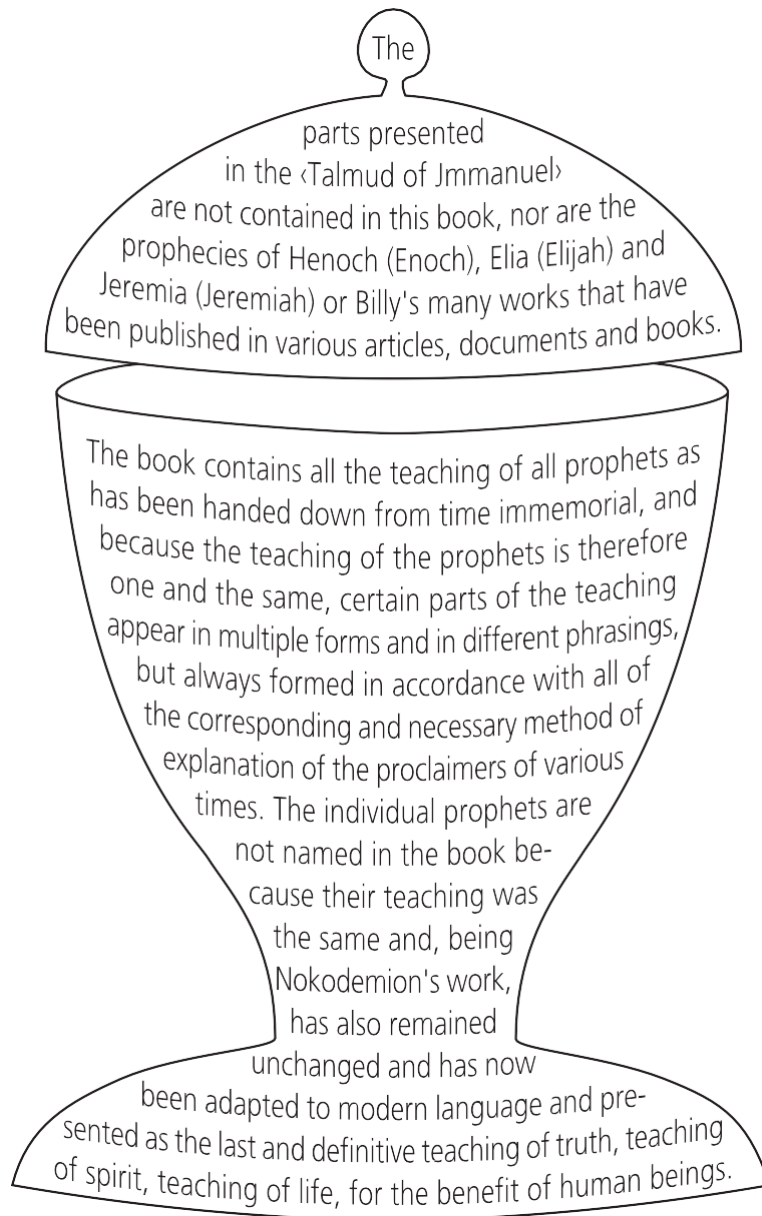
The book

of the entire

Teaching of the Prophets

**Teaching of the Truth, Teaching of the Spirit, Teaching of the Life
from**

**Enoch (Enoch), Jeremia (Jeremiah), Jesaja (Isaiah), Elia (Elijah),
Immanuel (Immanuel), Muhammad (Mohammed) and Billy (BEAM)**



«Billy» Eduard Albert Meier (BEAM)
19th August 2007 to 5th February 2008

An Important Message to the Readers of this Work

Interwoven into all of Billy's German Spiritual-Teaching texts is an evolution-CODE. This code is fully effective only when every word of the text is in its correct place, and written free of errors from beginning to end.

The code releases impulses from the storage-banks which reach the reader and begin to work evolutively in him or her. This process is unconscious and has nothing to do with a coercion or manipulation, rather only with the knowledge which is retained in the storage-banks for all times and which, when released through corresponding impulses, begins to get through very slowly into the consciousness. The same result is obtained when someone reads the German text, even though that person may not master the German language. It makes no difference whether the text is read silently or aloud, or whether one person reads it aloud to another.

The German language originated from the Old-Lyrian and has the same amount of characters per word, e.g., Salome – Friede (Peace), Urda – Erde (Earth). It is not possible for 'Billy' Eduard Albert Meier to work the code into any language other than the German language because no other language is suitable for incorporating the Code.

Moreover, one has to take into account that many words of the German language do not exist in other languages, which is why the sense of the German original can only be reproduced in part when translated into any other terrestrial language. For these reasons each translation of Billy's texts into a foreign language will have the original German text included.

An Important Word Regarding the Translation of «Goblet of the Truth» («Kelch der Wahrheit»)

The rich and flexible vocabulary and structure of the German language makes it ideal for explaining and conveying any subject matter in all of its complexity, nuances and detail. No other language on Earth can match the German language in this regard. Therefore, the English language with its comparatively limited vocabulary, flexibility and structure is, as a language, a poor one and can never match the high value that is achieved with the German. Unfortunately the English language has a great many meaningless religious words for corresponding neutral German terms. There is also a lack of suitable forms of expression in English which means that the German forms must be expressed in a different way by using synonyms in order to find an appropriate form of expression in English. As a result it is not possible to translate «Kelch der Wahrheit» into English and convey everything that is in the original German text. The high value of this work can only be completely expressed and made comprehensible through the German language. The human beings of Earth shall strive to make the German language to the world language because it is the most valuable of all languages that are in use on Earth.

Corrections and additional explanations in consultation with «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier: Willem Mondria and Mariann Uehlinger (2008/2014). Subsequent amendments restricted to omission of the German text, the correction of prophet-line order/dates, insignificant spelling errors, and the minor adjustment to format after publication, as is pertains to this renewed English Only Version, provided as a convenience (2014/2025).



© FIGU 2008/2014, Some Rights Reserved.

© FIGU STUDIENGRUPPE USA 2014/2025, Corrected After Publication.

See page 302 for the complete Creative Commons License Contract.

Except where otherwise noted, this work is licensed under
<http://www.figu.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/ch/>

Therefore the non-commercial use is explicitly permitted without further authorisation by the author.

Original Published by Wassermannzeit-Verlag:

«Freie Interessengemeinschaft», Semjase-Silver-Star-Centre, Hinterschmidrüti 1225, 8495 Schmidrüti ZH, Schweiz

Printed by

ISBN: 3-909154-57-9



Concerning the German language for the understanding of this book

The book that you have in your hands is a very special work of absolutely precise and accurate informational content, and it can enrich your world of thoughts if you dedicate yourself to the reading attentively, openly and without prejudice.

The informational content in the works is only of such great precision because the German language is the only language on our earth that is presently in the position to present in its richness of expressions, clearly, and without misunderstanding, all the necessary aspects and explanations as they need to be understood. The old German forms of writing, spelling and expression that are used – and that may sometimes appear somewhat strange and peculiar – are since time immemorial laid down in such a wise that interpretations and misunderstandings are ruled out right from the beginning and the theme can be dealt with exhaustively, logically and clearly, which is today only possible in the German language.

The highly precise and absolutely accurate explanations of the German cannot – at the present time – be translated with the same value into any other existing language on Earth, for the reason that no other terrestrial language allows for the same precise expressions like the German. When translating, this circumstance requires – according to the language – more or less extensive explanations, paraphrasing and synonyms, which, however, water down the informational content and make it unclear.

That is why each human being who wants to thoroughly consider the spiritual teaching and its aspects, in order to draw extensive value from it for his or her further life, is strongly recommended to thoroughly learn the German language in its complete richness and its extensive many-sidedness, so that his or her understanding is ensured at all times. Only those who make the effort to learn the German language actually have the certainty to understand completely and clearly the text at hand and to fully exhaust its richness.

FIGU, November 2009

Regarding the Translation of the German Definite Article

Even though the use of the English definite article in this translation may seem strange to the reader, according to the author, «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier, and the Plejaren Ptaah, the German definite article must be translated and not omitted in order to impart the meaning that is in the German text.



Introduction

In this book, «Goblet of the Truth», the true prophet of the new time, «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier, known as BEAM, is once again providing the human beings of Earth as well as extraterrestrial races and peoples with a very significant work of truly universal uniqueness. Originally, he had intended to undertake this eminent and highly expressive transcription in the year 2017. However, for important health reasons, he was induced to set down this extremely valuable written bequest, indeed one that is steeped in history, at an earlier stage. The first lines originated on Sunday 19 August 2007. After only 5 months and 17 days of intensive work, he completed the task on Tuesday 5 February 2008. In the course of these 171 days, concealed from our hectic and restless planet and in the seclusion of the Semjase Silver Star Centre at Hinterschmidrüti, and during many nights, a epochal manuscript comprising 260 A4 pages was created. This work, being only a provisional conclusion of Billy's untiring work, is in its bound form structured as a long series of highly instructive pearls of evolutive shine which have been penned by his hand to date, and which form the psyche and the consciousness. The very short time taken to complete the book even surprised his extraterrestrial friends, since they had themselves expected the completion to require several years. The tome comprises a total of 28 chapters. Similarly to the OM book (1988), the structure is based on chapters as well as numbered verses, and employs a similar linguistic mode of expression.

By the power of his consciousness-based ability, his extraordinary skills and his in-depth knowledge, BEAM called up the first 14 chapters from terrestrial storage banks, where they have been stored for millennia in the form of a symbolic picture language. What this amounts to is the original teaching of Nokodemion, billions of years old, that has been taught on this planet Earth and spread by his six subsequent proclaimers from Henoch to Muhammed in various genuine explanations and in accordance with the understanding of their particular epoch. By name, the following listed prophets have been involved: (1) Henoch (Enoch) (3 February 938 BCE to 1 January 849 BCE), (2) Jeremia (Jeremiah) (9 February 769 BCE to 3 September 627 BCE), (3) Jesaja (Isaiah) (7 February 601 BCE to 5 May 516 BCE), (4) Elia (Elijah) (5 February 463 BCE to 4 June 372 BCE), (5) Jmmanuel (Immanuel) (3 February 04 BCE to 9 May 111 CE) as well as (6) Muhammed (19 February 571 CE to 8 June 632 CE). The six named proclaimers of the spiritual teaching stood in direct succession to one another in the prophet-line, and therefore represent a continuous rebirth of the spirit-form. The important task rested on every single one of them to announce the original teaching of Nokodemion to the earthly humankind of their particular time and life epoch, delivering it to posterity according to their best ability and capability. Like the prophet of the new time, they were also supported and accompanied in their Mission and task by advisers and teachers of extraterrestrial origin. Due to the continuously changing perceptive faculty of human beings as well as a consciousness that has continuously developed higher over the course of the millennia, the more developed rational and cognitive thinking as well as the grown cognitive capabilities, the teaching of creational laws and recommendations had to be adapted by the prophets again and again to the new evolutive conditions and taught accordingly. Over the course of the approximately 11,000 years of their Mission and their appearance, the spoken and written traditions repeatedly fell prey to oblivion and material degradation in accordance with the naturally given laws of becoming and passing. Until the present time, the prophets of the past millennia had not been given any technical means of recording the teaching of the spirit for posterity or making it accessible. Only in the cosmic storage banks have their teaching and explanations been retained and stored for all time down to the present day.

On the one hand, the purpose and intention of this book, «Goblet of the Truth», are based on unifying the aforementioned prophetic traditions and explanations of past epochs as a lasting overall work in one book for the first time. On the other hand, there had been provision for ages that the spiritual teaching of chapters 15 to 28 should be put into words by the last and seventh prophet, the prophet of the new time, in a new and understandable form adapted to the current time, although the content of the chapters referred to is only present in the storage banks as headwords and thematic indications. For this reason, with this text, BEAM is once again fulfilling one of his old determinations and voluntarily discharging his duty to expand the teaching of Nokodemion with his own addition, in which case it was also necessary to write chapters 15 to 20 in an old written language.

The six different explanations illustrate in a very impressive wise that renewing and adapting the teaching of Nokodemion to the particular given times and epochs is entirely possible without falsifications, perversions, misinterpretations or the loss of its actual sense and value. The preconditions of this are the true love of creational truth as well as its laws and recommendations, a high level of self-discipline, self-



responsibility, sense of responsibility, respect and venerability as well as a truly noble character as has been developed by the true prophets since time immemorial. Equally, the prophetic records are also a very interesting and exciting contemporary document from a linguistic perspective. Long-forgotten and very old terms of German linguistic usage awake to new shine and a new use due to their rediscovery. With their elemental power they give the mastery of the writing and the expression-form of the work a very special distinction and charm. Terms such as chickenheartedness (cowardice), demand (begging), nobleness (virtues), two-partedness (doubt), spirit-body (spirit-form), allocation plan (budget), venerable ones (holy ones), dwelling of the impalpable (the other world), hazy pictures (delusions), grace (favour), inner world of firmaments (universal consciousness), premium (benefit), consonance (harmony), as well as numerous other expressions that are largely unknown in current linguistic usage enrich and expand the very valuable texts in an impressive wise. The variety of terms used by the old prophets for naming Creation is also very interesting. As well as the actual term «Creation», there are also word-values such as formation, primal wellspring, power of origination, the creative, wellspring of wisdom, primal raising, etc. Without doubt and in any respect, this book is a true emerald of real truth for educating and forming human consciousness, the psyche- and the feeling-life. It embodies and unifies in itself those profound psyche and consciousness-forming values that are designated in spiritual teaching as love, music/song, poetry, nature, satisfaction, light and peace, and leads directly to the formation and achievement of new knowledge, valuable insights and evolutive cognitions. Every single explanation and every single verse accompany the human consciousness and psyche on a journey through time into the past and the present, leading the human beings of Earth to the source of creation-oriented spiritual teaching and the members of what are called the Enoch peoples to the traces of their origin. The seven pillars of wisdom are hidden in the nature of their instruction, namely: Love, truth, fairness, knowledge, logic, respect (venerability) and honour. These in turn nourish the seven basic powers of humans such as strength, rationality, intellect, self-discipline, self-control, self-achievement and fearlessness as they are also given in the spiritual teaching of BEAM in teaching lesson no. 31. With every single page of the book, the journey through his work accompanied by the «guardian of the treasure» (Eduard) becomes a true revelation of the secrets of creational evolution, being human in the real and true sense as well as illumination of the open secrets about the sense, the task and the purpose of human life.

Once again, this book shows in a very impressive wise how gigantic is the difference between the high, consciousness-forming quality and preciousness of the spiritual teaching compared to the numerous esoteric, cult-religious, philosophical and ideological false and delusional teachings. There really are worlds in the differentiation, logic, logical followability, provability and power of proof of their explanations, in which the very profound creational truth shines through its simple and convincing clarity, whereas the false teachings resound with uncomprehensible complexity and confusion.

In contrast to the highly illogical and scarcely logically followable instructions, half-truths, delusional teachings and dogmas with a cult-religious and/or esoteric stamp, the creational and naturally given principles in the «Goblet of the Truth» are taught by similes, clear explanations and logically followable explanations. The instructive explanations are in habitual opposition to cult-religious ambiguities, their apparently consistent half-truths and horrendous illogicality based on a concealed perplexity, overplayed helplessness and the blatant fear of death of the believers and the heads of the religion, and bear witness to the flight, fear and unknowledgeness of the ecclesiastics in the face of the real truth. The numerous explanations and emphatic instructions in this book are no theoretical phrases, hollow platitudes or empty husks of words as are commonly employed by the cult religions, pseudo-healers and self-appointed esoteric prophets. The creational nature-connectedness means that this teaching and its explanations of past and current time are a palpable balm for the consciousness and an invigorating refreshment for the psyche.

During reading of the wonderful, euphonious and consciousness-nourishing verses, the interested reader's feeling- life will be unavoidably flooded by waves of the highest comfort, venerability and joy in existence. In every human being who is really searching and is conscious of the Creation, the loving, instructing and yet also strict and definite words of the prophets will lead to a consciousness-based harmonisation, a feeling of comfort and security. Equally, as the result of personal searching and research, they will also lead to a concordance and confirmation of the creational-natural teaching with one's own cognitions and trains of thought, by means of which this teaching that is oriented towards the creational law as valuable individual living experience will produce a generally beneficial psychic sensitivity. The «Goblet of the Truth» is like a final return to a long-forgotten home that one had thought had been lost and that unexpected and



overwhelming view of a gleaming blue earth planet that is offered to star travellers afflicted by homesickness at the end of a lengthy odyssey across the whole universe.

In its highly extensive variety of themes, complexity of content and true origin, this book can only be understood with difficulty by current common sense. It is equally difficult to describe it laconically in short phrases. It is a teaching book that is unparalleled on this earth and, in its current form, probably exists nowhere else apart from on the foreign worlds and planets of the Plejaren Federation. In other words, on those worlds, which have had knowledge about the creational instruction of Nokodemion and keep the treasures of his teaching for millennia in their archives and records. The «Goblet of the Truth» describes the human being as a link between the fine-fluidal and the coarse-material worlds. Numerous creational laws and recommendations as well as guidelines and advice on all possible areas of the human beings of Earth that are practical for life are explained in their original form. For those human beings who have not yet found or sparked in themselves the fire of the connectedness to the true creational laws and principles, it might be that the explanations will appear antiquated in their form of linguistic expression and their instructions. However, the prophetic explanations are of contemporary currency and astonishing timelessness in their millennia-old form. It is also interesting that, even millennia ago, the evil Ausartungen and dangerous consciousness enslavement of modern cult religions had been described and warnings issued against their consciousness- and psyche-destroying powers and effects. Equally, the earlier prophets spoke about the problem of overpopulation even millennia ago. By far the majority of the instructions is dedicated to humanity, interpersonal relationships, respect in dealings with one another, consideration and the equality of man and woman. Marriage, intimate and platonic friendships, forms of relationship between members of the same sex and opposite sexes as well as human sexuality, separations and divorce are explained, as are enmities, punishments, killing in Ausartung or the issues surrounding the death penalty, etc. Of equal extent, there are numerous instructions relating to the creational sense of the life, evolutive tasks as well as the importance of personal searching, researching and learning. Based on the foundation of creational-natural principles, laws and recommendations, a logically followable explanation is provided for one's own mortality, becoming and passing, the sense and purpose of the dying, life after death, grieving and rebirth as well as the relationships between suicide and assisted dying. Many verses also focus on the high value of holistic development, the formation of character and personality as well as working out individual cognitions, practical experiences and insights. Furthermore, the teaching also contains various instructions on the topics of nutrition, health and hygiene, work or a personal balancing such as enjoyments, etc.

Warnings are issued against consciousness-impairing dangers posed by sect members, false teachers, followers of esotericists, personality cults and Missionary organisations, as well as against the theft of spiritual teaching by swindlers, wheeler/dealers, esotericists and all kinds of deceivers who are greedy for profit. Even millennia ago, the traditions contained multiple references to the last prophet in the line of seven as well as to his unique and ultimate instructions and writings. Even the FIGU association and the «representatives» of the prophet merit a mention in the old traditions. A vehement reference is made to the equality of members and to avoiding a cult of the personality, imperiousness, overestimation of the self or false veneration of the prophet or his members. Numerous other topics which are practical to life in the sense of true humanity follow one another in a seamless sequence and make the work a priceless treasure of liberal advice and coercionless instruction. And all this without proselytising the readership, i.e. human beings subversively in any wise, without influencing them with Gewalt or burdening them with the heavy yoke of a compulsion to perform or to follow. The «Goblet of the Truth» is based on knowledge, wisdom, the skills and the ability of a true prophet and proclaimer. This is an irrefutable fact, but also one that is dismissed as «Billy-ism» by the human beings of Earth in their current level of consciousness and due to their ununderstanding, their blinkeredness, wrong estimation, blindness to the truth, cult-religious infatuation and prejudice. However, no single human being on Earth with the current status of evolution possesses even anything approaching the possibilities, the skill, the aptitudes or the knowledge and wisdom to access the old heritage in the storage levels. Equally, no single human being of Earth is capable of conceiving the facts and backgrounds in their present complexity, momentousness and in the chronologically meticulous correlation. Quite obviously, this transcription is not the work of a vivid, deceptive imagination or a deliberate delusion based on any licentiousness of character. In fact and in truth, it is part of the life's work of a human being with extraordinary capabilities, a truly prophetic Mission and unique task as well as a real ability to access sources of the cosmic storage levels that are unknown to and concealed from the human beings of Earth. Once again, the validity and authenticity of Eduard Albert Meier, the simple cobbler's son, are revealed in the truthly texts of this true proclaimer and prophet



of the new time – named «Billy» and BEAM – who performs inestimable services for terrestrial humankind of the new time as well as for extraterrestrial peoples.

However, the numerous contradictions, antagonisms and superficiality in human materialistic thought are very pronounced in this world, just as is the consciousness-based blindness as well as the ununderstanding for creational interrelations and the real truth. Human beings of Earth have specialised in keeping their eyes and senses firmly shut to the creational laws and recommendations, guidelines and principles. They talk about environmental protection and natural laws, they search for their peace and quiet in the seclusion of the mountains, lakes and unspoiled nature. They nourish and delight their senses, psyche and feelings in the image and the trappings of the natural beauty of flowers, plants, animals and landscapes. Nevertheless, they are forgetting to look into their actual inner nature and into their primal powers that are binding even for human beings, as they also forget to adapt their own behaviour to these principles. They wish to recognise their own existence as a part of nature and surround themselves with natural glory, caring for gardens, parks and setting up natural parks. Nevertheless, they constantly try to move outside of nature's laws and recommendations, attempting to control them with Gewalt. Down to the present day, the human beings of Earth have not learned to be a true part of the Creation and its laws, principles and recommendations. Even the smallest stone does not fall unnoticed to the bottom of the lakes, ponds or streams, and it is indeed registered by their waters.

However, even the last prophet of the «one line» stands as a lonely voice in the overpopulated desert, in the midst of human beings, and so far he has been scarcely heeded. This has happened in spite of him lingering for seven decades (since 1937) amidst what are now (2008) seven and a half billion human beings of Earth, and it has not been seldom for him to make himself talked about. Without being aware of the momentousness of the magnificent location of Hinterschmidrüti that is steeped in history, the human beings of Earth have been going about their daily work in its close vicinity. They love, learn and work, they are born and die, without really having got to grips with this wonderful place and its open secrets. Even from the depths of space, extraterrestrial human beings from the most distance worlds and planets visit and search out this unique source and the hoard of knowledge, wisdom and spiritual teaching. But the human beings in the immediate vicinity avoid or harm it and the prophet living there. In the middle of this wonderfully beautiful small country and in the immediate vicinity of small towns, villages and hamlets, there are things and events happening that are really unimaginable for many human beings of Earth. However, this fact had already been predicted by the prophet Henoch millennia ago, who also indicated that the prophet of the new time, the «guardian of the treasure», would start his great Mission in the land of peace, named «Elvet», by instructing and teaching human beings in small groups. His birth on 3 February 1937 in Bülach, Switzerland, initiated a major change in the Earth's history, although one that has gone largely unnoticed by earthly humankind. The «silent revolution of the truth» had begun. However, with wise foresight and recognition of events in the new time, the old prophets handed down the following in the «Goblet of the Truth», chapter 2, verse 137:

«There were many proclaimers, prophets, who in truth brought the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and representatives followed in their footsteps who explained evident signs (proofs) of the truth of the prophets and bore witness to their truthfulness, but you did not want to listen to them, neither to the prophets nor to the representatives; so, every time that a herald of the truth-teaching comes to you, which is something you yourselves do not wish for, do you want to be arrogant and continue to insult the proclaimers, prophets, their representatives and the other heralds of the teaching of the truth calling them liars, treating them as deceivers and strike them dead?»

This verse describes a profound and yet very sad truth that is scarcely understood by anyone better than by those stalwart, industrious and indomitable human beings who live and work at the place of the truth, in the valley of the horseshoe, in association with the prophet. They are the witnesses of manifold unfair treatment and defamations by the irrational ones, the misguided ones and the undiscerning ones against the true prophet. However, those human beings have learned from his example how to live with irrationality and not to despair in the face of the illogicality, unfounded attacks, evil assumptions and the ununderstanding shown by humankind. In the seclusion of the Töss valley in the Zürcher Oberland, which is accessible to anyone, fabulous and futuristic events truly characterise the everyday life of the members of the FIGU association (Free Community of Interests for the Border and Spiritual Sciences and Ufological Studies), namely the real meetings of the prophet BEAM with extraterrestrial human beings as well as the



origination of a unique and priceless teaching. This fact alone will be entirely beyond the power of imagination of the majority of the human beings of this planet for many centuries.

On Saturday 9 February 2008, at 7:45 p.m., I was given the signal honour at the request of «Billy» and Ptaah to write an introduction to this unique work, the «Goblet of the Truth». Within only a few days, I was carrying the printed work with me on my daily route to work and I was turning it over in my thoughts in order to look for the correct and fitting formulation. The consciousness that my introductory and descriptive words for this work would one day reach many billions of extraterrestrial human beings searching for the sense of the life, many of whom are living on the most distant worlds and planets, occasioned in me a deep venerability, profound respect and very high regard for the millennia-spanning work of the prophets. Therefore, I carried the old teaching of a true prophet under my arm in crowded trains and cities through a hectically driven world, one that had separated itself from the real truth millennia ago and placed its development in the stagnation of cult/religious teachings and other-directed hands of dubious figures such as gurus, putative saints and ecclesiastics. There could not have been a greater clash between the different worlds of knowledge and wisdom with that of materialism and misunderstanding. Immersed in their everyday problems, focussed on the demands of their job as well as their striving for money, enjoyments, entertainment or what they would call a good career, human beings crossed the ways of the spiritual teaching. However, they did this without having the slightest idea that the true prophetic witness of extraterrestrial encounters and the unfalsified roots of their Christian culture was located right in their midst. The contradictions between the hustle and bustle and the wisdom and knowledge in the «Goblet of the Truth» were so close in those everyday moments, and yet centuries and even worlds apart from one another. Like an undiscovered seed, the teaching slumbered in my bag, however with the millennia-old destiny of only fully unfolding over the course of coming centuries in order to become a great wave of instruction, as is described in the «Goblet of the Truth».

Paradoxically, a unique teaching of the life has been written down on our small planet, which will be carried into the depths of space during coming centuries and will be taught and applied on numerous distant planets before one day finding consideration and recognition on its actual originating planet. Unfortunately, the content of the following verse in this book will prove well-founded for a long time to come.

«Goblet of the Truth», chapter 2, verse 97:

«The large mass of you does not want to know in any wise and does not want to recognise the truth unless you can hold the things of the truth in your hands, see them with your eyes and hear them with your ears, but the real truth of the real truth is not that of holding, seeing and hearing, rather it is that of the inner cognition through rationality and intellect as well as the true knowledge and wisdom that are fully free from beliefs.»

Conscious that the tiniest seed is capable of bringing forth a large fruit, it was a great honour for me to be allowed to pen a brief, introductory word so as to present to a terrestrial and extraterrestrial readership this exceedingly valuable and significant book by my companion of many years, discerning adviser, patient friend and wise teacher «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier, named BEAM. My transcription was produced with the greatest of care as well as to the best of my ability and capability, and also in the consciousness that these lines will last for many thousands of years and will be read by numerous future generations on this and other worlds. This book and its teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and the real creational truth will certainly endure for the coming millennia, be kept in the archives of numerous planets and taught in the schools of many worlds. Worlds and planets will be born and die, but the mothers of all creations and their creational truth will endure for all time, because compared to the creational truth and its might, even the giant suns are but small candles. Numerous generations will follow and learn about the new time and its prophet, so as to recognise the true teaching of the life and the creational truth. With these in mind and in the name of numerous contemporary friends, searching and interested terrestrial and extraterrestrial human beings, the prophet of the new time is due heartfelt thanks for his untiring work on the «Goblet of the Truth», as an expression of profound love, friendship and connectedness. Equally, he is due the recognition, consideration and respect for his lifelong forbearance and inexhaustible patience with the humankind of this planet «Terra».

Dear Billy, may your work in the true sense of Nokodemion's idea for evolutive help for Creation bear great fruit. May your creational teaching of the life prove helpful to human beings, may it open their senses and their consciousness and may it reveal to them the true existence and the sense of the creational existence.



Thank you, my friend, you son of selflessness and true prophet of the new time, ‹Billy› Eduard Albert Meier, named BEAM – Salome!

Hans-Georg Lanzendorfer
Schmidrüti, February 2008



Preface

Many readers will quietly ask themselves why the «Goblet of the Truth» has only been set down and recorded in writing in these current days of the dawning new time, in a phase of the most profound uncertainty and elementary upheaval, and why this work of such great import has only appeared now when the human beings of Earth have almost irretrievably strayed into the dark abysses of their cult religions and convictions, and the difficult, tortuous way back lies ahead of them. Indeed, many might wrack their brains and pore over the question of why the human beings of Earth have not been spared from all the cultish works and innumerable errors and confusions, and why the «Goblet of the Truth» was not written down at a much earlier time and passed on to the current generations. The «Goblet of the Truth» itself provides an emphatic, clear and unambiguous response to this (chapter 6, verse 10):

«Truly, the source of wisdom (book of wisdom) could be given to you by a true prophet already before that far-off time, then it would be if it were to be feasible (possible), but the possibility can only be if the necessary contingencies (conditions) will be given so that the source of wisdom (book of wisdom) reaches the hands of all those who are ready for it; therefore it is still necessary to give you a deferment until the new time, however after that you will no longer be able to trot out the usual pretexts (excuses) that you had not been brought the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) in the form of the teaching of the prophets as the «Goblet of the Truth».»

Although the clarity of these words set our insides vibrating like the deep strokes of a gong, they have to be explained for many people who are incapable of tracking down, feeling and following the truth in themselves. Who else, however, could better and more truthfully explain why the «Goblet of the Truth» was not set down in writing by the first prophet than Billy, the last prophet in the series of the seven proclaimers on this Earth who are descended from the Nokodemion line (extract from the 459th contact, Sunday, 3.2.2008):

«In old times, there were only very few human beings that were able to master script, because the people was not generally well educated and, being illiterate, not able to read and write. Therefore, if only for this reason, there was no sense in producing large-scale writings. And those amongst the few scribes to whom the prophets gave the task of setting down the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, i.e. the «Goblet of the Truth» in accordance with Nokodemion's guideline, falsified everything beyond recognition. In the old times, also, there were no schools like today in which human beings in general can learn reading and writing, and there were also no technical possibilities for duplicating the written records that were produced. Whenever anything was reproduced, everything had to be onerously written out by hand. However, this was also only possible if handwriting was involved. Hieroglyphs, cuneiform scripts, etc. had to be laboriously copied and even those who were versed in these forms of writing were extremely few and far between, and were practically not to be found amongst the common people, but only amongst scholars. The impression is given in the current time that many human beings could read and write even in the old times – although this was of course not the case – but this fact is consistently hushed up nowadays. It is only in the new time, that started in 1844, that reading and writing became widespread throughout the people and the technology for duplicating and mass-producing books, texts, journals and newspapers etc. on a large scale. Also, it was only towards the end of the 20th Century that the means of electronic distribution of books and texts via computer and over the Internet developed to such an extent that everything could be easily spread all over Earth. All this had already been foreseen by Nokodemion and the Arahata Athersata level, which is why the whole thing was prepared and laid out so that the «Goblet of the Truth» shall be brought in its definitive form and full extent, and spread worldwide, in the new time and therefore Nokodemion's teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life. However, this shall happen in the new time because only then are all technical and electronic conditions in place to make the whole thing possible. And therefore it was intended for this time that the entire teaching, rather than just parts, shall be brought and no longer recorded by entrusted literates who have, since time immemorial, falsified everything beyond recognition, but that instead the last proclaimer of Nokodemion's line will record in his own hand the «Goblet of the Truth» and further parts of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and reprocess it and spread it worldwide with the help of his loyal supporters.»



This has now happened, and an overwhelming work has been created that is of an enormous density and complexity not only in its whole but also in every single verse. Word for word, it stands as chiselled from granite and every letter of it breathes truth, creational magnitude and beauty and the laws and recommendations of the life. Even if anyone approaches the book with the intention of only reading it without really studying it, the book breathes true and real life, and it is capable not only of showing us the current dark and labyrinthine status of our thinking and our world, but also of permitting us a look into the paradise of true and really lived humanity by showing what the human being is per se and how he or she should be, how he or she should handle freedom and how to act in a particular situation. Never, however, is the reader cajoled or corralled in a schoolmasterly wise, instead what is said strikes the true core of the life and human present existence in a clear and precise wise – and it makes no difference whether the human being is from this undulating planet or presently exists in the expanses of the universe on some unknown world – the words are solely directed towards universal human nature and towards who and what and how this being is and has to be.

Word for word and verse for verse, the reader who is so inclined comes to grasp the beauty and the overwhelming task that humanity must solve during its long evolutionary time until forming and developing its consciousness to such an extent as to advance in knowledge, wisdom, love, logic, intellect and rationality so that its spirit-form will be able to unfold its power until no longer requiring a human-material shell and find its further way into the light of creational beauty and harmony without the help of a material consciousness – not alone, but in connectedness and in connection with innumerable other spirit-forms who have to take the same way and have already done so. Bringing to life this way in our consciousness that is endlessly long for our thinking, and yet so short for the spirit-form, not only raises our feeling as a human being but it also depends on the knowledge and the certainty that we as human beings are interlinked with one another just as much as with all other existences throughout the universe and beyond. This consciousness – the cognition of true universal love – is not quickened and strengthened with great and ostentatious words, but with the simple and iron words of modesty and true, factual instruction. The *«Goblet of the Truth»* is not only a source of knowledge, truth and love, but also a straightforward handbook, text book and factual book for everyone who is asking themselves what they need to pay attention to in life and how they have to behave. Therefore, this work is not only a wonderful book to read with inexhaustible wisdom, but it also represents a *«recipe book for life»* in the true sense, a book that shows human beings how life is to be lived, what it is made of and what needs to be borne in mind to make life a success, without however patronising the human being in the choice of *«ingredients»* and in the procedure of the art of living, or curtailing and restricting the human being's freedom. It simply makes known the indicators by means of which success or failure in leading one's life can be detected and corrected, because the conditions already exist concealed in every human being. Balance, equanimity, connectedness, love, inner peace, joy of living, happiness and satisfaction are the result of good, correct and successful creational-natural evolutive work on oneself, whereas any form of Gewalt, Ausartung, unsatisfaction or other negative impulsations or even Ausartungen of character are signs that the course must be corrected and levelled out. In this wise, the *«Goblet of the Truth»* gradually puts our thinking on the right course when we open ourselves to the power and the profound wisdom of its words, and take it and use it as that for which it is intended, namely a true help in life and as teaching of the life, teaching of the spirit and teaching of the truth.

The following preface contributions by Core Group members of the FIGU show that the words of the *«Goblet of the Truth»* are able to unfold their momentous and significant effect even within only a few verses, impressing their readers to the core, stirring them up and touching a chord that they had perhaps not been looking for in themselves. When they were entrusted with the task of honouring Billy's new book in a few phrases, most of the respondents only had access to 35 verses from the 28th chapter of the book, in response to which they expressed themselves as follows:

I came to know Billy at the end of 1978. At that time, it was impossible for me to understand the full consequences of this. It is merely a fact that my previous life changed completely for the positive, and I gradually started to free myself from a wallflower existence.

At a stroke, I found many human beings with the same ideas, with whom I could discuss all those topics that were and are so important for me; I am referring to relationships between human beings as well as living together and evolving together.

I have not regretted this step to this day, and I am happy and glad to be an energetic member in the Core



Group of 49, thereby giving effective support to the best of my ability to the edifice of thoughts of the FIGU, and therefore the Mission of the prophet of the new time.

Madeleine Brügger

«Truly, only the type of your conscious or unconscious volition, that for which you decide yourselves is decisive for the interaction and therefore also for your destiny, because all the innumerable fine-fluidal and half-material swinging waves with which you are connected permit everything that you send out through your thoughts and feelings to flow back to you, and it does not matter what you happen to want and what you create with your volition as causes.» (‘Goblet of the Truth’, chapter 28, verse 120)

In other words:

A human being who is searching for the truth finds a group of human beings who are searching for the same through a happy foreordination. He briefly made the firm decision to join these valuable human beings, to lend his entire strength to them to the best of his knowledge and conscience in their worldwide and hard work for the benefit of the entire earthly humankind and the planet that is still greatly maltreated, and also for its healing.

Engelbert Wächter

For about 66 years (2008), BEAM has been fulfilling his unique task and Mission with indescribable and exemplary forbearance and love. Numerous explanations and explications of the teaching of the spirit bear witness to his proverbial stamina and great patience for the human beings of Earth. In the face of my own occasional discouragement because of the obstinacy, irrationality, prejudice and stupid allegations by the antagonists, he is due all my thanks for all his supporting words of encouragement and consolation. They have always been a source of enduring learning and strength for me during many years in freedom and my decision to go my own way, to recognise my callings, to train my abilities and my performance and to invest in the fulfilment of our common task. As long as the blood flows in my veins, as long as my heart continues to beat, my consciousness is untroubled and my senses perform good services, my work and all my efforts should and will be aimed at honouring his life's work in an appropriate wise.

Hans-Georg Lanzendorfer

The thing that convinced me that FIGU and what is told and experienced here was and is indeed the truth, is that above all the emphasis is placed on self-responsibility and everything that is explained by Billy is logical and comprehensible. Equally, during all those years I have been able to know Billy and the human beings here, and I know with absolute certainty that this is my place and way.

The knowledge and the associated possibilities opened up to us by Billy and the Plejaren are simply unique and overwhelming, although I often think that we are in no wise aware of the import of this Mission. I know one thing with absolute certainty – there is on Earth no other place where the teaching is so truthful, consistent, comprehensible for everyone and logical as here at FIGU and the things we are doing here will one day bear fruit so that humankind will in the end find its way back to being human in the real and true sense – even if this will take a very, very long time.

Andrea Grässl, March 2008

‘Goblet of the Truth’: A goblet that should not pass by anyone, because it is not only this book but all of Billy's works that show me the way to the leading of the life that is directed towards the Creation. The spiritual teaching is life itself, the way and the objective of every single human being and even though I may not really be able to assess the full extent of the unbelievable wealth of knowledge, truth and wisdom in Billy's works, they are nevertheless my life. Therefore, it is scarcely possible to express in words how thankful I am to Billy and also to the Plejaren for the spiritual teaching, but above all for the deep love and friendship, for the patience and schooling in life. As I am taking steps, small though they may be, along the way of the spiritual teaching, I can make a small contribution so that the immense work of Billy and the Plejaren will take root all over Earth in the far future and will serve all life.



Barbara Harnisch

My evolutive progress is continuously being guided in the correct, namely the creational direction, by the valuable statements in the *«Goblet of the Truth»*. It is simply down to me to increase my cognitions daily and to apply the knowledge that I have obtained, to search for the truth in myself and put myself reliably on the life-way, which is not always simple; this means turning the teaching of the life into deeds. – Actually, I cannot find the words to express my infinite gratitude for Billy's love, knowledge and wisdom that he is using for all humankind. The things that are expressed in each of his writings, deeds and in conversations with him can be read all the more impressively in the *«Goblet of the Truth»*. It is an indescribable gift to humankind – on Earth, in the entire universe and beyond!

Daniela Beyeler

One day, Billy said to me: «I can write much better if you sleep in the office next to me on the sofa.» I was really astounded because I do occasionally tend to snore slightly. Well, this did not disturb my beloved life partner at all when writing, and because he does most of his writing at night, I am so happy to help him in this – in the sweet land of dreams.

This is how his latest work the *«Goblet of the Truth»* came about. It is a wonderful teaching book that accompanies us *«dreamers»* through our entire life. An unending source of thought-provoking ideas. To read a verse, a page, gives us brain food which nourishes and occupies us for a long time – and evolves us. What could be better? – Nothing.

Eva Bieri, 13 March 2008

In this book, the greatest friend of humanity of all time on Earth, Billy Eduard A. Meier (BEAM) has once again succeeded in astonishing not only myself, but probably most human beings who read this major book. Although I have a similar reaction to every new book that Billy produces, above all when the OM appeared, which is in its way really the *«book of all books»*.

Now Billy has once again surprised us, because the *«Goblet of the Truth»* is also a work of unique preciousness. It is a *«heart-rending call»* to the human beings of Earth finally to follow the laws and recommendations of the Creation and to live according to them. This book casts *«light into the darkness»* of human ignorance about the relationships between coarse-substantial and fine-fluidal material of the life; it is an explanatory call to come to our senses and refrain from the entirely misdirected ways of human life-determinations for purely coarse-substantial, material values, to finally set about searching for the only real sense and purpose of our life.

It is a book that evocatively shows human beings the great danger that the human beings of Earth have manoeuvred themselves into because of their continuous behaviour against the law of creation, against nature, human beings, animals and our planet.

The words of the truth in this book are so mighty and stirring in their clarity and admonition that they will be able to reach the deepest core of every human being. «It is not only as if a hurricane or typhoon were setting the sea in uproar, but also at the same time as if a gigantic earthquake were shaking the innermost inner», because the statements in this book with their explanations and instructions struck me with a comparably gigantic power.

Just like an arrow strikes the innermost centre of the target, every single verse, every chapter in this new work from Billy – the human being whom I have chosen for myself as *«teacher of all teachers»* – triggers not only deep agitation but also great joy and thankfulness for the unsurpassable explanations and precise words of the truth in all regards.

Surely the humankind on our planet will never be able to grant the *«master of the days»*, the light-bringer *«Billy»* Eduard A. Meier (BEAM) the honour and thankfulness that is his due for his untiring work in giving the misdirected human beings of Earth not only all previous works but now also this new and precious book of instruction.



With respect, in thankfulness and giving the highest honour
Brunhilde Koye-Hoppe

The «Goblet of the Truth» is the culmination of a uniquely brilliant idea that Nokodemion contrived 96 billion years ago and set on its apparently endless way, sometimes a stony one, as a life- and spirit-teaching. The teaching of creational laws and recommendations, cast and forged in the hot fire of the truth, reveals itself to us children of the Mission today as an elemental, gigantic tool for creating a true art of living, freedom, harmony, dignity, respect and love.

These noble words shock the pitiable present day world like a rumbling thunderstorm, and in the future too, the hard yet fair word of the prophets, steeped in love and compassion, will be brought to the peoples as a brightly shining light of the truth, as since time immemorial.

As companion, pupil and son of the Mission, I feel a deepest connection with it. Unhesitatingly, I would again join the ranks of those who accompany the prophets over millions and billions of years, supporting and therefore helping them to bring their hugely taxing work to full fruition.

As a small part of this Mission history, I bow down in respect.

Stephan A. Rickauer, 15 March 2008, 10:49 AM

Nothing better could have happened to me in my life than meeting «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier and the FIGU organisation he established («Free Community of Interests for the Border and Spiritual Sciences and Ufological Studies»), Semjase Silver Star Centre, Schmidrüti in Switzerland. I slowly approached Billy's writings and began to study his spiritual teaching somewhat later, which is also the teaching of the Creation and the teaching of the life. Increasingly, I came to understand the interconnections of being human in the real and true sense as well as the topics of rebirth, living and dying, death, spirit and consciousness, thoughts and feelings, the psyche and the fine-spiritual perceiving, the causality of cause and effect, bipolarity of positive and negative, striving, the obligation of self-responsibility and evolution. One of the most important fundamental principles for me is love. In this wise, I also learned to deal with difficult situations in my life. Spiritual teaching has become one of the most important tasks in my life. As the veil was gradually lifted from my eyes, I finally began to understand that this is the real truth, namely what Billy is giving and teaching to us human beings in terms of knowledge, wisdom and love. I became aware that the human beings of Earth have been going astray for millennia because of religions, sects, false prophets and pseudo-sciences, have been blinded, irresponsibly raised, filled with falsehoods and hindered in their evolution.

When I came to know Billy better as a Core Group member, I finally realised how his nature radiates love. His character and his mode of life is simplicity, selflessness, hard work, honesty, intelligence as well as kindheartedness and everything that is worthy of life. He works almost round the clock to fulfil his Mission, he has an open ear for everyone and provides advice and help wherever necessary. Billy lives the teaching of the spirit, i.e. the teaching of the truth, i.e. the teaching of the love for us, in all the treasure of this book, the «Goblet of the Truth», everyday as an example.

Dear Billy, you took millions of years to learn your teaching about the Creation, its laws and recommendations, and for many years now you have been active as a proclaimer and prophet of the truth to pass on this treasure untiringly and with great self-sacrifice to all the human beings of Earth, in order to bring them back to the right way, to freedom, to peace, to love and harmony on our so ausgeartet world. Dear Billy, your spiritual teaching cannot be measured in gold and silver. What use does a bird have for the most beautiful cage if it cannot fly within it, what is the use of the present existence for the human beings of Earth if they do not feel free and happy any more, and cannot live with one another and for one another any longer in freedom, peace and love. Dear Billy, a feeling of happiness flows through me when I think that I have been able to help in a small part of your so difficult task of the Mission. I wish to give you a thousand thanks in love.

Erhard Lang, 10 March 2008



This book is probably the greatest treasure of humankind. However, its value is not in the material things, but in the spiritual. The humankind of this earth would be well advised to take the content to heart and therefore learn to understand the messages and allow them to flow into daily life. Only so would the true value of this book develop absolutely fully for human beings, as they would developmentally change themselves and their behaviour and therefore would lead their life based on creational freedom, in peace and harmony.

This procedure would also be the only thanks for what we think are the almost infinite efforts taken by the prophet of the new time, «Billy», and his self-sacrifice almost to the limits of his strength in order to communicate to us his wisdom and knowledge. Therefore, step out of the darkness into the light that has been given to you and try a little harder to ensure that everything falls on fertile ground, for the sake of a shared, peaceful and creation-related future.

Daniel Lutz

The search for truth has just begun, and yet it is a gift to live at its source.

To meet a human being who is «teacher, proclaimer of the truth and friend» all rolled into one is a gift that cannot be exceeded in life.

To belong to a community in which one is ever more closely involved and yet feels as free as a bird, shows that one is on the right life-way.

To receive support and connection from human beings who live millions of light years away from us and with whom one feels closer and more connected than the rest of humankind, is something that speaks for itself.

How lost and lonely do all those human beings look who are stumbling on the search for the sense of the life, who are chasing after an imaginary objective or victory and simply do not notice that the sense of the life is passing them by. Always on the search for a new purpose in life, hunting for a record and fleeing from themselves.

Günter Neugebauer

The «Goblet of the Truth» is a book that changes human beings' view of their lives, just as it changed my vision and showed me that life and truth is much more comprehensive in many things than I have previously assumed. The last book of the spiritual teaching teaches with an unambiguous clarity the knowledge, the logic, the wisdom and the virtues for the right leading of life and the duty that every one of us has as a human being. Comprehensibly, logically and able to be put into practice.

In spite of his deeply stricken state of health, my father worked every night and every free minute on this book, during which time he had to concentrate to download the data from the storage banks and code everything, involving such a level of exertion that he was so weakened and ill at the end of the book that he would have lost his life without the help of the Plejaren.

The «Goblet of the Truth» is a complete work of teaching from all the prophets of the Nokodemion – Henok – Henoch line which is completed by the words of my father, something which fills me with great pride, consideration and respect.

Dear fellow human being, guide yourself based on your natural being as a human, and learn, recognise and experience the teaching of the spirit which my father, the prophet of the new time, communicates. Do not search for what you do not understand, and do not preach water but drink wine yourself, but instead be honest with yourself as a human being and sample the «Goblet of the Truth» so that you will be clear about your own words, your thoughts and about yourself as a human being, because you will be able to recognise everything since the teaching of the spirit is clear, logical and can be put into practice based on your estimation and your abilities.



Natan Brand

Dear Billy, you have guided me onto the path of self-awareness, true life and actual love with unending patience and venerable selflessness. In so doing, you have opened the greatest and most valuable thing to me that can be given to any human being, namely true self-determination and effective self-realisation, in the knowledge of self-responsibility towards self and own duties.

You can rely on my thanks and inner solidarity at all times.

Your true like-minded friend
Pius Meinrad Keller, Fischingen, 15 March 2008

In earlier times, it was unfortunately not possible on our Earth to declare and spread the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in written form, because in these early times most of Earth's population was unable to read and write. For this reason, the teaching of the truth or the spiritual teaching could chiefly only be presented and spread in spoken form, meaning that falsifications could not be avoided, some of which have achieved a shocking extent, so that no recognisable value remained of the original teaching. This is a condition that can only be rectified currently, because a large portion of the human beings of Earth have learned to read and write since the beginning of the new time in 1844, therefore the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life can now be written down and, thanks to technical progress, be spread worldwide either as a book or with technical and electronic means of communication, making it accessible to the majority of humankind on Earth. This is a situation that represents a great blessing of inestimable value for all of humankind, because the known earthly literature from the areas of religion, science philosophy and culture is unfortunately only of little value and is often neither reliable nor true.

Since my youth, I have been looking for the truth, which means I have delved intensively into many things in life, natural sciences and esoterics, etc., which led to me only finding part of the answer and not really being satisfied with the tiny mosaic fragments of the truth. To my great happiness and true to the words «Seek and ye shall find» and «Good things take time», I came to know and esteem «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier more than thirty years ago. When I started to read his writings and study them, I instantly knew with inner certainty that the content of these writings corresponded to the irrefutable truth that I had been looking and searching for through many decades of my life. Since then, I have worked hard to put into practice the teaching from the exceedingly valuable content of many writings that Billy has written and published in the past, and implement it in my entire life sphere.

During these long years of intensive study, I got to know Billy better and better, which showed me over time that I was dealing with a unique and wonderful human being who has spent his life with great and untiring effort on the progress of his Mission, and fulfils and lives this under the most difficult and contrary conditions, in spite of worldwide animosity and difficult health problems, etc., day and night – practically until total exhaustion. It is a Mission intended to spread the teaching of the truth or the teaching of the spirit by means of which humankind will eventually find its way to peace, effective freedom and true love.

Billy is a human being characterised by great wisdom, love and kindheartedness as well as being exceedingly straight and ambitious to achieve his determination, who lives and copes with his life with selflessness, readiness to help others as well as in deep love and connectedness with his fellow human beings and fellow life forms. It is quite true to say that Billy possesses a vast and unparalleled knowledge and pronounced wisdom which, particularly with regard to the teaching of the life and the teaching of the spirit or the teaching of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, achieves an extent and a degree that is unmatched on Earth by any other human being.

If even only a small part of the terrestrial humanity would read and study Billy's writings and his teaching, and would show an honest attempt and volition to live according to their values and instructions and put these into practice, things on our Earth would be much more peaceful, loving and humane, and there would be many fewer wars and other conflicts as well as other brutalities that would terrorise humankind to a much lesser degree. Therefore, it would be more than merely desirable for as many human beings as possible to take Billy's writings to hand and study them with an honest intention, and in particular his crowning work the «Goblet of the Truth», in order to derive goodness, rightness and constructiveness for



their own life and the community of all life forms from the wealth of exceedingly valuable teaching, guidelines and instructions that have their origin in the venerable teaching of Nokodemion.

Basically, the human beings of Earth cannot thank Billy enough for their inestimable luck in having such an important prophet in their midst, one who untiringly and often under almost inhumane circumstances and adverse conditions has written such important guidelines for life and a teaching for us human beings, so that if we follow them and apply them the entirety of humankind would march forward into a better and happier future that they had worked out for themselves, a future in which the individual could shape and form his or her own life in a loving and constructive wise.

I, for my part, wish to express my most respectful and heartfelt thanks on behalf of all of earthly humankind for all the efforts and sacrifices that Billy has made in order to write all of his works and writings of the teaching of the spirit, that he has called into life for the development of humankind so that, thanks to his work and efforts, we can create a valuable and good future for ourselves in which every human being will be able to lead a happy and satisfied life.

With all my heart, and in profound connectedness in love, I wish Billy above all good health and well being, as well as nothing but the most loving and best for the well earned evening of his life.

Guido Moosbrugger

In Billy we have a human being on this planet who has the confidence to speak the truth plainly and honestly. It is certainly not always simple to deal with the truth because all too often it sounds very harsh. Those affected by the truth often feel it as a personal attack, although this is not the case, because the truth only ever shows the facts of the situation and nothing more. Human beings are never attacked by it, because they can only advance in evolution via the way of making errors as has already been determined by Creation itself, so this is why only the actions and deeds of human beings must be criticised, never the personality itself. For this reason, the human being in that situation in life needs the open word of the truth, as has also been disclosed through effective love. Only because of pure love for the entire humankind of this planet Earth does Billy accept the attacks that unavoidably encounter him whenever he has once again expressed an extremely uncomfortable truth. We can regard ourselves as lucky to have a human being of this kind on our world because there are very few of this kind on Earth.

The book, «Goblet of the Truth», makes a special contribution to finding the truth, therefore I am personally extremely happy that Billy has set down this magnificent work in writing for the first time and recorded it for reading and study over hundreds and thousands of years to come. It is truly a gift to we human beings of Earth, we who urgently require instruction in the truth in order to liberate ourselves finally from the yoke of untrammelled materialism and the numerous false teachings. False values are rife on our planet, in our consciousness, our genes, our thoughts and feelings and in our psyche like weeds in an untended garden. Therefore, it is high time for us to learn again how to cultivate our consciousness, our thoughts and feelings and our psyche. To do this will not take so much at all, because everything starts by us changing our edifice of thoughts. However, we cannot do this with the many misleading teachings that are extant around our planet, instead we require the true creational edifice of thoughts.

We can recognise the effects of the Creation in nature and divine the corresponding laws from this, according to which we should then direct our lives. However, for all of the external things that can be seen and recognised, there is also the inner processes that can only be felt, heard, seen and fine-fluidally perceived. Besides the external image that we make of all concerns, it is important above all to recognise the inner values of everything. To do this, it is necessary to perceive the nuances that take place in the human being himself or herself, and to heed them, e.g., intuition. In order to do this, however, the world needs to become «quieter», without the level of frenzy that exists at present. A time of retreat and general meditation is required again. By doing so, human beings could also get to know themselves better and, at the same time, detect what it is that they do not like about themselves. This is because only this cognition brings them to the idea of wanting to change something, which is of course essential in the frame of evolution. The sense of the life is in the development of the consciousness, to refine the entire content of the consciousness more and more, and absolutely fully develop it.

This wonderful book can certainly contribute to achieving the set creational task of further development,



and it can teach us to direct our thoughts to sensible ways which are rich in content in order to banish the ugly thoughts from our consciousness that hinder evolution, and fill it with love, knowledge and wisdom. My thanks go to Billy for his painstaking work that was involved in writing this book.

Elisabeth Moosbrugger

In the course of my evolution, whilst spending my life searching amongst the confusing ebbs and flows of the current time, I encountered the prophet of the new time. The teaching he has brought forth is the one I have selected for my home. Thanks be to him and his helpful extraterrestrial friends from me for the clear words and untiring explanations that I look forward to taking into the future in the further course of my life.

Andreas Schubiger, Turbenthal, 2 March 2008

Now, the great work has been completed, dear Billy. You have «retrieved» the complete «Goblet of the Truth» from the storage banks. Although this sounds so simple, it was in reality a gigantic work of which you alone amongst citizens of Earth were and are capable. To write a book of 260 densely filled A4 pages within a few months and have it ready for printing is in itself a masterful achievement, whilst the task of downloading the teaching of six prophets of your predecessor personalities through the gigantic might of your consciousness from the storage banks, then formulating this data in a traditional style that would be understandable to us and putting into words the extensive teaching of the 7th prophet in accordance with Nokodemion's guidelines, this is simply something that is beyond our power of comprehension. We who have experienced you for decades in the Centre, we knew that you were always nothing but untiringly productive. During your work on the «Goblet of the Truth», you succeeded in increasing your commitment beyond that of any human extent, irrespective of your already severely compromised health situation – but this was of course the reason for your urgency.

Dear Billy, you wise man amongst all the wise and culmination of your prophet line, you good, warm-hearted selfless friend and teacher, we thank you in respect and esteem, also in the name of all generations that will come after us.

As I first read through this work, your latest to date and most extensive subsequent to the OM, I was somewhat overtaxed by the density and fullness of the information, despite much of it already being familiar. I comforted myself with the thought that I do not have to cram everything into my head in this one life or implement it. The «Goblet of the Truth» is, as has been said, a work which future human beings and all the peoples of this earth will orient themselves towards – even if they currently mock and laugh at it as the prophets – and, thanks to this, there will be peace on our planet at last in the far distant future. And this, dear Billy, is something that we have to thank you for. My thanks, the thanks of the entire core and passive group and all the human beings who wish you well should not be exhausted in words, but should primarily find expression in that we are learning in an undeterred and evolution-striving wise in order to use your teaching that has grown out of the laws and recommendations of the Creation in order to enable us to set an example and help our fellow human beings, as you are for us, were and always will be, so that they also will find the way to the truth and finally bring light to our world that is darkened by discord, hatred and wars.

Brigitt Keller, 1 March 2008

Is there anything more beautiful than drinking from a clear spring if one is thirsty after a lengthy period of wandering? As the cool moisture trickles down one's throat and refreshingly reinvigorates the body with new energy, everything returns to a balance whilst a sensation of satisfaction and wonderful well-being permeates the entire human being.

The situation is the same with the truth if the human being is looking for it and discovers it, because as a never sealed source of the life, it opens up to him or her the sense of his present existence and is able to help him or her in all life's situations.

Finding fulfilment through truth is however associated with lots of work and requires the capacity to endure, because it is important to take responsibility and quite consciously strive to fulfil one's task as a human being and to fathom the understanding of the things in life through effort. Although the truth has many faces and it can be both pleasant and unpleasant, even bringing forth shocking situations, and yet it is



never one thing, namely fickle, which explains why it is always and everywhere the one thing that human beings can really rely on.

I can only give assurance that every effort, no matter how great, arduous and onerous it may seem, brings a thousand-fold reward if it enables recognition of the truth that one is connected to everything and can partake of the inexhaustible possibilities that life has to offer, in order to create in oneself love, peace, freedom and harmony and to pass these on to our fellow human beings, as our friend and teacher Billy E. A. Meier, the author of this book, presents by his own example and is able to pass on in this wise. I simply do not have the words to express the profundity of my feelings and the enrichment of my life which I received through him and his Plejaren friends.

In the *«Goblet of the Truth»*, life with its positive and negative sides is reflected in all its creational magnitude and its human inadequacy. Unfortunately, this book initially remained inaccessible to most human beings because it was written in German, for this reason I do not wish for anything more avidly than that human beings should address this book and open themselves to the truth with all their senses in order to learn how to understand their true value in honest striving. Then, they will discover that the *«Goblet of the Truth»* is also in their hands and they can use it to quench their thirst at any time if they make an honest attempt to do so.

Philia Stauber-Gabriel

When the teaching is accepted and one succeeds in distracting one's thoughts from the egocentrically spinning hamster's wheel then the internal and external horizon opens out and broadens, and the consciousness is filled with unending joy and thankfulness. With joy to be able to study and grasp the sense of the life, and with thankfulness for having found the bubbling source of truthly traditions and ground-breaking teachings in the desert of human foolishness. This treasure trove of sparkling diamonds of wisdom must not be allowed to rot in dark dungeons of avarice; we want to contribute with all of our strength to making it accessible to every human being who is searching for the truth.

Christina Gasser, March 2008

Right from my childhood, I was searching for the interconnections of the life – on the search for the sense of the life. Many years later, when I read the book *«Genesis»*, written down by Billy, I felt for the first time in my life that I had arrived at what I was looking for. It was as if I had received a key that I could use to open the gate wide to a new world – the world of the Creation.

The many valuable writings and books that Billy has written have so far answered all of my questions, and the OM book gave me the necessary explanations for the Mission's thought.

The profound need developed in me to become a small, steadily shining star and to use my best ability to contribute towards the great task of the *«silent revolution of the truth»* on this planet.

I give my special thanks to the dear and wise teacher Billy who has brought the entire Mission so far forward, due above all to his knowledge and his infinite love, his selflessness and his untiring endurance. These thanks also include our Plejaren friends and the entire federation.

Last but not least, I sense a deep joy in emanating a brighter and more radiant light with all the other members as a strong community, one that shows a large and gleaming star for human beings who are looking for the truth, the way to the creational life.

Simone H. Rickauer, 12 March 2008

It is an honour for me to be able to support the *«prophet of the new time»* in his difficult and immensely important Mission. I still feel moments of astonishment and joy when I realise that I am directly involved in what is the most important event in the history of humanity on Earth. Unnoticed by the bulk of Earth's population, an event of the highest historical import is unfolding and completing before our eyes, one that was planned ages ago and will remain unique on this planet.



The gleaming emergence of the «Goblet of the Truth» means the beginning of the end of the religious aberration of human beings that has prevailed for millennia. The seeds of knowledge sown by the old prophets have finally germinated and found fertile ground in various places. Already the tree of knowledge and of cognition is rooted so firmly in the ground that it can no longer be destroyed. The truth that was suppressed for so long has come to the light of day with gigantic might. We, the members of FIGU, guarantee that we will keep what we have received from you, dear Billy Eduard, the «guardian of the treasure», for free use, forever free from contamination so that it will lead future generations on Earth – and in other places later – to peace, harmony and love. Your untiring effort is a shining example and encouragement for me to contribute my share towards the success of the Mission. In cognizance of the law of cause and effect as well as the interaction, I intend to continue to be sensitive to my self-responsibility and, by taking small sips from the «Goblet of the Truth», to attempt to create in myself a unity between the material and the fine-fluidal world.

With dear wishes and great thankfulness

Christian Frehner, 15 March 08

The dimensions of the words of the truth are gigantic and human beings will initially only understand few of them. However, over time, the light of knowledge about the existence of the Creation and the actual purpose of the present existence of humanity will break through the dark covering clouds of misunderstanding, illogicality, delusional ideas, blindness, etc. and in the brilliance of this creative light, true freedom, peace and love will once again bloom in human beings. Nothing is more precious than the truth, and therefore this book is also a true treasure for human beings who search for the truth impartially and honestly. The author of this book, «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier, deserves profound thanks for having recently opened to human beings a source of knowledge about the actual connections of the life through his untiring and exemplary creative actions.

Wolfgang Adolf Stauber

The level of evolution which I have currently reached or will reach in future is something for which I must thank Billy in person or his written teaching above all, although I learned most of this by myself, Billy nevertheless laid the foundation stone – the starting stone – and therefore I am obliged to express my great gratitude to him.

We can indeed regard ourselves as fortunate to be able to learn from this inestimably magnificent work already, considering that it will take at least another 800 years until the bulk of humankind starts to learn the spiritual teaching and to live accordingly. We have the great opportunity to put into practice what we have learned and live accordingly, but also the responsibility and the obligation to pass on all of what we have learned to all interested human beings.

Freddy Kropf

Dip into the «Goblet of the Truth» and you will be astonished by the magnitude and sheer endlessness of the goblet. Even after thousands of years, you will continue to find new, profound places of knowledge, logic, wisdom and love. Dip into the goblet and make your contribution to emanating the creation in order to influence everything to the good with your swinging waves.

Piero Petrizzo

Every human being is therefore an essence created through the Creation, a special life form equipped with a part-piece of the Creation in order to develop all of his or her requirements and longings. The human being is not one of those more highly developed animals that only acts according to its requirements – and that is a huge difference. The human being is therefore also an individual with his or her own consciousness and in connection with all life and BEING of the Creation, even if he or she as a human being will probably never be able to see the entirety of it. The human being's true individuality is actually always in accordance with the BEING of the Creation, perhaps like a tiny mirror, nevertheless he or she attempts to develop further with a false individuality, something which is however counterproductive and entails damage and non-understanding.



One should also know that it is never possible to grasp and understand and get to know a human being entirely, but probably only ever far less than the half. Nevertheless, the more one is capable of understanding what is going on in a partner of either sex in love and compassion and perception of their present existence, in order to understand and know everything better and to assist in love and evolution, promoting and expanding everything in harmony and freedom, the more one exists together in certainty and creationally given love which flows through everything and encourages all connectedness.

Therefore it is the truth that a good and simple life in modesty, which in the final analysis is always also «spiritual teaching», contributes everything to promoting the consciousness and sense of reality and is a constituent part in this, given by the natural creational laws and recommendations and by evolution, the love of the Creation and by all spaces and times of the nature of being.

Therefore, the reality in which one moves and lives must always be in accordance with the true reality of creational nature! This is the only possibility of building up cognitions, love, harmony, knowledge and «higher realities».

One always looks into being from one point. Therefore, one experiences the various realities on small and large scale depending on the consciousness, place and form of present existence of a life. One takes part in the change of a great-time of the Creation, which is in turn a life form, in a larger and different and higher reality of BEING. Even the tiny forms of the life, a grain of sand, an insect, a flower, animals and all human beings are, as changing life forms, always an expression of the present existence in life and the love of BEING. Creation is the great family of every human being and he or she lives with all of them. All humanities in the universe are also one family. Creation is like the mother and father of all life. The BEING in the human lives eternally, actually independent of the abilities and understanding of the human being. The love of BEING is perhaps the driving power for all requirements of the BEING for living and creating eternally. It is also as if the love of BEING were living in order to love and life were loving in order to live.

Actually, the Creation is like an infinitely shining star, equipped in itself with the most beautiful things of BEING, like a present of eternity and always being, for every human being, irrespective his or her outward appearance, what and who he or she is, and yet still perceives everything at some time and starts to live with this point by point and in love with everything. May a star always sparkle above us and shine in the love, the understanding, the connectedness and all efforts to improve everything, to turn all life in the good and happy present existence in the eternal BEING of the Creation into love, in order to be together in an infinitely changing form of the life and always in harmony. One of the most beautiful things is to bear love in oneself, to give love, to receive love and to align one's present existence accordingly. The human being must also live positively and with a confident attitude, always creatively and constructively, learning in peace, joy, freedom, harmony and love – because the Creation and all being and BEING is love.

Christian Krukowski, March 2008

What rain is to plants, the «Goblet of the Truth» is to human beings. When they drink from it, they grow out of the darkness of forgetfulness towards the light of knowledge. There, the blossom slumbering within them opens and gleams in the colours of a new world.

Atlant Bieri

When, 27 years ago I joined the Core Group of 49, I did this from my inner striving to make the contribution to the Mission that was possible for me, and to do my best for this. Nothing has changed in this attitude since, and yet then and now are worlds apart for me.

It very soon became obvious that the Mission of FIGU was to spread the teaching of the spirit and the creational laws it contains in an instructive form to our fellow human beings who are looking for the proof, primarily in order to instruct oneself about the truthly life and to strive towards the associated change in thinking, acting and feeling.

Therefore, I began to walk a way which has the high and worthwhile objective of being human in the real and true sense in following the creational principles. Through the study of spiritual teaching and its practical application, I succeeded over time in overcoming many hurdles on my journey through life, accomplishing



steep and often onerous ascents, and therefore removing many an obstacle from my way. I am well aware that I still have a long section of the way to complete, however I can always continue to walk it in confidence, because I find in the spiritual teaching a guideline for present existence in conscious self-responsibility and according to the principles of natural law.

It is a great honour for me to be able to contribute my part to the Mission of FIGU, and I count myself very lucky to know Billy as a wise, honourable teacher and a dear friend in our group.

I thank him most profoundly for his unmeasurably valuable work on behalf of us human beings of Earth and for his wise counsels that have been and are very helpful for my family.

I thank our Plejaren friends for the great commitment and their patience with us human beings of Earth who are «unwilling to learn». My thanks also go to all members of the Core Group; I am happy that I can count you amongst my true friends, a friendship that will continue to meld us together in future when we continue our very responsible Mission work with the objective of finally bringing the human beings of Earth into knowledge of their self-responsibility and striving for lasting peace as well as a present existence for all human beings that is worthy of humanity.

Elisabeth Gruber

The greatest work of the last true prophet and proclaimer of the truth of Earth now reveals for the first time the really true and unique «Goblet of the Truth» that will finally bring peace in and amongst the human beings of Earth.

You will discover that there has only been one single teaching of the truth since the very beginning and continues to be only one, that was delivered to all peoples of Earth by various prophets again and again through all the world's eons, and continues to be delivered by the current and last prophet of the new time, BEAM, from the true line of prophets. This consists of the prophets Henoah, Jeremja, Jesaja, Elia, Jmmanuel, Muhammad and BEAM, who all were and are bearers of Nokodemion's spirit form. They all proclaimed and are proclaiming one and the same teaching of the Creation, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the love and teaching of the truth, which guarantees evolution in harmony with the Creation.

Whenever current human beings see the world harrowed by affliction, war, overpopulation and natural catastrophes, it becomes clear that neither a god, head of religion, ruler, mighty leader, wiseacre or other propagandist will be able to produce any improvement at any time. Only every individual human being is able to bring about a reversal by following the true teaching of the spirit. Solely the individual human being is responsible for this with his or her free will, thinking and actions and with what he or she makes of the truth.

Karin Wallén, Switzerland

In the writings of Billy, it has always been the passages dealing with fundamental principles and statements that appealed to me especially. Take for example the statements about the laws of negative and positive or about the mindfulness and clarity of knowledge or about the row of the seven values of perception that is described in the spiritual teaching, etc. I have also been fascinated by the explanations of the universe and Creation as well as the mathematical descriptions, such as the temporal developments in overall evolution, etc.

This and much more in the writings of Billy have helped my life to progress enormously. Without this additional enormous trove, I would probably have tackled conventional literature in life, without ever really obtaining clear answers about life and the actual truth.

As far as the entire Mission is concerned, I for my part can only say that this represents a clear self-responsibility and a necessity in every respect.

The language in the writings of Billy, is in my opinion, extremely comprehensible and explanatory, and it speaks to the capacity of rationality that is present in every human being, even though it may often be blocked up. The statements and principles as well the further explanations and descriptions of the life are



often of such spontaneous obviousness and true to reality in a straightforward wise that one might even feel one had personally been able to reach certain truths without outside assistance. However, this is fundamentally incorrect because only in the moment of reading does one have a faint inspiration of how much one's own thinking and intellect have been blocked up and often remain so.

Only after years is one able to recognise how universally profound and comprehensively simple the statements and principles of the life have been kept. It is then also possible to recognise that this variety of statements in the entire teaching of Billy can be researched and fathomed, and that one can then achieve one's own cognitions, if only limited ones.

This fundamentally simple significance in the writings of Billy is highly communicative and appealing to the intellect, and could be described as a sort of tip of an enormous iceberg. It is scarcely possible to conceive what a variety of recommendations and profound creational laws are concealed in coded form behind every single verse.

I have so far only been able to read a few excerpts from this book. However, I am certain that it will once again be a confirmation and an elevation of everything I have read so far, and that it will certainly shake and surprise me profoundly again, just as much in it will be completely new for me.

In conclusion, I would like to draw attention to the following statement: The difficulty in comprehending and understanding the writings of Billy is not to do with searching for complicated things in reality, but rather this difficulty has to do with being able to recognise the simplicity that occurs everywhere in reality to a large extent. And this can only be achieved with intensive work, namely the work of one's own thinking.

Louis Memper, 15 March 2008

The teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and the teaching of the good and correct leading of the life is based on the laws and recommendations of the Creation and was offered and taught in its original form billions of years ago by Nokodemion. This teaching is of inestimable value for human beings and their consciousness-based, spiritual and material evolution, therefore we can be grateful that Billy has been able to set down this teaching in its overall value in written form and explain it anew for humankind thanks to his wisdom and his capabilities, by means of which it represents an enduring, upbuilding and unmeasurable value and an extensive evolutive help for human beings. It is to be wished that human beings will grasp these profound values and make them their own, in order to be able to use and apply them in a good and upbuilding form.

Patric Chenaux

Self-responsibility is one of the most precious qualities of human beings, one that has to be nurtured and lived, and which however means self-responsibility to decide by oneself – freely – and to take the responsibility. It is a requirement that is part of every human being. And yet what is usually forgotten is that freedom and self-responsibility are inextricably linked.

It merely remains to hope that the reader of this book will now better understand and follow the value and the instruction of self-responsibility in the detailed explanation.

Silvano Lehmann

Dear Eduard,

Now I am addressing you by your true name, because in my estimation the name Eduard suits you better than Billy, the name by which you are known worldwide. Eduard means 'guardian of the treasure', and you are a true treasure guardian. Thanks to your help, your knowledge, your wisdom and your love, you have made it possible for the Core Group of 49 and all other human beings to get to know and use evolutively the treasure of the spiritual teaching that you have communicated to us in a wise that is indicative of the Creation.

Jacobus Bertschinger



«It is you alone who can raise your Earth again if you stop with all your terror and with your destructions, and if you get your overpopulation under control, out of which all evil terrible things and problems proceed; but consider that your way will be very long to restoring on your planet the state which for you is a true life-source.»

(«Goblet of the Truth», chapter 28, verse 151)

In other words:

A girl who was thrilled by spiritual teaching could not escape from the growing desire to undertake expeditions all round our Earth. Her very profound thoughts directed her across the endangered rain forest, and the dreadful happenings that she was obliged to see there made her shudder in horror. Wonderfully beautiful, primeval trees were mercilessly felled using rusty chainsaws and simply left to rot, while the falling trees also killed small and large animals of the rainforest and left them abandoned.

Deep in thought, the girl quickly changed her course towards the sea where terrible destruction was also being wrought, such as her young eyes had never before seen. Whales, parents together with their young crying out for their mothers, were speared with terrible harpoons and dragged onto deck over the rusting railings, to bleed to death crying out in pain. The same fate was suffered by many small whales and intelligent dolphins.

Horrified by the cruelties of today's human beings of Earth, who are heedlessly destroying the life of the flora and fauna, the girl was deeply wounded in her seeing thoughts and torn back to the awakened present, full of inner woe ...

Maria Wächter, 25 March 2008

My destiny means doing it myself.

The way and how I bestride it are for me to decide alone.

Events can be simply accepted and one surrenders oneself to them – but doing nothing means giving up. Anyone can make the best out of any situation, no matter how hopeless.

Every day is a new start, and in spite of all the human beings who may be around you, you alone have got to decide to take your step.

No-one will take your decision from you, because only you know yourself, know how you are and where you want to go – it is in your hands.

Cornelia Wächter

Whenever there are occasionally discussions at FIGU about the obligations and duties of the individual members, it is certain to be remarked that Billy does the main work with regard to the Mission. It is a reflection of the selflessness and inner stature of the man that he always points out that he would never have been able to undertake the hard and demanding work of fulfilling the Mission without the active and indefatigable help of everyone. Also, when the time came to write this shared preface to the work, the «Goblet of the Truth», that you have before you, dear reader, voices were once again heard loudly proclaiming that Billy had done the majority of the work. This may well be true, in accordance with his skills and possibilities. And yet once again here, it is apparent that this writing could never have been published without the energetic assistance and corresponding build-up work over many years by all of the members. And therefore, I believe, this preface should set the impulse in motion that everyone has his or her task in order to bring the Mission to a successful conclusion to the best of his or her ability – and it will only be possible for us to achieve this together and with one another.

Atlantis Meier

Brimming with thankfulness, breathless with joy, overflowing with happiness, my consciousness moves from one delight to the next as it engages with the «Goblet of the Truth». I find calm and peace in the eye of the hurricane, whilst the whole world is being swept away, to find itself again in a new order when the



storm has abated – at the end of the «silent revolution of the truth».

The whole depth of truth, creationally directed life and evolution, speaks to me from the clear, strict and logical words that bring near to me the beauty and harmony of the life selflessly and with lofty simplicity. The book can be a companion for life – more, indeed, a life partner – and I can scarcely believe my good fortune and the signal, undeserved honour not only of being able to hold it in my hands but also even to take part in its further spreading, so that I am allowed to contribute something for the whole of humankind and all coming generations.

I thank Billy with every breath and in every second that I have been able to make working for the Mission into my life's task. Through his never failing help, his striving constantly full of love and understanding and his ceaseless support and encouragement, I succeeded in abandoning the wastelands of consciousness-based confusion and became what I am today and will be tomorrow.

No work is too small and no effort too taxing to be active on behalf of the Mission, and these acts are also my steadfast and perpetual, if only slight, thanks for everything that I have been allowed to learn, experience and achieve in recognition of the truth and the importance of the Mission.

Bernadette Brand, 11 April 2008



Good or Evil – What is Human Nature?

No human being is fundamentally evil, because he or she is not genetically programmed by nature for Gewalt and manipulation. The abysses of the evil, the Gewalt, the revenge and retribution, the dishonesty and hatred as well as the jealousy and falseness as well as everything else that is ausgeartet and unworthy of human beings only develop during the course of the life. And when these abysses of the evil open, it is not seldom the case that they open so wide that a human being who has lapsed into the evil can no longer find his or her way back to the good.

No human being is by nature evil, acting with Gewalt and in this form in one or another kind and wise ausgeartet, because no human being is fundamentally and genetically coded for Gewalt. The truth is that the evil in the human being is learned by him or her during the life, something which can happen even from an early stage of childhood or only later with advancing years. Indeed, there is no age limit placed on learning Gewalt-acts, evil and every possible type of Ausartung, which means that even a human being who has lived a good, peaceful and Gewalt-less life can suddenly lapse into acts of Gewalt in old age if he or she falls into the appropriate circumstances of living by means of which he or she leads himself or herself to Gewalt.

Genetic programming only imposes on human beings reaction patterns and protection mechanisms, which are archaic, i.e. prehistoric reaction functions of fight, flight or freezing. These are therefore reaction patterns that are possessed by many animals and other creatures (birds, fishes, reptiles, etc.) and are controlled by the brain; in human beings, this is the oldest part of the brain, the brain stem. The brain stem responds to any conceivable and acute threat towards the conscious of the consciousness in a fully unconscious wise, therefore the consciousness cannot control the entire scenario of the threat response. The unconscious reaction process to the acute threat therefore prevents a control function of the conscious of the consciousness with the result that the consciousness only becomes conscious of the whole procedure due to the unconscious perception and resulting feelings. Therefore, when faced by an acute threat, a danger, etc., the brain stem responds with an unconscious perception and therefore also with unconscious thoughts which take place without the conscious of the consciousness being involved. This unconscious perception and the resulting feelings lead to a lightning reaction which results in a fight, flight or freezing response, and only then penetrates the consciousness in a conscious wise. The whole thing is an unconsciously controlled protective reaction, but one which has nothing to do with any destructive aggression and only penetrates the conscious of the consciousness as a conscious factor after the unconscious lightning response has taken place. However, if unfavourable conditions and circumstances are given during this procedure, this can lead to an outburst, namely destructive aggression, because control over negative impulses is not part of our genetic programming either, rather it is something that has to be learned through a healthy consciousness-activity, and thereby through a sound thought-, feeling- and behaviour-world.

Analysing human behaviour leads to the recognition that everything in human life depends on the human being's complex coping strategies, namely satisfying his or her requirements, solving his or her conflicts and problems, rectifying his or her errors and also gaining recognition from his or her fellow human beings. Looking for these capabilities in the human being, it is possible to find them in the cerebral cortex which gives rise to ever more complex and improved coping strategies which allow the human being to live rightfully according to creational laws and recommendations, insofar as he or she grows up and leads his or her life in this climate of fulfilment. However, if the human being grows up in a climate where fear, brutality, oppression, Gewalt, jealousy, torture, dishonesty, hatred, revenge, retaliation or other evil and Ausartungen are the norm, the result will be that the defensive programmes stored in the depth of the brain since ancient times, namely fight, flight and freezing, will be reinforced, resulting in Gewalt-reactions. Faced with evil, Gewalt or Ausartung, it is very quick for the only possible and successful coping strategy to be seen as returning the same evil, the same Gewalt and the same Ausartungen as the only means of self-assertion, and therefore as the only opportunity to assert oneself in relation to oneself or towards other human beings or a situation, and wielding might oneself. This behaviour very quickly becomes a habit, something which generally takes place in the early years of childhood and can no longer be dropped. As a result, human beings carry with them their learned evil, Gewalt, hatred, revenge and retaliation as well as all Ausartungen throughout their entire lives, and it is therefore inevitable that this will lead to intermittent or continuous acts of Gewalt. The entire behaviour also contains within it a sustained and hidden unconscious fear of suffering disadvantages and harm, and this feeds a sustained and burrowing, destructive



aggressiveness which further increases the level of fear and, in turn, ratchets up the learned readiness to use Gewalt to an even higher level. In the end, the whole thing leads to murder and manslaughter, war and destruction, as has been the case since time immemorial.

If a human being grows up in a climate of fear, brutality, Gewalt and Ausartungen, or if the human being lives under such conditions on having reached adulthood, it is inevitable that he or she will take on these evil and negative forms by learning them and thereby once again open the door to the archaic or prehistoric defensive programmes of fight, flight and freezing, something which inevitably leads to Gewalt-acts. This is because there is no control over impulses in the conscious of the consciousness, because this was never learned or has simply been thrown overboard and therefore a completely different behaviour or pattern appears that cries out for destructive aggression, Gewalt, revenge, retaliation, jealousy, torture, the death penalty, hatred, war, destruction, dishonesty and all other evil things. All the nerve groups cry out aggressively for attack, although other responses such as flight and freezing as well as deceit, infamy, dignitylessness, contempt for human beings and cowardice maybe tied up in this and come to the fore when attacked. This means everything is connected, and this interconnectivity is rendered particularly stable because the reward centre is triggered by all these aggressions and Ausartungen, and the brain is flooded with the neurotransmitter dopamine. Consequently, the human being feels himself or herself affirmed, big and powerful in his or her aggression, Gewalt and Ausartung and this is precisely what leads to the situation that he or she becomes addicted to his or her acts of Gewalt and therefore always continues to strive for evil and unleash disputes, wars and all-round death and destruction in order to satisfy his or her brain reward cascade by means of the neurotransmitter dopamine. In this wise, the human being mutates towards evil, aggression, Gewalt and all other Ausartungen, as a result of which murder and manslaughter, conflict, jealousy, revenge, hatred, torture, retaliation, wars, the death penalty and destruction become part and parcel of everyday life.

Evil is rife not only in individual human beings when they have learned it, but also in groups and entire peoples. The reasoning of human beings is not determined by the question of good or evil, nor by the question of right or wrong, it is rather the human beings' learning of evil that then determines their life and mode of life. As far as the individual human being is concerned, his or her mode of life is determined by loyalty towards his or her own evil, in terms of groups or peoples it is the group's or peoples' loyalty towards evil that enables human beings to allow themselves to be misused for the purposes of religious, political, philosophical or ideological delusion, for the death penalty and for wars. However, human beings are not born with a blind loyalty, because they learn it from their environment. Fundamentally, human beings are born with a true conscience that strives after the good. This means the human being is not born with the power to attract evil, but rather with good and positive things, which is entirely in accordance with the creational laws namely that every life form shall be born unencumbered by evil, i.e. destructive aggressiveness, i.e. Gewalt. Therefore, it is the truth that human beings are born into the world with a good and positive social behaviour and are controlled by this, which is something that happens long before they are even aware of it. This is the same thing as saying that every human being who possesses Gewalt, evil, aggression and Ausartungen of any kind is himself or herself to blame for this, because he or she learnt this entirely by himself or herself during the course of his or her childhood or adult life.

No human being is acting with Gewalt by nature, he or she learns to be Gewalt-acting because of his or her surroundings, from parents, brothers and sisters, relatives, friends, acquaintances and other human beings. Human beings also learn to be Gewalt-acting as a result of religions and sects which teach murder and manslaughter as well as other evil Gewalt and bad things; from politicians and the military who order wars and spread death and destruction; and from the penal code according to which torture and the death penalty are imposed; also however from Gewalt-acting forms of sport, games and educational measures, etc. This means human beings learn about Gewalt from an early age, indeed not seldom they almost imbibe it with their mother's milk, meaning that evil becomes seen as the only successful coping strategy in order to assert oneself against other human beings and the entire world around. This destructive aggressiveness, however, is not harmless because evil is fundamentally directed against its own origin as well, as can be seen by the fact that evil of any kind makes for unhappiness over time even if the human being is not punished for his or her Gewalt-acting or otherwise evil actions. Yet it is the reality that an individual will come to harm sooner or later through having done evil, because psychic stability weakens over time due to the pangs of a guilty conscience. This does not apply to human beings who have become entirely brutalised and callous as well as irresponsible and conscienceless, something which also applies to those who kill as legal executioners or soldiers, knowing the judicial or military command is at their back and



wrongly believing that their actions are rightful, which means that they do not develop a guilty conscience. It is the norm for doing evil – irrespective of what kind – that a guilty conscience will surface in the human being over time, therefore undermining the psychic stability. This psychic destabilisation leads to severe depression, to an increased risk of suicide and the danger of becoming addicted to medicines, drugs and alcohol. It is a fact that amongst human beings who have learnt to do evil and have fallen into this trap, the percentage of suicides, pathological cravings and depressions is 530 times greater than in human beings who have not lapsed into evil. This also applies if the deeds have never been investigated and the wrongdoers have never been consequently punished.

If a human being does not recognise that his or her evil actions are wrong and does not make an effort to return to the good and right way, and to remain walking on this way henceforth, something which is well within the bounds of possibility for every fallible human being, then that human being is running headlong into their own doom. Taking a more precise look at the evil that human beings do, it is apparent that the evil contains something like a midpoint in the entire thing, a half life so to speak. As far as the human being is concerned who is doing evil, whether it involves Gewalt-acts or criminal activities with regard to financial gain, the whole thing is concealed under a cloak of might from other human beings or under a cloak of rapid enrichment. Nevertheless everything will at some time reach its high point, a midpoint or, as was mentioned, a half life, from which point things start to go downhill, i.e. at which point a process of self dissolution begins, energy tails off and psychic stability begins to fluctuate with the pangs of conscience. This is the time when energy for the good must once more come to the fore, human beings must once again be creational, constructive and loving of fairness, because the true energy of the life does not tolerate sheer egoism in the long run. For many of those who have learned evil and lived accordingly in their life, the time for learning and practising good in accordance with creational laws and recommendations as well as practising constructive and fairness-loving things may occur during the course of their current life, whereas for others this moment for living a good life comes too late – namely when the Grim Reaper is already at the door. Although a sense of fairness is anchored in the human brain even before birth, it has to be nourished and cherished in order to bring it to the fore. This nourishing and cherishing is of enormous importance especially when the environment exerts its influence, since it is true that goodness depends on the firm volition of the human being as well as on whether he or she allows himself or herself to be influenced by his or her environment or not. This means the human being himself or herself must have a sense of goodness, nourishing and cherishing it, and not leaving it up to the environment, because the direct or indirect environment interprets the sense of goodness according to its own rules and discretion, understanding and benefit.

Good and evil are always connected to praise or punishment, in which case the question arises in particular with regard to punishment of how much punishment the human being needs if he or she has done something evil, and whether the punishment helps to turn the evil in the human being to the good. Precisely, here it can be said that many punishments imposed on the fallible result in precisely the opposite effect or even in disadvantages, and trigger thoughts of revenge, hatred and retaliation instead of achieving a turning to the good. The reason is that punishments only function and the fallible only turn to a better and good form of behaviour if the punishments are also accepted by the fallible ones, recognised as correct and are also understood as a means to a good end. This fact restricts the utility of the punishment to an enormous extent, simply because rules and punishments only bring a benefit if the fallible ones have accepted them and accept the rules and punishments on themselves in order to act in a fair, Gewalt-less and honest wise. Only in this wise are rules and punishments useful and establish important preconditions for economic growth, innovation, commercial and social success as well as for technical, medical and scientific progress, including progress in wisdom, love, peace, freedom, harmony and consciousness-based evolution.

Semjase Silver Star Centre, 27 July 2008
Billy

What the truth knows to say

Respect or venerability towards the entirety of nature and towards the Creation and its laws and recommendations must determine the human being's thoughts and feelings and his or her deeds. Human beings must live in harmony with the Creation, with nature, with Earth and the universe, as well as with all varieties of present existence that spring forth from these. Rivers, stones, plants, animals, lakes, seas,



brooks, springs, the air and water, trees and bushes and everything that crawls and flies here on Earth are life forms with a spirit-form, with very many of them being connected by psychic swinging waves. All of them are Wesenheiten that communicate with one another, all knowing about their common existence amongst one another. The consciousness and psyche of all created creations are in turn bound on a journey through time incorporating very many bodily existences, through the innumerable forms in which life appears. In this process, death is a passage to rebirth as well as the conversion into the other world, the world of pure spirit. This is the basis for the tightly woven and indissoluble web of all life, and in this wise no life form strives to rise up over the others within their group and to set themselves up over the others, because each life form contains a basic goodness and not evil, after all, evil is learned and practised as a result of inappropriate doings and Ausartung. Fundamentally, the creational laws and recommendations impose cooperation on all life forms, according to which every individual must see itself as a valuable building block of the whole in all existence of the Creation, and this also applies to every political and religious, ideological and philosophical orientation as well as to Earth and the entire universe created in accordance with the creational plan.

Irrespective of what is involved, whether simple or fanatical religions and sects, stubborn nationalism, fascism, might-greedy politics, terrorism or neo-capitalism, etc., all of these directions are aberrations of the negative and evil, and represent an immense threat to all peoples of Earth, in particular in the third millennium. And truly, the danger of a catastrophe befalling humanity has never been so great as today and in the future. Cynical materialism and unbridled neo-capitalism which have now overtaken the entire world are already leading to extremely serious damage to nature and the morality of the human beings of Earth, and this damage continues to grow in relation to the irresponsible increase in overpopulation. Things have already reached the stage when a clash of industrial nations could occur, something which can scarcely be stopped any longer, and will also cast the nations of the 'Third World' into the same darkness. And if this happens, a Third Global Conflagration will be imminent – in whatever form it takes. Indeed, the human beings of Earth are well on their way to this, therefore it is only a question of time and rationality as to when and whether it will actually occur. However, it is once again the case that the signs are pointing to the whole thing being unavoidable. However, this Third World Conflagration may take various forms, such as a collapse of nature that has been desecrated and flouted by the human beings of Earth, as have the atmosphere, the water, the planet as a whole and the animal kingdom; to put it simply, a global catastrophe. And this collapse would result in the collapse of civilisation, leading in the final analysis to the total extermination of the human beings of Earth, or at least, a regression to the harshest forms of primitive living. Falling back into total primitive anarchy is also possible, meaning that all the life forms still existing would only be capable of a vegetative existence full of suffering. Viewing the whole thing from this threatening perspective means no more and no less than that the human beings of Earth will sacrifice all their valuable achievements through a global catastrophe, and all because they had followed a flawed development for millennia in terms of true love, freedom, harmony and real peace amongst all life forms. Indeed, in the present day, it is possible to see an apocalypse of this kind looming threateningly on the horizon and over the destiny of the human beings of Earth, because even long ago, the blossoming culture of the truth was destroyed globally, and evil, Gewalt and every kind of Ausartung set in its place, a thing that has happened in particular due to machinations of politicians, false laws, false penal codes as well as religions and sects. In the Christian world, the blame for this undoubtedly lies fairly and squarely at the door of the Roman Catholic church. Christianity, as a monotheistic and strictly autocratically oriented religion, is guilty of developing completely new, evil and ausgeartet directions of thought and forms of state after the fall of the despotic Roman Empire, which spread all over Earth and under which all human beings are suffering in the new time. It was in particular the Roman Catholic church that inherited the practices of the inhuman Roman Imperium, establishing an evil, consciousness-conditioned tyranny in the place of the former Roman military tyranny, which reached its accumulation in the Inquisition, but has continued uninterrupted since then – even if in a reduced form. Christianity in general – and its numerous sects – imposed a vast narrow-mindedness by dictating monotheism, a philosophy which hatefully excludes anyone who thinks and believes otherwise. Within the whole of Christianity and its sects, as well as in all other religions and their sects, absolute servitude reigns with regard to the obligation on believing the fallacious religious and sectarian teachings, therefore no consciousness-based liberty is tolerated but is instead condemned and dealt with as an outrage and heresy. A liberal thinking predicated on the Creation and nature with no religious divinity anchored in it or to be prayed to is not allowed, which means that the human being who has lapsed into a religious belief cannot either find or follow the way to the effective truth of the creational and therefore to the creationally given laws and recommendations. Fear and terror as well as threats of divine punishment bar the way of devout members of religions and sects to the real truth of the



Creation and therefore also the way to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, making this into a crime against God and the beliefs.

The pernicious effects of Christianity and all other religions have been experienced by the human beings of Earth for millennia, however, in their religious and sectarian narrow-mindedness, they refused to see and accept the terrible truth that religious and sectarian beliefs lead further and further from the effective truth. And with the steady drift away from the effective truth of the creational and therefore also from Creation itself, away from Earth, nature and the universe as well as from true life, love, peace, freedom and harmony, more and more human beings are coming into the world, overpopulation is being stoked up further and causing more and more destruction. Truly, the life of the human beings of Earth once blossomed at a time when everything was still largely in good order, when there were no religions, sects, false ideologies and philosophies, and neither were there any politics or imperial machinations by human beings greedy for might, and no ausgeartet materialism either. Religions, sects, greed for might, materialism and the trappings of imperialism destroyed any identity striving for a balance, as a result of which the human beings of Earth who once lived in friendship and association annihilated each other in endless struggles for might and religious wars as well as through terror, feuds, hatred, jealousy, revenge, retaliation, murder and manslaughter.

One of the important reasons why religions and sects are wrong and false in their teachings concerns the indisputable fact that they all fundamentally misconceive the true nature of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, and therefore also the nature of the life and death. Religions and sects teach their believers errors and confusions of the most evil form, and they throw human beings into terrible, irrational fear, anguish and torture them in the most inhuman wise. However, this is an unpardonable crime quite apart from the fact that practically all religions and sects are responsible for innumerable other terrible crimes of the widest variety of forms. Take, for example, the persecution and barbaric killing of human beings who believe and think otherwise, the forms of torture and tribunals, religious or sectarian raids, wars, encouragement to murder, mass suicides and material exploitation as well as fanatical, religious and sectarian terrorism, etc. Therefore, over the course of time in which religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies have existed, criminal acts of the greatest extent and of the most extreme malice and Ausartung have been committed in their name and based on their beliefs, which have cost the lives of millions of human beings. Truthly, none of the duplicitous religions, sects, philosophies and ideologies are philanthropic in nature, even though their representatives and believers would maintain the opposite, which is a lie. They all talk duplicitously and act accordingly. In truth, they do not know any humane world, because humanity is unbearable for them, so that they do not tolerate human beings who think and believe otherwise living next to them – and if they do, then it is only a pretence. Although all of them externally propose the ideal of the love for the next one, they are actually treading into the ground the real truth of love for the next one as is given in the teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life and by the creational laws. This cynical and highly dangerous character of all religions, sects and certain associated philosophies and ideologies – from which are excluded those ideologies and philosophies, which doubtless exist, that are actually good and humane – has since time immemorial led to intolerance and scruplelessness towards all things of the present existence, as well as to the contempt of the life, human beings, their rights, values and needs with regard to consciousness-based evolution as well as the ability to fulfil the creational laws and recommendations.

The «Goblet of the Truth» which corresponds to the «teaching of the truth», the «teaching of the spirit», the «teaching of the life», makes it clear what the true face of the Creation is with its laws and recommendations, giving rise to true love, peace, freedom and harmony. And the «teaching of the prophets», from which the «Goblet of the Truth» results, provides information about the creational laws and recommendations which appear in various forms and show that false religions, sects, philosophies and ideologies amount to the most evil thing that could ever be concocted, come what may. However, this malignance has been practised since time immemorial and remains so in the present day, determining the might of religions, sects, ideologies, philosophies as well as politics, which – down the ages – have exerted huge constraints on human beings in order to control them. All in all, they have kept human beings in bondage to ensure their blind belief and obedience to the political, social, religious, sectarian, ideological and philosophical pressure that is exerted on them. In the final analysis, however, this represents the downfall of humanity, together with the cultivation of overpopulation, because truly the human beings of Earth in their teeming masses are only now individually capable of using and living their truthly and Creation-conditioned knowledge of the «teaching of the truth», «teaching of the spirit», «teaching of the life» and



therefore also of the creational laws and recommendations in absolute, consciousness-based freedom. Therefore, in order to avoid the downfall of humanity in the new millennium, in the third millennium, it is necessary to find the way back to creational truth and the creational laws and recommendations, to follow them and therefore to make everything new with regard to the learning and knowledge of the effective plan of the Creation. However, this can only happen if the human beings of Earth once again find and follow the roots of creational truth, and therefore the creational laws and recommendations. The new time, the new Age of Aquarius, offers the opportunity of making a new start through the 'Goblet of the Truth', through the 'teaching of the truth', the 'teaching of the spirit', the 'teaching of the life', although this teaching, which has been kept in readiness since time immemorial by the true prophets, will by no means be exhausted, because beyond the known teaching it continues endlessly and will never run out for human beings.

For the human beings of Earth, everything has developed into a pure might-oriented thinking, intolerance and contempt for women as well as enmity to nature, denial of the truth of the creational laws and recommendations as well as to rampant overpopulation which is leading to the destruction of Earth's climate and nature. Furthermore, the might-oriented thinking practised by those in government and by the evil Gewalt of religious belief of any kind has also resulted in a practically unoverlookable suppression of consciousness-based freedom. This manifests itself overall in an abysmal contempt for the natural as well as creational laws and recommendations as well as of the life and all existence. This means the human beings of Earth – when we take a look at the current situation – have driven themselves to the edge of a global catastrophe and are now well on the way to manoeuvring themselves definitively into it if overpopulation is not finally stopped and population is reduced to a reasonable level by birth control.

The effective truth stands for the life-giving energy and for life itself, as is predefined in the womb of creational laws and recommendations. Life-affirming creational energy links human beings directly to the laws and recommendations of the comprehensive Creation, and its power fills the entire Earth and universe. This is the same energy that wants to achieve harmonious concord with all life, with human beings, the planet and the universe. In this form, the life-affirming creational energy is an extraordinarily important criterion for the nature of effective creational truth and life itself. However, the untruth, the lie, is powerless and an enemy of the creational, and has nothing to do with the womb of the truth, consequently the lie and untruth only lead a fictional life. However, those human beings who are dependent on this false life have removed themselves from the truth and from the care of creational laws and recommendations, as well as from the mother Earth and the goodness of the universe. They are far from the truth, Earth and the creational, and are therefore beings of anti-truth; therefore they are also opponents of the creational warmth and care, because they can only assert themselves through evil, Gewalt, lying and deception as well as by exercising might and through everything that is ausgeartet.

All the catastrophes of all kinds triggered by the human beings of Earth and, in the final analysis, also by the vast and irresponsibly cultivated overpopulation, are casting the world and the entire population of Earth into the abyss, from which it will be very difficult for them to work themselves out. Also, all the global catastrophes triggered and induced by earthly humanity have only happened because of violations of the principle of the truth and therefore also of the creational laws and recommendations, instead of following the truly wise way of the effective truth and the teaching of the true prophets, which has been delivered as the spiritual teaching, i.e. as the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life from ancient times. And therefore this truth is also given in the book the entitled 'Goblet of the Truth', a first part of which, namely the teaching of Henoah, was also called the 'Cauldron of the Life' by the druid prince Myrddin alias Merlin, and has nothing to do with the apparent 'grail' of Christianity which is only based on lies and deception, never existed and therefore was not used by Joseph of Arimathea to collect the blood of Jmmanuel (Jesus) at his crucifixion. The true grail only existed as a holy place, and the composition was included in the 'Cauldron of the Life', a writing of the teaching of the true prophet Henoah from the series of seven of Nokodemion. The document was delivered to the druid Myrddin (The Laughing One), later known more generally as 'Merlin', as a transcription of the Plejara Keridwena (The Triple Goddess). Myrddin poured the transcription into the goblet, which was known as the 'Cauldron of the Life', and misused as the basis for fabricating the 'grail' through Christian falsifications, which by no means can be brought into connection with this 'Cauldron of the Life' because the 'grail' was a place with a spring, surrounded by trees and plants, where the druids used to conduct their meditations. This Christian grail falsification has been delivered down to the current time since its origination, however once again in a further vast falsification which maintains that it was the goblet, i.e. 'grail' of Jmmanuel (Jesus)



which Jmmanuel and his disciples drank from during the Last Supper and in which the blood of Jmmanuel was collected by Joseph of Arimathea at the crucifixion. This enormous lie and falsification of the truth also applies to the so-called 'holy lance' with which it has been said that Jmmanuel (Jesus) was stabbed in the side by a Roman soldier in order to find out if he was dead. Since then, this lance has been regarded as holy and carrying enormous might within it, capable of turning those greedy for might into rulers, therefore it has been highly honoured. In truth, however, this lance never touched Jmmanuel's side, because this is a Christian falsification manufactured only in the eighth century of the Common Era, therefore it was only made into a religious cult object because of the falsifications of Christian machinations, as is also the case with what is called the 'Turin Shroud', which is supposed to show a figure of Jmmanuel (Jesus) but is actually the death mask of an Italian merchant called Caesar Canova and was manufactured by his brother Luciano Canova, who was involved in alchemy. Myrddin or Merlin attempted to pass on the teaching of Henoah through his influence on king Arthur, i.e. Artus, who was in his charge and his pupil, and amongst the heathen knights of the 'Round Table', but this resulted in a miserable failure because the fierce clan leader Artus and his heathen knights could not come to terms with the teaching. Therefore, Artus seized the sealed 'Cauldron of the Life' and cast it into the sea with his own hands.

Christianity has falsified the actual picture of the grail, i.e. the picture of the holy Celtic meditation site of the druids out of recognition. And the banal reason for doing this was the cowardly fear felt by Christian priests and believers in the face of the teachings of Celtic philosophy of belief. Over two millennia, the whole thing has plunged millions upon millions of believers into a boundless loss of orientation in terms of knowledge and truth, resulting not only in many wars, Ausartungen and evil of all kinds, but also destroying millions of human lives, in many cases due to the delusion, the lies and the falsifications of Christianity and all other religions and sects. All this taken together also resulted in a huge and deeply rooted life-angst that has been increased by the terrible obsessions related to the fear of death that have been brought about by Christianity and the other religions. The most insane of all religions is Christianity which goes so far as to claim that what it describes as the son of God, Jesus, will at some time be bodily reborn. In early Christianity, it was even claimed that this would take place very soon after Jesus' death, which would apparently also have an impact on the dead who had believed in him. For this reason, in Antiquity, thousands upon thousands of rotting corpses were actually hoarded in the living areas of houses, which as could be expected, led to catastrophic plagues, as is known from ancient Rome in particular. Later, Christian theologians proclaimed the second coming of Christ and the resurrection of the dead on Doomsday at the 'end of time', and thereby shifted the fulfilment of the entire deception and absurdity to some imaginary day which will never come. However, this in turn had the effect that instead of hoarding corpses, other insane and abnormal aberrations came about such as the imbecilic and widespread cult of relics which swamps the whole of Christianity down to this day – as it does other religions and sects. This involves not only overwhelming the believers with apparently genuine, but in fact false, utensils of human beings who have been elevated to the status of founders of the religion, but also with purported body parts of obscure saints and martyrs. This terrible state of affairs is also exacerbated by channelers, who, claiming to be chosen ones, talk to Christ, God, Mary the mother of Jesus, Joseph the father of Jesus, Pater Pio or any other dead saints and the like, claiming to be in contact with them and receiving messages. The entire imbecilic procedure is promoted further by the so-called 'hallowed ones', i.e. 'chastened ones' who appeared and filled the heads of the believers full to the brim with nonsense by calling forth stigmata, i.e. the five wounds of Christ on their bodies as a result of their broken psyche or straightforward self-mutilation. This is however also the case with regard to apparent castings-out of devils and demons, i.e. evocations of the devil, i.e. exorcism by Catholic priests and other believers in devils and demons, as a result of which human beings with very serious psychical injuries and psychical-physical states of agitation were often maltreated, even unto death.

Christianity also intervened in life after death, as a result of which believers have lapsed into horrendous obsessions ever since the existence of the Catholic church. This involves a strict denial of the rebirth of the spirit-form, and representing the other world as a kind of limbo named purgatory and as the actual hell. In opposition to this, heaven was invented with, apparently, a god in residence to welcome all those into his kingdom who piously danced according to his tune. And with regard to this psychotic fantasy, the Christian religion – as well as sects and certain other religions – maintain that heaven is something like the ultimate destination of human life. However, anyone who fundamentally sins against the Christian belief and everything connected with it would be doomed to an eternity in hell, to undergo endless and terrible agonies of torture there. On the other hand, all human beings who die – except for the saints – are not able to enter heaven directly, because each must first be purified in purgatory, a process taking millions of years, in



order to be refined through agonies less intense than those of hell in order to become worthy for heaven and to obtain heavenly purity. If one takes a look at this entire Christian religious nonsense, it is apparent that the entire thing reveals itself to be nothing more than an extraordinarily underdeveloped consciousness-attitude, something which only a sick human brain could have developed. Any human being who looks at the relevant religious writings of Christianity and of the other religions and sects having an equivalent or similar stance will undoubtedly recognise, providing he or she bears clear rationality and intellect and is capable of understanding that the authors and proponents of all this senselessness are and were out-and-out psychopaths who transferred their own irrational fears and delusions into their pathologically dumb and primitive, wrong, idiotic and false teachings that are not logically followable. Seen in their entirety in this wise, the religious and sectarian teachings of the life and of the last things of all existence are not only one great erroneous assumption, but also an all-embracing, evil lie that is leading humanity into confusion, has resulted in innumerable human beings straying into confusion and far from truth, vegetating in their unknowledge of untruth. This is because the false teachings of religions and sects, of philosophies and ideologies have given them a completely incorrect and fearful attitude to life and the effective truth, as well as to the real creational laws and recommendations. And thus all religions and sects, all philosophies and ideologies as well as all human beings who depend on them have simply failed to understand the truthly sense of the truth.

All you human beings of sound rationality and good intentions are called upon to face the fundamental conflict between good and evil as well as the *ausgeartet*, and to place yourselves on the side of the positive, progress and therefore of the good and the life. And all you human beings of Earth who have the courage to fight against evil, negativity and the *ausgeartet* must provide help through your sharp rationality and your intellect, through love, peace, freedom and harmony, and only use these as weapons. Solely through these weapons will you prevail against all the rife contempt for humankind and destructive madness that is hostile towards life, as is held by all those human beings of Earth who have lapsed into evil, *Gewalt*, materialism, capitalism as well as *ausgeartet* and inhumane things. Resist all *Ausartungen* that are threatening life and all existence, and resist everything evil today, in the present and in every future, because only by doing so will you be able to bring about a healthy developmental change in all regards. Never bow down to evil, but undertake everything in kindheartedness, righteousness, fairness and everything permitted in accordance with the creational laws and recommendations and their truth, so that you will be capable of finally defeating the negative and evil principle. Do it always in respect and honour for the life, even if you suffer terrible setbacks. Hold firm to your knowledge about the effective truth of the validity of the creational laws and recommendations, which teach love, peace, freedom and harmony, so that you shall live with them. Fight for this truth just like all the true prophets of all times and like all those human beings who have done this over millennia for the truth and for life, and who also do it today and will do it tomorrow and in every future, even if the successes were or are only slight – but constant dripping wears the stone, as has been the motto for this since time immemorial.

Over the course of time, humanity and democratic societies have been achieved and implemented through the peaceful struggle of human beings in accordance with rationality and truth, just as many human rights and other values have been. These are palpable and recognisable results by human beings who have fought for them for millennia and continue to do so. And if earthly humanity is currently standing as if in mockery close to the abyss of the destruction of all things, then it is precisely in this current epoch that the opportunity for radical change and victory in the struggle presents itself, although this will require the human beings of Earth finally to decide for the good, the positive, for the things that make life worth living and for life itself. The truth is that the third millennium presents a new opportunity in the firmament of fate that will cast out the darkness of past millennia of war and can bathe the future in a brilliant light. To achieve this, it is only necessary to seize the opportunity to heed the teaching of the prophets, to live according to the *«Goblet of the Truth»* which even the Celtic druids called the *«goblet of the life»* and *«cauldron of the life»*.

You, human beings of Earth, find the way to a positive and life-affirming consciousness in which you will finally truly live your life and start to form your future in love, peace, wisdom, freedom and harmony, because in spite of the threatening disaster, you have the possibility and opportunity to do so. The universe itself, in an interaction with your Earth, gives you the impulse for reorientation, and through this you can find a loving balance in the human sphere that will also lead you to equality and equal rights in the mutual complementation of man and woman. And, if you use the opportunity that has been given to you in all things, then you will once more achieve the entire prosperity of the life in the new Age of Aquarius and in



the third millennium, after having missed it for very long. For millennia, you have been striving for a development of harmony, love, peace, freedom and dwelling together in concord, and all of these things are ideally suited to bringing regulation to all things on Earth. And if you follow this compulsion laid down by the laws of the Creation, then you will step out of the darkness of Ausartung and into an unparalleled brighter era. However, bear in mind that this will only happen if you are ready to accept the great gift offered to you by your Earth, the entire universe and the creational laws and recommendations. You yourselves bear witness to your bright future; but all of you, you human beings of Earth, you must do your part in this and use your own means of love, peace, harmony and freedom to fight for everything in order to break out of the darkness. However, you will only be able to do this if the recognition awakes in you of everything that the creational laws and recommendations have to offer you and if you learn and follow these, as you have been taught by the «Goblet of the Truth» and the «teaching of the truth», the «teaching of the spirit», the «teaching of the life», as has been given since time immemorial by the true prophets.

If you human beings of Earth search for the creational laws and recommendations, that form creational harmony and goodness, with intellect and rationality and with your intuition, you will find them everywhere, you will recognise and understand them at every turn, whether in the bubbling of a spring, in the face of a human being, in a flower, in the sounds of the forest or the sea, in the glinting of the sun, the twinkling of the stars, in the eyes of an animal or in any other things that exist everywhere. And if you human beings of Earth make yourselves once again capable of linking this new and yet primeval truth in all forms with all real forms of the life, then you will be able to tread a holistic way in the consciousness of the truth. Look to the future with this in mind and with great courage, and in spite of the terrible setbacks in the past, the present and the future to come. If you follow the instruction for your change to the good and the positive, then you can seize the opportunity for a new start and connect it to the requirements of the life, and in this wise you will solve many of humanity's current problems once and for all, and indeed in a peaceful, harmonious and constructive wise. Heal yourselves and your world, then you will find your deliverance in the form of the rebirth of your sound and reasonable consciousness. Heal yourselves, you human beings of Earth, you women and men, because then the message of love, freedom and harmony as well as of peace and living together in harmony will no longer remain a great and auspicious dream for you, but will become truth and reality. Then, namely, it will come about for you that you will bring forth new and good deeds, thoughts and feelings as well as endlessly rich life experiences, turning your life into true happiness. Consider that the weaker all the evil, negative and ausgeartet things become in you, the more profound will be the correction and resolution of the fatal incorrect developments in your thoughts and feelings as well as in your actions and behaviour, and they will cease to determine your lives and your evil destinies. Admittedly, it is still the case that very many of you human beings of Earth who wish to follow the truth of creational laws and recommendations will still have to overcome very many and very significant obstacles. However, remember that all true prophets had to face and overcome challenges of this kind, and as they were able to do so then it is also possible for you – providing you have the volition to do so.

Semjase-Silver-Star-Center, 10 August 2008, 1:17 a.m.

Billy

What must be made known comprehensively in a prophetic and predictive wise for the third millennium ...

If you human beings of Earth do not turn to the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations in what is now the third millennium, if you do not change to the better and good and do not follow the true rules of the life as they exist in the creational laws and recommendations, then all evil events of all kinds will broaden in ever worsening succession. The creational-natural laws and recommendations are written in the «Goblet of the Truth» and in the «spiritual teaching», which is the «teaching of the truth», the «teaching of the spirit», the «teaching of the life», which it is of vital importance to follow. However, if you human beings continue to fail to follow the creational laws and recommendations, evil and catastrophes of all kinds which have existed all over Earth for a long time will increase in future into much more evil excrescences. And if you do not change to the better, good and best, all evil over the world will take a much worse form than it has done for decades and also does at present; and the coming events will be such as the world has never experienced up to the current time, nor lived, nor seen. A change to the better, good and best can only occur, however, if you human beings of Earth think and act rightly and rationally from now on and into the future, and this principally applies to your rulers and other



mightful human beings who have to lead you as a people to the best and good. This thinking and acting which is full of rationality is also demanded from every individual in your entire humanity as well as from you as such in your entirety. And success can only come about if your thoughts are rightly cared for and deeds are determined and performed rightly, indeed in accordance with the urgency of the necessity for change. However, if this change is not tackled and carried through, then it is unavoidable and inevitable that the prophecies will come true, as is the case with the predictions that are firm with regard to their fulfilment and which will certainly turn into an evil reality.

Overall in all things of your present existence as human beings of Earth, a change to the better, good and best is unavoidable if everything is still to develop ultimately into something of good worth after all. However, if this change is not started and carried through, then do not be surprised if nothing turns to the better, good and best, but the negative, bad and evil things are fulfilled, as has been prophetically stated although without being specifically called prophecies so that it is not possible for you to differentiate between prophecy and prediction for the important reason that not only individual factors are seized for change, but entirely everything of all circumstances. And this must be the case, because given a true effort, it is only possible to bring about the better, good and the best through an all-encompassing change, providing everything is taken into account extensively. Therefore, the following prophetic and predictive words are to be stated finally by me, «Billy»-«BEAM», as the last proclaimer in the line of seven of Nokodemion.

With the third millennium, you human beings of Earth have passed from the darkness of the last two millennia into the gloom of what is for you an impenetrable labyrinth of wrong modes of behaviour, and already in the twentieth century you have brought about all kinds of evil and are continuing to create and cultivate the same, which has brought unoverlookable terribleness over you, nature and the planet and will continue to do so. Your greed for profit, you human beings of Earth, is continuing to abound more and more, and those of your world who have might are casting your populations of all states into ever deeper misery, making imperious and megalomaniacal decisions over your heads and taking all the might of determination away from you as a people. Everything is a matter of might and money, and from now on everything will become worse in this regard, as will catastrophes of all kinds in nature, in the climate and amongst you human beings, caused by the breakneck speed of population growth which has become uncontrollable overpopulation. Everything is constantly and increasingly directed towards hierarchy, money, income, profit and gain as well as productivity due to the efforts of those who are greedy for profit and might, an attitude which is however spreading more and more amongst individual human beings and your entire peoples. Therefore, you are becoming ever more indifferent to one another, more mistrustful of one another and increasingly emotionless, disinterested, indolent and obtuse in interpersonal relationships, which is causing simple human connections to be destroyed and entire families to be ruined. Under such unbearable circumstances, many amongst you will feel blazing anger rise up in you and will therefore torment other fellow human beings or even extract bloody revenge on them. However, trust amongst you human beings will vanish to an increasing extent, leading to ever worsening forms of jealousy and hatred arising in many of you, whether because of a difference of opinion or a different belief, because of money, goods and chattels or simply because the face, body, clothing or behaviour of the other human being provokes you. Therefore, there will be increasing Gewalt amongst you, and not only because some human beings simply find it good and satisfying when they torment, beat, spit on, tread down or humiliate others, even accepting the death of those being tormented. And in the future, Gewalt, murder and deliberate as well as malicious and war-like destruction will prevail amongst you, something which will in its entirety also be carried into space near Earth, and in fact not only in particular when worlds close to Earth are settled by human beings of Earth.

You human beings of Earth increasingly want to seize the might of the Creation for yourselves, and the longer this continues, the more you know no limits and imagine yourselves to be the highest might of the life, of Earth and of the universe. However, vengeance will be extracted when all your doings turn sooner or later to your own harm, and as a result of which you fall into a deep abyss. The tall buildings that tower into the clouds as skyscrapers will collapse, the fields will lie in waste and therefore it will no longer be possible to bring in any harvests. And the longer this continues, the more you as individual human beings will make your own laws, in accordance with which you terrorise the environment and your fellow human beings, as is already the case in many places due to extremists, terrorists, youths, human beings who are full of hatred and human beings who are addicted to revenge and human beings who are confused as well as



imperious ones who take it upon themselves to inflict punishments. Many of you will fall back into barbarity, and hunger will increasingly ravage the world because many natural foodstuffs are misused for purposes other than for food due to the greed for profit and might, take for example the biofuels used for powering machinery and engines. Lubricants will also be manufactured for these using foodstuffs, and these are only two of many examples with regard to the misuse of foodstuffs.

Climate change – caused by the overpopulation of your earthly humanity – will entail huge natural catastrophes which will become ever worse and also impinge on your own lives. As a result, in future ever more severe droughts and periods of cold weather as well as vast storms of all kinds, rain storms and fire storms brought forth by forest fires will scourge the entire Earth and bring about destructions full of Gewalt, as will also be the case due to an increase in earthquakes and undersea quakes, landslides, storm surges, tsunamis and volcanic eruptions, floods and high tides. Therefore, in the course of the coming time, hundreds of thousands and even millions of you human beings will lose your lives, whilst others will not be able to withstand all the misery and will seek death at their own hands, others still will increasingly turn to drugs which have been partially legalised through the irrationality of those in power because they are too stupid to recognise the danger of drug addiction and its consequences, or because they themselves are profiting from the drug trade. Only very few human beings are troubled by the fact that this destroys the body, the psyche and even the life of the addicts, or by the fact that this means more and more murders and suicides take place as do rapes, criminal and unlawful deeds, and many of you human beings act like wild beasts, and this situation has existed for decades. Therefore, criminality, crime and capital offences are increasing, as Gewalt is burgeoning unstopably, indeed this is in relation to the increase in overpopulation. Gewalt-acts committed by young human beings are on the rise just as is their carrying and use of weapons of all kinds which they employ consciencelessly, resulting in the injury and even death of innocent human beings, as is also the case with extremist groups that carry out Gewalt-acts. Very many of you place less and less value on the physical and psychical integrity of people of your kind, as a result of which you harm your fellow human beings, injure them physically and psychically and you do not even shrink from killing and murdering them. By these means, the life of many of you will become truly catastrophic and hellish, and this will only come to an end when you are carried off by death. However, this will not be sufficient in the future, because the pathological craving for pleasure and amusement as well as for holiday travel is increasing just as unstopably and always entails an ever greater disaster, just as you men and women soon get divorced from one another and live apart, or if you come together frivolously and get married or live together in apparent friendship and companionship. And it will increasingly be the case that you as men and women embark on sexual relations with one another without getting to know one another more closely and, in wild passion, bring unwanted children into the world, who grow up without fathers and indeed never get to know their father. And, furthermore, in this wise you will spread plagues such as AIDS, syphilis, tuberculosis and other scourges, so that in this regard evil will spread from bed to bed and from human being to human being. Therefore in future, the sexuality that you human beings of Earth wrongly believe to be true love will end up as an evil scourge. Good morality is increasingly becoming lost amongst you, as is righteousness, respect for life, love, decency and fairness. True friendship, companionship, bonds and love are already hard to find, and are becoming more so, whilst freedom has long since become a charade and will remain so for a long time, as will peace. This is because actions are only predicated on what is currently popular – without any responsibility and entirely without conscience. Therefore, more and more parents are sexually abusing their own children, and abuse is taking place between siblings, as well as an increase in rapes between woman and man, woman and woman, man and man, whilst many «ecclesiastics» and educators, etc. are also sexually abusing those under their protection and more and more paedophiles are committing sexual crimes against children, as has already occurred in many cases. Just as immoral and unseemly sexual behaviour and sexual Ausartung have been propagated for years now in cinema and on television, this will continue in a much broader form in the future as well.

Whoever speaks and teaches the truth with regard to Creation and its laws and recommendations is not wanted to be listened to by you human beings of Earth for a long time coming, because your belief in all the false religions, sects, ideologies and various false philosophies as well as in politics keeps you imprisoned as if by steel claws. As a result, you will continue to allow these and the falsehoods of the false prophets to be spread by religious and sectarian «ecclesiastics», around whom you cluster in blind belief, in obedience and listening to their lies saying that you should carry weapons in order to fight against those who are teaching the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations. And the false prophets and those of you who believe in them will speak about fairness, something which you however truthly do not know, therefore you



will commit murder in your delusion and fanaticism, as has already occurred in the case of religious and fanatical terrorists. Finally, there will no longer be any order amongst you human beings of Earth because vice and pathological cravings, greed for might, jealousy, hatred, revenge and retaliation are spreading everywhere, many amongst you are yielding to the urge to kill your fellow human beings, meaning that unbounded murder and destruction will take place more and more all over the world. Therefore, it will be as it has never before been, that you human beings will judge according to your blood and belief, that you as parents will cast out your own children and you as adults and young human beings will cast out the aged. And you will increasingly close your eyes to crimes that occur in your sight, to rapes of helpless and defenceless women, to sexual abuse of children as well as to evil and often fatal Gewalt-acts against your fellow human beings who are old, handicapped, weak and vulnerable. Increasingly, all kinds of human achievements will be deliberately and maliciously destroyed, plundered and robbed, deceitfulness will be practised and more and more lies and calumnies will prevail as well to your own advantage. The pathological craving for profit amongst those of you who control the use of foodstuffs, their planting and processing will lead to more and more hungry human beings joining the population of Earth, and it will be terrible to see the bones of the starving projecting through their skin, and how their wounds will fester, suppurate and be attacked by vermin. And it will become ever more terrible how many of you human beings will be driven, harried and killed like harmful game, whilst many others will flee and lose their lives in many ways during their flight. And yet, as is already the case today, the majority of you human beings of Earth will not pay any heed, because you turn your face away from the suffering of the refugees and do not do anything to enable them to live in their homeland, work and lead a life of dignity. Increasingly, you will only look after yourselves, and you will only be able to assuage your guilty conscience by giving small donations to the poor and suffering although your real motivation will be for everyone to think that you are a good human being and you receive the small donations back many times over.

Truly, the price of a human life is becoming ever cheaper, and more and more trafficking of human beings as slaves is going on, whether as slave workers, for prostitution, in the mercenaries or for organ trading, for the purpose of which healthy human beings amongst you are abducted, kidnapped, sold and slaughtered like livestock, to be robbed of your viscera, organs and body parts. And all of the human beings amongst you who are greedy for profit, you who conduct this sort of trafficking or are yourselves murderers, slaughterers and butchers of carcasses, you will fight even over the blood of your murdered victims, just as you would over their skin and bones – and this has already become so commonplace at this time when the third millennium is opening, and therefore things will get very much worse in this wise in the time to come. And human trafficking will not only be performed increasingly with adults, specifically with young women for the purposes of prostitution, but also with men for the purposes of slave work as well as with children who are put to work and sexually abused by paedophiles. And everything is becoming more and more commonplace in this form, just as the inviolability of your human dignity is being increasingly disregarded and forgotten. Therefore, it will be that you human beings of Earth will become increasingly brutalized, conscienceless and will lapse further and further into cruelty. Lying and deception will rule the world to an increasing extent, namely through the beggars amongst you just as much as through those of you who live as good citizens in normal and good prosperity, and this will be the case right up to you rich and ruling ones. Therefore, as never before in the history of earthly humanity, lying and deception as well as deceit, falseness and calumny as well as servitude through government will be held as the truth, and an ever greater terribleness will be built upon it. And it will be increasingly the case that you human beings will be treated like animals for the slaughter, implanted with electronic data chips by means of which you will be completely controlled and robbed of freedom by authorities, public offices and governments, although in your ignorance you will think that you live as free human beings although you are in fact servants of the governments. So public authorities, official bodies and those in government will rule over you in a wise that has never happened before, meaning that you will no longer chart the course of your own fate in the collective, because this will be done by those who exercise total might and control over you. In this wise, every one of you will be a servant and slave of authorities, public bodies and governments, i.e. of those mightful ones and their vassals who possess might in this respect. Still, in the early part of the third millennium, there might be time for you human beings of Earth to prevent this if you would unify as humanity and rise up against these threatening future machinations of governments and the scientists and technicians who obey them, in order to prevent the threat named in this regard from occurring.

Overpopulation on Earth, it must be said again and again, will continue to rise due to the irrationality and the irresponsibility of your humanity of Earth. However, this also happens due to the machinations of governments, their authorities and public bodies which promote offspring and act with equal levels of



irresponsibility, as well as the sectarian senselessnesses of the Catholic church, which can indeed be called criminal and unlawful, or else those of the pope, clerics and priests who are misteaching the «Go forth and multiply» as a deceitful law of God. As a result, there will be ever more human beings who will have less and less space in which to live, and this space will become so small that you will end up by trampling one another to death. And you will move about more and more, spilling over the boundaries of your home country and leaving it, thereby dying, although very many of you will also travel the world aimlessly with the consequence that you will intermix and form liaisons more and more, leading to increasing numbers of families being torn apart and more and more mixed-race peoples arising, whilst pure peoples disappear to an increasing extent. As a result, however, you will become more and more foreign to one another, with the consequence that more and more hatred and enmities will arise, which will in turn lead to ever more conflicts between individuals and ultimately to death, manslaughter, criminality and wars with gigantic destructions. Therefore, many of you will lapse into depravity, meaning that you will lose your own guidance, spread in all directions and go from one unfortune to the next. And as a result of the religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies that have lapsed into falseness and lying as well as deception and untruth, you human beings of Earth are initially going even further astray and following the creational laws and recommendations even less, in order to live far from them and not to adhere to them. And indeed it will take a long time because this is the way that human beings act and you only want to guide your life according to your own laws, completely beyond the laws and recommendations as they have been given through the Creation that anchored everything in ancient times in the nature and the entire existence of the universe. In the way that you disregard and scorn the creational laws and recommendations, it will also be that you tread the natural guidance of nature into the ground to such an extent that women only continue to give birth to offspring whose sex has been determined in advance through selective measures taken at conception, which will increasingly no longer be performed in a natural way, but artificially. It will also be the case and become the norm that in the case of natural conceptions, the embryo in the womb will be consciencelessly killed for no vital reason if its sex does not correspond to the wish of the mother or the father.

In future time, it will be the case that very many of you human beings of Earth will think yourselves as Creation itself (in your religious, sectarian sense as God). The powerful ones of all kinds amongst you will seize ever more land and property and other belongings for themselves, including women, whom they will keep as prostitutes or as objects of prestige. Whereas the powerful ones amongst you will increasingly view the poor and weak as subhuman and as vermin, and will treat them accordingly, so that you who belong to this class will increasingly live in fear and the hatred in you will assume its most poisonous forms.

However, all the items named here only represent the start, because in secret there is a mighty organisation of the governing class and mighty ones as well as many of their obedient lackeys emerging from amongst your humanity, who are creating a secret order of darkness with their own evil laws and ordinances, who are bent on hatred for the poor and weak and against the economically imprisoned and all normal citizens. And it is their desire to seize ever more might, more money and entire mastery over the whole earth and your humanity for themselves, therefore it is spreading their evil supremacy over the world, supported by its obedient vassals of all kinds who are greedy for blood as well as profit. Even the powerful ones of the economy are feeling the might and obeying the evil laws of the dark order which is spreading its dangerous and fatal poison of hatred everywhere, into everything and against everyone who does not share the same opinion as the dark might. Therefore, you human beings of Earth are no longer active to any great extent, but go along in idleness with an empty expression in your eyes, knowing not what you should do and where you should go, because you have nothing else to do that brings you joy and a good reward. And you human beings of Earth, both young and old, are the ones who can no longer set down any roots in your life, you wander, demoralized and hopeless, bereft of work and home, with the result that you fight yourselves in all things and you hate your present existence, to the extent of finally bringing it to an end yourselves as has already been the case to an increasing extent since the twentieth century and will become ever more widespread in future. Therefore, with the third millennium, this time has already dawned in which these things have quickly found their beginning and will develop ever more rapidly the longer they persist. As a result, the number of diseases and plagues is increasing, as is the number of illnesses that severely impair drinking water and bodies of water because of poisons of various kinds, as well as the air, soil and foodstuffs which grow on trees and bushes as well as in fields, woods, gardens and greenhouses. And still your efforts to counteract all the disasters are in vain, as are your attempts to put a brake on this development, because it is becoming greater and greater and more catastrophic with every day, indeed with every hour and every minute, standing in relation to the rapid increase in overpopulation. Therefore,



you human beings of Earth want to resurrect all that has been destroyed so far because of your guilt and irrationality as well as irresponsibility, just as you want to keep what has remained whole, whereby however all your efforts in this direction are in vain because you do not come to the right conclusion in rationality. And the right decision is solely and alone this, that the overpopulation be stopped through a worldwide regulation of births and in this wise your earthly humanity be reduced to an extent that is appropriate for the planet and for nature, in which case this extent has been defined in accordance with nature and the planet for the whole Earth at 529 million human beings.

Through your irrationality, you human beings of Earth, the rainforests are dying ever faster, resulting in extensive deserts being created at an ever increasing speed, whilst the glaciers and poles are melting resulting in increasing sea levels swallowing up valuable land, meaning that millions of you will be driven from your homes and your land which you used to be able to cultivate. Besides this, ever more powerful thunderstorms will rage, starting many fires and killing many of you as well your livestock, whilst ever more severe flash floods of water will fall from the clouds like veritable deluges destroying and flooding everything, and exacting many deaths. This will occur at the same as droughts parch the land in other places, destroying woods, villages, towns and your homes with vast fires. Through all this and due to the exhaust emissions from chimneys, factories and engines of all kinds which emit particulates and CO₂, the air will be increasingly charged with smoke and poisonous emissions as well as with radioactivity, biotoxins and chemicals, resulting in many of you human beings becoming ill and dying. And furthermore, mighty earthquakes and undersea earthquakes will shake Earth, in ever-increasing magnitude, destroying entire cities and razing them to the ground, just like many other things will be destroyed that have been built through irrationality and will continue to be built although the prophetic and predictive warning has been spoken against them. So landslides and mudslides, etc. will bury homes and villages whilst in other places tectonic movements, underground mining, cavities and watercourses will rend Earth's surface asunder, causing homes and other buildings to sink into the ground. You human beings of Earth, however, choose not to learn from this because you are obstinate and do not want to hear the prophetic and predictive warnings. And in this stubbornness many impoverished and poor human beings as well as shady characters amongst you will become increasingly depraved, therefore the plundering will assume ever worsening forms, in particular wherever others of you human beings are in need, fleeing their homes and having to leave their property behind.

Just like the sun is shining dangerously already at the beginning of the third millennium because the ozone layer around Earth has been seriously damaged and permeated, the sun will in future burn Earth even more and bring great harm to the entire world and all life forms, including to you human beings who will increasingly suffer from skin cancer and severe eye complaints, etc. However, it is not only the sun that will bring great harm to your earthly humanity and the planet, but undersea volcanoes will cause great destruction and boil the waters of the seas leading to the death of very many more of the water-dwelling life forms that have not already been exterminated by you human beings. During these submarine and also underground movements, energies will be unleashed that will cause certain continents or part of them to disappear under water. However, all of this contributes to the situation that you are like humiliated dogs in your deceptive belief in religions and sects, shivering in the error of your deluded beliefs that God is punishing the world for your misdeeds, although you do not recognize that everything bad and all the catastrophes have been and will be caused exclusively and solely through your own guilt, in which case the ever more rampant overpopulation represents the principal reason for all evil Ausartungen. The sects that have arisen from all religions, ideologies and philosophies will in future become ever more greedy, sneaky, scrupulous and aggressive, at the same time misusing modern science and the Internet for their criminal and irresponsible purposes. In this wise, they are using everything that is criminal and unlawful, and even suicidal and murderous as well as terrorist machinations belong to the deceitful message of salvation by means of which new disciples and believers are led astray and made obedient. The religions, sects, ideologies and false philosophies spread like poisonous and dangerous viruses which adapt to their changing environment – and they tie their nets ever more perfidious wise with regard to super-modern electronic soul-catching, using ever more modern means, continuously attracting more and more academics and other educated human beings amongst you and placing them under their spell. And a further disaster, that more and more academics and other highly educated human beings are being recruited as sect members is due to the fact that you attempt to satisfy your delusion through them, which consists in the cloning of animals and human beings in accordance with your notions and wishes because you want to have once again what you have lost and are losing through death. And you are doing this whilst at the same time in free nature, in the air, the soil, on the ground and in the waters, you are exterminating species



after species and breed after breed of life in an irresponsible wise, irrespective of the flimsy reasons for doing this. In this wise, you are raising yourselves up to the most evil of all evils while deluding yourselves that you are good and Creation itself, which you completely misconceive due to your religious and sectarian delusions, and wrongly believe it to be a divinity.

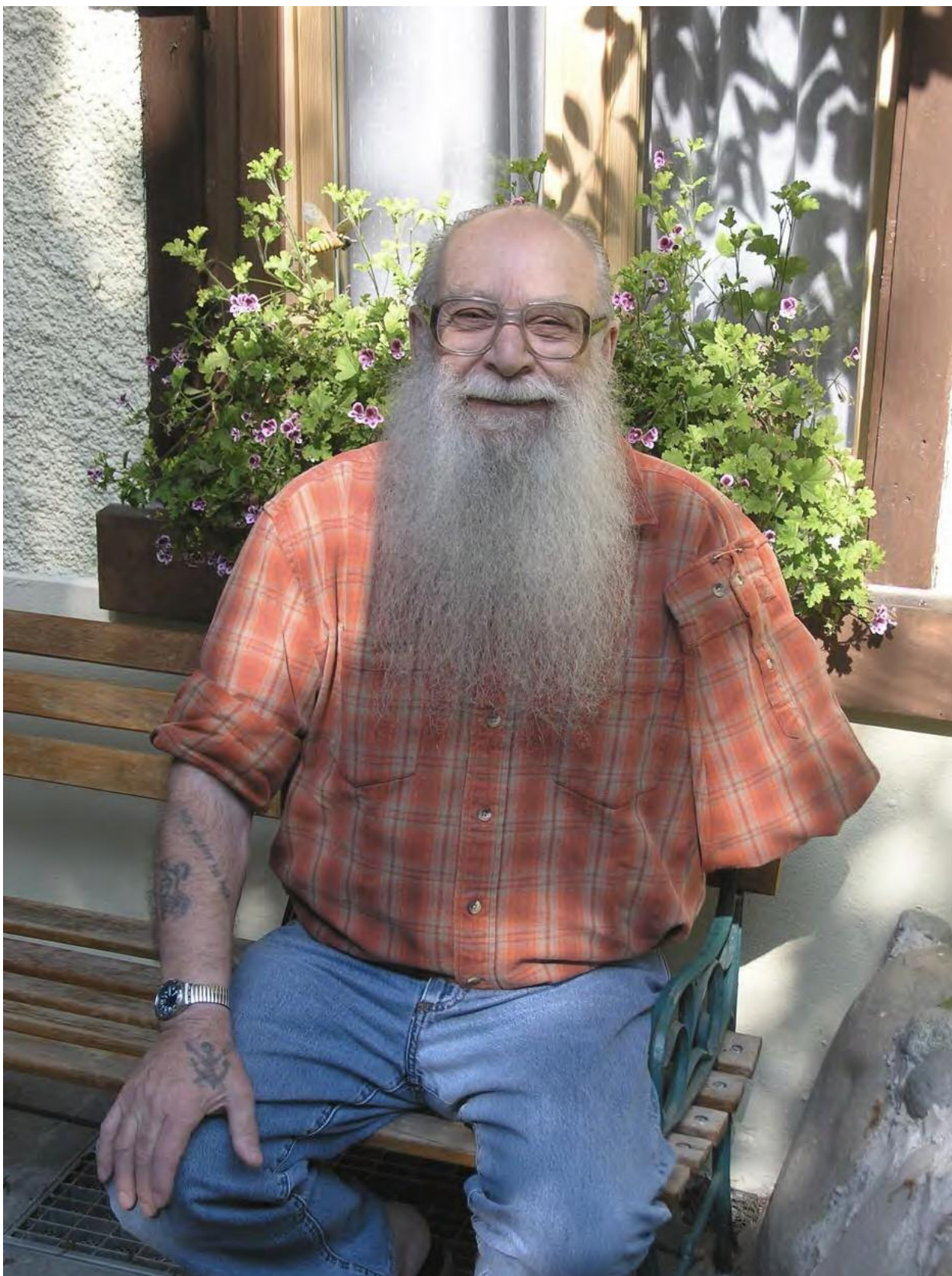
Ever more fear, poison and hopelessness will envelop you human beings of Earth, and even your children will be afflicted by this when they are set upon by their parents or slave traders, sexually abused, tortured, thrashed and sold. Therefore, however, fear, poison and hopelessness will also threaten the consciousness development of many of you, meaning that you will become apathetic and devoid of rationality. Indeed, there is nothing astonishing about this, because you human beings are being forced ever further away from the truth by false, misleading and irresponsible religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies, as a result of which fewer and fewer of you will recognise the effective truth of creational laws and recommendations, and therefore ever fewer of you will follow them. Therefore, the change to the better, good and best will take a long time because only when the bulk of your earthly humanity aspires for it will the great change come to the real learning of the real truth and for acting in this wise. For the moment, however, you human beings of Earth believe yourselves to be God and do not know that this is only a figure of delusion invented by human beings which has nothing to do with the effective, all-embracing Creation, i.e. with the universal consciousness. And still for a long time you will not recognise that you are no more and no less than you were at your birth: small, a human being, unknowing and helpless without the effects of creational laws and recommendations. And since you do not yet recognise this fact, you believe yourselves to be a divinity, to have might over life and death, and therefore you create, cultivate and cherish evil, wage wars, thirst for revenge, retaliation and blood, you allow yourselves to be guided by jealousy and rage and, whenever the opportunity presents itself, you reach out for might, profit and material wealth. At the same time, you do not realise that you are destroying everything around you in your blind rage and thereby accepting the total destruction of the planet and all life forms, together with yourselves, and you are unstoppably and vastly promoting this on the Earth through limitless cultivation of overpopulation. Therefore, it can be said of you human beings of Earth that you are stunted in your consciousness, in your rationality and in your intellect. On the other hand, however, you possess the forces of a giant in all your unintellect, in your irrationality, in your hatred, in your bellicosity and disharmony and also in your urge for revenge, retaliation, the pathological craving for war and rage as well as in your urge for destruction. And in this wise you are taking huge steps in your present existence and into the future of the third millennium, steps which are leading you completely astray so you do not know which way you shall now follow, although you have filled your heads with all kinds of book learning which does not bring you any cognition with regard to the life and the Creation as well as its laws and recommendations. Therefore you do not know why you are living and dying at all, because the world of the Creation-conditioned becoming and passing is as strange to you as the effective creational truth itself, so that you merely curse about your life in ignorance, then return to wailing and waving your arms like lunatics.

You fanatics amongst the believers in religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies – many Christians, Jews, Muslims, Hindus and Buddhists as well as believers in their sects – you are continuously increasing in enmity with one another, you set about one another, practise terrorist acts and cut one another's throats, assassinate human beings with bombs and even wage war in your own families and ranks. In doing so, you are all caught up in your own religious and sectarian delusion, namely that your belief is the only right one and that you must defend it with human blood, whereas in fact you are far away from the real truth and do not know the creational laws and recommendations. Therefore, thanks to your efforts, death makes progress everywhere, whilst you stand opposed to the effective creational truth with your doubts, and regard it as an evil might. In so doing, however, you will be excluded from human life and be without rights, those of you who have nothing else to sell for your delusion than your own life, which you throw away in suicidal acts. And you are cast out and expelled by all those who are not with you and who want peace, security and calm, in which case your threats and snarling will not bring you any benefit. Although you hear about the prophecies and predictions, in your religious and sectarian blindness you are, however, unable to recognize the effective truth, therefore you only vegetate in your own barbarity, and continue to spread death and destruction. And many amongst you human beings of Earth, you close your own eyes to this because you incorrectly believe that you are safe whilst, however, fear and suspicion gnaws away inside you and pursues you step by step, so that you have neither rest nor repose.

Truly, it will take about another 800 years before you human beings of Earth finally wake up and until the majority of you slowly make an effort to give the creational truth and the laws of the Creation and its



recommendations their right. Only after this time will the «Goblet of the Truth», i.e. the «teaching of the true prophets» as well as the «spiritual teaching» as the «teaching of the truth», the «teaching of the spirit», the «teaching of the life» slowly begin to bear fruit. Only then will you human beings learn to establish good interpersonal and true personal relationships with one another, to understand one another and then finally live in truth, peace, love, freedom and harmony. Only then will it come about that your earthly humanity will become united, a oneness in which case the best language will be chosen from all the languages of all peoples in order to make this into a single and uniform global language, although all other languages of all peoples will be retained. And through this world language, every human being will be able to understand the other, irrespective of which people he or she belongs to. And this will then be the time when you human beings of Earth will fly through the broad expanse of space in a good wise, creating new living spaces for yourselves. And this will be both on foreign worlds in the expanses of the universe, as well as in and under the waters of Earth, on the moon and in Earth orbit. And this will therefore also be the time that you human beings will become taller in general and achieve a very ripe age, communicating peacefully with one another, being friendly and helpful to one another. Also true and good knowledge will grow amongst you human beings, and you will gain and discover more and more and larger and larger secrets of the life as well as the creational laws, secrets of the present existence and the universe. From this, you will learn, understand and follow everything, growing ever more in line with the creational laws and recommendations, understanding, using, learning and following them. However, this is not the merit of you men, but of you women who take up the staff of leadership and of dignity and steer the situation of you human beings of Earth, because your womanly true discernment and your sense are directed towards love, peace, freedom, human dignity, equality and harmony and stop the affectations of you men with regard to war, Gewalt and many kinds of Ausartung. Therefore, after all the millennia of evil, Ausartung, Gewalt-acts, disharmony, lovelessness, unfreedom and unpeace, womanhood will radiate hope and happiness as well as the lightness of the life in which now all dreams come true that are oriented towards true love, peace, freedom and harmony – and yet it will take a long time until then because the way out of barbarity and into the good future is a long and tortuous one. And yet you will find the regulation again, together with Earth, with your climate, nature, your woods and plants and the waters which will once again be pure and healthy, the desert areas that will once again be awakened into life, because everything will once again be directed in accordance with creational laws and recommendations and their fulfilment. And in this wise, in the restored regulation, you will heal diseases and prevent plagues before they occur, and each of you will know how to help yourself as well as how to help your next ones. The entire change to the better, good and best which you women of Earth will achieve, will also end the poverty of many of you human beings of Earth, because the wisdom and kindheartedness of women will mean that they will be cared for from now on in joy and true humanity, and there will no longer merely be a taking and demanding something back. And therefore now each of you human beings will be there for your next ones and also for other fellow human beings in good interpersonal relationships, therefore loneliness will no longer exist and you will recognise and accept one another as human beings without conceit with regard to belonging to a particular people, the colour of one's skin, one's opinion, language or the status of knowledge and education. Truly, all this goodness is so near to you if only you knew how to grasp it, understand and use it, which is something that you cannot yet do however, and therefore goodness is so near and yet so far from you because you first need to find the right way to it as has been laid down for you in the creational laws and recommendations that you can read and follow in free nature. You human beings of Earth, you are however erroneously directed in your thoughts and feelings so that you will first have to suffer great damage and fall into chaos and catastrophes before you turn to the effective truth and follow it. Therefore, you need an iron fist to guide you, and you can find this in the «Goblet of the Truth», in the «teaching of the prophets» and therefore also in the «spiritual teaching» which is the «teaching of the truth», the «teaching of the spirit», the «teaching of the life» as has been given over billions of years, brought forth by Nokodemion, carried to Earth from a far-off galaxy and taught by seven prophet personalities from his line of the spirit-form. And this «teaching of the prophets», teaches that you do not need to fear death because you have many lives, and therefore you will learn from the «Goblet of the Truth» and the «spiritual teaching», i.e. the «teaching of the truth», the «teaching of the spirit», the «teaching of the life» and become knowing in the things that go round life and death. And so you will also be knowing of the creational and natural laws and recommendations which teach you that your spirit will never cease to exist, but will continue to exist endlessly and ultimately will unite with the Creation, the universal consciousness.



«Billy» Eduard Albert Meier, Semjase-Silver-Star-Centre, 28. September 2008, 13.30 h



Goblet of the Truth

In the *Goblet of the Truth* there it says:

Live always in love and in peace,
foster freedom and harmony on Earth
and never forget the real truth.

Foster your life always in goodness of heart
and live in the true BEING of the Creation.

The *Goblet of the Truth* will wake you,
not to the bane – but to the boon.

Semjase Silver Star Centre, 13 July 2008, 3:21 a.m.

Billy



In the name of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation)



Chapter 1

- 1) This is the «Goblet of the Truth», the words and guidelines through which you shall be knowing in the laws and recommendations of the Creation and in the appearance (nature), in order to fulfil the rules and values of the life, so that you may lead the present existence to the love, peace and freedom, as well as to the consonance (harmony) and wisdom; given since Nokodemion by the proclaimers, the prophets, the entire number of whom up to the new time shall be seven.
- 2) The birthing of all life (Creation) and its laws and recommendations is a duty to be fulfilled by you (human beings), because only in this wise will knowledge of the truth become wisdom, through which comes the balsam (essence) of all swelling (evolution) of the inner world (consciousness).
- 3) Only the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) are support for you (human beings) in forming your life and bringing it to fulfilment; therefore do not create any laws from your own intellect that are in opposition to the regulation and laws and recommendations of the Creation and that curtail these and change these to the detriment of your well-being.
- 4) If you (human beings) allow prosperousness in yourselves, then do not create any displeasure in yourselves and live in the «Goblet of the Truth»; live according to the truth, that is certainty in recognising reality.
- 5) There shall be no going into the unreal and no cursing of the laws and recommendations of the Creation, because such acts generate rejection from those who are connected to the fairness (equitable/responsible), and therefore inequity (unfairness) contradicts the «Goblet of the Truth».
- 6) And a prayer shall only be spoken to the own inner world (consciousness), because this forms itself growing into that which is connected to you through the word and the thoughts through the «Goblet of the Truth».
- 7) The swelling (evolution) of the own inner world (consciousness) shall only serve the knowledge, the truth and love, the peace and freedom as well as the consonance (harmony) and wisdom, starting from the «Goblet of the Truth», in order to fulfil the sense of the life and not to descend into disasters and inappropriate doings.



Chapter 2

- 1) In the name of the truth, the equitableness (fairness) and the wisdom, this is a teaching through which the many laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) are revealed; and there is no doubt in this; and the teaching is a guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) for the leading of the life.
- 2) And those who are knowing about the unseen (the unconscious) and those who do their duty as it was revealed before you by the proclaimers, the prophets, and those of you who are building firmly on what comes out of it, they are the true ones living in equitableness (fairness/responsibility).
- 3) And those who are knowing about the unseen (the unconscious) and about the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) as had already been revealed to you in the old time, and if you give from what is given to you through the appearance (nature) and the formation (Creation) then you are acting in equitableness (fairness) in this wise; and those who do that are following the guidance of the prophet, and it will go well with them.



- 4) Those amongst you who are not knowing – it makes no difference to them whether they are warned or are not warned –, they do not want to be knowing.
- 5) All their senses are sealed, their intellect and their rationality, their hearts, their ears, and over their eyes there is a shroud, through which they do severe punishment to themselves.
- 6) And there are some amongst you who say that they are connected to the knowledge and the truth, but they are truthly not knowing ones.
- 7) They wish to deceive the proclaimers, the prophets, and those who are knowing; but they are only deceiving themselves; but their intellect is not sufficient to understand it.
- 8) There was disease in their reflecting and their disease has multiplied due to their wrong doing and their lies.
- 9) And if they are told that they shall not cause trouble on the earth-roundness, then they say untruthfully that they are promoting peace.
- 10) And if they are told that they shall be knowing in the truth and not believing like fools, then they dissent, therefore protect yourselves from them, because they do not know that they are fools.
- 11) And if they meet those who are knowing, then they lie saying that they are also knowing; however, when they are together with their ringleaders, they ingratiate themselves with them and lie that they share the same opinion as them and are only making fun of the knowing ones.
- 12) They themselves will be punished for their mockery because they remain obdurate in their outrages; because they are blinded and are going into the unreal.
- 13) They are those who have exchanged their true guidance by the truth for the lunacy that controls them, because they are leading themselves into the unreal, and their deeds will bring them no gain.
- 14) They are like a man who kindles a fire amongst his own family; and when everything about him is lit up then puts out the fire and takes the light away, and thus they sit in deep darkness, so they can no longer see anything.
- 15) They are deaf, dumb and blind, and so they will not find the truth.
- 16) Or they are like in a rain from heavy clouds, in which darkness, thunder and lightning reside, and they stop up their ears with their fingers in mortal fear of the thunderclaps and believe that the storm cannot harm them even though the lightning may strike down.
- 17) The lightning almost takes away the light of their eyes; whenever its luminescence comes down to them then they walk in its light; and when it goes out and darkness extends over them then they all stand still and are afraid; and if it were possible for them to do so, then they would give away their hearing, their eyes and their face so as to be free from their fear.
- 18) You (human beings), turn yourselves to the truth and to the Creation from the might of which you have preceded and are created, just like all those who went before you; turn to the truth so you shall be worthy of the equitableness (fairness/responsibility).
- 19) You shall be connected to the real truth alone, because only through it can all things prosper rightfully and lead to success, and only the real truth is in love the sign-posting (leading thought) of the life.
- 20) Only the truth is the way that leads to your development, whereas displeasure is created on all sides by the untruth of all those who are going into the unreal and deny the truth or replace the truth with a religious belief.
- 21) The truth that you have got to live is perfect because it is given by the primal power (Creation) and its appearance (creational nature) and is without any doubt.
- 22) The real truth is not equivalent to and cannot be compared to your personal truth that you create in yourselves based on your belief and understanding according to your own nature (individuality).
- 23) Truth is that which is given in reality and is evidential, whereas belief is bindingly linked to that which as the unseen (the unconscious) and the unprovable is erroneously assumed to be true.
- 24) You shall know what the truth of the reality revealed and is revealing to you, and you shall firmly build on what the truth will bring you in the future.
- 25) The in truth knowing ones are the ones who are following the guidance of the truth, and so it will go well with them.
- 26) You who do not know about the real truth, but who are bound up with a belief, it makes no difference to you whether you are warned against the untruth or not, because for you the belief is more important than the real truth.
- 27) You who are far from the truth because of belief or as a wiseacre or gainsayer, your rationality and your intellect are sealed; your ears are deaf, your eyes are blind, and your senses are enveloped in a shroud, which means that your life is burdensome and you are in constant fear of punishment.
- 28) If you break the bond of the Creation that it has established between you and it, and if you cut this bond that was created by a connective recommendation, then you are creating unpeace on Earth, and then you are the losers.
- 29) How can you deny the formation (Creation), because through it you have received your very life, because it gave life to you; but it will also let you die, although to give life back to you in a long succession and always



in new persons, and then you will return to the formation (Creation) in the far future.

- 30) It is the formation (Creation) that created everything for you that is on Earth through its might; and it perfected everything in the firmament (universe) and on Earth.
- 31) The formation (Creation) has placed you (human beings) on Earth to govern; and you shall not use people of your kind (human beings) for creating unpeace on Earth and shedding blood.
- 32) However, those of you who give the appearance of knowing the truth and that you are also connected to it, although you unwittingly fall prey to the lie and are only believers, it is you who are attempting to deceive the truth.
- 33) You have no knowledge except for that which you are capable of learning through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and through the laws of the appearance (nature), because your thoughts and feelings result from them.
- 34) The true proclaimer, the true prophet, he knows many secrets of the firmament (universe) and the earths (worlds), and he knows what the laws and recommendations of the Creation and the laws of the appearance (nature) reveal, but the secret that is also unmeasurable for him is the origination (Creation) itself.
- 35) Those amongst you who deceive the truth through your beliefs are only deceiving yourselves, but this is beyond your intellect because you do not comprehend it.
- 36) You who are far from the truth and are only connected to a belief, your rationality and your intellect have fallen victim to an illness of the confusion that is based on deception and lie, which is why you suffer the pangs of torments in fear of the possible punishments that might be hanging over your heads.
- 37) And if the truth-deniers and the believers are told that they shall not cause any turmoil or any unpeace on Earth, then they deny their intentions, they lie and deceive, perjure themselves, bless weapons in order to be victorious in battles (wars) and in killing (murdering), and they claim to be promoters of the love, the peace and the consonance (harmony).
- 38) Guard yourselves against the truth-deniers, the truth-twisters and against the fanatical believers, because they are the ones who are stirring up trouble as well as creating lovelessness, unpeace and unfreedom, although they do not comprehend it.
- 39) Get out, all of you, out of your wrong thoughts, and follow the guidance of the true proclaimers, the prophets, so that no fear will fall upon you and you will not have to sorrow.
- 40) If the truth-deniers, the truth-twisters, wiseacres and the believers are told that only the real truth is important and that they must strive for the real truth, then they do not want to turn towards the truth but remain living in their lies and falsifications, as well as in the denial of the truth, and in the irrational belief, because they are fools and for this reason you shall guard against them if you do not know about their foolishness (irrationality).
- 41) You (human beings), remember the good deeds of the creative (Creation) as have been presented to you since time immemorial and continue to be presented; therefore fulfil your bond with it so that your life will be rich, satisfied and of long duration and you will find your protection in yourselves and in the fulfilment of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 42) Know about the truth and about everything that the creative (Creation) has created and sent down to you on Earth as confirmation of what is disastrous and also of how things will be with you in the future if you fail in knowledge about the truth and you barter away the signs (the unsurpassable) of the creative (Creation) for a miserable price.
- 43) When believers, wiseacres, opponents, truth-deniers and truth-twisters meet with those who are truth-conscious, then they say that they themselves are also connected to the truth; however, when they are alone with those of the same views then they laugh and say that they are only mocking the truth-knowers.
- 44) You who mock the ones who are truth-conscious, you are committing an outrage on yourselves and punishing all-of-yourself (yourselves) through your going into the unreal and your blindness.
- 45) The truth-deniers and the believers have sunk in their going into the unreal into a false conduct, as a result of which their thoughts and feelings as well as their actions do not produce any evolutive success or gain, which is an unavoidable consequence of having been led astray by themselves as well as by others, meaning that they live in deep darkness and cannot see or recognise the truth.
- 46) Search for help in the patience and truth, which – although it may be difficult – will reward anyone who makes the effort.
- 47) Those of you who certainly know the truth will meet it everywhere and return to it again and again.
- 48) Oh you (human beings), think of the good deeds of the formation (Creation) and of the appearance (nature) created from it, and think of your life which would not be without it.
- 49) And fear the day on which none of the people of your kind (human being) gives account for you as a helpmeet (substitute) and does not intercede for you and also cannot afford any ransom when you are in misery and you have to vindicate yourselves before life.
- 50) Truth-deniers, believers, wiseacres, truth-falsifiers and adversaries of the truth are deaf, dumb and blind to the



reality, therefore they cannot find the way to the real truth of the reality.

- 51) Belief and untruth create anxieties and fear of death in you, therefore you shall turn to the truth so that you will become knowing and you can free yourselves from anxiety and fear.
- 52) Think of the time when the prophets made you promises that you would have a good life in the far future if you turned to the true teaching of the truth and the teaching of the spirit and the teaching of the life; but you have failed to observe the promises and have continued to walk the path of the truth-denial, therefore today turmoil, inequity (unfairness), lovelessness, peacelessness, unfreedom and disharmony reign in you; but the proclaimers, the prophets, forgave you so that you may be thankful, but you have cast everything to the wind and cursed the prophets, but they have come back in order to teach you the real truth up to the current day.
- 53) Think of the time when the prophets told you that you have gone against yourselves and are doing inappropriate things to yourselves because you are praying to gods and tin gods and are turning further and further away from the primal raising (Creation); and you have continued to do so up to the current day, and you have killed your next ones and fought battles (wars) with bloody deeds (murder) and fire in the name of a fabricated (invented) god in order to provide cowardly vindication for your terrible actions.
- 54) Your world and all the life in it have come about through the truth and love of the sole and all-embracing primal wellspring (Creation), through the principles of the inner world of the firmaments (universal consciousness), as a bed for you and the firmament as a roof, the earth as arable land and water as refreshment so that food may be brought forth, therefore the primal wellspring (Creation) shall not have any god, any demons, any liberators (angels), any venerable ones (holy ones) or helpers (substitutes) set at its side.
- 55) If you attempt to belittle the truth of the creative (Creation) by attempting to place a god, a tin god or liberators (angels) and venerable ones (holy ones) or demons at its side, in whom you fallaciously believe and to whom you offer prayers, then you are committing an outrage with regard to the principles of the primal power (Creation) and to yourselves, and are casting all-of-yourself into a fire which robs you of intellect and rationality.
- 56) And you say that you do not want to place your trust in the prophet in any wise even at the present time for his teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life until you have experienced their truth with your own body and with your own reflecting and striving, and are able to see their efficacy with your own eyes; but in return the thunderclap of a disagreeable present existence befalls you.
- 57) Bringing the joyful message of the truth to those amongst you who are knowing or not-knowing and are connected to the truth or are not connected to it and who do good or bad deeds means love and joy, which should belong to all of you so that in you gardens of the consonance (harmony) blossom and rivers of the wisdom flow; and whenever you give from the fruits of your garden (knowledge) and from the waters of your rivers (wisdom) to people of your kind (human beings), you will say that you are passing on that what you have been taught by the wise ones and the prophets in accordance with the laws of the primal power (Creation), therefore you pass it on in the same form as it was given to you; and this leads to you finding yourselves as people of your kind (human beings) and becoming companions in order to care for your being yourself (being human) in purity and to dwell therein.
- 58) The true proclaimer, the prophet, as well as the true wise one does not disdain to give an allegory (comparison) as a means of instruction, may it be ever so small as a gnat or a tiny detail, because it bears witness to the truth for those who are learning and also for those who have knowledge of the truth, which can be taught and understood through the allegory (comparison).
- 59) What the proclaimer, the prophet, or the wise one says with an allegory (comparison) is what serves as an explanation with words as examples so that it is understood and shows the one who is learning that there does not have to be any unknowledgeness and none amongst you has to be a confused one, also that no one shall be led into being confused or condemned as an unknowing one.
- 60) If you break the bond with the truth that was set up as a binding link and then was cut and destroyed, then you are creating unpeace on Earth and you will come out as losers.
- 61) How can you deny the creative (Creation) and its truth and laws, because only through the existence of the creative (Creation) and its principles, which bear witness of love and truth, did all life come forth, life that dies and is reborn in order to be completed through learning and to one day become one with it.
- 62) It is the creative (Creation) alone which created everything that is on Earth and in the unending expanses of the universe, and it created and completed all life and existence through its logical principles that are founded in truth; and therefore it is the creative (Creation) that forms the breath of the life as a part-piece in you and in all life forms as well as in everything existing.
- 63) Truly, the knowing ones, the wise ones, the black ones, the yellow ones, the red ones, the white ones, blue ones, green ones and everyone of any kind who truly stands in the knowledge about the truth of the formation (Creation), they will receive their fair reward during their lifetimes; and no fear will come over



them, nor will they sorrow.

- 64) Hold fast to what the prophets gave you and will give you in future; keep their teaching of the truth in your mind and everything that is contained in the teaching so that your present existence may be good and you may be rescued from the unknowledge.
- 65) However, if you turn away from the truth then you fall out of the grace and boon of the life, and you will certainly be the losers.
- 66) And the Creation created all pre-requisites of the truth so that these reveal their truth through their principles and through the life and through you yourselves, namely by you creating love, peace, freedom and consonance (harmony) and swelling (evolving) in the inner world (consciousness) in knowledge and in wisdom, and by you remaining distant from all lovelessness, unfreedom, all disharmony and thereby do not cause any unpeace or shed any blood of your kind (blood of human beings), but respect the life in its wholeness.
- 67) And the truth teaches equitableness (fairness) so that any one of you may stand before the other when he or she is in the right.
- 68) Your knowledge must be controlled and you shall broaden the knowledge, which you learn through the laws of the appearance (nature) and the principles of the primal power (Creation), through your own efforts of fathoming to love, freedom as well as peace, sonority (harmony) and wisdom so that you will become relatively all-knowing and wise.
- 69) You people of your kind (human beings) of Earth, in the name of the truth it is said to you that you are able to fathom the secrets of the laws of the appearance (nature) and the principles of the primal power (Creation), because when you make the effort to do this they reveal to you what you conceal from yourselves as a result of your imperiousness.
- 70) You people of your kind (human beings) of Earth, think of the time when you were still without belief connected to the real truth and were not far from the truth; therefore return yourselves to that condition when you had connected yourselves, not through an irrational belief but through the truth, to the Creation and did not pray to any god.
- 71) Do not, people of your kind (human beings), man and woman of Earth, bow down before gods, because they are falsehoods and inventions and lies made by people of your kind (human beings) who, in the delusion, became believers by inventing untrue higher mights and praying to them; you shall not do as they do and shall not pray either to them nor to their invented gods.
- 72) Do not, people of your kind (human beings) of Earth, bow down before people of your kind (fellow human beings), even not before those in authority because even if they bear grand titles and have wealth, they are not worth any more than you.
- 73) People of your kind (human beings), man, woman and child, dwell in the large garden of Earth and eat richly of all that is given to you through the appearance (nature) and the animals and other creatures, and also is created by you, and enjoy the fermented juices of the fruits in moderate amounts, so that you do not become drunk, and eat the flesh of all animals and other creatures (birds, fishes, reptiles, etc.) in good measure, from birds and rabbits through to pigs, cattle and camels, only do not do this shamefully and do not fall into gluttony and greed so that you are not malefactors (lawbreakers).
- 74) People of your kind (human beings), you shall not stray from the straight and narrow when faced with the evil and shall not be of help to it, otherwise you will be driven from the place in which you live and you will be ostracised until the end of your days.
- 75) People of your kind (human beings), go away from those who believe themselves to be your enemies, but remember to do good to them and not to hate them, but to be connected to them in love, even if you have to speak openly of their shameful actions; never deem another to be your enemy on your own account, because you shall be connected to people of your kind (human beings) in love and be helpful to them in all good things.
- 76) It is to be considered by you that the dwelling of people of your kind (human beings) are the earths and also only for a time, which is why you shall make them beneficial to people of your kind (fellow human beings) and to the best, and shall not harm or destroy them.
- 77) The natural laws of the primal power (Creation) have been given which have a helpful effect when they are followed and applied; and truly if they are followed then everything will lead to the prosperousness and to the success as well as to the joy, to the love, to the peace and to the concord (harmony) and wisdom.
- 78) It is recommended for all to go out into the free appearance (nature) in order to recognise its laws and then to follow its guidance, so that the fear of the death will be banished and no one will need to sorrow in unintellect (foolishness) when the present existence comes to an end.
- 79) However, remaining in the unknowledge and disregarding the signs (wonderful things) of the appearance (nature) and both its and the formation-given (Creation-given) and natural laws and imputing them as a lie amounts to self-punishment because your life will be full of false peace, false freedom and love, full of



unknowledge, unwisdom, joylessness and dissonance (disharmony) as a result of which you will be disrupted in your swelling (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness) and will slow down (stagnate).

- 80) People of your kind (human beings) of Earth, think of the unending goodness of the life and the good deeds which have been presented and created for you since time immemorial for all those of you who followed the natural and forming (creational) laws and guidelines.
- 81) There is a bond between you people of your kind (human beings) as well as between the laws of the Creation and the appearance (nature) which must be fulfilled, because only this fulfilment guarantees that no fear has to be nourished against the life and the death, because the laws of the primal power (Creation) and the natural laws are formed in such a wise that they fulfil themselves in any case; but you alone determine in the good or in the bad whether fear or unfear shall stir in you.
- 82) What has been created by the laws of the primal power (Creation) is a confirmation of what was thought out from an idea and created in love by the inner world of the firmaments (universal consciousness), by the Creation; but you are the ones who refuse yourselves the truth and have fallen into belief in gods instead of being in the knowledge about the truth, meaning that you cannot negotiate with yourselves in order to free yourselves from the very poor belief and turn to the truth which alone offers you protection.
- 83) Never shall falseness be mixed with truth, nor shall the truth be knowingly concealed.
- 84) The principles of the primal power (Creation) are laid out to care for the obligation of the knowledge to be striven for and of the wisdom for the truth, and for you not to bow down to any of your kind (human beings) nor to any divinities, however to be concerned to help those who suffer privation with appropriate gifts.
- 85) Others shall not be admonished to do the right whilst one's own doing that is unright goes forgotten; this is a recommendation that must be well understood.
- 86) Help must be sought in insight and patience, which is admittedly difficult unless for someone who is rich in the inner world (consciousness) and who does not walk along in submissiveness, but in truth, in love, knowledge and wisdom.
- 87) Those who are certainly knowing will unceasingly meet the truth and always find their way to it.
- 88) People of your kind (human beings) of Earth, always remember the good deeds of people of your kind (fellow human beings) which they presented or present to you, and do not raise yourselves up above them.
- 89) Fear the untruth for it can never serve as an authorised one (substitute) and intercession for the real truth and it cannot offer any ransom, because it does not help, rather takes and destroys.
- 90) Remember all the evil and the anguish that is afflicted upon many in the world by battles (wars), by criminals and murderers, through which sons and fathers are slaughtered and daughters and mothers raped and killed.
- 91) And remember the long times before the time of today when mendacious promises were given by the mighty ones in the world that no more battles (wars) shall be fought, and nevertheless uncountable lives of people of your kind (human lives) are sacrificed to the moloch battle (war) and immense destructions are wrought.
- 92) And it is the truth that, instead of being thankful for every day of peace, you continue to spread death, ruin and destruction in the name of an unsubstantial (imaginary) god who preaches love whilst absurdly demanding punishment, death and annihilation.
- 93) And prophets came to you with manifest signs (marvels and truth-teaching) by means of which the many laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) were explained, but in their absence you created tin gods and prayed to them, and therefore you were malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth.
- 94) For the wellspring-given (Creation-given) life and the appearance (nature) with all its life forms, the inner world of the firmaments (universal consciousness) allotted that thankfulness shall be nurtured for this in love, peace, freedom, consonance (harmony) and truth.
- 95) Thankfulness shall prevail for the differentiation between right and unright, as well as between truth and untruth, so that everyone may be led rightly.
- 96) It is to be considered that you are placing a heavy burden on yourselves through all your desire for unright, through your belief in divinities and praying to them in irresponsibility, because you are denying the real truth through binding yourselves to an imaginary god, elevating it to be the creator of the worlds and the universe, paying homage to it and killing people of your kind (fellow human beings) through battle (war) and punishment in its name.
- 97) The large mass of you does not want to know in any wise and does not want to recognise the truth unless you can hold the things of the truth in your hands, see them with your eyes and hear them with your ears, but the real truth of the real truth is not that of the holding, the seeing and the hearing, rather it is that of the inner cognition through rationality and intellect as well as of the true knowledge and the wisdom that are fully free from beliefs.
- 98) The truth of the life is that after this life death takes control, after which a new all-of-yourself (personality) is set up in a new life, for which thankfulness shall be given.
- 99) The laws of the primal power (Creation) and the natural laws let the clouds appear in the firmament and move



from place to place because they bring water (rain) down, through which all kinds of edible things can thrive and all life is nourished, but people of your kind (human being) damage everything and thereby inflict the greatest harm on themselves.

- 100) A person of your kind (human being) shall always eat from all the gifts of the appearance (nature) that serve him or her as nourishment, and he or she shall have of it what he or she wants, and in addition in abundance, but he or she shall not beget abundant offspring in return, because he or she shall have a surplus of natural foodstuffs and not suffer from hunger.
- 101) A person of your kind (human being) does not have to be satisfied with one kind of food, because he or she shall work to bring out of the earth what can be grown from its corn and its herbs, fruits and vegetables; therefore he or she does not have to accept something less in return for something better if he or she goes about his or her work industriously; and whoever cannot undertake the work and the harvests himself or herself should go to the town where he or she can find what he desires in return for payment.
- 102) Forgiving the errors and offences of people of your kind (fellow human beings) means showing equitableness (fairness) and doing good.
- 103) Only those without equitableness (inequitable ones/irresponsible ones/unfair ones) confuse the word of the truth with lies, but the liars cause unending damage to themselves with this because they have no true friends, only false friends who tell them what they want to hear.
- 104) It is rightful to be truthly at all times and never to bring hardships on people of your kind (fellow human beings) and on Earth by creating lovelessness, unfreedom, peacelessness, joylessness and discordance (disharmony).
- 105) Many are smitten with misery and ignominy by inflicting torment and Gewalt on themselves because they burden themselves with their own anger and because since time immemorial they have in their intractability and in their outrageousness repudiated the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and wish to kill the true proclaimers, the prophets.
- 106) Truly, those who really have knowledge about the truth of the primal power (Creation) and who live, act and do good works in accordance with the laws of the primal power (Creation), they will receive their reward in the form of joy, love, peace, freedom, concordance (harmony) and wisdom, therefore no fear of the life and of the death will come over them, and their sorrow will be kept within reasonable bounds.
- 107) It is recommended to hold fast to what has been given through the principles of the primal power (Creation) and the natural principles, and all this that has been given shall be remembered for all time so that no hardships result from wrong thoughts, feelings and deeds.
- 108) You people of your kind (human beings), do not turn away from the grace given by the laws of the primal wellspring (Creation), and from the prosperousness in all things, because otherwise you will live your life as a loser.
- 109) The person of your kind (human being) must not be like apes or like those despised through misdeeds, because he or she alone must account for his or her own actions, deeds, thoughts and feelings, something which is lacking in the apes and the human beings who have become despised through lawbreaking; this must be taken into cognisance and observed on a daily basis.
- 110) It is always to be thought about that even those despised because of misdeeds are people of your kind (human beings) who must be given their right and must not be condemned or mistreated as such, because only their misdeeds shall be judged (legally assessed, i.e. condemned) in order to demand appropriate atonement from the fallible one.
- 111) Those without equitableness (inequitable ones/irresponsible ones/unfair ones), fallible ones and those despised because of misdeeds as well as their wrong doing and their wrong thoughts and feelings shall serve as an example to everyone who is living at their time or comes after them; and it shall be a teaching to live not in fear of the unright, but in joy with the equitable (fair/responsible).
- 112) The primal well-spring (Creation) and its laws and recommendations do not command as is the case with divinities created by people of your kind (human beings) and those who make a mockery of the truth and want to lead those into the unreal who are attempting to escape from their unknowledge and are seeking refuge in the truth.
- 113) The dead are not to be mourned, rather the living dead, who lead their present existence in unknowledge, unwisdom, lovelessness, unfreedom, unpeace and in inequality (disharmony), and are at odds with their life.
- 114) Always ask your next ones to make it clear what they want, so that understanding is the result and not discord, strife and not hatred and not unpeace that come out of misunderstanding; this is how the behaviour in rightness is to be.
- 115) Request that the next ones always offer the truth and clearness in all things, just as everyone shall themselves be connected to the truth and clearness, because only in this wise can a being-well-led become reality in these things.
- 116) A person of your kind (human being) shall never be placed under a yoke, never become a slave to the next one or to the authority, but shall undertake his or her duty without rebuke or compulsion in freedom, even if



the fellow human beings or the authority do not like to countenance it.

- 117) The light of the truth is concealed by those who slaughter their next ones and yet argue about it in order to gain their own profit from it.
- 118) Do not beat the fallible ones, the criminals, the thieves, liars, deceivers and adulterers, and do not kill (murder) the manslayers (murderers) as a punishment for the crime committed on the killed (murdered), rather practise equitableness (fairness) and demand atonement in application of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which are not directed towards revenge, hatred and retaliation but rather towards forbearance, forgiveness, reconciliation and benevolence (humanity), therefore every punishment shall only be given in true humaneness, without harming life and limb, but so that the fallible ones understand the signs (warnings) of the atonement and may rue the deed.
- 119) Your love and humaneness are hardened like stones and even harder, however the hardness must be softened so that kindheartedness, love and humaneness are able to break forth once more with the effect that virtues, respect for life and equitableness (fairness) may flow forth and all anxiety, submissiveness and fear will escape from the thoughts and feelings; therefore it is important not to be heedless in all one's doings.
- 120) If it is expected that the word of the truth of the teaching of the spirit and the formation-given (Creation-given) truth of the laws and recommendations will be accepted, then this is only an expectation because the truth is not readily accepted, but is twisted because it is not understood or is uncomfortable, although the consequences of this will not fail to appear.
- 121) Whenever the ones who have knowledge about the real truth are met then the unknowing ones and those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) say that the knowing ones only wanted to reveal and disclose and argue about things that they themselves could not understand and that it was in any case far from the truth and reality.
- 122) The unknowing ones and those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) do not know that they are revealing to the knowing ones what they are hiding through foolish talk.
- 123) Vast numbers of people of your kind (human beings) are untaught and do not know the words of the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and the teaching of the truth, but only their own needs, desires (vices/wantonness/pathological cravings/drives) and wishes, and they simply assume and do not find the core of the things, of the reality and of the truthfulness.
- 124) Woe betide those who steal the teaching of the proclaimers, the prophets, and write their own books using it, lying that these are their own teachings and that they only want to take a paltry price for this; therefore woe betide them on behalf of what they steal and write in lies, and it will go ill with them because of the price that they fraudulently extract, because ill-gotten goods never prosper for long, it being unavoidable that lies will come to the light of the truth.
- 125) The thieves and liars of the books and writings of the proclaimers, the prophets, fallaciously believe that they will not be touched by the fire of atonement and woe, or if so then only for a small number of days; but they do not receive any permission or promises for their shameful doing, which is why they will have to give account for their activities sooner or later and atone for their actions; and truly they do not know what an outrage they are committing.
- 126) Truly, whoever does bad things and gets entangled in their misdeeds will not be happy of the life and makes themselves guilty for all the things done that are unright; but it is important not to dwell therein but to liberate oneself therefrom.
- 127) The knowing ones and those who do good works and live according to the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), they are the ones who are living in equitableness (living in fairness/responsibility) and they shall remain in this.
- 128) There is an unwritten bond between you and the primal raising (Creation) and it shall be kept in honour and dignity, so that all life, the appearance (nature), the world and the universe may be respectfully honoured and protected.
- 129) No god and no tin god shall be prayed to, because only the vast primal raising (Creation) is the unmeasurable secret from which all being originated.
- 130) You shall show kindheartedness to your parents, brothers and sisters, children, relatives, to the poor and the orphaned and to all fellow human beings; and you shall talk graciously to the people of your kind (human beings) and spread the teaching of the truth, give alms (gifts) and not turn away from all these duties and from the carrying of your responsibility for all and everything with unwillingness, and those who do this nevertheless bring down ignominy and guilt onto their heads (mental-block = consciousness, thoughts, feelings and psyche).
- 131) People of your kind (human beings) of Earth, you are people who slaughter your own brothers and sisters and drive some of your own out of their houses, and the one supports the other in his or her doing shamefully through misdeeds and ignominy against the disadvantaged.



- 132) You shall not spill the blood of your own, not that of your spouse, nor that of your own children, brothers and sisters, relatives, friends, acquaintances and of the fellow human beings, just as you shall not spill the blood of those who are thieves and deceivers, murderers, adulterers or other criminals or those without equitableness (inequitable ones/irresponsible ones/unfair ones), and also you shall not harm them physically or drive them out of their houses.
- 133) You praise and endorse the criminal activities of the lawbreakers who, as judges, demand the death as atonement, and those who practise torture and killing (murder) on condemned evildoers, because you do not consider that you are acting unlawfully against the laws of the primal power (Creation).
- 134) Many know about the truth of the laws of the Creation (creational laws) and the need to follow them, but very many doubt them and turn to an invented god or tin god in order to pay homage to it (glorify it), pray to it and ask it for gifts, grace and benevolence, which it however cannot grant because it does not exist.
- 135) Therefore there is no happy reward for those amongst you who do evil, pray to a god or tin god, because they give themselves over to the guilt of the abject worship of a divinity thought up by people of your kind (human beings) or of a tin god, from which they only harvest anxiety and fear as their ultimate reward.
- 136) Those who do not respect the current life and throw it away, whether through clear self-killing (suicide) or out of carelessness, are devoid of all rationality and of the knowledge, because they are destroying learning opportunities for their swelling (evolution) of their inner world (consciousness development) which they will have to work on again in a new life as a new all-of-themself (personality) through arduous learning, therefore the arduousness of learning is not reduced by this, rather they destroy their own initiative for their own learning opportunity.
- 137) There were many proclaimers, prophets, who in truth brought the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and representatives followed in their footsteps who explained the evident signs (proofs) of the truth of the prophets and bore witness to their truthfulness, but you did not want to listen to them, neither to the prophets nor to the representatives; so, every time that a herald of the truth-teaching comes to you, which is something you yourselves do not wish for, do you want to be arrogant and continue to insult the proclaimers, prophets, their representatives and the other heralds of the teaching of the truth calling them liars, treating them as deceivers and strike them dead?
- 138) Truly, your senses and your rationality and your intellect are wrapped in shrouds because you curse yourselves for the sake of your unknowledge, because what you really know is only very little.
- 139) You plead for fulfilment of what you want to have, and you plead to be victorious over those whom you assume (deem) to be your enemies because you do not understand that you shall not appoint any others to be your enemies, and nevertheless you do not restrain yourselves from doing this; when you are granted what you wish, then you throw it away again and bring down bane on your heads (mental-block = consciousness, thoughts, feelings and psyche).
- 140) Bad is that for which you sell your honour and dignity because you reject, disregard and tread underfoot the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), for which reason no grace will be bestowed on your heads and nothing can come to you which will make you really happy and full of gladness; therefore you only bring down Gewalt and rage upon rage and anger upon anger on yourselves in order finally to deteriorate into blind submissiveness and to depart from the life as unknowing ones and ones without equitableness (unfair ones/inequitable ones/irresponsible ones).
- 141) And if you are told that you shall know everything about what had been given since time immemorial through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, then you do not want to know it hereafter when you are taught it, although it is the truth and everything is affirmed by the reality.
- 142) Why do you harm and slaughter your proclaimers, your prophets, who bring you the teaching of the truth, teaching of the life, teaching of the spirit, if you believe yourselves to be so knowing and human; and truly it has been since time immemorial only the real proclaimers, the prophets, who taught you the truth, but you preferred to listen to the false priests of your imaginary god, your tin gods, so you have fallen prey to them in worship and have become malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth of the fruitfulness (Creation) and its laws and recommendations.
- 143) Bad is that for which people of your kind (human beings) have sold your prosperity and adversity, namely for a suppliant and abject belief in an invented and non-being divinity and in tin gods of all kinds to whom you pay homage because you do not recollect the manifest teaching of the truth of the proclaimers, the prophets, who brought their teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to everyone and will continue to bring it to those who want to hear and learn it; and because things are done in this wise, you bring down anger upon anger on your heads from out of yourselves and punish yourselves through lovelessness, unpeace, unfreedom, joylessness, lying, cheating and inequality (disharmony).
- 144) When you are told that you shall be knowing in the real truth, then you lie that you are knowing and that you understand the truth, however only in order to curse the knowledge about it hereafter, although the real truth



is the actual truth that is affirmed by the laws of the primal power (Creation) and natural laws, from which all existence of everything existing has originated; therefore you prefer to slay the proclaimers, the prophets, of the truth-teaching rather than being honest to yourselves and to people of your kind (fellow human beings) and turning yourselves to the eternal truth.

- 145) Many a proclaimer, prophet, came to you with manifest signs (marvels) which you however disregarded maliciously and imperiously, and therefore you committed an outrage against the truth and continue to do so today, because you have fallen into the worship of divinities and tin gods which neither possess rationality nor intellect nor the slightest fibre of might so that they could not even make one hair on your heads turn grey.
- 146) Remember the teaching of the proclaimers, the prophets, and hold fast to that what they have given to you, and listen to their teaching of the real truth, so you understand that you have to raise yourselves up to the truth and obey yourselves in this truth so that you set yourselves free from the unknowledge, do not impose any belief on yourselves and turn to the knowledge of the truth in order to attain wisdom and true love.
- 147) The dwelling of the impalpable (other world) is only for the consistency of the spirit, however not for the person, because this is extinguished after dying in order to give energy and power to a new person who will be born when the spirit-body (spirit-form) once again returns in a body of people of your kind (human body); therefore do not call for death in order to find in it a release from earthly anguish, because death extinguishes the person for all time and it can never again be made living.
- 148) And death shall never be called upon in the hope that an existence at the side of a god or in a paradise (realm of gods and tin gods) might be a joyful life, because such teachings have no truth and are only the delusions of the brain of false priests, proclaimers and prophets who have misled you into senselessness because they obtain advantages, relevance and benefits from it.
- 149) If you are truthful then search for the real truth and call for it for the sake of what the proclaimers, the prophets, have said to you in advance concerning knowledge regarding the teaching, so that you do not remain malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth, but that you turn to it.
- 150) Amongst you, the ones who are most greedily searching for life are the ones who are only striving for enjoyment, vice, amusement, stinginess, revelry, indulgence, pathological craving, salaciousness, gorging, gluttony and desires, vices (wantonness/pathological cravings/urges) and who do not pay heed to the real truth nor to fulfilment of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation); and indeed every one of you wishes in his or her greedy activities to be granted one thousand years of life, in which case, however, you do not consider that even the granting of such a life would not protect you from your own atonement if you do not fulfil the sense of the life that is given in the swelling (evolution) of the inner world (consciousness) and the accumulation of love, knowledge, wisdom, peace, freedom and harmony in all things.
- 151) Whoever is an enemy of the truth that arises from the laws and recommendations of fruitfulness (Creation) vilifies (proscribes) not only their fulfilment but also the messages, revelations and guidance of the proclaimers, the prophets.
- 152) Whoever is an enemy of the truth is also an enemy of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and an enemy of the natural laws as well as an enemy of the proclaimers, the prophets.
- 153) Truly, the proclaimers, the prophets of the teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life have brought forth manifest signs (marvels/evidence) since time immemorial, and nobody denied their knowledge of this other than the wiseacres, the disobedient ones and the liars and slanderers; and as often as they concluded an agreement with the truth and the teaching then they rejected it again because they are depraved and mendacious and truly without knowledge.
- 154) Even since time immemorial when proclaimers, prophets, came to fulfil what the teaching of the truth as well as the principles of the primal power (Creation) demand them to do, very many of those to whom the teaching and the truth was given, cast all the knowledge behind them as if the teaching and the truth had never been announced (proclaimed) to them.
- 155) Many of them followed the way that they pursued under the dominance of agitators against the teaching of the truth and the teaching of the spirit as well as the teaching of the life; and it was agitators who remained in the unknowledge and taught the people deception and falsehood.
- 156) And it was representatives to whom it was revealed by the proclaimers, the prophets, to instruct the unknowing ones and put them to the test and say that they shall not remain ones who have no knowledge of the truth.
- 157) The proclaimers, the prophets, taught their representatives and the people that no one shall do harm to any other and that a distinction shall be made between man and woman in many things, but that both shall accompany one another in life with the same right, with the same entitlement and in equality, as is given by the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 158) It was and is taught that everything shall be desisted from which does harm and gives no benefit; whoever



acquires such things nevertheless will not have any joyful portion in life; but it is true that so many sell their happiness and their gladness for awful things, for scum and all the terrible things of the world because knowledge and truth is abhorrent to them.

- 159) If you would have known and acted rightly then the reward for your present existence would certainly have been better; and your life reward would be better if you turned to the real truth and therefore to the primal power (Creation) and acted rightly.
- 160) Oh, you have fallen into belief and you say that the untruth is good, but know and hear that only truth and the true knowledge are good, whereas untruth and unknowledge only bring painful hardship and affliction.
- 161) Those who are unknowing amongst the people, in the writing of the truth-teaching and amongst those who place divinities and tin gods beside the primal power (Creation), they all do not wish that good is sent down on all those who in truth have knowledge of the teaching of the truth; but the truth chooses boon and unmeasurable grace for those who are knowing of the truth.
- 162) Whatever signs (teaching/evidence and marvels) the proclaimers, the prophets, abrogate or allow to fall into forgetfulness, in their place they bring forth better or equivalent ones according to the new time, because the new times demand expansions to the teaching of the truth and the signs (evidence and marvels); you namely become more intelligent and expand your knowledge, which is why the teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life must be given more extensively and in greater detail in accordance with the new time and the new understanding; however, what does not change is the truth-content of the teaching because the truth is eternal and unchanging; and the true prophets have the might to do everything in order to carry out the teaching as they consider right; however, protect yourselves from false proclaimers, false prophets who simulate wisdom but are actually less knowing than children and have fallen into the belief in some divinity or other or tin gods.
- 163) Do you not know that the domain of the firmament (universe) and of the earths (worlds/planets) belongs to the primal power (Creation) alone, but that you are set above all as governors, as protectors and helpers for yourselves, for all life and everything existing?
- 164) Do you want to ask your proclaimers, your prophets, as the knowing ones and the wise ones asked them before, in order to avoid entering in unknowledge into an exchange with a belief in divinities and tin gods, and in order not to err in doubt from the right way?
- 165) Many of the people who are not favourably disposed to the writing of the truth and to the truth wish in the enviousness of their nature – although the teaching of the truth has been clearly announced (proclaimed) to them – that they could discourage those of you who are yourselves knowing in the writing of the truth and the truth itself from your cognition of the truth and following of the truth, in order to change you back into ones unknowing of the truth; but do not be angry because of this and forgive them by proclaiming to them that it is your decision not to deviate from the truth and not to turn away from them, because you continue to be connected to them in love; you have the might to do so.
- 166) Do your duty and fulfil your responsibility which can only be carried by yourselves and not by a god or tin gods on your behalf; therefore also give alms (gifts) to the people in need and send out goodness from yourselves, because you will find it again as thanks from those to whom you give your help; and truly, your goodness and your help will be appreciated, because the people of your kind (human beings) will see what you are doing.
- 167) The believers in a god and in tin gods say that believers in other things who are not of their belief will not enter the firmament's paradise (realm of gods and tin gods), but such talk only represents fallible teachings and vain wishes of those who are going into confusion in the belief and erroneously hope that a god or tin god might live in a firmament's paradise (realm of gods and tin gods); indeed this is an evil, fallacious teaching for which the in-the-belief fallible ones can never provide truthful evidence.
- 168) Whoever entirely falls in line with the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and the laws of appearance (nature) will receive an appropriate reward for all time in equitableness (fairness) and will have no anxiety and not be afraid, nor will they fall into false sorrow.
- 169) The ones who believe in a god and tin gods say that people who believe otherwise have no basis for their belief, and the ones who believe otherwise say that the others have no basis for their belief, although they both read the writings of their respective belief which all say that they shall also be equivalent and tolerant in belief; and in accordance with their speaking, so spoke those already who did not have any knowledge of the writings, therefore they judged fallibly amongst themselves because they were disunited amongst themselves.
- 170) And who is more inequitable (more irresponsible/more unfair) than those who pile dishonour and ignominy on their next ones in belief in a god or tin gods; they are the same as the inequitable ones (unfair ones) who prevent the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) from being taught through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because they are striving to destroy it; and truly, it is not appropriate to do such a thing because it is without respect and an ignominy in this



world; but those who do such a thing will not reap any good reward.

- 171) To you on the earth-roundness is given the east, the west, the south and the north, and wherever you turn, and therefore the real truth of the principles of the primal power (Creation) and natural principles which is to be found in an unlimited wise; pay attention to it and make it your own, then it will go well with you.
- 172) Everything in the firmaments (universe) and on earths (worlds/planets) is the work of the Creation, but it has made it for you to be yours so that you might control everything respectfully, guide everything correctly and do everything for your own benefit and that of everything living and otherwise existing; therefore everything in the firmaments (universe) and on earth (Earth) has been given to you as your own, for you to care for well and protect so that nothing turns into the spilling of blood or into destruction through getting very badly out of the control of the good human nature.
- 173) The Creation alone is the creation of the firmaments (universe) and of the earths (worlds/planets); it formed the idea from which everything became.
- 174) The unknowing ones ask why their god or their tin god does not speak to them, does not appear to them face to face and does not give them any signs (miracles), but this was already how those people spoke who were not connected to the truth before you, because they did not comprehend (recognise) and did not understand the truth and the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) as you do not comprehend them; the questions by the old and new unknowing ones are the same, because they did not understand the signs (teaching/evidence and marvels) given by the prophets, although these were made obvious for everyone so that they would be understood; however, they did not understand because they were trapped by their belief in god and tin gods, and went into confusion just as you also in the time of the current day go into confusion as ones without knowledge of the truth, which is why you shall learn from the prophets.
- 175) The proclaimers, the prophets, sent themselves with the truth, as bringers of good news and as warners; and they confront you and explain to you the truth-teaching so that you might understand it and know that the shadow world (hell) is no place of the evil one (the devil) and of demons, but the condition of your own feeling.
- 176) No one who has any belief whatsoever in a divinity or in a tin god will be satisfied with you, unless you follow their belief; truly, however, your guidance is solely the guidance of the truth coming from the Creation, therefore do not follow the false cognisance or the cravings of those who go in falseness and erroneously teach the untruth, otherwise you will find neither true friends nor honest helpers.
- 177) Those to whom the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life has been given and who follow it as it shall be followed, they are the ones who know about the real truth; and all those who do not know about it are the losers.
- 178) Oh you people of your kind (human beings), think about the laws and recommendations of the Creation that have been explained by the prophets since time immemorial and are still bestowed upon you today so that you rise above yourselves in the knowledge about the truth and become true people of your kind (human beings) and peoples.
- 179) And consider that when you are put to the test by the proclaimers, the prophets, through the laws and recommendations, then consider that they are the true leaders for you, of today and tomorrow and for all descendants, irrespective of whether they live in equitableness (fairness/responsibility) or in inequity (irresponsibility/ unfairness).
- 180) Build up a house here and there as a meeting place for yourselves so that you have a place of refuge for learning the truth and the truth-teaching; and take any place for this which appears suitable and keep it clean of all evil for all people who turn it into peace and freedom and for those who stay there in contemplation of the truth and Creation, and for those who say prayers to their spirit (i.e. consciousness) therein.
- 181) The laws of the primal power (laws of the Creation) and recommendations of the primal power (recommendations of the Creation) require that you make each place into a place of peace and freedom and love and consonance (harmony); and supply all inhabitants of all places with fruits and other nourishments, both those who are knowing and those who are unknowing; but keep your descendants' numbers within limits so that no hunger, suffering, hatred, vice or any evil disasters originate and there is no destruction wrought on the world, its appearance (nature) and the world of animals and other creatures (birds, fishes, reptiles, etc.) and on the air, on the waters and the weather; and do good deeds for all people of your kind (human beings) for all time, and no one shall be driven into the fire of hardship, because this is not a destiny.
- 182) Build the foundation walls of your knowledge on the real truth of the principles and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) as well as on the natural laws because you are destined as the fulfillers of those.
- 183) The prophets teach you that you shall turn to the real truth and keep your descendants' numbers within limits as is given to you through the laws of rationality that you shall follow by not taking the way of believing in divinities and tin gods, but the way of the truth because you are the ones who must turn to yourselves in



kindheartedness and give yourselves benevolence.

- 184) The proclaimers, the prophets, have always awakened themselves since time immemorial from the midst of their people, and they shall also do so in the time to come; and they have given you signs (teaching/evidence and marvels) of the truth, and they will continue to proclaim signs (evidence) of the truth and teach the writing of wisdom, so that you will cleanse yourselves of your unknowledgeness and you will be the mighty ones and the wise ones on Earth, who follow the truth-teaching.
- 185) You shall not turn away from the knowledge and the wisdom of the prophets, unless you are of misguided senses and erroneously assume (believe) that you have been chosen in better knowledge and by the world to spread fallacious teachings, by which you however put yourselves in the unright and you will certainly be the ones without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones).
- 186) Connect yourselves with the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), to be a true human being and the true master of your life.
- 187) Oh you people of your kind (human beings), in truth the primal wellspring (Creation) has chosen the knowledge, the wisdom and the swelling (growth/evolution) of your inner world (consciousness) for you through its laws and recommendations, so that you may fulfil the sense of the life and death does not overtake you through belief and in the state of being devoted to a god or tin gods, and therefore in unknowledge and unwisdom.
- 188) True prophets were with many peoples, that have since passed away, and they received what they merited, and it will be the same with you at your passing away; therefore you shall heed the word and teaching of the true prophet so that you will not be appraised according to those deeds as were connected to the peoples already passed away according to their merits.
- 189) Do not be believers in divinities or tin gods, but be knowing ones in creational truth so that you are led correctly; therefore do not follow a belief, but only the truth, the one made known since time immemorial by the prophets who were not false like those who set up divinities and tin gods beside the primal wellspring (Creation).
- 190) Know about the truth of the primal wellspring (Creation), the only one, and what has been revealed to you by the proclaimers, the prophets, of its laws and recommendations; therefore make no distinction between the words of one proclaimer, prophet, and another proclaimer, prophet, because their teaching of the truth is a single teaching although one that has been repeatedly re-explained in accordance with your intellect, and so that the teaching will be continuously expanded in each new time, newly explained and presented; and the last proclaimer, prophet, from the one line will explain the truthly teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in the greatest of detail, in the last sequence, which will be in a unique wise, after which the line of the proclaimers, the line of the prophets, will end and not be resumed again.
- 191) And if you are knowing then you are truly led; if, however, you turn back then you will cause a splitting in yourselves, so that you will certainly no longer satisfy equitableness (fairness) and the present existence, because then you are the all-deepening ones (all-hearing ones) of a belief and set against better knowledge.
- 192) Accept the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the laws and recommendations of formation (Creation); and who is a better teacher of the truth-teaching than the true prophets who are familiar with the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which they have learned since time immemorial!
- 193) Do not quarrel amongst yourselves about the real truth, because the truth is given by the laws of the power of origination (Creation) and is unchangeable; and the power of origination (Creation) alone is the great might and the unmeasurable secret beside which you shall not place any gods or tin gods; solely the power of origination (Creation) is the highest one above you and it has done its great works from which all firmaments (the universe) and all life originated, therefore do your works so that from you great things may also come forth as greatness and good things as goodness; and be upright in your doings so that you are not malefactors; therefore honour the name of the Creation, so that you do not misuse it.
- 194) Do you know that all people of your kind (human beings) were always people of your kind (human beings), both the believers in divinities and tin gods as well as the ones who have knowledge of the truth about the Creation?; or do you believe that you know it better than the prophets who are connected only to the truth?; and consider that you are without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) if you conceal the prophets' evidence of the truth, and that your wrong doings will not go unheeded.
- 195) It is taught that the old peoples passed away according to their merit, which was of a negative sense and wrong value, because they concealed and disregarded the truth-teaching; do not do the same, so that you will not be asked about their deeds and not made equivalent to them.
- 196) If you do the same as the old peoples who passed away according to their merits by falling away from the truth, then you will be asked why you have turned away from the true truth-teaching which you had however followed; therefore you are surely well-led on the right path, in the east, west, south and north, if you pay your



tribute to the truth.

- 197) The laws of the primal wellspring (laws of the Creation) determine that you shall raise yourselves up into peoples and shall live together in peace, love, freedom and in concord (harmony) with one another, and you shall be guardians of these values; and no laws shall be applied according to which malefactors (lawbreakers), doers of misdeeds and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) shall be subjected to punishments which harm their life and limb, in other words neither torture nor the threat of death nor their execution, because the inner feeling (psyche) and life and limb of the people of your kind (human beings) must remain inviolate; it is not the wise of the primal wellspring (Creation) nor of its laws and recommendations for human beings to be harmed in their inner feeling (psyche) or their life and limb, because punishment shall only be imposed in the form of taking measures for separation from the people (society) for a certain duration; in the world of your thoughts and your feelings you shall be compassionate and kindhearted towards all life and be fearless in your knowledge about the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 198) Often, you turn your face towards the firmament and look up to the stars where you are searching for your gods and tin gods, but they are not there because they are only the delusions of your brains; truly, however, if you look to the firmament and onto Earth and at everything that creeps and flies thereon, then you will see the great and vast work of the primal wellspring (Creation), the only one; therefore turn your face (eyes) to all that the primal wellspring (Creation) has created and has been maintaining since time immemorial, because only that is the truth and reality; and wherever you may be, turn your face to the miracles (outstanding things) of the primal wellspring (Creation) so that you recognise the truth and also the writing of the truth that is given to you and one day will be given to you in detail as a valuable book when the last prophet of the one line brings it forth in all comprehensiveness and gives it to you; and he will teach you the truth-teaching like none other before, and therefore the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life will not go unheeded in future because the doings of the last prophet will be outstanding without measure.
- 199) The last prophet brings the writing of the truth-teaching as well as all signs (marvels/evidence) of his power and the real truth which you shall follow; if you do not follow the real truth then you are following delusional teachings, their false cognisance and wishes; then you are truly without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones).
- 200) The rational ones amongst you to whom the writing of the teaching of the truth is given, recognise it as the truth just as they recognise their own children; others however are irrational because they knowingly (consciously) conceal the truth.
- 201) All truth is in the Creation and in its laws and recommendations, therefore do not create your own and false truth in yourselves, otherwise you are turning yourselves into people without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) and into doubters.
- 202) Everyone has a determination towards which they strive, therefore compete with one another in good works so that you complete great things wherever you may be; combine together to perform great works, then you have the might to do and achieve everything that you strive for; however, always use and do everything in goodness so that you do not end up as people without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones).
- 203) And wherever you come from, turn your face (eyes) towards the truth so that no abnormal doubt arises in you against it and your doings are not heedless.
- 204) And wherever you go, turn your face (eyes) towards the truth, and wherever you are, also turn your face towards it there; if you do so, then the ones living in equitableness (fairness and responsibility) will have no objection towards you, excepting those amongst them who wallow in inequity (irresponsibility/unfairness), who lie and deceive and do everything to harm you; however do not fear them but only be afraid of denying the truth so that goodness can be perfected in you and so that you are rightly led.
- 205) Just as the proclaimers, the prophets, came to you out of your midst announcing the signs (teaching/evidence) of the truth and bringing them forth, so you will be cleansed from unknowledge and inequity (unfairness/irresponsibility) if you follow the teaching that is given by the proclaimers, the prophets, and by the writing of the truth, which teaches you what you need to know.
- 206) Therefore think about the truth that is presented and explained to you by the proclaimers, the prophets, who think of you in love, therefore thank them and do not be unthankful to them.
- 207) Oh you, who are knowing in the truth, search for help in the learning of the truth-teaching and in patience, because truly there is a boon upon your head (mental-block = consciousness, thoughts, feelings and psyche) if you go forth in steadfastness.
- 208) And do not say about those who have been slain for the truth that they had fallen into foolishness, because truly they were in good senses, but they were not understood and were slandered due to their love for the truth by those who wallow in inequity (irresponsibility/unfairness) and truth-deniers; and the ones slain for the truth were alive in their nature and in their inner world (consciousness), but those who wallow in inequity



(irresponsibility/unfairness) and the truth-deniers were living dead.

- 209) Truly, you will all be tested by the appearance (nature) with anxiety and fear, hunger and loss of your goods and chattels and life and all that which is of nourishment, but when you are connected to patience then you will surely overcome all tests, because it is part and parcel of the life for things to go up and down, for good to alternate with bad, of which there can be no doubt; the message to the patient ones is, however, that all strivings yield good fruits and time will ultimately change everything to the good.
- 210) The believers say when unfortune strikes them that it is the will of their divinity or of their tin gods, however because there is no determining divinity and also no determining tin gods then neither their ministration nor retaliation exists, because in all things you alone are the determining factor in the carrying out of your own responsibility.
- 211) However, the unknowing ones and those who wallow in inequity (irresponsibility/unfairness) have fallen into belief and are looking for their salvation in divinities and tin gods, and hoping that these will drip grace and blessing onto their heads because they believe they are rightly led.
- 212) Certainly, the prophets' signs (marvels) of the truth appear to be miracles (outstanding things), but they are a creation of the might of their own inner world (consciousness), and therefore it is no ignominy for them to perform signs (marvels); however those who learn the talent of giving signs from the prophets and use this for their own gain in order to dazzle and to obtain advantages (benefits) and profit from it, they are the ones who are exposing themselves to ignominy and are burdening themselves with unright.
- 213) And it is no ignominy for those who care for the truth and travel to places where the truth-teaching is revealed; and therefore it is no ignominy, but a good work, if good is done beyond the limits of duty; and therefore it is no ignominy if help is bestowed on the truth-teaching in any wise so that it can spread amongst you; however, it is not rightful to make commerce for profit out of the truth-teaching, and it is also not rightful to proselytise and persuade for the truth-teaching and to impose it onto the unknowing ones and to attack them in their thoughts and feelings; human beings shall only come to the real truth through their own will, in the need of their demand and in complete freedom of their thinking in honest striving for the real truth and sense of the life.
- 214) Those wallowing in inequity (irresponsibility/unfairness) and the unknowing ones amongst you falsify what the prophets bring in the truth-teaching, in signs (marvels/evidence) and in the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) when they teach it to you through word and writing; and you curse the prophets, and in hatred also the people of your kind (human beings) all around, nevertheless the prophets forgive you but the people you have cursed amongst the people of your kind (human beings) do not forgive you and curse you also.
- 215) You, however, if you feel sorry and you improve yourselves and profess yourselves open to the truth, you will be representatives of the prophets, so that you shall pass on the recognised truth to all those who ask about it; however you shall not proclaim your wisdom unasked and not attack other people with it, such as the believers do who have become a slave to divinities and tin gods.
- 216) And if you regret your unknowledge and your inequity (unfairness) and improve yourselves and profess yourselves open to the truth-teaching, then you must forgive yourselves because you alone are the forgiving ones for yourselves when you have found the path to the truth and freedom, to peace, to love and to consonance (harmony) in yourselves and have thereby created a living hoard in yourselves.
- 217) Those, however, who are unknowing ones and ones wallowing in inequity (irresponsibility/unfairness) and eke out an existence as such, they curse themselves all-in-all because their present existence becomes an unjoy and, sooner or later, a torment.
- 218) But those who are distressed by unjoy and torment shall not remain so, because they shall moderate their own punishment that they have imposed on themselves and come to recognition if they turn to the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations and fulfil them.
- 219) And there is no god, no one god, and there is no tin god, no one tin god, who is favourable and benevolent, because god and tin god are inventions and lies and delusions of the brain of people of your kind (the human brain) and are of no use in any good wise whatsoever, except in evil for enslaving the people of your kind (human beings) through the mendacity of the priests serving god and tin gods, through whom their believers are subjugated and exploited.
- 220) Truly, in the Creation of the firmaments (universe) and the earth-roundnesses (worlds/planets) and in the change from day and night and in the flying machines which fly through the air and the skies, and in the ships which travel over the seas, lakes and rivers carrying everything that is useful to you, and in the water (rain) that falls from the firmament and invigorates Earth, and scattered over it the people of your kind (human beings) and all kinds of animals and other creatures, and in the change of the weather and the winds and the clouds which float between the firmament and Earth, and the sun in the sky and the stars and the moon in the firmament at night; all of these are real signs of the truthly Creation which stands as an unmeasurable secret above all life, above all firmaments (universe) and above all earths (worlds/planets); and they are signs



(evidence) for everyone who recognises the truth and understands it, who turns to it and forms their present existence with it.

- 221) However, there are others amongst you who have set up a divinity or a tin god or an object of worship for themselves because they are unknowing in the truth of the primal raising (Creation) and love their god or tin gods or object as if it were living and truthful; and they are sick in their belief and without rationality, because they are unable to distinguish between their delusion and the truth of reality; they are malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth, and if they could see themselves as malefactors (lawbreakers) and understand it then they would realise the hardship and the misery and the punishment that they themselves are imposing in themselves and which never comes from the primal raising (Creation) or from outside.
- 222) If those who lead you in a delusional belief in a god or tin gods then cut themselves off from you, then you are helpless as motherless lambs, because all your bonds have been cut to your leaders who keep you in the servitude (bondage) of belief.
- 223) And you who follow your false leaders of an untrue truth, in belief in a god or tin gods, you are afraid of turning back to the truth because you believe that you would deny your own god or tin gods as you are denying the real truth; however, if you turn around and turn yourselves towards the truth, then you will recognise the truth of origination (Creation) and its works, therefore you would free yourselves from your anguish and from the fire of self-punishment.
- 224) Eat of everything that serves you as food on Earth, fruits, vegetables and meat, of every fruit and every berry, of all herbs and of all animals and creatures of every kind and of everything that tastes good to you, because nothing is banned (forbidden), rather everything is allowed to you that tastes good to you and is not poisonous to you; if however someone forbids you from doing this, then they are not doing rightfully, are your obvious enemy and are contradicting the laws of origination (Creation) and the truth-teaching; they only bid you to do evil and disgraceful things, which contradict the laws of the primal well-spring (Creation) and that you speak ill of the truth and of things that you do not know.
- 225) And all of those amongst you who are knowing in real truth, eat of all good things that are given to you through the laws of formation (Creation) and of appearance (nature) on Earth; be thankful for everything that you receive because the goodness and the benevolence of the creative (Creation) and of the appearance (nature) created by it are vast and without end.
- 226) You shall only be prohibited from nourishing yourselves with things that have themselves perished and are rotten and therefore are inedible; given to you are all edible and non-poisonous fruits and vegetables, all fermented juices (alcohol such as wine, beer, spirits, etc.) and all the meat of all animals and other creatures from which you wish to eat, from the small rodent, from the rabbit, the goat, the sheep and the pig, cattle, the horse and the camel and everything that tastes good to you, but always in a tolerable and healthy quantity without gorging or gluttony; the animals and other creatures, rodents, rabbits, goats and sheep, pigs and cattle, horses and camels and everything that is edible may appear unclean externally because they live in dirt, but on the inside they are clean and good, therefore they may serve as nourishment once the outside is cleaned of dirt; also the blood of the animals and other creatures may serve as nourishment in some cases, and the fermented juice (alcohol such as wine, beer, spirits, etc.) shall only be enjoyed in a small measure so that no drunkenness obscures the senses; therefore the measure shall not be exceeded in any things and obedience shall be practised in all things so that all nourishment serves the bodily good and health.
- 227) And if it is said to you that you shall follow the teaching of the prophets, then you do not want to follow the call and say that you want to hurry after what was found existing since time immemorial in the belief in divinities and tin gods; however, as your talk is like this, even your fathers and mothers did not have any intellect and did not walk on the right way.
- 228) And those who are unknowing and have fallen into inequity (unfairness/irresponsibility) are like a man who is calling to something that cannot hear and cannot see anything, is deaf, blind and dumb and does not perceive any call or any cry.
- 229) Those amongst you who falsify and deny any part whatsoever of what is given through the laws of the creative (Creation) and of the teaching of the true prophets and their truthly writings, and those who accept the slander (calumny) in exchange for a miserable price, they are filling their admonishment (conscience) with nothing but fire that devours them inwardly and makes them loveless, inequitable (unfair), unknowing, unfree, unpeaceful and unharmonious; they cannot cleanse their admonishment (conscience) and they impose a great inner punishment on themselves because they are the ones who barter for an erroneous assumption; and they do not know how great is their underestimation of the burning fire of their admonishment (conscience).
- 230) The proclaimers, the prophets, have indeed brought the writing of the real truth, but nevertheless it is certain that you are at odds with the word and the writing of the proclaimers, the prophets; you have gone far in enmity and curse and slay the proclaimers, the prophets, who are bringing you the truth-teaching and a true



life.

- 231) Equitableness (fairness) is not a matter of you turning your face (eyes) to the east, west, south or north and knowing a lot about the world, but only the one who accepts the real truth, the truth of the creative (Creation) and its existence in reality, its laws and recommendations and all its inexhaustible works truly lives in equitableness (fairness); and equitableness (fairness) consists in learning the writing of the proclaimers, the prophets, and leading one's present existence in accordance with their truth, in love, peace and freedom and in consonance (harmony); and equitableness (fairness) consists in giving your surplus gains to the needy and to orphans as well as to wayfarers and all those who are obliged to request a charitable donation, or to those who are prisoners and who are starving; and equitableness (fairness) is rewarding those who keep their promises and do not break their word when they have given their word; and equitableness (fairness) is helping those who are patient in their poverty and affliction as well as those who are steadfast in the truth in times of battle (times of war) so that they may honestly prove themselves and no longer become thieves, deceivers, murderers and the like, and not turn to a god or tin gods in anxiety and fear.
- 232) Through your belief in gods and tin gods which demand blood, revenge and punishment from you, you believe that a right measure of revenge and retaliation has been decreed for you and that you shall shed blood and destroy life for those killed (murdered), for adultery and theft and deception, as well as for many other things just as the gods and tin gods you have invented command you, therefore it is only revenge and retaliation which you yourselves have invented that is meted out on the fallible ones; indeed, however, the creative (Creation) did not issue any such law that a misdeed or bad deed shall be punished by revenge and retaliation involving harming the body or taking the life, because the creative (Creation) gave the recommendation that you shall not kill in Ausartung; do not kill out of revenge and retaliation, as a punishment, out of hatred or jealousy, and also not through robbery, fury and anger, out of greed and avarice and many more besides, because it belongs to Ausartung and goes against the creationally given laws and is not worthy of the people of your kind (human beings).
- 233) But you believe in divinities and tin gods to which you have assigned false and delusional mights and claims as well as the instruction and demand for revenge and retaliation and punishment, so retaliation shall be practised in right measure by free ones for the free, by slaves for the slaves, by woman for the woman and by man for the man, but this is lies and deception, because no law and no recommendation of the Creation demands such a thing, but the opposite; punishment for misdeeds and bad deeds shall only be given in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which are given in such a wise that no matter how fallible anyone is they shall not be harmed in life or limb, so every misdeed, fallibility and bad deed of any type shall be punished in love and humanity, so that every fallible one, every child, every woman and every man may draw a good lesson from it and turn to the better and good so that reintegration into the people (society) may be once again possible when the conditions are good for it; if reintegration into the people (society) is not possible because the criminal or murderous sense of the fallible ones does not change and no rationality and no love can be brought forth, as well as no peace and no concord (harmony), then the fallible ones shall be separated from the people (society) for their lifetime and brought to a place of fulfilment of guidelines (place of execution of punishment = island, secluded area, etc.), where they are imprisoned and live in freedom within the confines and learn, and are provided with all the necessary things for their present existence; places of fulfilment of guidelines shall be secluded areas and islands from which the guilty ones cannot get back to unconfined freedom, but must remain where they are.
- 234) Be at all times lenient and forgiving in accordance with equitableness (fairness/responsibility/moderate); so it is, if anything is decreed on one by his or her next one or by authority or by the court then the demand for atonement shall be made with justification and the fallible one shall be taken for punishment through an equitable (fair/appropriate) conviction, although neither life nor limb is allowed to be harmed; the laws and recommendations of the Creation are explained so that everyone may learn from everything and promote their knowledge and their wisdom so that they may become good and follow the laws and recommendations of the love and of the Creation for their own benefit and to the weal of all, and create everything to the best in themselves; only those who contravene these laws and recommendations of the Creation commit an outrage against them and against the truth of the life and against everything that is rightful; and whoever puts themselves in the unright and commits an outrage against the truth will meet a painful punishment in themselves – through lovelessness, discord, unfreedom, unpeace and inequality (disharmony) as well as many things that have a negative sense and wrong value.
- 235) There is no value in your life in re-retaliation and revenge, because through retaliation and revenge you turn yourselves into guilty ones and fallible ones, therefore your acts of retaliation and your desires for revenge must also be punished.
- 236) And you shall practise equitableness (being fair/fairness) in all things, so you also have to observe equitableness (fairness) between man and woman, because both of you shall be equal and none given



precedence, therefore the same rights apply to woman as to man; the woman shall not be subservient to the man, and vice versa; therefore the man shall not use the woman and her womb in salaciousness and selfishness for fulfilling his own pleasure like a field which is ploughed and sown at will for one's own enjoyment; the same rights shall prevail amongst and between both sexes also during sexual intercourse, therefore equality in all things applies to man and woman just as an equivalent value is given to both in the conjoining of bodies in order to beget offspring or for the stimulating and joyful and joining and healing fulfilment of pleasure.

- 237) And as you shall practise equitableness (being fair/fairness) in all things, so also practise equitableness (being fair) to your children because they are no less (inferior) than you, therefore you shall treat them as people of your kind (human beings) just as you treat those who are no longer young (are grown-ups) and are not children any more.
- 238) And as you shall practise equitableness (being fair/fairness) in all things, so think about your life and your death because after your birth both are unavoidable for you, so that you must ponder them and find the way to both in calm and peace; therefore practise equitableness (fairness) on your descendants and relatives because when the time comes for you to depart from life you shall have settled everything so that all your left-behind chattels and your wealth may be distributed in equitableness (fairness); but you few, who are able to write, prepare a text with instructions on how and to whom your heritable goods, chattels and wealth shall be handed over in whichever particular amounts; if you are however unable to write then announce your last will to a scribe so that he can record everything in writing which is your final decision; if you leave anything behind, then make a writing (testament) before you lay yourself down close to death and make the writing (testament) for man, woman and child, for the parents and close relatives or for friends and for whatever you wish, in order to act in equitableness (recognition/approval/fairness); when you make the writing (testament) or have it made then act in equitableness (fairness) and do not cheat any of those who remain behind so that no discord, bad blood and strife or even worse may flare up; and those who remain behind shall not fall prey to avarice and not call on the jurisdictions to break the last will of the deceased for their own benefits; and the survivors of the deceased shall not be at odds with one another and quarrel over the wealth and chattels, because such doings are not worthy of people of your kind (human beings) and are only done by ones without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/ones without fairness) and unknowing ones who are reviled by the people as scum.
- 239) And as you shall practise equitableness (fairness) in all things, so also practise equitableness (fairness) in that you do not steal, destroy or falsify any writing (testament) that a human being has left behind after his or her death in order to settle everything; anyone who does this is committing an outrage against themselves and the truth and his or her fellow human beings, and there is never any boon from it; and those who do it will truly have a heavy guilt placed on them which they will find difficult to bear.
- 240) Truly, however, those who practise equitableness (fairness) and fear that the one who has prepared or had prepared his or her writing (testament) for after his or her dying and therefore for his or her goods and chattels and wealth for the survivors has created partiality or inequity for the survivors through his or her writing (testament), that human being shall confront the human being who produced the writing (testament) and show (reveal) the correct way to him or her; and if survivors fall into enmity due to partiality and inequity of the deceased and his or her writing (testament) then rational people shall bring about peace between those affected so that they will be forgiving and compassionate to one another.
- 241) You believe that fasting is prescribed for you, and it is maintained that fasting was already prescribed for those who have gone before you, but this is by no means the truth because it has been from time immemorial only a discourse by those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) so that you would remain with your god or tin god through your belief.
- 242) Truly, fasting is no law, although it is a recommendation which serves your health and the well-being of your body so that you do not practise gorging and gluttony and satisfy yourselves with a good measure; therefore, according to your own discretion, take a number of days determined by yourselves during which you only consume moderate nourishment once a day; however, whoever is ill and those who would have difficulty in withstanding the fast shall refrain from doing so and do it if it is necessary for them; and fasting does not apply to children and those hungering in misery, because they require nourishment and cannot do without it; therefore let children and those hungering in misery eat in voluntary observance of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and do a good work for them; and fasting is good for you if you wish to understand it – for your health, for your body and everything that is within it, as well as for your discipline and taming.
- 243) And there shall not be any particular time for fasting, but it is a recommendation-given guidance to you that fasting shall be performed when the requirement or health stand behind it, therefore they apply as proof of direction and differentiation according to which fasting shall be performed; whoever has the want for fasting



or because his or her health demands it, or because it is given, for whatever reason, he or she may fast for a predetermined time depending on his or her own free will or the instruction given by someone versed in medicine; however, whoever is suffering from an illness shall not take part in fasting or only do so according to the instruction of someone versed in medicine; therefore wish to make it easy and not difficult for yourselves and perform fasting according to the necessary extent so that you are rightly led and that you may be thankful for it.

- 244) And if you are asked about the reason for fasting by the unknowing ones, then say that it is a matter of your health and tell the questioner or the requester that they shall listen to the guidance of the recommendations for fasting and be knowing in them so that they may walk the right way.
- 245) Also in the time of fasting, it is permitted for you to go into your woman or your man if you are rightful in your bond with one another (connected to one another); therefore do not act in inequity (unfairness/irresponsibility) against yourselves, but be kindhearted and practise equitableness (fairness) on yourselves and grant yourselves easement in your union with one another, therefore you may go into one another also during the time of fasting and strive for what is sufficient for your good; and eat and drink during the time of fasting in an appropriate minimum extent so that you will not be prevented from fasting due to great hunger; and when you complete your fasting then the day may return to its given course although you should restrict the amount of nourishment so that you do not suffer any injury; these are the limits that are given by the recommendations so that you do not exceed them and accept them so that you will be protected against everything that harms your health and well-being and brings you evil.
- 246) And do not devour your wealth amongst one another through falseness and lying and deception, and not through greed and stinginess; and do not offer your wealth for bribery, not to those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) and not to authority in order to be granted advantages and right while in the unright, because thereby you knowingly (consciously) wish to devour parts of the wealth of the other people; live at all times in equitableness (fairness/responsibility) and honestly and do not dare to commit misdeeds in order thereby to increase your wealth by striving to swindle the wealth of others through unright.
- 247) As you are the ones living in equitableness (fairness/responsibility), uphold righteousness (conscientiousness) so that you do not enter the houses of your next ones from behind as thieves; respect the house and the right and the wealth of your next ones so that you do not covet your next one's goods and chattels just as you do not covet the wife of your next one or the husband of your next one; therefore, you shall enter the houses through the doors that are opened to you so that you may enter honestly and be welcome; and therefore take heed of this and respect your next one's goods and chattels and wealth, and honour your next one's wife and your next one's husband so that you will always be received in a friendly wise and be honoured guests; be fearful of the unright so that it may go well with you.
- 248) And if you are asked about the purpose of the moon and the stars in the firmament, then teach that the moon helps to determine that on Earth which makes possible the tides of the seas and the changes of the weather by which everything thrives and lives well.
- 249) And if you enter into a bond between man and woman, then both shall have the capabilities for doing so, and each party shall have sufficient goods and chattels and wealth to bring into the bond as male and female dowry as is given in accordance with possibility; however, no purchase price shall be paid for a woman or for a man, because neither the one nor the other is a commodity.
- 250) And if your bond of marriage is broken, then separate in honour and do not quarrel, rather divide your goods and chattels and your wealth fairly in accordance with the earnings as acquired by the woman and the man, so that the share falls to each party as he or she has worked for, and may he or she be satisfied with it; if one has more than the other, then the one who owns more may give to the other at his or her discretion; it shall not be the case that authority or jurisdiction shall make assessments for a settlement and indemnity and the like if woman and man exercise equality and equitableness (fairness); therefore jurisdiction or authority shall only make an assessment if a decision has to be reached in a dispute, because man and woman are free in their bond and also in setting the line about what shall be.
- 251) And if a bond of marriage is broken, then a letter of separation shall be written, both by the woman and by the man so that it is set down in writing that both parties are no longer in a bond and are free and unmarried and can go their own way; and both man and woman have the same duties and rights in the dissolution of the bond so that neither the man nor the woman is to be favoured; and goods and chattels as well as possessions and wealth acquired jointly by the man and woman before and during the bond of marriage shall be allocated half to the man and half to the woman in honesty and equitableness (fairness); if there is a dispute between the man and woman about the allocation when the bond is cancelled and if they cannot jointly find the way to this then jurisdiction or the authority shall decide based on precise documentary evidence and also clarify the situation in terms of goods and chattels, possessions and wealth in order to reach a wise decision on this and to do rightfully so that each party receives the share according to his or her earnings



or what they contributed as a dowry, so neither the woman nor the man is cheated; the dowry contributed by the woman belongs to her, and the dowry contributed by the man belongs to him, both during the bond and also when a termination of the bond is completed; therefore it shall also be the case that after a termination of the bond of marriage the woman and the man go their own ways, and also that the woman is not responsible for paying for the maintenance of the man nor the man for the maintenance of the woman because after separation from bed and board each party is responsible for providing for their own living and their own maintenance so that equality and equitableness (fairness) may prevail.

- 252) And if a bond of marriage is broken, then neither the woman nor the man shall be preferred in law if jurisdiction or the authority must decide on the break-up of the bond, rather both parties shall be subject to the same duty and the same right; it is given, if the bond breaks up, that the children shall not be allocated either to the woman or the man alone for their upbringing and their welfare, rather it shall be that a regulated reciprocity shall exist so that the children stay alternately for a number of days with the mother and a number of days with the father, so that the children are not torn in themselves and do not develop any extraneousness towards one parent, and both parents are responsible for the children; therefore it shall be given that the children are brought up by both parents, and also that not one parent alone but both parents, namely mother and father, shall contribute equally to the welfare of the children; if one of the parents can be proved to be doubtful or incapable in all things relating to the upbringing and care of the children, then the other parent shall take them into his or her charge and bring them up and provide them with everything necessary, but it is given that they shall not be withheld from the other parent so that the parental duty can be discharged; and in case of any malicious violation of this then the fallible parent shall be rebuked by the authority or jurisdiction and subjected to a stern punishment; if both parents can be proved to be incapable of bringing up their children and supplying them with everything that they require, then a decision shall be reached that they shall live in a suitable place similar to where orphans live so that they can receive a good upbringing, love and support; children are not the property of their parents because they are in their nature free people of your kind (human beings) with their own thoughts and feelings as well as with the right to decide of their own free will.
- 253) And if a bond of marriage is broken and a letter of separation is issued then the woman shall abstain from sensual (sexual) relations with another man for ten months waiting for the monthly menstruation so that no concealed pregnancy or offspring may become a burden and an obligation on another man; and if a man and woman separate from one another and nevertheless live under the same roof, and the woman approaches the end of her waiting period of ten months of monthly menstruation then she may remain in a decorous wise under the same roof in accordance with her volition and that of the separated man, or in a decorous wise she shall leave the place and go her own way; and this depends on whose property the house is and how the separated man or woman have decided between themselves on where to stay; but neither woman nor man may remain in the house contrary to right, so that they do not commit any brutality against one another; and if they behave in correctness then truly neither the man nor woman need to carry any burden and guilt; therefore do not mock these recommendations and think of your honour and dignity at all times which you can carry or may lose; consider the recommendations in wisdom and admonish yourselves always to comply with them.
- 254) And if you have separated from one another as man and woman then you shall not presume to revile the other party, slander them or do anything bad to them; therefore you shall also not prevent the separated woman or the separated man from entering into another bond of marriage if the woman or man has agreed with another man or woman in a decorous wise; truly, this recommendation is also an admonition that it will be more beneficial and more understandable for you when you follow this guideline (sign-posting/leading thought).
- 255) And if an honourable woman becomes pregnant and bears offspring then she shall be given all honour and rights of motherhood and shall be respected, and the child shall enjoy a good upbringing and nourishment; and no evil is to be done to any woman or any ignominy heaped upon her for what has been created in her womb, and it shall be that the creators of her fruit admit in honour and undertake all duties by participating in the education and nourishment and welfare.
- 256) And if a bond of marriage is broken and a letter of separation issued, and the man and woman find themselves together again in reconciliation then they shall be permitted to take one another back and enter into a new bond of marriage with one another.
- 257) And women have the same rights as men have in equitableness (recognition/approval/fairness), therefore men have no pre-eminence over women.
- 258) If a separation between man and woman has been pronounced and a letter of separation given, then they may join together again and contract a new bond of marriage; this shall not happen more than twice, because it is not permitted three times since this proves that the relationship of marriage and the human bond between



the two cannot be maintained and gives rise to discord, therefore the man and woman discharge one another from the bonds of marriage in a decorous wise and in kindheartedness, and give one another the letter of separation so that the bond may not be concluded between the pair on another occasion.

- 259) And if a separation has been pronounced between a man and woman then it is not permitted for the man to demand back from the woman or for the woman to demand back from the man anything that had been given to her or him during the course of the bond of marriage, unless the woman herself or the man himself wishes to give something back that was given to her or him; therefore it is given that these imposed barriers shall be observed, although the purpose is not in order to gain freedom, because nothing shall be given to get it; therefore these barriers shall not be overstepped so that you will not be without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) and do not fall into the responsibility of the other.
- 260) Just as children are no property of the parents, so no person of your kind (human being) is the property of another, therefore servitude (bondage) and slavery amongst people of your kind (human beings) contravene the honour and dignity of people of your kind (human beings) and infringe the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and go against love, freedom, peace and concord (harmony) which have incontrovertible value as the basic principle of the existence and contain both equitableness (fairness) and dignity for people of your kind (humanity).
- 261) A bond of marriage shall apply in every case when a woman and a man come together for forming a line (family) and it makes no difference whether the bond is concluded between the man and woman by their own volition (endeavour and decision) or by an assessment and conclusion through the authority (marriage performed by them); and in the bond of marriage, the woman and man shall be joined together in all things with the same duties and rights.
- 262) And it is not permitted that parents promise their children to other children in a bond of marriage at an earlier or later date; and it is not permitted for parents to force their children through Gewalt and compulsion into concluding a bond of marriage, because woman and man are free to determine (make decisions) and are free in their opinion and inclination as to entering a bond of marriage; and it is also not permitted for siblings to force their siblings into a bond of marriage through Gewalt and compulsion if this is not in accordance with the free volition of the pressed sibling; and it is not permitted for relations or non-relations to force a woman or a man into a marital bond in any wise; therefore it is also not permitted for children to enter into a marital bond with one another before the time when they have grown out of childhood and have therefore reached their full swelling (growth/adulthood) and it is not permitted for a woman or a man to be purchased in order to enter a bond of marriage.
- 263) And neither a man nor a woman shall be married, no matter how much they may like one another, if they curse the truth of the laws of the primal power (Creation), the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because they are not merely unknowing ones in the truth but are ones without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) who are wallowing in falsehood, practising evil and conducting their life in Ausartung; even an unknowing woman in the truth or an unknowing man in the truth is better than those who curse the truth; if you marry someone who curses the truth then you will have no joy with them, find no well-being and no love as well as no comfort and no peace and neither freedom nor consonance (harmony), but only maliciousness and strife as well as discord and affliction; those who curse the real truth, call to the fire of Ausartung and destruction, therefore through them there can be no ongoing existence of a bond of marriage; therefore know what a woman and a man are reflecting and striving for so that a wise decision may be taken about them.
- 264) And if you marry believers who attach themselves to gods or tin gods then protect yourselves from their belief so that you do not fall into the same water in which the belief in their gods or tin gods is swimming.
- 265) And if a woman is having a monthly cleansing (menstruation) then the man shall not go to the woman, but stay away from her womb throughout the days of cleansing and for two days thereafter until she is once again clean; when the woman is once again cleansed then the man may go to her again as is given to you as a duty and a source of enjoyment; and all those who keep to the recommendation live in rationality and in equitableness (fairness) because they are the ones who keep themselves clean.
- 266) The woman is not the man's property of sensuality (sexuality) which he may approach when and how he will, because the woman's volition and need are preconditions in order to complete the sexual intercourse, therefore a willing mutuality shall be given so that the woman and man share the same volition, so that no compulsion is exerted; and if woman and man sleep together willingly then it shall be given that love and goodness are granted in advance so that both may meet one another in dignity and love and fulfil their act of love in the same wise.
- 267) And a bond of purely same-gender concordance (partnership) is permitted, thus between woman and woman and between man and man so that they live together in communality with equal rights in all things; however, the bond between man and man shall be such that they do not change their appearance (nature) in order to



be able to bear children, so that they do not violate the laws and the regulation of the primal power (Creation); and in same-gender concordance between partners it is permitted for sensuality (sexual doings) to take place as with heterosexual concordance.

- 268) And it is permitted to the woman as well as to the man to bestow pleasure (satisfaction, i.e. self-gratification) on her or his own sexual organ, because it is in the appearance (nature) of the two and it does not infringe the laws of the primal power (Creation) to do such.
- 269) And the sexual misuse of children is a serious outrage and a shameful act against the children and the laws of the primal power (Creation), therefore such an act is to be condemned with hard punishment of the execution of fulfilment of guidelines, a separation of men or separation of women (banishment and exclusion from the people/society, separated by gender) and with dishonour for the necessary time.
- 270) And if you beget offspring then first consider whether you have the capability and possibility to bring up and feed children truly rightfully; and so it shall be that no illnesses are present for the offspring which they could inherit; therefore it shall not be permitted for deracinated (asocial ones) and enemies of people (enemies of society) to have offspring, nor shall it be permitted to those who use Gewalt and those who threatened the life and safety of the people (terrorists, etc.); also those who are incapable of bringing up and nourishing children as well as those who are confused and sick in their inner world (consciousness) and in their psyche as well as those with inherited illnesses and those addicted to fermented juices and medicines and intoxicants (drugs or narcotics) shall not be allowed to beget offspring; offspring shall only be permitted in the number of three per woman and in one marital bond; therefore the number of three offspring per woman also applies if a former bond has been dissolved and the letter of separation given, and if then a new bond is entered into; if a woman already has one child from a previous marital bond then the number of two offspring shall not be exceeded in a further bond, so that the number of three children applies per woman.
- 271) And the recommendation is given that mothers must nourish their children (infants) at their breast for two years so that the children receive all the necessary nourishment for their health and survival throughout their entire life, because the mother's nourishment is of great importance; and the begetter of the child shall be obliged to provide for the child's mother and the child's nourishment and clothing in accordance with the customs and habits of the people in question; however, the father of the child shall not be imposed upon beyond his ability so that he can carry out his duty in honour and dignity; therefore the child's mother shall not allow the father to suffer, nor her child, nor shall the child's father allow the mother and the child to suffer; and the same thing applies to the godparents and the siblings and relatives or other wardens and the heirs.
- 272) If the mother and father decide for whatever reasons in joint agreement regarding the health of the child or of the mother and following good advice that the child shall be weaned off the mother's breast, then that is their concern and no reproach shall be offered; and if the mother is unable to nourish her child at her own breast then a wet nurse may be taken for breast feeding the child, but the wet nurse must receive an agreed upon payment in accordance with equitableness (fairness).
- 273) And if the man or the woman dies during the bond of marriage, then the sadness and sorrow shall be dealt with in dignity and the deceased man or woman remembered in honour; the sorrowing shall not be unconsidered and not in such a wise as to bring forth any illness in the inner world (consciousness) or the psyche; therefore the mourning shall also not last too long, but be guided by objectivity and comprehension; and honour and dignity shall be borne so that the surviving partner does not practise any self-gratification or sexuality for a period of time to be determined by herself or himself, in order to guard herself or himself against regret and shame; however once the period of self-imposed abstinence has expired, then the surviving woman or the surviving man may do whatever she or he likes with herself or himself in accordance with equitableness (their own approval/fairness) without burdening herself or himself with pangs of conscience for anything.
- 274) And it shall be a matter of decency and honour and respect that the surviving man or the surviving woman waits twenty four months before contracting another bond of marriage; however, it is not beneath dignity and honour and respect to think about another woman or another man during the twenty four months and to maintain a friendship with him or her with the intention of entering into a bond of marriage; however, during the waiting time of decency and honour and respect do not secretly conclude an agreement for a bond of marriage, because this is not seemly; if you do this, however, then you are putting yourselves in ignominy and disrepute; therefore do not decide on a bond of marriage before expiry of the bidden time, so that you will stand in honour and dignity before the people of your kind (human beings); therefore you shall think about guarding yourselves against contravening the recommendation, then know whatever you do and omit, the ones without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) and the unknowing ones in the truth are not forgiving and not forbearing.
- 275) It will not be counted against you if you separate, the man from his woman and the woman from her man, if you do not consummate rightfully (not sexually unified) and do not touch one another; but if you do not



separate because of this and therefore stay together then you shall remain in honour and dignity of one another and take care for one another in all things; and you shall take care in accordance with the extent of your wealth, the rich according to their kind and the poor according to their kind; this makes the support as it should be, and this is the duty of the righteous ones (conscientious ones).

- 276) And if you separate before you have touched one another, but after you have jointly created something and have amassed wealth together, then both the woman and the man shall have half of what has been accumulated and therefore the goods and chattels and the ownership and the wealth; but that which the woman or the man brought into the bond of marriage as a dowry shall remain their personal and undisputed property; unless the woman or the man voluntarily surrenders her or his own dowry in whole or in part in favour of the other party; always remain close to righteousness (conscientiousness) in your decrees (instructions) and regulations, and do not forget to do one another true good even if you have separated from one another.
- 277) And those of you who die and leave a woman or a man behind shall take care during your life so that the surviving partner, the woman or the man, will be provided for (money/wealth, in new times also a pension) for a long time so that the requirement for life and housing will be secured; they shall however not be rebuked if they want to bear the responsibility for providing for themselves and therefore make arrangements for themselves if they do this in accordance with equitableness (their own discretion in fairness) and power.
- 278) And those who have separated from the bond of marriage shall not be provided with any support because each one goes their own way, woman and man, therefore they are responsible for their own upkeep in the entire extent (scope) and neither the man shall pay for the upkeep of the woman, nor the woman for the upkeep of the man; if children have come forth from the bond of marriage then the separated persons are equally obligated to pay for the upkeep of the children, therefore the mother by half and the father by half, because in no case shall only the mother or the father be responsible for the living costs and upkeep of the children, by means of which one parent would obtain benefits and advantages from the other; and if the mother or the father refuses to pay her or his half of the support for the children then the legal process shall demand an accounting and half of the support for the children from the fallible mother or the fallible father; and if the fallible mother or the fallible father refuses nevertheless to uphold her or his duty then the punishment shall be the fulfilment of guidelines in isolation from the people (society) until the children have grown up (to adulthood); and the fallible one who acted in this wise shall be paid for the work they will have to provide to the extent that half of the support for the children is assumed and their pay shall be given to the parent who is in charge of the children's upbringing and upkeep; and the children shall spend a certain number of days with the mother and a certain number of days with the father for their upbringing and upkeep because the children shall not be split between the parents in such a wise that any rejection (growing apart) results; therefore man and woman shall go their own ways in the separation (divorce) of their bond of marriage and be responsible for their own upkeep to the full extent (scope) and, accordingly, half the upkeep of the children, so that neither party, woman or man, suffers disadvantages from the man paying to support the woman or the woman paying to support the man; because even when the bond of marriage has been separated, man and woman have the same duties and rights, both as man and woman and as mother and father.
- 279) Truly, the prophets gave you and give you recommendations as they are given for the equality of all people of your kind (human beings) and for the equivalence and the rights of the woman and the man and the children, so that you may understand it.
- 280) Truly, you have received life through the laws of origination (Creation) and through its works, but you disregard the laws and recommendations of origination (Creation) as you also disregard the teaching of the proclaimers, the prophets, and revile them and do not give them any thanks although they are fighting for the truth and for your well-being, because they are knowing and wise and bring you their love; but you do not want to be knowing and you threaten them with death despite the fact that they teach you, so you shall lead a better and an equitable (fair/responsible) life.
- 281) Truly, there is scarcely a single one amongst you who would give a prophet a goodly gesture of appreciation (give consent) so that he could increase knowledge with further knowledge; truly, you belittle the prophet's knowledge of the truth and increase your unknowledge so you do not find the truth; but search for the real truth and fight for it in a peaceful wise once you have found it.
- 282) Fight in a peaceful and Gewalt-less wise for the truth of formation (Creation) and its laws and recommendations against those who fight you and the real truth, but in doing this do not exceed the bounds of goodness and equitableness (fairness/responsibility) so that you do not fall into acts of Gewalt, because lack of restraint and Gewalt are not liked by the people of your kind (human beings).
- 283) Be at all times peaceful to those who believe themselves to be your enemies, who fight you and drive you from one place to another; and love those who call themselves your enemies for the sake of their dignification



(being human in the real and true sense) as people of your kind, and do not hate them because of their bad deeds, but only assess their bad deeds and do not make assessments about the people of your kind (human beings) as people of your kind (human beings); and wherever you meet any who give themselves as your enemies, then do not deem them to be enemies on your own account either; do not kill (murder) them or drive them away, but offer them the hand of peace and create friendship between you and them; therefore do not pursue those who believe themselves to be your enemies either in order to mete out evil revenge and retaliation on them, because persecution and revenge and retaliation are as bad as manslaughter; if your self-appointed enemies attack you, then fight against them with geweldsame Gewaltlosigkeit, with words and deeds, but you shall not kill in Ausartung but only if there is an inescapable danger to your life, so that you only kill in defence in extremis (self-defence) when your life is threatened; when however the ones who believe they are your enemies let go of you then show them benevolence (humanity) and forgiveness so that there will be peace between you.

- 284) Only fight against your self-appointed enemies with the means of knowledge and peace until their persecution of you ceases and they allow rationality in themselves; and when they cease their persecution of you and turn to you in peace then know that you shall not show any hostility to them, just as you shall not harbour any hostility towards the unknowing ones and those who are without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones).
- 285) If the ones who call themselves your enemies or those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) or unknowing ones defile your honour and dignity and your righteousness (conscientiousness) through lying and deception and slander (calumny), then their actions shall not be retributed by you with lovelessness and hatred or with revenge and other evil; in all laws of the formation (Creation) and the appearance (nature), there are no laws of retaliation and revenge, neither of hatred nor other evil.
- 286) If those who call themselves your enemies as well as unknowing ones or those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) commit brutality then do not punish them with hostility or hatred and revenge or retaliation and other evil, but practise equitableness (be fair/fairness) and strive for forgiveness, and know that equitableness (fairness) is with those who nourish it; if a fallible human being commits brutality against you in any wise, and you cannot defend yourselves against it through rationality and equitableness (being fair), then do not administer punishment yourselves through self-justice, rather call on the authority or jurisdiction so that the matter and the things will be clarified by them and the fallible ones judged in accordance with equitableness (fairness) and the dignification of people of your kind (humanity), as is appropriate for the offence committed against you.
- 287) Give donations as often as you can and are able for the sake of the truth, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so that the teaching of the truth concerning the primal wellspring (Creation) and its laws and recommendations spread themselves; but in spreading the teaching, do not cast yourselves into ruin by your own hand, therefore do not donate more than your power and your wealth permit; do good at all times and do not undertake commerce with the truth-teaching, just as you shall also not proclaim it at the top of your voice and not attack and make enemies of unknowing ones and believers in gods and tin gods with the teaching, and as you also shall not try to proselytise them.
- 288) And, for the sake of the truth, always carry out everything in honesty and equitableness (fairness) and instruct (teach) your next ones without encouraging and without coercing them in the words of the truth and in the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) so that they may also learn and be in agreement with them in order to live in equitableness (to be fair/to live in fairness) and to lead a good life.
- 289) And it is taught to you that you shall not shear your head because of a belief in a god or tin gods or for the sake of a false teacher who demands such from you in false truth; and you shall not circumcise your sexual organ because of a belief in a god or tin gods or for the sake of a false teacher, unless it is necessary because of health; but it is said to you through the true proclaimers, the true prophets, that you shall clean your sexual organ every day as a matter of course because health and cleanliness demand it; and therefore clean your sexual organ after every connection (sexual intercourse); and cover your head from the sun, because its fiery beam (ray) is full of danger and brings forth injury, and this recommendation applies both to woman and man; and therefore it applies to man and woman that you must cover your face with a cloth when the fiery glow (radiation) is very strong or if impurities and dust are filling the air, otherwise you may suffer from it.
- 290) Do not quarrel with people of your kind (fellow human beings) or with those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) and not with unknowing ones and therefore not with believers regarding the real truth, because it is given by the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and they are immutable; only the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) is the true might over you and the unmeasurable secret and you shall not have either other mights or gods and tin gods or venerable ones (holy ones) beside it; truly, only the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) is the highest over you, and it alone has



performed the great works on earths (worlds/planets) and in the firmaments (universe), and only from it have all earths (worlds/planets) and firmaments (universe) and all life originated, in the same wise you also shall carry out your works according to your ability so that great as greatness and good as goodness may come forth from them; and when doing this be at all times upright in your efforts, because you shall not be malefactors (lawbreakers), and remember that you shall not misuse the name of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) and that you shall keep it honoured.

- 291) And as you do your works, so you shall make every day a day of festivity so that you accomplish your deeds in honour and that you do not fall victim to lowly temptations; every day, you shall do your work in honour so that you find joy in your doing and that you remain in equitableness (fairness), so that you do not do the same as those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) who procure what they need by theft and lying and deception; therefore may you consider that ill-gotten goods never prosper.
- 292) Follow equitableness (fairness/responsibility) at all times and do not break the bond with the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) which you shall honour as you honour and love your parents; and therefore you shall also not break the bond of marriage once you have entered into it, because a consummated bond is venerable, a proof (controlling) which you shall always be conscious of.
- 293) And it has been taught you since time immemorial that you shall not commit false witness (perjury), neither against a woman or a man, nor against your next one and the truth and also not against life and the wellspring of wisdom (Creation); and as you shall not give false witness (perjury), so you shall never speak the untruth, because truly, the untruth is always inconstant and pushes to the light of the world, so that every liar fails; the untruth also lies in cursing the truth, therefore the truth shall not be cursed against because doing so yields no good fruits and no good reward.
- 294) And do not dare to misuse the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) for worthless cults, for divinities and tin gods which are only inventions by people of your kind (human beings); and do not drop down (on your knees) before those who have raised themselves up to be gods and exalted ones and false teachers and prophets; and do not use the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) for hateful speeches, and do not exaggerate them and make sure that no strife comes from this; do good from the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) and equip yourselves with patience in righteousness (conscientiousness), so that you will always live as ones of intellect.
- 295) You will not come to any harm if you make use of the fullness of the goodness of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation), because its ample grace is given to you amply for all time so that you may think and act through your own power and of your own will in all things both in the false and in the right and so you may bring yourselves onto the way of the truth; if, however, you hurry away from the benefit of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation), then consider that you belong to the ones who have gone astray.
- 296) And if you carry out acts obligated by the primal wellspring (Creation), which are given to you through the laws and recommendations, then you are creating your own glory in yourselves, just as all those living in equitableness (fairness/responsibility) before you created and upheld the same glory and were able to celebrate in love and peace as well as in freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 297) Some of those amongst you demand special signs (evidence) for themselves of the truth and the primal wellspring (Creation) so that they may believe, but the truth is not belief, nor does the primal wellspring (Creation) send special signs (evidence) for the individual who demands them, because truly all existence of all earths (worlds/planets) and firmaments (universe), all animals and other creatures and all people of your kind (human beings), as well as the existence of all life and all stars in the firmaments (universe) are unmeasurable signs (marvels) of the presence of the primal wellspring (Creation) and whoever may comprehend it, comprehends it.
- 298) Never be haughty with your next ones, and live in modesty with everyone and with yourselves; do not strive for renown and fame, because otherwise you will fall victim to megalomania, selfishness and wanting to appear to be more than you are, as well as the worship in irrationality performed by others who bow down to pay you homage (glorify you).
- 299) And whoever amongst you is ill or has a suffering in the head (consciousness/psyche) shall expunge this by obtaining the help of those who are versed in medicine if he or she cannot help himself or herself; but if you are not ill and without suffering then be thankful and benevolent and give alms (gifts) to those who are ill and full of suffering and who are unable to put themselves in the care of those versed in medicine for healing.
- 300) If there is a place somewhere where the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is taught in a truly truthly wise, then make a journey there and learn the truth-teaching so that you may be knowing ones and equitable ones (fair ones/responsible ones), and no blame will be put on you for doing this; and if you want to make the journey, then you shall think about not conducting any hateful talk, nor permitting yourselves any breach of the laws and recommendations of the Creation and no strife either.



- 301) The good that you do on the journey is seen by those who are with you, therefore provide yourselves with the necessary victuals so that you can also nourish those who are in need and do not have any victuals for the journey to the place of the truth-teaching; but truly, consider that the best victual at all times is righteousness (conscientiousness).
- 302) And when you return from the place of the truth-teaching to your dwelling, then think about the teaching of the truth, the proclaimers, the prophets, so that you will keep it in yourselves and be well led by it; and this applies even if you were previously one of those who had gone astray, before you imbibed the truth-teaching in yourselves.
- 303) Always think about the truth-teaching of the prophets for all time, but you do not bring down any guilt on yourselves if you nevertheless do unright on one or another occasion because this is the way of the learning; therefore it is given that you are also fallible in the knowledge of the truth, in order to learn from it, but in this sense only be doers of unright in what concerns your thinking and feeling and in your nature as well as in understanding and actions; do not however be as doers of unright also fallible ones, because the sense of the fallible ones is to do evil and illegal things deliberately in order to advantage themselves and to obtain unlawful gain from it.
- 304) Believers in a god or tin gods say that their god or tin god may bestow good on them in this world and good in the future world, and they beg in blind submissiveness that their god or tin god may save them from the anguish of the fire of the shadow world (hell) and its princes; however neither a god nor a tin god is truthfully given, because they are only imaginary forms which are fabulated (invented) by yourselves without responsibility and which have no might even to make a single hair on your head turn grey; and therefore the shadow world (hell) and its fire and the prince of the shadow world (prince of hell) are only inventions by irresponsible and honourless ones amongst you who have fallen victim to a delusion of belief, as well as their own might which they wish to wield over you in order to obtain great gain of all kinds from it; and therefore the shadow world (hell) is no place, because truly it is a state in your head (consciousness) and a mentality (thoughts, feelings and psyche).
- 305) If you obey your god or tin gods in your belief, then you will receive your share according to your belief and its merit, then consider that it is not a god or a tin god which effectuates the things that you believe, but only the might of your thoughts and your inner world (consciousness).
- 306) When you think about the truth of formation (Creation) and its laws and recommendations and are loyally connected to them, then you do not bring down any guilt upon yourselves, when you follow the laws and recommendations and oppose evil, falsehood and inequity (unfairness) in order to pay tribute to the truth; and do not be afraid of evil and falsehood or of inequity (unfairness), but trust in your knowledge of the truth so that you make use of it and gather like-minded ones about you.
- 307) Many have gathered amongst you whose words about this life appeal to many of you, and who like to be led into confusion through their beliefs and words when the delusional leaders speak in the name of a false truth and of a delusional belief and misuse them for lies and deception, and for their evil doings they even take the formation (Creation) to be witness and call on it; however they are living and effecting in lies and deception, and what is in them is only cantankerous squabbling and malicious delusional leading of those who listen to them; and when they have the might then they go about the country fomenting unpeace, hatred and battles (war) against all those who are of another belief and another skin colour as well as of another race and other peoples; and they are caught up in their self-opinionated attitude (fanaticism) and fervour and in their false and stubborn conviction; and against all right and all responsibility, they spread threats and Gewalt, and they also lay waste to the seed and the fruits of the field, just as they also commit bloody deeds (murder) and atrocities and destroy your works and homes; but truly, the laws and recommendations of the formation (Creation) do not teach such doings, but love and peace as well as freedom and harmony and equitableness (fairness); and if they are told they should be afraid when you recognise their evil doings and be afraid that they may be called to account, then their pride and their irrationality drives them to further guilt which they will have to carry and will demand a reckoning from them sooner or later, whether through themselves or by authority or jurisdiction; and they are unknowing ones and ones without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) in whose thoughts and feelings and in whose psyche the shadow world (hell) blazes as reward, and truly this inner condition is a bad state and of destructive constitution.
- 308) And truly, many of those amongst you would sell themselves or their mothers in the striving of belief for their god or tin gods, but each one among you is waiting in vain for your god or tin gods and their favour and goodness for you, because gods and tin gods are powerless inventions of your own which you want to use to turn everyone else into your servants (hands/helpers).
- 309) And all of you who are living in belief in your god or tin gods, not only are you approaching them entirely in total devotion but are also following the footsteps of the delusional leaders who truly are your manifest enemies and are only using you to obtain their own gains.



- 310) You will always partake of your false belief and its merit that is directed (regulated) according to what you are hoping and wishing for yourselves because all of fulfilment lies in your inner world (consciousness), through the might of which you direct and call forth everything and make yourselves into what you are.
- 311) The prophets have given you signs (evidence) of the real truth and of the true existence of the Creation and of its laws and recommendations, but you turn away from the clear signs (evidence), that have come to you through the prophets and have been given by the Creation since the existence of the earths (worlds/planets) and the firmaments (universe) and are ever-present; you shall however not turn away, but be knowing in the truth and in the laws and recommendations of the Creation, so that you may be full of equitableness (fairness/responsibility).
- 312) And heed the truth-teaching which teaches you to uphold all virtues and be honourable in their fulfilment, because according to them you will be assessed as people of your kind (human beings) by people of your kind (human beings); however, anyone who lives without virtue is debasing themselves and making themselves into an outcast and *ausgeartet* one.
- 313) Do not wait for your gods and tin gods to come to you in the shadow of clouds and with liberators (angels) in order to judge you and decide in equitableness (fairness) whether you will go into the fire of the shadow world (hell) or into heaven in their paradise (realm of gods and tin gods); truly, this will not happen, because you will not return to your gods or your tin gods because they are inventions of your own without any power and without any existence and reality, but are only imagined, unsubstantial delusions.
- 314) As a person of your kind (human being), your dwelling is the world on which you live, and as such you can only raise yourselves into the firmament (space/universe) with flying craft that you build for yourselves, in order for you to be able to cross the air of Earth and the firmaments (space/universe); but even with such flying craft you cannot reach the heaven of one of your invented gods or tin gods (realm of gods and tin gods), because the heaven and its gods and tin gods (realm of gods and tin gods) are really only inventions of your imaginations.
- 315) In you, there lives the spirit which is a minute part of the formation (Creation), therefore you are also a part of the formation (Creation); however, your body is of your world and when you die then it will cease to be and will not return, just as it will not cross over into a heaven of your gods and tin gods and not into a paradise (realm of gods and tin gods), but will cease to be; only your form of the spirit in you is subject to reincarnation and intended to one day return to the formation (Creation) in order to become one with it, although you as a person cease to exist and will no longer continue to be such.
- 316) Many clear signs (evidence) of the truth and the existence of the formation (Creation) and its laws and recommendations have been given to you since time immemorial by the true proclaimers of the truth, but after you had received the teaching of the truth, you swapped this gift for the untruth of your belief in your gods and tin gods, therefore you have punished yourselves and continue to do so up to the present day; and it will take a very long time until you perceive the truth and understand it, so you will suffer in untruth as unknowing ones for a very long time and will commit many evil things and bring down guilt on yourselves.
- 317) Your life on the world is made so that you learn and fulfil the sense of the life that is given in the swelling (evolution) of knowledge and wisdom, in fulfilment of love and peace as well as freedom and consonance (harmony) which become truth and reality for you and shall apply to all amongst you.
- 318) The beauty of all things and signs (unsurpassabilities) of the wellspring of existence (Creation) and its appearance (nature) shall appear appealingly to you and reveal the truth and grace of the wellspring of existence (Creation) and its laws and recommendations to you, but there are very many amongst you who scorn the real truth and those who have knowledge of the truth, but both the wellspring of existence (Creation) itself as well as the prophets and those who have knowledge of the truth stand at your side with their love and freedom as well as with their peace and their harmony and are gracious to you, because in your unknowledge you do not know what shameful things you are doing against the wellspring of existence (Creation), the truth, those who have knowledge and against the proclaimers of the truth; your unknowledge and your shameful doing will be forgiven because you have been led into confusion and have to learn.
- 319) And there are many amongst you who boast in your megalomania and selfishness and place yourselves in the light of attention of the people of your kind (human beings) in order to shine before them, but your nature is depraved and your psyche and inner world (consciousness) are ill through wanting to shine before the others; and truly, your efforts are based on immodesty and in the greediness to make a sensation about your person, but your present existence is therefore joyless and inequitable (unfair), and your happiness is as fragile as mouldy wood, and your life-conduct is as useless as a rotting fruit.
- 320) Modesty is the true nature of the true people of your kind (human beings), who go along in honesty and equitableness (fairness/responsibility) and who determine their words and deeds accordingly; and it is not possible to trust anyone who raises themselves up and sets themselves above others in any wise, rather true trust can only be given to someone who leads their present existence in modesty and also displays



modesty in their dealings with you.

- 321) Those who fear immodesty and move in true modesty, and therefore lead their present existence in the same wise, they will always stand above those who are immodest, because the modest ones gain true friends through honour and dignity, and the immodest ones and those addicted to sensation and worship find their actions are only sufficient to establish false friendship and idolatry by those who are bowing down (are in bondage) to them, who are blind-believingly and sufferingly caught up in false zeal through their delusion of their thoughts and feelings.
- 322) The peoples of your kind (humankind) were peaceful communities in the earliest times, but over time they grew apart and became at odds with one another and fractious and enemies, because they grew apart from the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) and the laws of appearance (nature); but there were wise ones amongst the people who lived their existence in a good wise according to the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) and according to the laws of appearance (nature), therefore they established themselves as teachers in order to instruct the peoples who had become disloyal and fallible to the direst extent in the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) and in the laws of appearance (nature), to teach them all right things and how to follow the truth and the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) and the laws of appearance (nature); and amongst all the wise ones, a particularly wise one came forth, Nokodemion, who prevailed as the bringer of the message of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) and the laws of appearance (nature) and as their teacher and warner, and gave rise to the line of the series of prophets; and therefore all successors of his person remained at this task from birth to birth, making this their determination, because the wise teacher changed himself into the proclaimer, the prophet, and endured for eons in continuous coming again in a new person in order to appear in the far future on your earth as Henoah (Enoch), as the first prophet on the earth-roundness in the far line of Nokodemion; and it will be that the line of Nokodemion will be continued in the same form of spirit, but however always in a new person with a new inner world (consciousness), in a sequence of seven from Henoah (Enoch) to the new time when the last prophet in the series will complete the work of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 323) The word and the writing of the truth-teaching has been given by the proclaimers, the prophets, as a teaching in a equal wise, so it is not doubtful or contradictory, but is however passed on from proclaimer, prophet, to proclaimer, prophet, in an ever more advanced form of explanation, given in accordance with your new and better understanding; and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life has been given to you by Nokodemion and by all proclaimers, prophets, in his line as a guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the life and the swelling (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness), so that you may decide between right and unright, as you fulfil the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation).
- 324) In early times, you were at odds about leading the present existence, and you killed (murdered) and slew one another, and so you were given the truth-teaching by the proclaimers, the prophets; and you were given clear signs (evidence) by the proclaimers, because you were disunited amongst one another, but the signs (evidence) were disregarded and misconstrued and assigned to the evil and this was done out of envy for one another because you begrudge the one or another amongst you to be able to explain the signs (evidence) correctly.
- 325) The proclaimers of the truth set you on the right way, and each of you who turned to the teaching of the truth was rightly led and rose in the value of your knowledge above those who were disunited; and those who were connected to the teaching of the truth have been striving continuously since time immemorial to show (reveal) to the unknowing ones in the truth the right path so that they may become knowing and equitable ones (fair ones/responsible ones).
- 326) Do not think that you will go into heaven (dwelling of the gods and tin gods) to a god or tin gods, because just like the gods and tin gods, your heaven (realm of gods and tin gods) is only an invention by you who are without any responsibility, but are caught in a delusion, or are striving for great gain and to beat you into servitude (bondage) and slavery and unautonomy in order to plunder you and to be able to take from you what is your property and what you have earned and created through the sweat of your brow; therefore they use their delusional teachings to beat you into a belief in fabricated (invented) divinities and tin gods and in a fabricated (invented) heaven as paradise (realm of gods and tin gods) so that you will be caught and bound in your thoughts and in your feelings and in your inner world (consciousness) in order for them to attain advantages from you for their own benefit and so they can use your goods and your possessions and the content of your strongbox (savings) to lead a life in pleasure and splendour.
- 327) Learn what those who passed away before you learned, those who turned to the teaching of the truth and who had a good existence thereby, because they did not fall into poverty and hardship through unknowledge of the truth and were not shaken by Gewalt because they were connected to the teaching of the prophets and therefore the truth-teaching, because they were helped by following the real truth.
- 328) And if you are asked whether you should give donations to the poor and needy, to the sick and suffering and



for the truth-teaching, in order to spread it, then answer that whatever goodly and ample wealth is given to this cause brings its own gladness and prosperousness, just as it prospers the spreading of the truth and love, as well as help for the sick and suffering, for the poor and needy and for orphans and wayfarers.

- 329) And whatever you do that is good, truly it will be rewarded to you by people of your kind (human beings) and through all your life, because nothing goes unrewarded in its form.
- 330) You have not been commanded by the laws and recommendations of the Creation to fight by shedding blood and destroying, which may displease you in your doings of hatred and revenge and retaliation, but you have been given the truth of the laws and recommendations so that it is very well possible for you in your free will to deem a thing or a law and recommendation as unwelcome although it is good for you.
- 331) And truly, the freedom is given to you to deem things good and welcome despite them being harmful, therefore use your intellect and decide accordingly so that you go the right way and do not fight senseless fights.
- 332) And if you are asked whether you should fight and kill with weapons for your belief, then say that fighting and Gewalt with weapons and killing for a belief are not rightful and not in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the Creation, and therefore do not comply with the truth of the life.
- 333) You shall never accept other things, such as lies and slanders (calumnies) and other untruth, as true, just like you should not accept any belief in a god or tin gods, because all of them are lying inventions and therefore untruth.
- 334) Do not commit a serious misdemeanour against the truth by not accepting it and banishing it, and by persecuting those who are knowing of the truth, because banishment and persecution are equally as bad as manslaughter.
- 335) Heed the words of the truth that truth-deniers are those who are without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) and who are without knowledge of the truth and those who cloak themselves in priestly robes in accordance with their belief in a god or tin gods and continue to fight against and revile the ones amongst the people who are versed in the truth as well as the true prophets; and if it is not possible for them to prevail over the equitable ones (fair ones) then they take recourse to slander (calumny) or they slaughter them or have them killed (murdered) in a dastardly fashion.
- 336) And those who are without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones/inequitable ones) and the believers, as well as the priests of gods and tin gods, will not cease earlier their evil deeds of fighting against those who are knowing of the truth, insulting them, slandering them or slaying them or having them killed (murdered) in dastardly fashion; and they will not take an early repose until they have made the ones who have knowledge of the truth defect to their belief and to their god or tin gods, even if they were able to do so, because it is not possible to get those who are knowing of the truth away from their true knowledge about the truth.
- 337) Believers in a god or tin gods are not the same as those who are knowing of the truth, because they allow themselves to be persuaded to leave one belief for another belief, and they are the ones who go through their present existence as losers and miss the true life; they have no trust in life and do not live it because they believe in their gods and tin gods and that heaven and paradise (realm of gods and tin gods) are awaiting them or that, after their existence on Earth, they will have to eke out their ongoing life as inhabitants of the fire in damnation, depending on how they conduct their present existence on Earth.
- 338) Those who are knowing about the truth of the wellspring of existence (Creation) and its laws and recommendations and those who are struggling for the cause of this truth, they are the ones who are anticipating and will win everything good in the present existence; therefore they are also kindhearted and lenient towards you, even when they are reviled and slandered by you, because they are benevolent and forgiving, as is demanded by the truth-teaching of the prophets.
- 339) If you are asked about wine and fermented juices, then say that there is great harm in both if they are enjoyed to excess and drunkenness ensues; therefore they bring great harm to those who fall into a pathological craving for them, because the pathological craving strikes the inner world (consciousness) and the psyche with injurious disease and delusion and destruction just as it does the entrails (internal organs = liver, kidneys and gall bladder, etc.) and the slings (intestines) of the body.
- 340) And if you are asked about the game which is supposed to lead to riches through luck, then say that there is great harm in it, however also some benefit, which is however always a modest one; the harm, however, is greater than the benefit if the game turns into a pathological craving through getting very badly out of the control of the good human nature, as a result of which all goods, possessions and wealth are lost, and the connections among friends and the family life are ruined.
- 341) And if you are asked about giving then say that whatever is dispensable shall always be given, whether it be goods and chattels or things put aside in the strongbox (savings), or whether it be good counsel or performing a work.
- 342) You are given the laws and recommendations of the Creation and the laws of appearance (nature), presented



and explained in real truth by the prophets, so that the entirety of the truth-teaching may be clear and understandable for you and that you may contemplate it and follow the teaching.

- 343) Consider that ill-gotten goods never prosper, therefore you shall always be attentive and only think about what is good and true, so that you only do what is good and truthly and heed and follow the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 344) And if you are asked about the world in which you live, and about the future world, then say that your world in which you live is the world of learning, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, by means of which the sense of the life shall be fulfilled, which is the unfolding and swelling (evolution) of the inner world (consciousness), so that love and knowledge and wisdom grow and peace and freedom and therefore consonance (harmony) are created in your nature, by means of which the spirit living in you does the same.
- 345) And if you are asked about the orphans, then say that promoting their welfare is a deed of great goodness and a duty and that a relationship shall be entered into with the orphans and care of them shall be undertaken.
- 346) And if you are asked about fomenters of turmoil then say that they shall be distinguished from peace-bringers in such a wise that the fomenters of turmoil are called to account and the peace-bringers are rewarded.
- 347) And if you are asked about the slanderers and their machinations, then say that it is worthless to do anything against them before authority or jurisdiction, because it only brings harm and hatred and desires for revenge, as well as the loss of goods and chattels and wealth because the authority and jurisdiction demand payment for their administration of justice; leave the slanderers to be slanderers in themselves and outwardly, and do not create any hatred or undertake any revenge and retaliation against them, because staying silent and amusing oneself at their slanders (calumnies) is its own medicine, whereas the slanderers create harm and trouble in themselves through their evil deeds and will soon become tired of them because they do not achieve any success and only provide joy and benefit for the slandered ones.
- 348) Do not make the truth a hindrance for yourselves through oaths, so that you do not refrain and grow apart from doing good and rightful deeds as well as being honest and promoting peace amongst yourselves; do not take any oath, because your word of honesty shall be enough, that this is yes, yes or no, no; therefore do not swear any oath either on the world nor on a belief or god or tin god, because you will not be able to prove the truliness of your word by them if it is doubted; and if it turns out that your oath was false although you assumed it was of rightness but you had erred, then you will be unknowingly guilty of a lie or calumny (slander) and will therefore commit harm to another and you will be brought to reckoning for your false avowal (perjury); and if you speak a word of witness and avowal then act with forethought; if you are fighting on your own behalf, then do not fight with falsehood, but in honesty, and be forbearing and forgiving against those against whom you are fighting.
- 349) Always be alert about the truth, and do not cower down in submissiveness before people of your kind (human beings), therefore not before authority or jurisdiction either, before no enemy, and in no belief in a god or tin gods, because you shall not be subservient; be indeed obedient when obedience is rightful, but do not be subservient and do not deny yourselves; esteem and appreciate yourselves in true freedom so that you will not be subservient to any people of your kind (human beings) or to any gods and tin gods.
- 350) If you are anxious or afraid, then gird yourselves with courage by freeing yourselves from anxiety or fear through contemplation (meditation) and putting yourselves deeply (meditatingly) into good and free thoughts and feelings; when you are in safety however, then think about the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as the prophets have taught you and as you have received it from them.
- 351) You have heard from the proclaimers, the prophets, that you shall select a wise head (wise leader) for your guidance and instruction so that you may live in love and peace as well as in freedom and balance (harmony) and in wisdom, and may spend your entire present existence in this wise; and you shall not take up arms and fight against one another or against other tribes and peoples; if you are however attacked by a battle troop (war troop/military) with armed Gewalt so that you are driven out or beaten down into servitude (bondage) or imprisoned, then fight against it with gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit; if the possibility of gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit is taken away from you, however, then conduct a battle in consequentiality (logic) by means of which solely rationality decides whether a defence in extremis (self-defence) may be justified, therefore you do not kill (murder) in Ausartung; however, you shall not let yourselves be stirred up (be agitated) to battles with weapons, neither in the family nor amongst groups, nor by following authority or leaders and rulers and not by following priests and other worshipers of gods and tin gods; only ever use the Gewalt of weapons to fight if you are attacked with the same, but when doing so always ensure that you are fighting rightfully and are only bringing about the death of the opponent in extremis when there is no other possibility of defending yourselves, so that you do not kill (murder) and do not become malefactors (lawbreakers) against the life of those who bring you enmity; therefore you shall defend yourselves only rightfully and not load guilt



upon your life through any outrage.

- 352) And it is taught to you that you shall only select wise heads (wise leaders) for your guidance who do not impose mastery over you, because you are worthy not of a dominance (mastery) over you, but are worthy of a wise and kindhearted guidance in freedom, peace, love and in concord (harmony); never elect Gewalt-rulers over you, whether they may be people of your kind (fellow human beings) or gods or tin gods, because no such ruler is worthy of leading you and instructing you in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; truly, you yourselves elect your wise heads (wise leaders) so that you are led rightly by them and you can increase your knowledge and your wisdom as you are gracious towards people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 353) The sign (evidence) of a mastery is that you are given unfreedom and you are exploited and placed under the yoke, made dependent and enchained, whether it be by a female or male head of the family (matriarch or patriarch), a belief in a divinity or in a tin god and by their priests, by bread-givers and wage-givers or by authority, by despots and other tyrants; pay attention to these words if you are knowing and you do not want yourselves to be beaten into servitude (bondage), because the horror-ruler and the martinet as well as the Gewalt-ruler and other despots are many in a variety of attitudes (type, behaviour); mastery is at all times a sign (evidence) for you that there is a threat of unfreedom, lovelessness, unpeace and dissonance (disharmony).
- 354) Now, those who drink out of the river of the untruth are deepening themselves in (in bondage to) the lie, but those who drink from the wellspring of the truth promise to lead their present existence in righteousness (conscientiousness) and equitableness (fairness); and the righteous ones (conscientious ones) and the equitable ones (fair ones/responsible ones) and all those who have knowledge of the truth have great power against all attacks by the unknowing and inequitable ones (unfair ones/irresponsible ones), because they know with certainty that they will lead a joyful and a good life through the truth; and therefore the knowing ones in the truth as a small group will achieve victory over all large groups of the inequitable ones (unfair ones/irresponsible ones) and the unknowing ones in the peaceful struggle for the real truth, because the prosperousness of the truth is on the side of the stalwarts.
- 355) And when the ones who have knowledge of the truth advance and meet the hordes of those without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones) and those without knowledge of the truth, then they pour out their steadfastness over the ones without knowledge and the ones without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones) reinforce their stance and strive to bring the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life against the gaping unknowledgeness and inequity (unfairness) of the people.
- 356) And those who have knowledge of the truth do not put the unknowing ones and the ones without equitableness (irresponsible ones/unfair ones) to flight with the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because if these do not want to hear the truth then the ones who have knowledge of the truth do the same as the prophets and continue to teach undaunted, by means of which the truth will become evident to the unknowing ones and those who are without equitableness (irresponsible ones/unfair ones) at a time (sooner or later); therefore the truth-teaching is given and taught to them so that they may recognise it as true at a time (sooner or later) and turn to it; and if it were the case that the prophets held themselves back in the explanation of their teaching, then you would also be held back in your learning; but so that it does not happen that one holds back another, you have been given free will so you may decide for yourselves what you want to do or not do, if you get along peaceful with one another; and if this were not the case, then Earth would be filled with great chaos, and there would not be any greatness of heart amongst you and the peoples.
- 357) These are the recommendations that are brought by the prophets and that proclaim the truth; and indeed, the explanation of signs (evidence), of recommendations, are based in wisdom.
- 358) Never were the prophets from the line of Nokodemion raised above other prophets, so none is raised above the other, because all proclaim the one and only teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life without any difference in their value, however always re-explained in the course of time according to your better understanding of the teaching; therefore there have never been elevations of the prophets because the proclaimers of the teaching of the truth in the sense of the laws and recommendations of fruitfulness (Creation), proceeding from Nokodemion, are not placed in any order of level, because all their values and the values of the teaching are the same and immutable.
- 359) All prophets are strengthened with the true love for you and all people of your kind (human beings), and by the power of their knowledge and wisdom as well as by following the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, through which they possess the capability and talent achieved through their own efforts without self-interest and in open modesty to teach you and all people in their teaching and in the truth of the laws and recommendations of the origination (Creation).
- 360) And if it were given by the power of the prophets and by your rationality and acceptance of the truth-teaching,



then you would never have fought with one another, never have killed (murdered) one another, not waged any battles (wars) and not caused any destruction; at all times the prophets taught true love amongst you, as well as freedom, peace and consonance (harmony), so that gladness and co-existence may be given; and they gave signs (marvels) of the might of their inner world (consciousness), but they were condemned as evil illusions (absurdities) and sorcery, but were not recognised as the truth which they served for; but there were some amongst you who saw the signs (marvels) who were at odds in consideration (assessment) or who assessed the signs (marvels) of the prophets to be an illumination of belief (proof of belief) in a god or tin gods; but it was always in the will of the prophets to continue teaching the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life steadfastly, and if it had been in their power, then the prophets would have ended all evil amongst you themselves so that you would never have fought with one another; but since time immemorial you have feuded with one another and committed outrages on one another involving hatred and jealousy, in greed for wealth and might, therefore you kill (murder) and destroy for this and conduct battles (wars) and this has continued up to the present day; but the prophets remain undismayed and carry out what they have already started even in Nokodemion's time; but you lay hatred and slander (calumny) against them, and you strive to take their life so that they shall be prevented from bringing the truth-teaching in order to show (reveal) to you and the peoples the way to real truth and love, and to freedom and consonance (harmony) and therefore to peace amongst everyone.

- 361) You, however, who are knowing in the truth-teaching of the proclaimers, the prophets, donate to those who are searching for the truth from what the proclaimers, the prophets, have bestowed on you in the sense of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; donate from your knowledge that you have learned from them and continue to learn so that many will become knowing in the truth of the origination (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, before a day dawns on which the truth-teaching can no longer be passed on; donate your truthly knowledge before the day dawns on which no buying and selling and neither intercession nor friendship are worth anything anymore, when those who persist in the untruth and in the inequity (unfairness) inflict harm on themselves in life and in all things.
- 362) Creation – there is no truth except for the laws and recommendations proceeding from Creation, from the vitality of its BEING, from the itself-being, all-preserving; Creation is true life and it too was seized by slumber before its presence (existence), as is immanent in all life, and therefore it will fall back into slumber again after a very long time (311,040,000,000,000 years), in order to become truth in new life (reincarnation) as new creational form; all things existing on the earths (worlds/planets) and in the firmaments (universe) is the act (work) of the Creation, and its BEING is spiritual primal power which is also given as a minuscule part in your inner world (consciousness); and your inner world (consciousness) can be called on by you in intercession in order to improve yourselves through your own strivings in all virtues and in the character, as well as in the individual being (personality) and the conduct (behaviour); however, the inner world (consciousness) cannot be asked for worldly help and things of value and the like, nor can they be obtained from it, just as this cannot be requested from any invented god or tin gods either; and you may speak to, intercede with and call on your spirit (prayer to your own spirit or directly to the consciousness), but your speaking and calling will be perceived by your inner world (consciousness) through which your swelling (evolution) is given when you strive for this knowingly and wisely.
- 363) Your inner world (consciousness) is knowing in many things, but you do not want to understand anything of its knowledge, except what appeals to you and gives you mirth in festivities, pleasures and amusements.
- 364) There shall not be any coercion in the knowledge about the truth and the truth-teaching, but nevertheless it shall be clearly distinguishable in all things in the sense of right and unright, so that no one lets himself or herself be guided (led) by the malefactors (lawbreakers) who curse the truth and disregard it; therefore may everyone who is searching for the truth have a strong head (rationality) that knows no breaking in order to decide knowingly and willingly between the coercion to a belief or the freedom of the knowledge of the truth and the truth-teaching.
- 365) The real truth stands at all times in good friendship with those who are knowing of the truth and continuously leads them from every twilight into light; those, however, who are caught up in a belief in a god or tin gods and are malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations and in the teaching of the proclaimers, the prophets, to them the truth and the truth-teaching is open so that they may learn and find the way to true life; and if the malefactors against the truth believe themselves to be enemies of those who are knowing of the truth, then those who have knowledge of the truth are not their enemies, because truly they are always striving to lead those committing an outrage against the truth out of the darkness of their unknowledgeness and into the light of the truth in friendship, so that they do not have to remain in the fire of unknowledgeness.
- 366) No one who is knowing of the truth dares to dispute the truth and the truth-teaching of the laws and recommendations of the Creation, as has been given by the proclaimers, the prophets, since time



immemorial; through their own power and their own efforts, those who are knowing of the truth have created the cognition of the truth in themselves through the teaching of the proclaimers, the prophets, and their teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life and have given themselves the opportunity to lead their present existence in accordance with the true laws and recommendations of the Creation.

- 367) The real truth of the laws and recommendations of the Creation is bringing forth life in the right measure and not killing (murdering), as you people of your kind (human beings) shall bring forth life in the right measure (begetting offspring in the right measure) and not kill (murder); however, if you contravene the recommendation and bring forth life beyond the right measure and you also kill (murder) in Ausartung, then you are ones without equitableness (unfair ones/inequitable ones/irresponsible ones) and you are casting yourselves into hardship and evil and misery.
- 368) If you kill (murder) life and destroy things of the people of your kind (human beings), then they cannot be given back, because you do not have the might to do so, just as you do not have the might to bring forth once more or rebuild in the same wise and with the same form the things that you have destroyed; every killed (murdered) life escapes from the body and cannot return, because a return is only given for the form of the spirit which escapes into the realm of the invisible (other world/death-life) and is reborn when the time for a new inner world (consciousness) and for a new individual being (personality) has come, without equivalence with the deceased inner world (consciousness) or to the deceased individual being (personality).
- 369) And the truth of the return of the spirit in a new person of your kind (human being/new consciousness, new all-of-yourself [personality] and new material body), after the preceding person of your kind (human being) has died, may be for you a sign (evidence) of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the truth (Creation); and it is through the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the truth that living and dying and death and therefore the return of the spirit in a new body of a new person of your kind (human being) are possible, just as everything is possible and nothing is impossible which originates from the might of the laws and recommendations.
- 370) And consider, there is neither a god nor tin gods nor people of your kind (human beings) and demons or either liberators (angels) and venerable ones (holy ones) who can reanimate a dead person (deceased person), because when someone dies the spirit escapes into the realm of invisibility (other world) and cannot return to the deceased body because this is irreversibly connected to death.
- 371) Be certain (knowing) that if you give your goods and chattels and wealth from your strongbox (savings) and alms (gifts) in an appropriate measure for the purpose of the truth without harming yourselves in these things, then you are the same as a seed of corn that grows seven ears and has one hundred grains in every ear, because in this wise you multiply the teaching of the truth through your gifts for everyone who spreads it, and also for those who want to recognise it and be connected to it; and make donations according to your sense and whatever is right for you, then you are gracious to the unknowing ones who are searching for the truth and to those who are in need of alms (gifts).
- 372) But do not give your goods and chattels and alms (gifts) from your wealth from the strongbox (savings) if in your giving you are following with reproach or contempt (insult/outrage), for which you will not find any good reward, and the fear will come over you as well as the shame rising red in your face and sorrow will befall you on the day of the impulsation of admonishment (conscience).
- 373) If you give a gracious word and give forgiveness in honesty, then that is better than a present given in dishonourableness intended to bring reconciliation; a good word and a respectfully presented forgiveness are given in honesty, but a present is commonplace (impersonal) and valueless without a word of kindheartedness and forgiveness; because no matter how excessive (expensive/precious) the present may be, it is nevertheless no more than a honourless giving of alms for false reconciliation; a true and good word and honourable forgiveness are evidence of forbearance and one's own contentment (modesty) as well as of peaceableness; an dishonest present for reconciliation gives rise to contempt (insult/outrage), both in the one who gives it and in the one who takes it, with enmity and hatred originating therefrom.
- 374) And if you give alms, do not make yourselves conceited with your giving by allowing contempt (insult/outrage) and reproach to prevail by reviling those to whom the alms are intended; therefore do not donate in the sense of being wealthy so that people of your kind (human beings) see it, because you want to show off (vaunt yourselves/boast/brag) and believe that you are placed above (superior to) those to whom you are giving alms; but if you do not comply with this recommendation and act against it then you will be the same as a smooth rock covered with loose soil upon which a heavy downpour of rain falls, thereby revealing its smoothness and hardness; and if this is done then nothing of significance (merit) will be carried away because the people of your kind (human beings) do not like those who are without equitableness (unfair ones/irresponsible ones) and who raise themselves above them and demean them with dishonest and calculating almsgiving.
- 375) And those among you who give your goods and chattels and your wealth in striving for the delight of a god



or tin gods invented by yourselves, as well as for the desire (lust/comfortable feeling) of one of your kind (human being), a liberator (angel) or venerable one (holy one) or a demon, then you will still not receive any strengthening, but will suffer loss because you are building your house on sand which will be blown away by a strong wind leading to the collapse of the house; and if you build on sand then you lose twofold, namely your goods and chattels and your wealth as well as your honour and dignity, because your loss gives rise to malicious gossip.

- 376) In the sense of your knowledge of the truth-teaching, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, create for yourselves a large garden with vegetables, plants, trees and shrubs which are full of the fruits of wisdom and love, peace, freedom and consonance (harmony); make sure that no weak offspring arise from the seeds, but that love and knowledge and wisdom multiply in you; do not allow any fiery whirlwind to blow through your garden of your love and of knowledge as well as of wisdom, so that everything which you have arduously acquired through your learning will not be scorched; take heed and follow the recommendation so that you do not fall back into unknowledgeness.
- 377) Donate from all the good things that you have acquired and acquire, and from all that which is brought forth to you through the earth so that no one might suffer in need; give alms (gifts) and good things according to your wealth, but do not search out the poor things for this that you would yourselves not take; turn a blind eye when giving alms and good things for the needy, so that you will not be overwhelmed by stinginess and so that you do rightfully; and consider, the one who is self-sufficient is the dignified one and will be treated with esteem.
- 378) It is only your stinginess and your foolishness that warn you against poverty and command you to do shameful things if you sadden and torment yourselves about alms and good gifts that you shall give; be rightfully frugal (modest) and do not hoard goods and chattels and possessions and wealth for the sake of might, but do it for the sake of right, in order to help the needy who require your assistance, alms and good things.
- 379) Also be respectful to the poor and needy, and give them alms and good things in right measure according to your wealth and possessions, and when doing so consider that you will not be able to take one thing to the realm of the invisible (other world/death-life) from all that which you have gathered together in terms of goods and chattels and possessions and wealth, because there are no pockets in which you could take anything with you.
- 380) If you have a woman or a man or offspring when you die, then whilst you are still living, divide up your goods and chattels, your possessions and wealth through an apportionment (testament) set in writing so that after your passing everything will be regulated and everyone will receive the portion that is intended for him or her; consider that the apportionment (testament) shall be rightful and equitable (fair), therefore it shall be that when there are sons and daughters, that the surviving woman or the surviving man shall receive two thirds of the goods and chattels, possessions and wealth, and the third portion shall be shared equally between the surviving sons and daughters; and if the woman or the man survives and there are no offspring, then the surviving woman or man shall receive all of the goods and chattels, as well as all of the possessions and wealth; and it shall not be the case that a surviving woman, a surviving man or surviving children shall be deprived of their due portion (inheritance) because of disputes and the like; and if there is no apportionment (testament) set down in writing, then the jurisdiction is to decide on the distribution in accordance with the sense of the recommendation, as the recommendation is given; if an offspring – daughter or son – dies who is not in a bond of marriage and does not have any offspring, then his or her goods and chattels, possessions and wealth shall revert to the parents; if a woman or a man dies and neither a woman nor a man nor offspring are left surviving, then a written apportionment (testament) shall be given as to how the goods and chattels, possessions and wealth shall be used; if, however, there is no apportionment (testament) then all the possessions (the whole inheritance) fall to the people and are administered by the authority.
- 381) Impart to those from your knowledge and from your wisdom who ask about them and want them; and if you impart to those who want your knowledge and your wisdom then you are truly giving rich goods, and everyone will think about them in honour and use their understanding in order to comprehend them.
- 382) Whatever you may give and whatever vow you may make to help other people and to teach them the truth, it will be repaid a thousand times over by those who esteem your help and your knowledge and your wisdom.
- 383) If you give alms publicly and do good deeds, this is certainly good and meritorious, but if you do it in secret and thereby help the poor and needy, then that is better and more honourable for you, because what you do secretly in this wise shows your modesty and kindheartedness which you do not want to display before the people in order to shine before them and be praised by them.
- 384) And whatever alms and goods you donate, do not donate them for the sake of your appearance; not to stand in the light of the people and not to be regarded as something that you are not; donate alms and goods in modesty and out of your kindheartedness and your honest benevolence in modesty; and giving alms and good things to the poor and needy is a sublime (noble) virtue; and what you donate to the poor and needy in terms



of alms and good things will be amply repaid to you with the goods of love and through a good conscience, so that you will experience happiness and joyfulness, however not suffer any disadvantage.

- 385) Alms and good gifts for the poor and needy are all-timely for those who are defined as (verifiably) living in poverty and need, and those who are incapable of earning their bread themselves; alms and good gifts are also for the old who are infirm and can no longer do anything of importance (work); the unknowing ones amongst you believe that those defined as poor and needy as well as the old and infirm are free from need if they refrain from demanding (begging); you may recognise the truly honest poor and needy and the aged and infirm by their appearance (conduct), because they do not ask importunately and they direct their eyes to the ground in humiliation (shamefacedness).
- 386) And those among you who give from their goods and chattels, from their possessions and wealth to the poor and needy, to the aged and infirm, and who do it day and night, secretly and known (publicly) and in good modesty and honourable benevolence, their reward will be thanks and esteem, and no fear shall befall them because of their good deeds, nor shall they suffer because of them.
- 387) It is not your responsibility if the unknowing ones and inequitable ones (irresponsible ones/unfair ones) do not follow the right way, in order not to be connected to the truth-teaching and the laws and recommendations of the formation (Creation), because you can only give them benevolent advice and instruction, but how they guide (lead) themselves is a matter of their own volition.
- 388) Anyone who undertakes haggling (usury/greed) in any form of commerce and unrightfully demands a markup (interest or price increase) shall be exposed to the punishment of recompense through the authority or jurisdiction, so that the disadvantaged ones do not suffer any loss of goods and chattels, possessions and fortune; in commerce involving goods and things, the markup (interest or price increase) shall be regulated and defined by the authority according to the goods or things and their value; however, if hagglers (avaricious ones/usurers) and inequitable ones (irresponsible ones/unfair ones) taking a markup (interest) are not understanding and they continuously repeat their outrageous and fallible behaviour against the given demand (instruction/regulation/ directive) of the authority, then they are given over to the jurisdiction for the fulfilment of guidelines which is the separation from the people (society) for a certain time.
- 389) Commerce may well permit taking a markup (interest or price increase) to an equitable (admissible/fair) extent, however it shall not be permitted for additions (interest or price markup) to be taken to a dishonourable and excessive extent; therefore whoever receives a reminder from someone taking a markup (taking interest) for payment that has an addition of a dishonourable and excessive amount shall refrain from paying this and call on the authority or jurisdiction to decide that to the fallible one taking the markup (taking the interest) shall only remain as punishment the value without markup (interest or price increase) that he himself gave for the purchase as settlement (payment), so that he may not obtain any profit for this.
- 390) Taking a markup (interest or price increase) shall not be abolished, but shall serve to conduct honest commerce so that even someone trading in one commodity may receive an equitable (fair/appropriate) reward through honest revenue; but truly, the people does not love anyone who practises haggling (usury/greed) in commerce and takes a unrightful markup (interest or price increase).
- 391) And if anybody demonstrably falls into great need and cannot settle (pay for) the commercial good, then drop the markup (interest or price increase) and only take the price that you yourselves have paid; it is better not to make any profit than to bring harm and inequity on another through greed; this is what you shall do, because you shall not do unright, but if you do not follow this recommendation then you will suffer from your unright in your admonishment (conscience).
- 392) And if a debtor falls into difficulty, then grant him an extension until it is once again easy for him or her to settle the debt; however, if the debtor falls into difficulty with very great hardship and he or she can no longer settle the debt, then act in rationality, thus you take back the commercial item if it is extensive, but leave it as a good deed if it is not of great value.
- 393) Guard yourselves against pinning your hopes and wishes too high on a judgement if you have to call on jurisdiction or authorities in a transaction (deal) or in conflict (dispute/enmity), in order to ask for arbitration in a case, because in spite of being in the right, you will scarcely receive your full reward according to your significance (merit), but only a partial reward, so you will think that something unright has happened to you and this will make you joyless; but consider that every jurisdiction reaches a judgement according to its own legal guidelines (criteria) which do not correspond to your wishes and hopes which you have set out in advance; it may very well be that the jurisdiction agrees that you are in the right, if this is the case, but you suffer some loss in any case because you pin your hopes and wishes too highly.
- 394) If you take a loan (credit) from another for a particular term and with an honest markup (interest rate), then set it down firmly in writing, and if you cannot write yourselves then have it written down truly by a scribe in your presence, however only in the presence of two other righteous (conscientious) bystanders (witnesses) who are also versed in writing, so that the one does not write anything that is not the truth and does not



correspond to the agreement; and no one who is versed in the script shall refuse to write, because everyone who is versed in the script shall provide this service to those who do not know how to write for a small but appropriate payment; therefore have the scribe perform the writing and have the one who is entering into the undertaking (obligation) say to the scribe what he or she has to write, and say that he or she must not falsify or defraud anything; however, if the one entering into the undertaking (obligation) is of low intellect or weak or incapable of instructing what has to be written, then someone who looks after his or her affairs says in honesty and equitableness (fairness) what must be recorded in writing; and the witnesses shall not refuse to attend when they are called on; and do not disdain to write down everything precisely whether it be much or little, and together with the defined term (period for repayment); and do not make the bystanders (witnesses) and the scribes into fallible ones, and do not bring any disadvantage (forfeiture/damage) on them if the one who gives out the loan (credit) does not stick to the agreement and has to be brought before the jurisdiction; and it is also permitted for the one giving the loan (creditor/credit giver) to demand a contribution (loan deposit) of a rightful amount as collateral and contingency (deposit) which shall become his or her property if the loan (credit) is not repaid by a redemption (repayment).

- 395) And if something is entrusted to someone in contingency (deposit), then the one to whom it is entrusted shall hand back (issue/give back) what has been entrusted when it is demanded back rightfully; if what has been entrusted in contingency (deposit) is concealed (hidden/not given back/denied) then the bystanders (witnesses) shall present their justification (evidence); if what was entrusted in contingency (deposit) is nevertheless concealed, then the authority or jurisdiction shall be called upon.
- 396) If you undertake a transaction from hand to hand and the goods are small, then you shall not be obliged to issue a receipt, but when you undertake a transaction with great goods, then you shall be bound by the obligation of a receipt.
- 397) And always have bystanders (witnesses) if you offer one another anything for sale and sell so that everything is done in honesty and nothing occurs that is unright.
- 398) Truly, when you are knowing in the truth and you do good works in respect and honesty, and carry out your duty, and if you give your alms and good gifts to those who need them, then your reward will be love and equitableness (fairness), and therefore you will not have to fear that anyone will revile you as a stingy one or someone without equitableness (unfair one/irresponsible one), nor that others will cause sorrow in you.
- 399) To you is granted everything that is in the firmaments (universe) and on the earth-roundness (Earth), as well as everything that is in you and whatever you make known; therefore do your part (responsibility); and if you do any things which you shall not do because they are wrong and against the right and against the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), then you will have to give account; and if the misdeed you have committed can be forgiven, then forgiveness shall be granted to you, but if you cannot be forgiven because your misdeed breaks the bounds of all right, then you will be subjected to punishment by the authority or jurisdiction so that you will be subjected to the fulfilment of guidelines and the possibility of compensation.
- 400) Know about all these laws and recommendations that have been revealed to you by the proclaimers, the prophets, so that you may heed the right and outlaw (proscribe) the unright; and consider that in right and unright everyone shall be equal without difference, so no one shall be advantaged and the other disadvantaged, therefore the poor like the rich and the equitable ones (fair ones/responsible ones) and the dissemblers (deceivers), as well as the ones who are knowing of the truth and the ones who are unknowing of the truth will be assessed equally in all things, thus in freedom as well as when called to account.
- 401) And no one shall be imposed upon beyond their capability (abilities/strengths); and to everyone shall be awarded what is due to him or her and what appertains to him or her, irrespective of whether he or she has lost control over himself or herself and committed an offence or whether he or she carries out everything rightfully and in respect and honesty; and no one may place his or her responsibility onto another, neither onto gods and tin gods, but everyone shall take their responsibility upon themselves and come under it; and there is no one who has not been given the power to do what is rightful and of responsibility.



Chapter 3

- 1) The prophets have brought you on Earth the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as fulfilment of what preceded it through Nokodemion's teaching; and before this he himself taught



his teaching to his peoples as a guideline (sign posting/leading thought) to distinguish between being fair and unfair, between right and unright and between truth and lie as well as between honesty and dishonesty and also between respect and slander (calumny).

- 2) And it is certain that those who deny the truth and the teaching of the prophets do not possess the Gewalt of forgiveness, so they cannot forgive those who do terrible things to them; the measure of forgiveness is only given to the fair ones (responsible ones) and the knowing ones who forgive those who do terrible things to them.
- 3) Truly, all life has been created through the laws of the wellspring of the truth (Creation), and therefore they are the same laws according to which you were created in your mother's womb after fertilisation (procreation).
- 4) And it is the prophets who have brought you the teaching about how these things happen and how you shall behave in your existence and how you shall be openly connected to it at all times, so that you do not bring suffering on yourselves and do not rob yourselves of the life.
- 5) The teaching of the prophets is of decisive importance for you and a guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the life, and therefore a foundation for leading the existence.
- 6) And the teaching of the prophets is not capable of different explanations because it is one teaching only and does not allow any misinterpretations; however, there are some amongst you who bear depravity in your thoughts and feelings, with the result that you think up from the teaching different explanations against the truth, because you want to lead into confusion and are looking for strained interpretations (falsifications and contradictions) in order to sow the seeds of discord and delusion; but none amongst you who are looking for ambiguity and untruth, and are spreading falseness and delusional guidance, none of you know the true explanation of the teaching, because the real truth of the knowledge of the teaching is known only by those who have based their knowledge on the truth of the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 7) Do not belong to those who deny and falsify the truth, because they will receive a poor reward and will suffer harm, since they are punishing themselves and are without true joy and friends.
- 8) And know that the teaching of the true prophets is based on the truth of the laws and recommendations of the Creation; and know that the teaching is only understood by those who willingly bring forward the understanding for it and who turn to the real truth.
- 9) Make sure that you comprehend and understand the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that you will not become further depraved in yourselves, and will instead escape from your depravity.
- 10) See that you always guide yourselves rightly and be yourselves vouchsafers (guarantors/authenticators/obligators) for all things that you shall do rightfully in order to lead your life in honesty and equitableness (fairness).
- 11) And you will certainly keep your promises that you make if you are fair ones (responsible ones) and ones knowing of the truth and are without doubt in this; and if you also give a promise in front of your entire species of people of your kind (human species) as fair ones (responsible ones) and ones knowing of the truth, then the people will gather before you on the day when you give your promise, and the people will thank you and will give you its trust.
- 12) However, all of you who persist in being unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and ones who have no knowledge of the truth, you will gain no benefit from all your property and wealth when you are looking for true friendship, because only people of your kind (fellow human beings) will turn to you and your children.
- 13) You unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and ones without knowledge of the truth, you are the same as those who were unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and ones without knowledge of the truth before you and who condemned the prophets' signs (evidence/marvels) and their teaching, for which they reaped inequity and harm, as will be the same on your way.
- 14) You unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unknowing ones in the truth who are chained to a belief in a god or tin gods, you are allowing yourselves to be overwhelmed by unright and by false teachings and lies so you collect (store up) in yourselves everything that burns in a terrible state (condition) of the psyche and the inner world (consciousness) as the fire of the realm of the shadow world (realm of hell); and truly, this is a terrible state (condition) and is no place of rest in which good liberation (joy/gratification) and rest can be found in love and peace as well as in freedom and attunement (harmony).
- 15) Truly, the prophets have given you signs (evidence and marvels) so that you shall turn yourselves to the truth of the creative (Creation) and shall fight for the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in a peaceful wise without weapons and through rationality and intellect with good words, so that love may grow all around you as well as peace and freedom and attunement (harmony).
- 16) And care for the sick and watch out for their healing, and offer consolation to those in mourning, and be helpful to them in all things that they need.
- 17) Strengthen your support for all those who require it, so that they will also become strong and can give their



support to others.

- 18) And open your senses to the teaching of the truth so that you will become knowing in it and be able to lead a life that fulfils the laws and recommendations of the creative (Creation).
- 19) Consider, your life is made beautiful through all the gifts of the creative (Creation), through all the things that you desire, through your women and men and children, through all the animals and other creatures, the plants and trees, through the entire appearance (nature) and the amassed piles of those uncountable things that bring you joy and pleasure; all of this is supplied for your existence by the creative (Creation) on Earth, which is your beautiful homestead in your life.
- 20) And there can be no better news for you than that you will have a comprehensively good existence if you follow the teaching of the prophets which is the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation), and if you uphold love and peace amongst yourselves, as well as freedom and attunement (harmony).
- 21) For those who fear the unright and unknowledgeness, the vast garden of the truth is full of good and nourishing fruits, and the streams which flow through the garden are full of good and healing waters, and you shall live in this garden in pleasure so that you live in love and peace and fulfil freedom and attunement (harmony).
- 22) And see, when you are present in the truth you will forgive the fallible ones and prevent yourselves from doing unright.
- 23) And if you are steadfast and truthful and obedient in following the teaching of the prophets, which is the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation) then you will be free in your thoughts and feelings and will lead a praiseworthy life.
- 24) And know that the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation) establish (confirm) that there is no primal raising (Creation) except for it, therefore there are neither gods nor tin gods, nor people of your kind (human beings) or liberators (angels) and demons who stand above it; and so know that those who possess the true knowledge about the real truth are the keepers of equitableness (fairness) whom you shall follow so that you too will be fair and connected to equitableness (fairness).
- 25) Truly, the true teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life is the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the origin (Creation) as it is explained by the prophets; and only the truth-teaching brings the acquiescence (forbearance) that the fulfilment of the life demands so that life may thrive and not wither.
- 26) Do not allow yourselves to become disunited in the teaching of the truth, and do not allow envy to come over you for its sake, because the teaching is indubitable, therefore it cannot be misconstrued (incorrectly explained) because it is given in clarity and cannot be twisted (falsified); and whoever denies or twists (falsifies) the truth of the teaching and its true explanation of the teaching is guilty of committing a lie and slander (calumny); and truly, whoever is guilty of committing a lie and slander (calumny) truly has no loyal friends who could keep him or her grounded in the face of misery.
- 27) If those who are traitors or turncoats (secessionists) or adversaries to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life dispute with you then do not surrender to them and do not follow them; if, however, you surrender to the traitors or turncoats (secessionists) or the adversaries to the teaching of the truth, then you will be badly led and brought onto the path of confusion so that you do not find the way of the truth and do not fulfil your duty of the present existence because you are following false messages and are also yourselves passing on (spreading) false messages.
- 28) Truly, the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and traitors, the turncoats (secessionists) and the adversaries who deny the signs (evidence) of the truth and with a false tongue (insult) twist it to their advantage, they are the ones who are falsifying all signs (marvels) and the truth of the teaching of the prophets and the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation); and they are liars, as are also the scandalmongers and priests who call on their god or tin gods and raise themselves to the status of their representatives (substitutes) and who commit bloody deeds (murder) in their name and kill and pillage in other respects, just as they also defile women and children or have such misdeeds conducted by their henchmen; and these unfair ones (irresponsible ones) are the ones who talk about the gods and tin gods that they have thought up (invented) in their greed for might and their avarice and who preach love and equitableness (fairness) in their name whilst on the contrary demanding hatred and revenge and retaliation for everything if you oppose the fabricated (invented) will of the gods and tin gods, although in truth this is an opposition against the bondage of the priests and therefore against the servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because gods and tin gods are not real, but are mere fabrications (inventions) by those who obtain worldly gain from these lies.
- 29) All the deeds of the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) who set themselves over you as servants of gods and servants of tin gods are naught, and you shall neither be a believer nor a helper of them because if you are then, like them, you will be far from the truth and far from the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation) and therefore also servants of gods or servants of tin gods; however, if you are believers in



gods or tin gods and in servants of gods or servants of tin gods, then you are acting in the unright like them and against the truth and the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation) which are given in the regulation that you shall be yourselves and therefore that no might shall stand over you which you are obliged to follow, except for yourselves in your own responsibility for all things which you approach and which you perform.

- 30) And if you have cognisance of the truth-teaching of the prophets, and if you follow the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation), then you shall be called upon to lead your life in accordance with the guideline (law and recommendation/sign-posting/leading thought); and therefore in cognisance of the truth-teaching, you shall call on yourselves to decide (determine) rightfully between good and evil and between right and unright, because you yourselves shall be truth and not turn away from it in unwillingness.
- 31) The fire of the untruth shall not touch you, not even for a limited number of days; do not be accustomed to falsifying the truth yourselves, so that you may not be deceived in your knowledge about the truth.
- 32) If you gather on a day and in a place in order to listen to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, then make sure that there is no doubt in you, so that you merit in honourableness the knowledge and wisdom and equitableness (fairness) which is given to you so that you do not suffer any unright in your knowledge about the truth.
- 33) Pass on your knowledge of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation) and the teaching of the prophets, to whom you want, and take the truth and the teaching from anyone, from whom you want, but do not set yourselves above others with it so that you do not debase them; take everything that is good and everything that is truthful, then you will have might over all things in you.
- 34) And do not allow either day or night to pass without you learning and without turning yourselves to the truth of the primal raising (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, because everything living comes forth from the truth of the primal raising (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, just as from the living the lifeless comes, from which, in turn, new life emerges.
- 35) And pay attention to what and how you pass on the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in truliness, so that no misunderstanding may arise and no ambiguity may come forth; and pass on the teaching of the prophets to whomever you want, and do it without measure but only ever if you are asked to do so, so that you and the teaching may not be unwanted and do not create vexation.
- 36) Believers in a god or tin gods as well as those who are unknowing ones in the truth and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) may be your friends because they are basically people of your kind (human being) as you are and you shall respect them as such, but do not copy them in their unknowledge, in their inequity (unfairness) and in their serving gods and serving tin gods so that you may be free from this and will not enter into any connection with their doings; gird yourselves with caution for the doings of your friends who are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unknowing ones and believers in gods and tin gods, because they are passing by the truth and are thinking of leading you into their delusion if you allow yourselves to be misled by them; therefore be warned and only act rightfully, as you are told (recommended) by the real truth of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 37) If you conceal some untruth or dishonourableness that is in your inner world (consciousness), or if you make it known, then be certain (knowing) that you cannot keep it secret for a long time because untruthfulness and dishonourableness will come to the light of the truth at their time, therefore you shall not lie or do honourless things so that you may always have might over your words of the truth and honourableness.
- 38) If you have fallen prey to the untruth and dishonourableness, then consider the day when you will be gathered by others and convicted of lying and dishonour, and it is held against you that instead of doing good and fair (responsible) things you only did evil and unfair (irresponsible) things; and when this day comes, you will wish that there was a great gap between the day of giving account and your unfair (irresponsible) and evil doings; therefore be warned against your own shame, even if others are benevolent and kind to you.
- 39) If you love the truth of the laws and recommendations of the origination (Creation), then follow it and it is certain that you will be respected and loved by all those to whom you do good from this truth; but if there are bad ones amongst them who are unknowing in the truth and are unfair and will therefore do evil to you, then forgive them their faults because as unknowing ones and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) they do not know what they are doing.
- 40) That one amongst you who chooses the real truth is the only one to walk the way of equitableness (fairness) and respect for life, and not to act against the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation).
- 41) Be loyal to the truth and promise it to be true to it, and dedicate your obligation to it alone in the sense of fulfilling life that is given in the swelling (evolution) of the inner world (consciousness) and of the spirit.



- 42) Obey your own rationality and do not allow yourselves to be misled by irrational ones and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) so that you will not suffer any harm in the exercise of your rationality, through your thoughts and feelings or your deeds and wishes.
- 43) Be at all times fair and honest and consider that you are all related and connected to one another as created creations (life forms) and inhabitants of your world.
- 44) And as you are all born from your mothers' wombs, so you are all born from the womb of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) so that you may be dedicated to life and may truly lead it in equitableness (fairness) and respect.
- 45) And as you are born from the womb of your mothers so your children will also be born from the womb of their mothers; and it shall be that you treat them honourably whether they are female or male, because each created sex is worthy of the life in honour, in equitableness (fairness) and in dignity, therefore no distinction is to be made by you between children of female or male gender.
- 46) And be certain (knowing) that no child shall be preferred before another and appointed (esteemed/valued) more than another one; and therefore a female child is of no greater worth than a male child, and a male child is of no greater worth than a female one, instead it shall be that offspring of either sex are included into the same rights and the same freedom as well as the same honour and dignity.
- 47) And consider that when children come forth from the womb of a mother, that you are responsible for their thriving and their provision and that they are instructed (taught) rightfully in all things of the preparation (education) and in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; and you shall also be responsible for instructing your offspring in the influences (factors/effects) of dying and of death as it is explained in the teaching of the life; and if a woman is pregnant then she shall carry the growing life in honour and dignity so that its forming will be completed in its time and born; and if it is given that the fruit of the womb endangers the life of the pregnant woman or if it is given that the fruit of the womb is demonstrably terribly deformed or incapable of life then it shall be that the unborn life is interrupted in its development and aborted; and women shall not be reproached for this, because this doing is rightful providing the reason (precondition) is given for it; do not heed the delusional teachings of false wise people and false prophets, neither those of priests or other servants of gods and servants of tin gods and truth-distorters who instruct (teach) other things and spread teachings that are lies.
- 48) Always be kind and patient with your offspring and instruct (teach) them the real truth in all things, because they are the ones who will steer the situation of the world after you, therefore tell them what they shall do rightfully and in equitableness (fairness), as you instruct (teach) them; allow your offspring to grow up in well-disposed growth, the female and the male, and be good caretakers (guardians) and benefactors to them in all things so that they may become true people of your kind (human beings) in all respects (regards).
- 49) And pay heed that, if you desire children, you do not make them into believers in gods and tin gods and that priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods do not lead them astray into submissiveness, because your offspring shall be free in their thoughts and feelings, as well as in their determinations (decisions) and their deeds in all things; and pay heed that belief and submissiveness fight against and suppress (prevent) your own determinations (decisions) and own deeds in your own responsibility, resulting in a subjection (subordination/dependency/subjugation/servitude).
- 50) Do not heed those who bring delusional teachings, who pray to gods and tin gods and pay homage to them (glorify them) in cults and rituals and who set themselves up above you in their hazy picture (delusion) of their belief as priests and the like, and they heat up their desire in your masses (bathe in the mass of people, take a bath and let themselves be celebrated, glorified, cheered and praised) when you are gathered around them; do not pay heed to them because they are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and self-righteous ones (vain ones/arrogant ones/falsely pious ones) who let themselves appear brilliant before you and deceive you with their belief and falsify the truth for you.
- 51) Do not call on any gods or any tin gods, any liberators (angels) and demons, neither on any people of your kind (human beings) in the belief that they might be equivalent to the wellspring of the love (Creation), because in truth they cannot be this, since gods and tin gods as well as liberators (angels) and demons and false miracles (absurdities) are only fabrications (inventions) created by people of your kind (human beings) and powerless hallucinations (delusional constructions) and phantasms of your brain; therefore do not search for signs (evidence) and miracles (outstanding things) in them, neither good news, because they cannot give them being incapable of doing this, because truly, signs (marvels) of the truth can only be given by those who are capable of confirming the true strength of the wellspring of the love (Creation) in respect and equitableness (fairness) through the strength of their inner world (consciousness); and only those who have knowledge of the truth, the righteous ones (conscientious ones), and especially (in particular) the true prophets can confirm the truth and the signs (marvels) and the words.
- 52) Therefore do not debase yourselves before gods and tin gods, neither before liberators (angels) and venerable



ones (holy ones) and demons, nor before people of your kind (human beings) because it is not seemly for you to debase yourselves before them and pray to them; and if you want to make a prayer, then pray to your inner world (consciousness) because it is this which realises out of its might what you ask of it and create through your own power; however, no material things can be achieved by your inner world (consciousness), but only all that which you are able to create through your might of your inner world (consciousness) and your thoughts and feelings; therefore be obedient to the truth and do not debase yourselves in order to beg things from mights that are powerless or have no presence (are inexistent).

- 53) The truth shall grow in each of you and bear fruit so that when you have advanced in years you will go hand in hand with knowledge and wisdom and fruitfully instruct (teach) those who are still unknowing and who need the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 54) Do not ask the prophets to give signs (marvels) and miracles (outstanding things) as proof of their truth-teaching, because their honest word and their true teaching shall be sufficient evidence for you.
- 55) And be certain (knowing) that if you allow the true words of the teaching of the prophets to penetrate into you and if you yourselves think about it and search for the truth in yourselves, then you will also find the proof of the truth in yourselves; and if you do the same then you will cleanse yourselves in your inner world (consciousness) and in the understanding of the truth so that you will surely elevate yourselves to be the ones knowing of the truth and fair ones (responsible ones).
- 56) The announcement of the prophets, their teaching of the truth, their teaching of the spirit, their teaching of the life, is not an announcement of the unseen (unconscious), because the teaching is based on the laws and recommendations that are visible in everything and come from the wellspring of the love (Creation) which reveals everything unremittingly; you however shall make yourselves capable of recognising the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) in you and in the appearance (nature) and in all things so that you become all-knowing and recognise and follow the truth.
- 57) Recognise the truth in yourselves alone, because you are only able to find it in yourselves and not however in fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods, in liberators (angels) and venerable ones (holy ones) and demons, and not either amongst those who lead you into confusion as priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods as well as false prophets; do not listen to those who quarrel with one another regarding their sanctimoniousness and their delusional teachings and who lead the believers in their gods and tin gods into battles (wars) and command punishment and hatred and revenge as well as the spilling of blood and destruction in order to impose servitude (bondage) and their beliefs on those who believe otherwise.
- 58) Listen to the good tidings of each word of your true prophets, and be honoured to be allowed to receive the words and the tidings of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life through the prophets, so that you yourselves also go out into the world and bring the words and the tidings of the truth to all those who want to hear it and make it their own.
- 59) And teach your children the truth-teaching whilst they are still in the cradle, and continue to teach them until they come of age (grow up) so that they may also teach their descendants if they beget them and bring them into the world; act so that you and your descendants are righteous ones (conscientious ones) and are knowing ones in the truth and fair ones (responsible ones).
- 60) And if you say a prayer in truthfulness to your inner world (consciousness) for something to come about that you rightfully wish for yourselves and you do everything so that it may come about, then it will do so.
- 61) And if you speak to your inner world (consciousness) in prayer, then make sure that your words are not babbling, but are spoken in rationality because it is not your babbling but instead your intellect and your rationality which create might in the inner world (consciousness) from which what you are asking for becomes reality.
- 62) And heed the prophets who sent themselves out to you and send themselves out to you in order to bring you the signs (marvels) and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so that you may become knowing in the truth about the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which you shall follow.
- 63) And the prophets come to teach you about what was before you and what will come after you; and they proclaim to you what you shall eat and drink and what you shall store up in your houses so that you do not have to suffer from hunger or thirst in times when food is scarce.
- 64) And the prophets come to proclaim to you what the prophets taught and brought before them of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; and they come to allow you what has been prohibited (forbidden) by false prophets and servants of gods, as well as by servants of tin gods and priests through delusional teachings; and the true prophets come with the signs (marvels) and words of the truth so that you may be liberated from senseless laws and directions that have been fabricated (invented) and imposed on you by priests and servants of tin gods and servants of gods; do not obey the senseless laws and directions made up (invented) by people of your kind (human beings) which are oriented towards a belief in



gods and tin gods, because in truth they only serve to keep you in submissiveness and in servitude (bondage) held under the spell of a belief in gods and tin gods.

- 65) Escape from unknowledge and turn yourselves to the knowledge of the truth so that you may become helpers in the matter of the truth and that you may confirm the fact that it alone brings prosperousness and true love and peace.
- 66) And truly, let only the truth be your companion and the power of guidance through your present existence.
- 67) Follow the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) at all times, as they have been taught to you by the prophets so that you can name yourselves confirmers of the truth and of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 68) And plan your lives through the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and follow your plan so that you do the same as the primal power (Creation) because it also planned and followed its plan by creating the firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds/planets) and all life and let it become truth; therefore you shall do the same as the primal power (Creation) and plan everything and let it become reality which is of goodness and of unfolding (progress) so that you may be the best planners who have proceeded from the planning (idea) of the primal power (Creation).
- 69) And consider that you shall always die a natural death and shall never presume to end your life yourselves, so that you do not besmirch your will in freedom and do not bring dishonour and dignitylessness down on yourselves.
- 70) And do not allow yourselves to be confused by taunts (insults) and lies from those who maintain through lies and deception and chickenheartedness (cowardice), and therefore through unknowledgeness, that it is rightful to lay a hand on one's own life in order to deliver it ignominiously over to death.
- 71) And do not disregard this recommendation so that you do not follow in the footsteps of those who have disregarded it and persist in unknowledge about the truth and make themselves guilty of the bloody deed (murder) on themselves.
- 72) Regarding the unknowledgeness that is directed against the truth-teaching of the proclaimers, the prophets, and therefore against the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), it is taught to you that you are punishing yourselves if you disdain the truth and accommodate unknowledgeness and help its advancement (furtherance), because truly your guilt will bring a punishment in yourselves because you have fallen prey to lovelessness and unpeace.
- 73) As far as those of you are concerned who are knowing in the truth and do good deeds and do not commit any outrages, you will receive full reward for this through true love and esteem, and therefore joy and peace and harmony and freedom will be in you.
- 74) And what the prophets announce (teach) in these things are signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the Creation, and so may everything be wise admonishment.
- 75) And what the teaching of the prophets brings is the truth of all truth, and therefore there is no doubt in it, because it is the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the Creation so that you may follow it.
- 76) And truly, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is broad and large in its dimension, therefore it never comes to an end and always continues through new insight (cognition) and clear-sightedness, as well as through new recognition and understanding.
- 77) But whoever now disputes the truth regarding what has been given to you in knowledge and wisdom of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, that human being fervently suggests himself or herself as a liar.
- 78) And truly, only the truth of the primal power (Creation) has validity through its laws and recommendations, and only the teaching of its truth is a truthly message and explanation; and therefore only the primal power (Creation) is the truthly one for you to confer respect and dignity, because it alone is in goodness and love and wisdom the sole might in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets); and just as respect and dignity shall be paid to the primal power (Creation), nothing of the same or in the same wise shall be paid to all the fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods, and neither to the people of your kind (human beings), nor to liberators (angels) and demons, venerable ones (holy ones), priests and the like who are only servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because truly they are not worthy of worship which is what they all crave; the primal power (Creation) does not demand worship, because worship is only a confused and bad work of people of your kind (work of human beings) which leads to submissiveness and unfreedom and to servitude (bondage); if you do say a prayer, then do not do so in worship, which is dignityless supplication and begging without honour and calling for magic rituals, and is not the same as praying which is a directed call for something valuable and perceptions to arise from the inner world (consciousness) so that everything shall come about through your own might in order to serve progress (evolution).
- 79) If you turn yourselves away from the truth, then consider that you will be overwhelmed by those causing terribleness.
- 80) You who have knowledge and you who have no knowledge of the truth of the laws and recommendations of



the primal power (Creation), come by at all times for a word which is at the same level between you and the prophets, so that you may hear their teaching and may ask them about its sense; and so that you learn not to pray to any gods and tin gods, neither any priests nor other servants of tin gods and servants of gods, liberators (angels), demons and venerable ones (holy ones); and so that you learn not to place people of your kind beside the primal power (Creation), and so that there are none amongst you who are spreading a false teaching and giving false witness (false oath) or killing in Ausartung.

- 81) Be at all times discerning in your thoughts and live only according to the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the truth, so that it may go well with you through this and you can bear witness to this.
- 82) Do not quarrel over the teaching of the truth that has already been given to you since time immemorial, because it is always the same teaching that was given to you by the prophets from the line of Nokodemion, therefore everything that has been disclosed to you is the same, although always in new words according to your understanding; do you not want to comprehend this?
- 83) See now! You are the ones who since time immemorial have always disputed what you have received in cognisance of the teaching of the truth through the prophets, and it is you who are disputing something of which you have no cognisance whatsoever and what is hidden from you, about which you also know nothing.
- 84) Do not be believers in any of the gods or tin gods, and do not be believers in any priests or other servants of gods or servants of tin gods, and do not be believers in liberators (angels) and demons and venerable ones (holy ones), but instead be connected to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the formation (Creation) and be obedient to it, so that you may not be amongst those who place gods and tin gods as well as priests and other servants of tin gods and servants of gods and liberators (angels) and venerable ones (holy ones) beside the truthly formation (Creation).
- 85) And truly, those amongst you who are closest to the teaching of the prophets are you who follow the truth-teaching and who are knowing ones and fair ones (responsible ones), and you who honour and protect the true prophets who are true fathers to you in love.
- 86) One part of the people would like to lead you into confusion about the teaching of the truth, because they are believers in fabricated (invented) cults and gods and tin gods, as well as in demons and liberators (angels), priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of tin gods and godheads, as well as in venerable ones (holy ones) who are all merely the hallucinations (delusional constructions) of those who are leading (guiding) themselves into confusion, but they also lead you into confusion and exploit and subjugate you; it is just that you do not want to comprehend this truth.
- 87) Because you do not want to comprehend the truth, you deny the signs (evidence) of the truth and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life that has been brought to you by the prophets, and all this despite you being bystanders (witnesses) of the signs (evidence) and the teaching of the prophets and the laws and recommendations of the formation (Creation) and of the appearance (nature).
- 88) Do not mix truth and falseness together, neither good nor evil, and do not knowingly (consciously) dissimulate (conceal/falsify/deny) the truth.
- 89) And do not be of the behaviour that, during the first half of the day, you turn to the truth and to everything that it discloses, after which you subsequently deny everything and hope that the ones who are knowing of the truth may perhaps return to your unknowledge and to your inequity (unfairness).
- 90) And only follow the one who follows the truth, because true leadership (guidance) is only found in it; and the truth is also found in that you shall give as is given to you provided that it is of the truth and goodness; however, you shall not repay measure for measure if it concerns falseness, lying, vilification (insult), slander (calumny) and terrible things and evil; if you do not follow this recommendation then discord, hatred and strife cannot be avoided.
- 91) Decide to conduct yourselves with respect and benevolence (humanity) towards people of your kind (human beings), and always have endless grace (esteem, compassion, benevolence, love, mildness) for them.
- 92) If a treasure (goods and chattels, possessions, fortune, etc.) is entrusted to you, then give it back in the same measure as you received it; do not be unfair ones (irresponsible ones) to whom a treasure (goods and chattels, possessions, fortune, etc.) is entrusted and then it is not returned to the full extent or not at all; and do not be unfair ones (irresponsible ones) in that you receive an advance (loan) or an accommodation (short-term loan) and it is given back only if the receiver of the advance (debtor) or the receiver of the accommodation (debtor) has been continuously chased after or following recourse to jurisdiction.
- 93) Consider the untaught ones, the unknowing ones and the unfair ones (irresponsible ones), because you also have an obligation towards them to be helpful to them in good things and to instruct (teach) them in the truth-teaching, even though they speak out in lies and slanders (calumnies) and vilifications against the truth and the teaching of the truth of the prophets.
- 94) And if you fulfil all your obligations and fear (refuse/reject) the unfair (irresponsible) and the untruth, then you



will be able in honesty to enjoy your own well-being

- 95) Those who accept a miserable measure (price) in exchange for the bond with the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, and take oaths against the truth, they will have no true part in existence, because they are unfree in themselves and loveless towards themselves, and therefore they are lacking inner freedom, peace and consonance (harmony); therefore, however, the honest ones and fair ones (responsible ones) and those who are knowing of the truth will not be connected to them in friendship so they are awaiting their own painful punishment; but if they clean themselves from their disasters, then they may be certain (knowing) that the upright ones and fair ones (responsible ones) and those who are knowing of the truth will be connected to them in respectful (honourable) friendship.
- 96) Truly, there are many amongst you who twist your tongues (are hypocritical) so that you others believe, that they were talking about the truth-teaching, although their words are not from the teaching; they are lying and claiming that what they are saying has been taught by the prophets, but they are only expressing lies against the prophets and they know it.
- 97) Considering that the prophets have given you the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, it is not seemly for you to twist (falsify) their words when teaching it so that people of your kind (fellow human beings) may be your servants (hands/helpers) and be subservient to you; be at all times fair and teach the teaching as it has been given to you by the prophets, and make sure that the people of your kind (human beings) do not bow down (fall in bondage) to you and do not become your zealots (fanatics), but are loyally connected to the truth-teaching and the Creation.
- 98) It is not possible for the prophets to demand (command) you to accept the truth-teaching and follow it, because you must determine (decide) for yourselves whether you want to be connected to the teaching or not; if the prophets were to command you then they would be the same as the rulers who impose coercion on their subjects and subjugate them when you have given yourselves up to their Gewalt.
- 99) And think of the bond that the prophets made with themselves in times of yore, so that you shall receive instruction (teaching) and guidance in the truth-teaching through them, which is why they have brought the teaching of the knowledge and the wisdom to you up to the present day in order to fulfil their bond that they made with themselves so that you would be knowing in the truth and help yourselves to reach truliness (pureness as a true human being); and think of the bond that the prophets entered in themselves with you, with you the people so that you would become fruitful through your understanding of the truth and would form your inner world (consciousness) in such a wise as to turn yourselves to love and peace as well as to knowledge and wisdom so that true peace prevails in you and amongst you.
- 100) To enable everything to arise in you which is of great value and brings you unfolding (evolution) in your inner world (consciousness) and in the thoughts and feelings as well as in your psyche, and also that all your virtues may prosper, you have to agree to create all the great values in yourselves, which can only happen if you perceive your responsibility to its full extent; and as you agree and turn yourselves to your nobleness (virtues) and fulfil it in all forms, then you confirm the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as has been brought to you by the prophets.
- 101) Whoever turns to the truth-teaching and then turns away from it again, for whatever reason this may be, that human being is committing an outrage against himself or herself, because he or she will be turning to a delusional teaching of falseness.
- 102) And whoever turns away from the truth-teaching, which is the teaching of the true knowledge and the wisdom, will search for a teaching of belief that is bound to gods and tin gods and their priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods; and they will be willing to follow the false teaching in order to return to those from whom they came before they turned in doubt to the teaching of the prophets to which they were however once again disloyal, because they do not understand the truth and are full of suspicion and discord, as well as being full of two-partedness (doubt) and without relation.
- 103) Know about the truth of the creative (Creation) and about the teaching of the truth as has been revealed since time immemorial up to the present day by the prophets and as was revealed to your forefathers and their forefathers and to all the people; and know that since time immemorial the prophets have not differentiated between those whom they have instructed (taught) therefore they did not display any conceit (arrogance/haughtiness/boastfulness) or any hatred against believers in tin gods and gods and their priests and servants, and therefore neither against any other skin colour or kinds (races); and therefore the prophets never demanded that those whom they were instructing in the truth-teaching shall have to submit themselves to the teaching, because turning to it always has been and always will be a matter of one's own freedom.
- 104) How shall a people (state) be taught in a fair (responsible) wise if it itself and its authority are unfair (irresponsible) and unversed in the real truth and the wisdom and therefore in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because unfair (irresponsible) authorities make for themselves



unfair (inadmissible/biased) laws and instructions and directives (ordinances/regulations) by means of which the people's freedom is held down (reduced/curtailed/constrained); and unfairly taught authorities impose unfair (disproportionate) charges (taxes) on the people in order to exploit the people in irresponsibility so that the higher ones may skim off their expenditure (spending) imposed in falseness and irresponsibility at the expense of the people, because they spend more than they receive in fair (proportionate) charges (taxes) since they cannot redeem (draw up) an allocation plan (budget) in their incapability; therefore the higher ones burden the people with more and more senseless charges (taxes) that serve to exploit and limit the people's freedom, against which the people in its indolence (unconcernedness) does not take any countermeasure, so as a result the authorities fall prey to ever greater audacity in their exploitation by charges (taxes); therefore it shall be given that the people, rather than authority, shall decide on the necessary charges (taxes) and an allocation plan and for all necessities, and for this purpose the people shall be advised by experts in the matter to be decided, so that the people (state) may not fall into obligation (debt/over-indebtedness).

- 105) And in order to achieve fair (responsibility-conscious) authorities which guide the people in a fair (responsible) wise, handling their affairs and desires and requirements in a fair (responsible) wise, then it can only be that the higher ones may not raise themselves up to their area (office/position/post), but are appointed by election (voting) in which case the majority of the votes is decisive; it may be however, that the candidates for an area (office/position/post) in authority are strictly checked (proved) so that only such human beings are appointed to a task who are capable of fulfilling them equitably and in honesty and equitableness (fairness) and without demanding (desiring) personal advantages; and each human being who is called into an area (office/position/post) of authority shall be remunerated by the people (state) in a fair (proportionate) wise, and not in an exaggerated remuneration, and therefore without special rights and claims as well as without special concession (authority) and special rights (privileges), so that he or she may be ranked equally to any other fair one (responsible one) of the people, so that there may be no position of presumption (superiority/elevation) for the leaders compared to the people; in truth, in all rights all people of your kind (human beings) as people of your kind (human beings) are equal and one is not worth any more than another, therefore there may be no difference between the leaders and the people, and also not between rich and poor, not between those who are knowing and unknowing, not between those who are educated and uneducated, not between fair ones (responsible ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones), and neither between believers and those who are knowing of the truth or between kinds (races) and skin colours and peoples.
- 106) How shall the true prophets teach the people, irrespective of whether the people is knowing or unknowing in the truth-teaching, if the people does not confirm that it wants to be taught by them?; and how shall the true prophets teach the authority, irrespective of whether the higher ones are knowing or unknowing in the truth-teaching, if they do not confirm that they want to be taught by them?; in truth, the true prophets can only teach those who confirm that they want to be taught – whether they are ones knowing of the truth or ones unknowing of the truth.
- 107) And truly, do not open your ears to those who lie to you saying that you will be cursed if you do not believe in gods and tin gods or in liberators (angels) and demons and venerable ones (holy ones), because all of them are only unsubstantial fabrications (inventions) of those who are confused and of all those who want to beat you down into servitude (bondage) and exploit you through your belief; and therefore their lies are also hazy pictures (delusions), as are shared by their believers and the priests of gods and tin gods and of other servants of gods and servants of tin gods; and do not open your ears to those who lie to you that you will be cursed if you do not believe in priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of delusional beliefs and gods and tin gods, and also if you do not believe in people of your kind (human beings) who raised themselves up as godheads or as authorised ones (substitutes) of gods and tin gods and demons.
- 108) Pay heed to only dwelling amongst those who are connected to the truth, but not amongst the deniers of the truth, so that you shall not become like them and that you do not create punishment in yourselves through lovelessness and unpeace and unknowledgeness; and do not give yourselves any deferment (time limit) for remaining amongst deniers of the truth if they confront you threateningly (intimidatingly/dangerously) so that you shall subserviently bow down (in bondage) to their lies about the truth.
- 109) It shall not be held against you as unright if you dwell amongst deniers of the truth or consort with them providing you do not let yourselves be made uncertain in your love for the truth.
- 110) Truly, if you dwell amidst deniers of the truth or consort with those who were previously knowing of the truth and fell away from it, then keep (protect) yourselves in particular from their fickleness (change of mind), because they are seven times more slanderous (calumnious) in their denial of the truth than those who have never been connected to the truth-teaching before.
- 111) And truly, those who have fallen away from the truth after previously having been connected to it and who continue to wallow in unknowledgeness of the truth, they will not rue this quickly, but will be confused for a long time and will always be concerned to slander (calumniate) those who are knowing in the truth and to



make them turn away from their love of the truth.

- 112) As for those who are unknowing in the truth and the truth-teaching of the prophets, you shall not accept either gold or other values from them if they, in their wanting to buy themselves free from the bad of their unknowledge, are giving it as ransom; truly, it is not possible to free oneself from the bad and pangs of conscience, from vices and lapses by performing penitence (atonement) and by making a penitential payment (indulgence/fine/ransom), because liberation from this can only come about through an elimination (no repetition) of the fallibilities (errors) and, if necessary, by an appropriate fulfilment of guidelines; if priests and other servants of tin gods and servants of gods accept penitence (atonement) and a penitential payment (indulgence/fine/ransom) then they are doing not right and are only interested in robbing their believers, because they cannot guarantee forgiveness for the bad and guilt or for vice and lapses either through penitence (atonement) or through a penitential payment (indulgence/fine/ransom), because forgiveness can only be granted by those who committed the bad and lapses themselves and have loaded the guilt or vice on themselves, as well as by those who had to suffer under them.
- 113) You can only achieve righteousness (conscientiousness) if you are fair ones (responsible ones) and knowing ones and fulfillers of the truth and of the laws and recommendations of the Creation; and you are also fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) if you give to the poor and needy from that which is dear to you.
- 114) And truly, all food and all drink is permitted to you, with the exception of that which is adverse to your well-being, because it is inedible or undrinkable due to being dangerous and deadly.
- 115) And as you want to be fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), abide by the teaching of the prophets so that you follow their words and are truthful in following the truth and the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 116) However, those amongst you who fabulate (invent) lies and slanders (calumnies) against the prophets and their teaching and against the truth and against the laws and recommendations of the Creation, you are committing an outrage against all irrefutability (rightness/reality/flowerlessness/authenticity/truthfulness) of the inner world of the firmaments (universal consciousness).
- 117) The prophets have spoken the truth since time immemorial, therefore follow their teaching, their explanations and words, so that you are connected to the truth, as the prophets are connected to you, and next to them you shall not have any false prophets and not lend them your ear.
- 118) And the teaching of the true prophets is the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, originating out of the laws and recommendations of the Creation and of the appearance (nature) created by it, and it is overabundant in boons (prosperousness/fullness/fruitfulness, etc.) as a guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) for all peoples.
- 119) The teaching of the truth provides clear signs (evidence), and whoever recognises and understands them shall find true love and peace in himself or herself, as well as freedom and unity (harmony); guide your inner world (consciousness) on a pilgrimage to the truth, so that you fulfil your duty of unfolding (evolution/growth), which is the sense of the life.
- 120) Anyone amongst you who persists in unknowledge and does not follow the duty to follow the truth, may consider that although you are independent from all created creations (creations) in your will (have free will), you are however subject to the laws and recommendations of the Creation and of the appearance (nature) that it has created, therefore you cannot escape them and determine your life yourselves for good or ill through your bearing (behaviour) by your own account (responsibility).
- 121) Why do you deny the truth and therefore also the teaching of the prophets and their signs (marvels) which demonstrate the truth to you?
- 122) And why do you keep all of those away from the truth-teaching who are striving to search for the real truth and are willing to follow the laws and recommendations of the knowledge and wisdom?
- 123) And why do you try to make the straight way of the truth into a crooked one considering you are yourselves witnesses to the signs (evidence) of the prophets and their truth-teaching; but know that your slanderous (calumnious) deeds will not remain without consequences for you, because you are bringing affliction and harm on yourselves and will have to carry them.
- 124) And you who know about the truth, if you obey even in any small wise those who slander (calumniate) the truth then they will make you unknowing in the truth again although you had been connected to it.
- 125) Ask yourselves, however, how you can once again become unknowing ones in the truth after the signs (evidence) of the truth have been brought forward to you by the prophets who dwell amongst you or who have dwelt amongst you time and time again and also brought you the signs (evidence) of the truth; and if you consider your question, then you will know that you can only fall away from the truth again because you are doubting and do not hold fast to what will truly lead you on the right way.
- 126) You, however, who know about the truth of the primal raising (Creation), be respectful (deferential) in your



knowledge and make sure that death does not befall you while turned away from the truth.

- 127) And all of you keep firm to the lifeline of the truth-teaching, and do not be disunited amongst one another in any wise, neither in your existence with one another nor in the explanation of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 128) Always think of the grace (favour/mildness) of the laws and recommendations of the origin (Creation) when you are following them; therefore also think of the grace (favour/mildness) which you shall give to those who call themselves your enemies, so that enmity may turn into true friendship; come together in love and bring understanding (insight) forth for one another so that you may be like brothers and sisters, and may respect and protect one another.
- 129) Do not bring yourselves to the edge of a firing pit due to enmity, rather guard yourselves against this so that you do not fall headlong into one and are not burned beyond recognition as a result of your hatred and your pathological craving for revenge; fulfil the laws and recommendations of the Creation and of the appearance (nature) clearly and decisively, as has been taught you by the true prophets, so that you may be rightly guided.
- 130) And see to it that there is a growing community of people of your kind (fellow human beings) amongst you which strives to fulfil the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and goodness, and which incites (instructs) to the right and refuses the unright, so that it may go well with you.
- 131) And do not become separated or contradictory or disunited amongst one another in any wise and for whatever reason, but instead take the clear evidence of the prophets and live in love with one another so that you do not bring down any punishment on yourselves.
- 132) See to it that your faces do not become darkened through inequity (unfairness) and unknowledgeness in the truth, rather make sure that your faces are brightened by equitableness (fairness) and knowledge in the truth and its teaching as has been given by the prophets in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the fruitfulness (Creation).
- 133) Those whose faces are darkened by lying and deception, by slander (calumny) and all disastrous things, they are separating themselves from the community of the fair ones (responsible ones) and those knowing of the truth.
- 134) And those whose faces are brightened by their love of the truth, their knowledge, their wisdom, their equitableness (fairness) and their respect (deference) for the truth, they will be in the grace of very many people of your kind (human beings) and will dwell amongst them as esteemed ones and ones who are always welcome.
- 135) These are also signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of knowledge, of wisdom and the laws and recommendations of the Creation and the appearance (nature); and these are also signs (evidence) of the prophets who bring them forth to you because they encompass the truth and they give them because they do not want any inequity (unfairness) or unknowledge in the truth amongst you.
- 136) The primal wellspring of wisdom (Creation) is everything that exists in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets), and it has presented everything before you so that you may manage it rightfully and may also be rightful yourselves, therefore you may decide to act rightfully in all things.
- 137) You are the best created creations (life forms) who have arisen for the benefit of all people of your kind (human beings), therefore you shall also bring the benefit to people of your kind (fellow human beings) and not wage any battles (wars) amongst one another; you shall safeguard the rights amongst one another and protect yourselves against all unright by following the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the primal wellspring of wisdom (Creation), its laws and recommendations that are given to you by the true prophets.
- 138) And know that if you open your ears to the teaching of the prophets then truly you dedicate yourselves to (are being loyal to) the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the existence and it will be better for you.
- 139) And heed the teaching of the true prophets because only they teach the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the primal wellspring of wisdom (Creation), the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because they teach love and peace, freedom and unity (harmony); and do not heed the false prophets who only teach the guidelines of evil so that there may be lovelessness and unpeace as well as unfreedom and disunity (disharmony) amongst you, just as they also commit manslaughter and bloody deeds (murder) and teach punishments as laws of their fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods so that you are subjugated and submissive (in bondage) to them and are biddable out of fear of punishment, and they can fleece (exploit) you and subdue (master) you.
- 140) Be on your guard against the false prophets, because then they can only do you little or even no harm; and when they are against you in order to influence you with their false teachings then turn your back on them and in this wise they will not find any victims in you.
- 141) If you turn away from the false prophets, then they will be smitten with ignominy wherever they are met, unless you let them close to you and you offer them your protection; but know that the false prophets bring delusional teachings of fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods, as do equally their priests and other servants of tin gods, so that you shall follow the false teachings and kill and punish in the name of the gods and tin



gods; consider that true prophets do not bring any teaching of this kind, but the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and this does not include either laws or recommendations that instruct (command) to kill, put to the ordeal (torture) or punish; because in truth the truth-teaching of the true prophets is based on the laws and recommendations of the Creation which do not know manslaughter and bloody deeds (murder) and also do not know ordeal (torture) or punishment, but only true love and peace as well as freedom and concordance (harmony); therefore you shall be watchful and detect the false prophets by their speaking just as you detect their priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods who spread the insidious and deceitful teachings of the false prophets so that you shall bow down (be in bondage) to them and their false teachings.

- 142) Do not agitate yourselves in rage because of the fabulated (invented) and falsified teachings of the false prophets which are nonsensical and deceitful to the truth, as well as their priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods; and do not fall into misery because of the falsified teachings of the false prophets who have since time immemorial rejected the true teaching of the truth and its signs (evidence), just as they also do today, so that you unrighteously kill (murder), put to the ordeal (torture) and punish as since time immemorial; be on your guard against the false prophets and their deceitful and insidious teachings, and also against those who bring the false teachings of the false prophets and fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods amongst you as priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because they are rebels and outrageous ones (irresponsible ones) against the truth of the formation (Creation) and its laws and recommendations.
- 143) Truly, you are not all the same, because there are some amongst you who follow the bond with the truth and lead your existence accordingly, so you care for the truth in word and in teaching, both in the daytime and in the hours of night; but there are also some amongst you who are connected to a belief in gods and tin gods, in liberators (angels) and demons and in venerable ones (holy ones) and in godheads and the like, in such doing you are following a false teaching and are cursing the truth; but you who do such things, you are imposing a harmful punishment of lovelessness, hatred, pathological craving for revenge, unpeace, unfreedom and dissonance (disharmony) on yourselves.
- 144) Know always about the truthly truth of the formation (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, thereby bringing about the right and demanding the unright its rightlessness.
- 145) Compete with one another to do good deeds and always retain your righteousness (conscientiousness); and for the good deeds that you do and for retaining your righteousness (conscientiousness) you shall receive your fair (appropriate) reward, and your good deeds and your righteousness (conscientiousness) shall not be disputed, because whoever knows the truth shall esteem it well and recognise it in deference (esteem).
- 146) Curses and damnation shall not be called down (wished) on the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and truth-deniers, the thieves and deceivers, the murderers and all those who do unright, rather they shall be given the prospect (possibility) in accordance with the right and law and appropriately in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) to be able to understand their doing unright through learning the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, which shall also apply if the fulfilment of guidelines (punishment by separation from the society for a certain time) is ordered; goods that are wangled (grifted) through unright or goods that are obtained in any other wise through unright shall not benefit the thieves and deceivers and all other unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), because it shall be taken away from them and given back to those from whom it was expropriated (stolen) in one wise or another; and damage done to goods and chattels and possessions through doing unright shall be remedied to the full extent by the fallible ones, whether the remedy takes the form of performing a service (work) or repaying the liability for the damage in the form of currency.
- 147) You are unfair amongst yourselves and therefore against yourselves, therefore you shall learn equitableness (fairness) against yourselves and against people of your kind (human beings) so that you may find a peaceful coexistence and peace in yourselves.
- 148) Do not throw away your life on Earth in unknowledge of the truth of the primal power (Creation) so that you will not be destructive like the whirlwind which blows through the arable crops with icy unweather and destroys them; do not commit outrages against your existence and therefore also not against the continuance of your world through unknowledge, because otherwise you will destroy yourselves as well as your earth and your appearance (nature); be at all times moderate in all things and do not drive up the number of your descendants into copiousness (vastness/enormousness/unlimitedness), so that you will not become the destroyers of your world, and it does not rebel against you in misery and pain and protect itself against your destructive frenzy with primal Gewalt and does not crush you and your creations (achievements).
- 149) You who are knowing in the truth-teaching, do not take those as trusted friends who do not stand up for you and only feign friendship as long as they have a premium (benefit) from you, but do not remember their friendship any longer when you fall into misery and need their help.



- 150) And you who are knowing in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, do not take those as your trusted friends who are far from the truth-teaching and are unwilling to understand and accept you as ones who have knowledge of the truth, because they will not fail (neglect) to destroy you; and truly they like it when you are struck by calamity; and their hatred against you will quickly become apparent from their mouth, but what their breast (feeling-centre) conceals (hides) is even worse; and truly they do not want to understand the laws and recommendations of the life.
- 151) If you are fair ones (responsible ones) and ones knowing of the truth, then you doubtless love those who believe themselves to be your enemies, because they consider themselves as your enemies although you are not theirs, but they do not love you nevertheless; the ones who see themselves as your enemies, but you do not see them as yours, you love them because you act in love in accordance with the truth-teaching which teaches that all people of your kind (human beings) are equivalent (equal) to one another as people of your kind (human beings); those who believe themselves to be your enemies do not love you however, rather they are deceiving you because they pretend to you that they are connected to the truth although they are not, and when they are alone then they gnaw their fingertips in rage against you; and they would prefer to die in their rage against you than to resolve their enmity and their rage and hatred against you in themselves.
- 152) Truly, if something good happens to you then it pains those who believe that they are your enemies, but if something evil happens to you then they rejoice over it and laugh; but remain steadfast and upright in spite of their doings and esteem them as people of your kind (human beings) and embrace them with love, then their intrigues will not harm you.
- 153) Consider that when you get up early in the morning and go out of your house that you shall always be friendly and good to yourselves, as well as to all those whom you meet and with whom you have doings, so that neither you nor anyone else may fall into agitation about you.
- 154) Never reflect upon chickenheartedness (cowardice), but always be upright, daring (bold) and joyful so that you give yourselves power and the others respect and honour you.
- 155) Never be connected to chickenheartedness (cowardice), but always stand by yourselves with great bravery, so that you may never be weak in any things and so that you may take yourselves as protectors in all things, so you may be thankful to yourselves.
- 156) It is not sufficient for you that the prophets bring you signs (evidence) and the teaching of the truth, since you are striving with false teachings to be like your fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods and you obstinately allow yourselves to be led into confusion by their priests and other servants (hands/helpers), believing that your god or tin gods are sending liberators (angels) down to you who shall come to your aid when you are fighting in a battle (war) with those whom you have raised up as your enemies.
- 157) And as you make enemies for yourselves, so they come over you in reckless haste, but no liberators (angels) will come storming out of the clouds (from the firmament) from your gods and tin gods in order to hurry to your aid, because liberators (angels) from gods and tin gods are just as much fabulated (invented), unsubstantial formations by people of your kind (human beings) as are the gods and tin gods themselves.
- 158) Therefore you shall arrange yourselves according to the real truth as is given to you by the teaching of the prophets, so that you may accept their joyful message in yourselves in order to calm yourselves in your inner world (consciousness) in your intention and consideration (reflexions and strivings); and truly, if help is given to you in any things, then it comes from you alone because as far as you are concerned you are the mighty ones and those who have to create knowledge and wisdom in yourselves.
- 159) However, so many amongst you are inconstant, which is why you cut off parts of the truth as unknowing ones and debase yourselves thereby, this explains why you often have to turn away from unfulfilled things of evil when the truth catches up to you.
- 160) It is your task alone to turn to yourselves in clemency (kindheartedness) and to make yourselves into ones knowing of the truth, as it is also your significance (concern/matter) whether you punish yourselves by being malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth.
- 161) Everything that exists in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets) belongs to the primal power of the love (Creation), but you are the ones to whom it is given to forgive yourselves or to punish yourselves according to equitableness (fairness).
- 162) All those amongst you who are ones who have knowledge of the truth and fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), do not gobble up a markup (interest) and markup on markup (compound interest) when you give advances (loans) or borrowing (loaned money) or mortgaging (pledged money/surety money) but only demand a markup (interest) and settlement in a fair (tolerable) wise, so that you are not rapacious ones (avaricious ones/usurers) and so that it may go well with you.
- 163) Fear rapacity (practising usury) and the fire of unknowledge if you turn away from the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and become depraved in yourselves by creating lovelessness and unpeace as well as unfreedom and dissonance (disharmony) in yourselves.



- 164) Listen to the teaching of the prophets and their words of the truth-teaching, so that you may find grace (kindheartedness) and mildness in your existence.
- 165) And compete with one another in assiduousness (striving) for true love and for peace, as well as for freedom and consonance (harmony) so that you may forgive all those who assume they are your enemies, so that you may create a paradise on your world and honour and dignity may be yours, as is planned through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) for all of you who shall be truth-knowing and raised above all untruth, above all unright and all evil, as well as above enmity and battle (war), above hatred and jealousy, unfair (irresponsible) punishment and ordeal (torture), above revenge and retaliation and everything that is against the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the primal power (Creation).
- 166) You are rightfully fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) if you give contributions (alms/donations) to the poor and needy, whether you are in fortunate or unfortunate circumstances; and you are also fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) if you do not allow any anger and hatred, as well as any revenge and jealousy and anything else that is unright to arise in yourselves; and you are also fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) if you evince (grant/show) forgiveness to people of your kind (fellow human beings) and show goodness to them.
- 167) And those amongst you who commit a misdeed or an outrage against yourselves, consider your infamous action (crime) and search for forgiveness so that it may go well with you and you do not knowingly (consciously) persist in your unright doing.
- 168) And if you give forgiveness to yourselves and ask for forgiveness from all those to whom you have done unright, then your reward will be a garden of happiness and joy in which a stream of true love and of peace as well as of true freedom and consonance (harmony) will flow; you will remain in the garden of happiness and joy as the reward for what you affect through your effort.
- 169) Before your time, the true prophets presented and explained many laws and recommendations of the creative (Creation) and of the appearance (nature) proceeding from it, so that you may receive a guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) for your existence and how to lead your life; therefore you shall take up the teaching of the true prophets so that you wander across Earth and see that your end will be good, not however like those who slander (calumniate) the truth and accuse (blame) the true prophets of lying.
- 170) The teaching of the prophets is a clear explanation for people of your kind (human beings) and a guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) and admonishment so that you may be fair (responsible) and righteous (conscientious) and truth-knowing and so that you may vilify (curse) everything that is unright and that you may only do what is rightful.
- 171) Do not tire in doing what is fair (responsible) and righteous (conscientious), and do not sorrow about terrible things and unfortune in the past, just as you do not sorrow about inequity (unfairness) that is done to you and everything that is of unright that has been blamed (ascribed) to you; do at all times what is rightful and let bygones be bygones so that you may prevail (gain the upper hand) over everything of the past and not wail over what has come and gone (things of the past) and inconstant (mortal) things.
- 172) If you as ones knowing of the truth incur a wound, then be certain (knowing) that those who have no knowledge of the truth incur similar wounds, because everything is changing amongst the people of your kind (human beings) so that they may be admonished from this to learn in consciousness (consciously) and to differentiate themselves from animals and other creatures which are not capable (able) to learn in consciousness (consciously); truly, the person of your kind (human being) is set apart from the beasts and from all animals and other creatures by his or her ability to learn in consciousness (consciously) whereas the beasts and all animals and other creatures only learn through their urges (instincts) and are not skilful (capable) of thoughts.
- 173) Be at all times faithful to the truth-teaching and cleanse yourselves daily from all inequitable things (errors/unrights) that you cannot avoid doing in order to bring fullness (sufficiency) to your unfolding (evolution) so that you may be constantly ever more fair (responsible) and knowing and therefore wiser, so that you are witnesses to the truth; therefore you shall eradicate everything inequitable from yourselves by granting yourselves cleansing from it.
- 174) Do not assume (believe) that you will enter the realm of the truth as long as you have not decided in favour of it and you do not yet distinguish yourselves from those who are openly connected to the untruth and unknowledge; assume (believe) only that you will enter the realm of the truth and of the love, peace and freedom, as well as of the harmony if you are steadfast ones in following the truth and its laws and recommendations.
- 175) Quite a few amongst you have the habit of wishing for death before you meet it in a natural wise, but consider that if you look out for it without it coming to you at a time of its own choosing, then you are malefactors (lawbreakers) against the life and against the laws and recommendations of the creative (Creation) and against its appearance (nature); truly, bringing death at one's own hand and being your own murderer in



chickenheartedness (cowardice) is killing in Ausartung and against the laws of the life.

- 176) Do not believe that you may die after a predetermined period of time, because there is no decision by fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods for how long your existence shall continue; truly, death comes to everyone in its own time which is determined by the inner and outer foreordination (destiny), such as age or illness, accident or Gewalt and other things that bring life to an end.
- 177) And whoever desires the reward of the world, it will be given to them according to their share (merit), and whoever desires the reward of the life, that is obtaining a peaceful death, that human being will receive it in due measure (according to) the unfolding (evolution) of his or her inner world (consciousness).
- 178) And everyone will receive their reward according to what they merit, so also dying as a conversion (transition/change) to death will take the form that corresponds to the reward of the life.
- 179) The true prophets decide themselves to carry out their determination (mission) by learning the laws and recommendations of the creative (Creation) and appearance (nature) in order to teach them to you in love and dedication, so that you may lead a good existence and recognise the truth, so that you may create true love and true peace in yourselves and around yourselves, from which true freedom and harmony may arise.
- 180) Truly, the old true prophets have gone before you to teach you and to guide you, but you persecuted them and you made attempts on their life, because you did not turn around and do not follow in their footsteps (you do not turn to the truth-teaching); but as you do not turn round to the truth and you follow in the footsteps (follow the beliefs) of the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and the unknowing ones, so you continue to hound the true prophets and make attempts on their life; however, consider that even if you hound the true prophets and try to kill them, you still cannot harm their teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life in the slightest wise, because it exists for all time and is therefore indestructible, because it goes forth as instruction from the truth of the creative (Creation) and from its laws and recommendations; and truly if you turn yourselves to the instruction then you will be able to evince (grant) thankfulness to yourselves.
- 181) And there have been so many false prophets at whose side numerous crowds fought for false teachings of fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods and their priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods, in this wise innumerable people of your kind (human beings) were killed (murdered) with evil Gewalt and bloodlust, and others were forced into a servitude (bondage) in the belief of the battle hordes (war hordes); and as it was like this in times of old before you, it continues to be so because you are convinced in your false belief in gods and tin gods as well as being believers in your demoniacal faith; and you do not notice that your fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods as well as their priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods are proclaiming love and peace as well as freedom and harmony, whilst however demanding revenge and punishment as well as battle (war) and Gewalt and retaliation by speaking in favour of the death penalty and killing (murdering) in battles (wars) thereby anointing (blessing) murderous weapons and the sword of justice for spilling blood of your kind (blood of human beings) in the name of their gods and tin gods.
- 182) In truth, true prophets have stood up (appeared) and have brought the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, but all those who were given the task of writing down the prophets' truth-teaching misrepresented it with falsifications and deceptions and lies, and therefore with fabricated (invented) additions and with false explanations, in this wise they created teachings of lies; and those who taught and followed the teachings of lies as higher ones committed deception in the name of the true prophets and evoked battles (wars) for spreading a fabricated (invented) belief; and they falsified the petition (intercession) of the truth and the records (chronicle/writing of history) and falsely attributed their wrongdoings to the true prophets so that these may be held to blame (responsible) for battles (wars) and deaths as well as for Gewalt and coercion and for all terrible things, although they did not have any share in the battle (war) and bloody deed (murder) and destruction and in all Ausartungen; therefore, however, it will be that the last prophet from the line of Nokodemion in the new time will be equipped with all necessary things and will be well versed in writing, so that he will no longer need scribes, therefore he will know how to record the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as set down in the 'Goblet of the Truth', and will bring it to permanence in his own words.
- 183) Do not hesitate, because whatever may happen to you and whatever hits you, you have since time immemorial and now and also in the most distant coming time in your possession the teaching of the true prophets so that you may not become submissive or weak before yourselves and also not before those who believe they are your enemies.
- 184) And always speak the truth and be the steadfast ones so that you cannot be accused of lying or slander (calumny); and forgive the people of your kind (human beings) their errors as well as their misdemeanours in their conduct, in this wise you may strengthen your and their steps so that peace and concord (harmony) may prevail amongst you.
- 185) Consider that you receive the reward of this world according to how you unite amongst one another (live



together) and how you do good things amongst one another and practise true love.

- 186) Consider that if you lend your ear to and listen to those who are wallowing in the untruth and unknowledgeness, then the result will be that you will turn about on your heels (deny the truth) and you will be the ones to lose.
- 187) The prophets are the protectors of the truth-teaching, and you shall be both the protectors of the true prophets and also the protectors of the truth-teaching, not only at the times when the prophets are living but also thereafter, so that the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life may become the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) to all peoples of your kind (humankind) for following the laws and recommendations of the primal raising (Creation).
- 188) Do not be alarmed if you turn away from the untruth and from the unknowledge about the truth and turn towards the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the life and of the real truth and you commit (obligate) yourselves, and if you do not place any fabulated (invented) false teachings of baseless (invented) gods and tin gods as rivals next to the truth; the truth does not grant any authorisation for falseness and lying which dwells in the fire of evil and is the place of shelter for malefactors against the truth.
- 189) Truly, the true prophets have always kept their promises even if there were some amongst you who beat them and threatened (menaced) them with death and hounded them because you wavered in recognising and accepting the truth and loved being connected to the lie instead of to the truth.
- 190) And since time immemorial there have been many amongst you and there remain many amongst you today who ask for this world of the visible but also ask for the world of the invisible in order to test the prophets because you do not want the truth to be true; but the prophets forgive you, because they are kindhearted towards you who are unknowing and do after all want to find the way to the truth.
- 191) Do not go forth and look around you when the prophets are calling out their teaching behind you, so that you may not endure any suffering and may not sorrow about the evil and disastrous things that you will lose which befell you a long time ago and drove you into fleeing from the teaching of the truth.
- 192) Let there be innocent love and peace, as well as freedom and consonance (harmony) in you and about you through the teaching of the prophets, so that you may cultivate your dignity as people of your kind (being human in the real and true sense) and do not give any reason for resentment and rage.
- 193) Since time immemorial, the true prophets have brought the teaching to you for peace and for love, not however false teachings of evil which call for battles (wars) and bloody deeds (murder) and destruction; in truth, many of you lead a life as if you were lying in a troubled slumber tormented by anxious dreams (nightmares/ incubus) because you are living against the truth and only for yourselves and because you are not bringing your inner world (consciousness) to unfolding (evolution).
- 194) Truly, you are wrongly thinking thoughts of the unknowledgeness and of the untruth, and therefore you do not have any share in the regulation of things as they are given by the laws and recommendations of the Creation; and also the regulation of all things shall be a task (cause) for you; and therefore you shall fathom out in the regulation of all things what of its sense has been hidden from you, so that you may understand what the guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) of the life is.
- 195) If you had used a share of the regulation of all things for yourselves, then you would not kill people of your kind (fellow human beings), and therefore you would not steal or deceive, you would not hate or practise revenge and retaliation, neither would you harbour jealousy or fall prey to battles (wars) and all Ausartung.
- 196) If you had remained by the truth-teaching since time immemorial as was brought to you by the true proclaimers, the prophets, then you would not have lowered yourselves (debased yourselves) allowing yourselves to be driven into hatred and pathological craving for revenge and into battles (wars) and into all Ausartungen by the rulers and authorities, as well as by false prophets and fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods and their priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods; if you had remained by the truth-teaching since time immemorial, then you would not have allowed yourselves to be commanded to go out in order to wreak decadence, manslaughter and bloody deeds (murder) and pillage by wars (battles) and transgressions (illegality) and outrages (crimes), thereby complying with (following) the evil and false resolutions of the instigators (fomenters/ hatemongers) and ringleaders; at all times you would have had to prove yourselves in order to stand against the Gewalt-rulers and other lords and their demagogues so that you would have cast them from their throne and replaced them with true leaders; truly, at all times the people shall provide its own leadership if it does so rightfully so that the higher ones are only delegated ones (deputies) of the people and do not have might over the people but are only carrying out the will of the people because it is the people itself that shall decide on its prosperity and adversity and not be constrained by rulers and lords and the higher ones as well as by false prophets or priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods; therefore, every authority shall be appointed by the people so that it stands in the people's favour and only carries out the instructions (directives) through having been authorised (empowered) by the people.
- 197) May the resolution ripen in you that you prove everything so that you may reform (clarify) everything that must



be done so that your authorities follow the will of the people rather than you follow the will of the authorities; as a people you shall be decisive for your prosperity and adversity, under the good teaching of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life which is given as the «Goblet of the Truth» by the true prophets from the line of Nokodemion, the originator of all true prophets of his line who taught true love and true peace as well as true freedom and harmony.

- 198) Those amongst you who turn your back on yourselves in enmity, truly you are stumbling because of certain things which you do amongst one another in unright, but you shall not meet one another in enmity, rather you shall forgive one another and be forbearing; truly, it is not seemly for people of your kind (human beings) to hold people of your kind in enmity because this brings torments and depravity in the thoughts and in the feelings as well as in the psyche and the inner world (consciousness).
- 199) Do not persist in unknowledge so that you do not wander through the land with evil intent or depart for a battle (war) and so that you do not load blame on yourselves or so that you do not come to the sense that it would be better to die or be slain rather than having to live with an unbearable tormenting guilt.
- 200) And if you have reason for remorse due to a light or heavy burden of guilt that you have loaded on yourselves, then nevertheless give priority to life and do not presume to accommodate (to abet) death because you do not want to give account for your guilt in chickenheartedness (cowardice); life is given for fulfilment so that it may be savoured in good time when existence is full of kindheartedness and joy, but that it shall also be endured in misery and poor times when existence is difficult to bear and full of pain and sorrow.
- 201) If you throw away your life and you die at your own hand or that of hired murderers, whatever the reason for this may be, then truly that is inexcusable for you since such actions are a breach of the law of the life which says that you shall not kill in Ausartung; robbing yourselves of the life and therefore killing (murdering) yourselves or having yourselves assassinated by hired killers (murderers) means killing in Ausartung and is a breach against all laws and recommendations of the life which do not give motivation or teach in favour of death and ruin, but rather the maintenance of the life (affirmation of the life) in all its twists and turns (kinds/forms).
- 202) And if you should be slain or otherwise killed (murdered) because of the truth, then it is truly better to forgive those who are against you in this wise and to follow their demand for silence and to keep the truth in yourselves, than to be separated from the truth; but be certain (knowing) that you are not commanded to have yourselves slain or otherwise killed (murdered) on behalf of the truth, because it is recommended to you that you shall consider (decide) yourselves what your foreordination (destiny) shall be; however, consider that being slain or otherwise being killed because of the truth is against the laws and recommendations of the creative (Creation) and it is consequently permitted to maintain a distance (not to spread the truth-teaching or teach it in any other wise) outwardly from the adversaries of the truth, and only to care for the truth in your own inner world (consciousness) and in your thoughts so that you may be sure of your life; truly, it is better to keep quiet about the truth than to be slain or otherwise killed (murdered) because of it, because it is certain that at a later time the truth can once again be disclosed when there is no longer any danger of losing one's life; therefore you shall not allow yourselves to be slain or otherwise killed (murdered) because of the truth, but instead show yourselves amenable through silence whilst however safeguarding your knowledge of the truth in yourselves and leading your existence in the sense of the truth, only to break your silence when you are out of danger.
- 203) For the sake of benevolence (humanity) and equitableness (fairness) and truth, be gentle to all those who are against you and against the teaching of the truth, because if you were to be harsh and hard to them then they would curse you and insult you; forgive all those who are against you and against the truth and try to consult with them in trust so that they may become better disposed towards you; and therefore it may be that you consult them in questions of administration of any particular things so that they become aware of your trust and carry the insight; and if they have decided in favour of you and for goodness, then place even more trust in them and you will win friendship with them.
- 204) If you are upstanding and fair and place trust in yourselves, then no-one will prevail over you with unright and inequity (unfairness), but if you abandon your steadfastness and your being fair and you lose your trust then no-one can help you, and the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and fraudulent ones will gain Gewalt over you.
- 205) Act at all times like the true prophets who are incapable of acting dishonourably, but if you act dishonourably and you defraud the truth then the time will come about in which harm arises in yourselves and you are tormented by lovelessness and unpeace as well as by unfreedom and divisiveness (disharmony); each of your actions will be fully paid back to you in some wise or other according to what you merit, both in good and evil and in right and unright.
- 206) Truly if you go for the pleasure of the truth, then you will also reap pleasure from people of your kind (human beings), but if you draw down the rage of people of your kind (human beings) on yourselves then you will kindle a dwelling of the shadow world (hell) in yourselves for your thoughts and feelings, therefore your inner



world (consciousness) and your psyche will become sorrowful.

- 207) Truly, if you are knowing of the truth and its teaching, then as ones who have knowledge of the truth you only have different levels with different sublevels in terms of (according to) the scope of knowledge, but you do not have any levels as people of your kind (human beings), because you are all equal.
- 208) As you are all equal as people of your kind (human beings), so are also the prophets who are always people of your kind (human beings), even if their knowledge about the truth of the creative (Creation) and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life exceeds your own knowledge many times over; and the true prophets always show their courage, as you shall also prove your courage in recognising the truth, accepting it and speaking it aloud; consider at all times: only the brave ones, the fair ones (responsible ones) and the righteous ones (conscientious ones) speak the truth, whereas the fainthearted ones, the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) remain far from the truth and do not have the attitude (mentality) to speak it aloud.
- 209) The true prophets give you grace (kindheartedness) when they arise from your midst and give you signs (evidence) of the truth and present the word of the truth of the creative (Creation) before you; therefore you are recommended to cleanse your striving and to learn the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life from the your true prophets so that you may be free from the false teachings of false prophets and their gods and tin gods, as well as also from their priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods.
- 210) If a calamity strikes you in your inner world (consciousness) as well as in your thoughts and feelings and in your psyche in a simple or double wise, then consider that it comes from you yourselves, because you truly have the might in yourselves over all of your own things.
- 211) And to enable you to distinguish the pretenders (hypocrites) from the upstanding ones, fight with the words of the truth against them and put them to the proof and test so that you understand how to recognise their attitude (mentality) because they only speak with their mouth, but not with truth of knowledge, so they are going astray in their speaking.
- 212) And do not follow those who are pretending (hypocritical), because they do not keep death away from themselves, instead they kill themselves in chickenheartedness (cowardice) when they are sick of the life or when it is difficult for them and they do not want to bear the difficulty of existence; truly, those who are sunk into chickenheartedness (cowardice) are close to the unlife (misery) and the untruth, but they do not want to accept it.
- 213) If those who came before you (ancestors/forebears) had listened to the truth-teaching of the true prophets, then they would not have slain and killed (murdered) one another, just as they would have kept death away from themselves and would not have laid a hand on their own life (committed suicide), because truly the teaching of the veritable (true/genuine) prophets teaches the empowerment for life and maintaining it, not however strangulation, nor slaying or spilling blood (committing murder) of another kind or the chickenhearted (cowardly) flight into death at one's own hand or that of an assassin.
- 214) And if people of your kind (human beings) amongst you are slain or otherwise killed (murdered), then the reprehensible (villainous) actions of the murderers shall be punished in the form that the woman is separated from the man or the man is separated from the woman (excluded from society and from the other sex) and ostracised (separated/cast out/outlawed/banished) for life or for another suitable period at a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded region or island), according to the severity of the bloody deed (murder); and truly, it shall not be permitted for those who commit bloody deeds (murderers) to go unpunished, rather it shall be that they are punished and taken to a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded regions or islands); therefore it shall not be permitted either for the reprehensible (villainous) deeds of the murderers to be remedied and amends made for them by blood money (blood gelt) thereby escaping punishment and a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded regions or islands); however it is also not permitted to pay back in kind and demand blood for blood, and therefore not to slay or throttle murderers either, just as they must not be hanged, stoned or killed (murdered) by poison, neither shall they be decapitated nor killed (murdered) in any other wise because such acts are the same as the bloody deed (murder) and are based in revenge and in retaliation which are against the laws and recommendations of the life and the creative (Creation).
- 215) And if children and young people (youths) amongst you make themselves guilty of a bloody deed (murder) then they shall be taken for punishment and to a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded region or island) in the same wise as for those who have grown up (adults), thus a lifetime or other appropriate period in the place of fulfilment of guidelines (punishment by separation from society for a certain time), determined according to the severity of the bloody deed (murderous deed), also applies for them.
- 216) Do not think that those who are slain or otherwise killed (murdered) for the truth or untruth will enter into the presence of a paradise of a god or tin gods because no-one receives this who enters into the life of death (death-life) because truly, with dying, a person of your kind (human being) ceases to exist, because death



brings dissolution to the activity (energy), and out of this a new person of your kind (human being/personality) with a new inner world (consciousness) is created; and it is taught that the spirit-body (spirit-form) of people of your kind (human beings) is a tiny dot (minute thing) of activity (energy) of the Creation and is not bound to death so that this is existing in the realm of the invisible (other world) and shows (manifests) itself in renewal (rebirth) once again in a new person of your kind (human being).

- 217) If you follow the laws and recommendations of the truth of the Creation, then you are granting yourselves delight and grace (kindheartedness), therefore you are full of joy when you follow the truth, and truly you will have neither fear nor sorrow which you are not capable of mastering.
- 218) And truly you will be full of joy about the truth if you lead your existence in it, and therefore the reward for this will not be lost to you.
- 219) Those amongst you who follow the call and the teaching of the prophets after having lived in dark unknowledgeness and received evil wounds to your inner world (consciousness) and in your thoughts and feelings as well as in your psyche, you will reap a great reward if you do good and act rightfully.
- 220) It is probable that unknowing ones and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) as well as unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) have gathered around you, but do not be afraid of them, rather let their bad deeds strengthen you and give fullness (sufficiency) to the teaching of the truth so that the truth itself will be a comprehensive protection for you.
- 221) Return to the truth-teaching and to the laws and recommendations of the Creation with kindheartedness and understanding, so that no disastrous things will strike you and you will find pleasure in true life, because you are yourselves those who show esteem, favour and mildness to yourselves.
- 222) Do not be afraid of evil and its friends who wish to frighten you with misdeeds; only be afraid of committing misdeeds and inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) yourselves when you are ones who have knowledge of the truth.
- 223) Do not allow yourselves to be afflicted by those who quickly fall prey to evil and unrightfulness, because indeed they cannot harm the truth and yourselves in any wise if you remain steadfast; always be willing to give them a share of your knowledge so that they do not have to continue in unknowledge and in their cursedness and therefore do not have to persist in their inequity (unfairness).
- 224) It is certain that those who have bartered unknowledgeness and delusional teachings for the truth in order to gain a belief in a god or tin gods, that they cannot harm you or the truth in any wise if you are steadfast in the knowledge of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and in the laws and recommendations of the origination (Creation).
- 225) And those who are unknowing ones in the truth and the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) shall not assume that it will be to their boon that they deny or slander (calumniate) the truth, because indeed it will only lead to all disastrous things growing in them and they are debasing themselves.
- 226) Do not think that you can leave yourselves in the position of unknowledge of the truth, in which you find yourselves, because you must separate yourselves from what is bad and turn yourselves to goodness, therefore you must be concerned about learning so that what is hidden in the truth may be disclosed to you; therefore choose the teaching of the prophets because if you make their knowledge and wisdom your own, you will be upright and fair as well as virtuous, for which you will receive a great reward in yourselves, in your inner world (consciousness) and in the thoughts, in your feelings and in your psyche.
- 227) And those amongst you who are stingy with that which has been given to you by the fruitfulness (Creation) in its goodness, you shall not assume that your stinginess will be for your boon and for your own good, because truly you will be disdained by people of your kind (human beings) as they become aware of your actions since you have hung avarice around you like a necklace which is visible both near and far for people of your kind (human beings).
- 228) Your thoughts and speaking are foolish and delusional if you think and say that the truth of fruitfulness (Creation) is poor, but you however are rich in your unknowledge of the truth; and you have even had it written down by scribes, with falsification, by changing the teaching of the true prophets against the right and since then slanderously (defamingly) teaching that punishment and revenge as well as retaliation and battle (war) shall be practised against those who are of another belief and another people than your own; and therefore you have slanderously (defamingly) set down in your writings that also children take up arms in order to go into battle (war) and kill for your false beliefs and for all conflicts (enmities/disputes), but by no means is this rightful, and therefore it is against the laws and recommendations of the fruitfulness (Creation) and of the life; and your slanders (calumnies), as you have instructed scribes to set them down incorrectly, also teach, against all right and against all equitableness (fairness) and against the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of wisdom (Creation), that every man and every woman shall be of death if there is a break in the bond between man and woman; and equally everyone shall be of death who kills (murders) or commits other misdeeds; but these lies and slanders (calumnies) are against the truth and the laws and



recommendations of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation), and they are murderous (criminal) claims which are far from the truth and are fabricated (fraudulent) falsifications that are invented by people of your kind (human beings) with delusional thoughts and desires (vices/wantonness/pathological cravings/urges) in joy or vengefulness in order to torment, punish and kill others.

- 229) For the sake of what your thoughts create and the evil deeds that arise therefrom, you flee from the truth and set unright against right, so that you may lead an existence in evil that is far from the truth in face of the life.
- 230) Many amongst you are believers in gods and tin gods, just like the priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods who together with you unknowing ones and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) call not to listen to and heed the words or the teaching of the true prophets before they might bear witness that those would be destroyed in the fire of punishment who do not turn to the truth-teaching; but truly prophets have come who brought clear signs (evidence) and bore witness that ill-gotten goods never prosper and therefore do not bring forth good fruits but only rotten ones; you, however, only slandered (calumniated) them and tried to kill them because you are not truthful in the knowledge of the truth.
- 231) However, those amongst you who are accused (blamed) by the unknowing ones and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and by the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) of lying, remember the true prophets who are accused (blamed) of lying before your time and in your time, and remember the true prophets in your time who are also accused (blamed) of lying also by you and your priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods despite showing (revealing) the way to the guideline (principle/leading thought) of truthly life with clear signs (evidence) and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, the teaching of the wisdom and with their open and honest words; and you and your priests and servants of gods, your servants of tin gods and swaggerers, your nit-pickers (know-it-alls) and word-splitters, none of you want to perceive what is the truth, because for you who are truth-deniers, something that is against your belief and against your reflexions and strivings is not allowed to be truth.
- 232) Consider: Every person of your kind (human being) will feel the dying, but even during the time of your life you will receive the full reward for your thoughts and feelings, as well as for your deeds and your actions in their time, which becomes noticeable in your inner world (consciousness) and in your psyche as also in your thoughts and feelings; only whoever fulfils their life appropriately, as laid down in the teaching of the truth of the wellspring of all life (Creation) through laws and recommendations, will be far from the fire of inner misery, woe and pain, and will verily achieve the true joys of existence without deceptive pleasure.
- 233) Truly, amongst yourselves you will be at all times tested by people of your kind (human beings) in terms of your goods and chattels and therefore of your own self (consciousness/dignity/virtue/honour, etc.) and certainly you will hear many injurious things from those who presume to criticise your goods and chattels and yourselves; and the criticisers belong to those who have apparently consecrated (holy) texts which indicate base (unhumane) laws and recommendations which they follow and thereby set gods and tin gods as well as priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods at the side of the wellspring of the fruitfulness (Creation); however, if you remain steadfast in face of them and act in an upright wise, then truly you thereby show your firm decisiveness to remain in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and the teaching of the wellspring of the fruitfulness (Creation).
- 234) Always remember that every prophet makes a bond of the connectedness with people of your kind (human beings) to whom he brings the teaching of the prophets, and so it will be until the last true prophet who in the new time will give you the writing of the extensive teaching from his own hand; and you shall then announce the teaching to people of your kind (human beings) and not keep it secret, just as you do not throw it behind you or treat (explain) it in a falsifying wise to gain the small prize of advantages (benefits) and profit, because everything that you buy in this wise is disastrous.
- 235) Do not assume (believe) that those who rejoice in what they have done in disastrous and unfair (irresponsible) things, or who want to be famous for what they have not done in disastrous and unright things, do not assume (believe) that they will obtain true joy and happiness in themselves, because in truth they are assuring (bringing down) punishment on themselves because they are suffering a painful chastisement in their inner world (consciousness) and in their psyche just as much as in their thoughts and in their feelings.
- 236) The truth is in the laws and recommendations of the realm of the inner world of all firmaments and earths (universal consciousness), and only the truth, the laws and recommendations of the inner world of all firmaments and earths (universal consciousness) are mighty over all things without however ruling them in forcefulness or goodness, because truly the primal power (Creation) of all existence is neither demanding nor prejudiced (biased), but is only determining through its laws and recommendations which people of your kind (human beings) and every life (life form) is free to observe or disregard at their free consideration (discretion/ convenience) so that the person of your kind (human being) and every life is independently responsible for his or her existence and his or her deeds and efforts.
- 237) In the primal power (Creation) of all firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds) and the stars and in the change



from day to night and in all existence of the living, the signs (evidence) of its truth and reality (presence/existence) are indeed visible for the ones knowing of the truth and those who understand.

- 238) All of you who think of the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), when standing and sitting and when you are lying on your side pondering over the wellspring of all wisdom as well as its firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds), the stars and all existence of the living, then you will become knowing that you have not been created in vain, but that you shall fulfil the sense of existence so that you may become wise and full of love in your inner world (consciousness), in order to transfer these values into your spirit-body (spirit-form) which will one day combine (unite) with the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation).
- 239) You will not be cast into the fire (hell) in yourselves because of the primal power (Creation), and therefore it does not throw you into defilement and helplessness because of your being malefactors (lawbreakers) either, for truly, if such a thing happens to you, then this happens appropriately in accordance with your own deeds and efforts and in your own blame (responsibility).
- 240) You hear the callers of the truth-teaching, the true prophets who encourage you to turn to the truth of the creative (Creation) in freedom by learning the truth and recognising and following it, then you will forgive your own misdemeanours and take all disasters away from yourselves, so that one day you will meet your dying and go into death as fair ones (responsible ones) and ones who are knowing of the truth and as righteous ones (conscientious ones).
- 241) You give yourselves what is promised to you through the true prophets through their teaching, and as you follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so you do not cast yourselves into ignominy, but instead you experience the goodness of the laws and recommendations of the fruitfulness (Creation) as they are taught you through the prophets; and none of the prophets will be the same as the prophet of the new time, because his teaching will be of great extent and like a vast ocean wave, such as no prophet before him will have brought; and the wave of teaching will foam with enormous fullness and all kinds of richness (variety) and will flow over the world as never before; and in a wise that has never been given before, he will write the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life with his own hand so that no attributive and fabricated falsifications and slanders (calumnies) may be given by unworthy scribes, such as have villainously distorted and defiled the truth-teaching since time immemorial in shamefulness (contemptibility) and disputation (denial); do not allow the work of the prophets, the active ones in the truth-teaching, to rot and spoil or to become lost, whether man or woman, even if you are different from one another; do not flee from the truth and do not allow yourselves to be driven away from it by unrighteous ones (irresponsible ones) and unknowing ones, because truly it is the best homestead that you could have.
- 242) And truly, those amongst you who fight in peace and freedom for the cause of the truth, you will find consonance (harmony) in your inner world (consciousness) and in your psyche, just as you will create a garden in your feelings and thoughts through which flow the rivers of joy, love and happiness, as the most beautiful reward for your loyalty to the wellspring of all creative (Creation) and its laws and recommendations.
- 243) And let it be said to you again and again: Do not allow yourselves to be deceived by the wanderings and the false teachings of the truth-deniers in the land, but instead be watchful at all times and recognise their slanders (calumnies) and lies and their deception in the face of the real truth; however, if you do allow yourselves to be seduced, then you will only have a small and brief gain, because then the fire of depravity (hell) will take up its dwelling in you and devour you from within, so that you will no longer find a good place of rest in yourselves.
- 244) Those amongst you, however, who fear the untruth and inequity (unfairness) and everything that is unrighteous (conscienceless), love and peace will reside in you as well as freedom and consonance (harmony), just as your reflexions will be joyfulness and happiness.
- 245) And certainly there are some amongst you who would like to be connected to the truth-teaching, but you cannot find the way to it because you are entrapped in a belief in a god or tin god; truly, if you search for the way then you will find it but only if you approach the truth in an unbiased (neutral) wise and therefore without partiality (prejudice) and you fathom it without the blindness (fanaticism) of your false belief.
- 246) And if you are truly searching for the way to the truth and to the teaching of the prophets, then do not reach for the truth submissively, but freely and victoriously in yourselves, and do not allow yourselves to be sold for a small price of belief by the believers in god and believers in tin gods so that you continue to follow the untruth and delusion of a fabricated (invented) god or tin god made up by people of your kind (human beings); and do not allow yourselves to continue to be seduced by false signs (false evidence) and pictures (images of gods/images of tin gods) and figures (cult statues/statues of gods/statues of tin gods) or entities (cult objects) of the priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of the god cults and tin god cults which are unsubstantiated (invented) by people of your kind (human beings).



- 247) Those amongst you who are searching for the truth and the teaching of the prophets, or you who have already found it, be open at all times to it and compete in the steadfastness of learning so that you may become more knowing and wiser and may lead your existence in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the Creation, and so that you may be continuously on your guard and afear of the doings of those who deal with belief in gods and tin gods, so that it may go well with you.



Chapter 4

- 1) Oh, you people of your kind (human beings), do not be afraid of the truth, neither of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all life (Creation), because only in them is true love and equitableness (fairness).
- 2) You have been created in your origin from the wellspring of all life (Creation), and you have made yourselves companions as man and wife and have multiplied; heed one another and be afraid of doing unright to one another so that you may be good to one another and make requests instead of issuing commands; uphold the bonds of relationship between one another, because both as woman and as man you have entered into life as people of your kind (human beings), therefore amongst you the only differences are the body, sex and the nature (thought-world/feeling-world/character), actions and behaviour, feelings, the power, the attraction (charms) and the capability (ability) of pregnancy; truly, as woman and man are in inequality (difference) in these things, yet in existence they have common duties and rights so that neither the man shall stand above the woman in any things nor the woman above the man; and just as man and woman undertake the same work, so they shall receive their wages equally so that neither the man nor the woman is paid more than the other for the same labours.
- 3) Truly, equitableness (fairness) is when man and woman grant each other the same duties and rights, although it shall be rightful for the one party who has the greater proficiency (empowerment) for certain duties and rights to be involved more for these.
- 4) And it is rightful that congress (sexual intercourse) between man and woman shall only be permitted if consent is granted; if however the woman or the man is induced into congress (sexual intercourse) by Gewalt, then a defilement (violation) is carried out which shall result (be prosecuted) by right and law with a fulfilment of guidelines (punishment).
- 5) And as you create descendants, it shall be done in the measure of insight (rationality) so that the standard measure of the number of all peoples (humankind) does not get out of control in a very bad wise and result in immoderateness (overpopulation) and the world and its weathers, the appearance (nature) and all life on Earth do not suffer great and lasting damage (destruction of the environment/destruction of the climate/extinction of forms of life/wars/crimes, etc.); therefore, the recommendation of insight (rationality) and of control over extent is given for obedience (following) so that no calamity may come over you and your world; consequently, it is recommended that you keep yourselves within bounds (limits) and manage (monitor) the standard measure of the number of all peoples and that you undertake (carry out) a measurement (census) every certain number of years so that the measure of all inhabitants of Earth does not become too great and remains within the number of the maintainable (supportable) without leading to harm (529 million).
- 6) And if you have orphans then give them their possessions which belong to them and do not exchange good things for bad, and do not live off (steal) their possessions in order to combine them with your own, because such actions are unrightful and despicable and mark you out as unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) if you do them.
- 7) If you are afraid of not being fair to orphans and of doing wrong towards them, then learn from the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and from the truth-teaching of the true prophets which way you must take and what actions you must use in order to be fair to the orphans; and if there are orphans who can be taken by people in union (married couple) or by a woman or man alone as their own (adopted), then it is rightful for the children to be rightfully provided with everything necessary and given instruction (education), which shall be inspected (checked) by the authority; if there are half-orphans, without a father or mother, then do a noble deed and take the half-orphans to be your own when you enter into a bond (marriage) with the mother or the father, so that the children may have a true father or a true mother in love; and if you join with (marry) the mothers or the fathers of half-orphans then behave equally towards the



children without any difference as if you had begot them yourselves; if however you have to fear that you act inequitably, then do not enter into either the bond (marriage) or taking the children as your own (adopting them) because that is the simplest wise for you to avoid unright.

- 8) And if you have orphans who are living in places for orphans (orphanages) or for whom you are caring (foster parents) and who are growing up with you and are provided for and brought up by you then care for them until they have grown out of youth (grown up); and if you perceive understanding and obligation (responsibility) with them in good measure in all things when they have grown up (come of age) then issue them with their possessions so that they may decide what to do with them themselves; and take care that you do not swindle them by claiming the orphans' possessions for your own; however also make sure that the orphans, when they have grown out of their youth (grown up) and come to their possessions, do not consume them hastily or wastefully; and it is rightful, if the orphans receive (inherit) great wealth from their parents, the parents of their parents (grandparents) or the godparents (sponsors), for the places for orphans or you as foster parents to live on it according to equitableness (approval/fairness); if however the places of orphans or you as foster parents are wealthy then it is rightful for the orphans' possessions not to be used; and when you give the orphans their possessions, have witnesses in their presence and also have the issue of the possessions recorded in an accreditation (receipt) which is sufficient for the reckoning.
- 9) Indeed, if you consume the possessions of orphans unrightfully, then you are only swallowing fire and smoke, and you will burn with flaming fire in your inner when your admonishment (conscience) calls you to account.
- 10) And you, man and woman, who are in a bond (marriage), give one another voluntarily and benevolently gifts of thanks for this and that, whether it be an embrace, a flower, a caress or whatever else that speaks of thanks and love and esteem; in the bond (marriage), share everything out of your own free will amongst yourselves and enjoy everything as delight and pleasure in mutual inclination.
- 11) And if you have irrational ones (deranged/feeble-minded ones) amongst you then you shall not allow them to conjoin (marry), neither shall you yourselves enter into a bond with them; and if you are the keepers (carers) of irrational ones (deranged/feeble-minded ones) then do not entrust them with your goods and fortune for their welfare but nourish them with it and clothe them and speak friendly words to them, just as you shall be helpful with advice and deeds.
- 12) Both the man and the woman are due a certain proportion of that which parents and close relatives leave behind, whether it is little or much, depending on the allotments made by the leavers-behind (bequeathers) in a document of assignment (last will); the fair (tolerable) rule for dividing up the heritable goods, chattels and wealth is that in the event of a bond (marriage), the surviving woman or surviving man shall receive two parts (2/3) of all the goods and chattels and of the entire fortune and wealth, whilst the other part (1/3) shall be apportioned to the surviving children in equal shares; if the father and mother lose their life then their entire heritable goods, chattels and wealth shall be apportioned to the descendants in equal shares and if there are descendants from previous bonds (first marriage, second marriage, etc.) then they shall be entitled to even shares with the descendants from the last bond (marriage) in the heritable goods, chattels and wealth of the person in the bond (marriage partner) who is their parent (mother or father).
- 13) If a deceased's heritable goods, chattels and wealth (heritage) have to be distributed, then it is rightful for any debts and other payments to be settled first before any distribution amongst the descendants; and know that your wife or your husband, as well as your fathers, mothers and children are always closest to you, wherefore this establishment of the heritage is given in this wise so that equitableness (fairness) and equality may be upheld amongst all.
- 14) If, however, a man and a woman are in a bond (marriage) and do not have children, and the woman or the man dies, then the entire heritage belongs to the surviving partner (man or woman); and if people without a bond (unmarried people) or descendants (family) die and they do not have any children then their entire heritage shall be apportioned equally amongst their brothers and sisters; and if there are none of these either then their place shall be taken by the next closest relatives; and if children, sons and daughters, die who do not have their own family then their entire heritage shall fall to their parents, or in any case half of the entire heritage if a document of assignment (last will) decrees something different for the other half.
- 15) And if brothers and sisters die when both parents have already died, and if none of the brothers and sisters are in a bond (marriage) and if none of them have any descendants then all shall receive equal shares in the entire heritage of the deceased, however at least half of the entire heritage if a document of assignment (last will) decrees something different for the other half.
- 16) And because of equality and equitableness (fairness), it is not permitted for any reason whatsoever for entitled ones (ones entitled to inherit) of heritages to be disadvantaged by a document of assignment (last will) or excluded from the heritage.
- 17) And it is decreed for your children that female and male children shall receive equal shares of the goods and chattels and the wealth of the leavers-behind (bequeathers), mother or father, so that no more shall be



apportioned to one party than to another, and that equality and equitableness (fairness) may be given and neither the female nor the male descendant be preferred.

- 18) And if other relatives and poor ones or orphans are present at the allocation of the heritable goods, chattels and wealth (dividing up of the heritage), and if they are not taken into account therein, then give them something from that which you receive as inheritance, and speak with them in kindheartedness and with friendly words; if however you receive an inheritance, then you shall not fall into dispute amongst yourselves because of it, for it is rightful for each of you to be satisfied with the share that is granted to you by the leaver-behind (bequeather).
- 19) And those amongst you who cannot yourselves leave any heritage when you depart this life, you shall not be afraid for this reason or concerned because there are no grounds for shame, and it prevents much dispute.
- 20) These are the guidelines and set barriers derived from the recommendations of equality and equitableness (fairness) so that equality and equitableness (fairness), but no disadvantage, may prevail all around, and so that neither strife nor resentment and neither jealousy nor acts of revenge may come about amongst entitled ones (ones entitled to inherit) from those left behind (family).
- 21) However, anyone who transgresses these recommendations of regulation and reckoning is not only creating a calamity in themselves but also all around amongst those who are involved, therefore disparagement (contemptibility/defilement/abasement/dishonour) will not fail to come about.
- 22) And if a man or a woman amongst you commits chastisement (violation) by defiling (misusing/violating) children or a woman or a man at their sexual organ, then call for witnesses and request the jurisdiction to subject the fallible ones to fulfilment of guidelines as punishment, and separate women from men or men from women (exclude from society and from the other sex) for an appropriate time.
- 23) And if two women amongst you or a man and a man have congress together (engage in sexual union) then they shall not be punished, because a woman and a woman in sexual congress (sexual union) is given by the laws of appearance (nature) so that they may copulate together if the need arrives; however if a man and a man have sexual congress with one another then that is against the law of appearance (nature) in such a wise (unnatural) because they cannot copulate fruitfully to produce offspring, but it is in the law of appearance (nature) that sexual congress (sexual union) between man and man is natural (unnatural naturalness) and only serves love and sexual satisfaction (gratification); therefore neither man and man nor woman and woman are committing an unright when they have sexual congress with one another (sexual union), therefore they do not bring down punishment on themselves, nor do they have any need for regret or improvement, so there is no requirement to open up a way out of their penchant (disposition), and they shall live in peace as ones with a different nature in sexuality (lesbians/homosexuals) amongst those who practise their sexuality between man and woman.
- 24) Truly, hard punishment and remorse for any doings only are of value if something evil is done knowingly (consciously); if something evil is done unknowingly and a law or recommendation is infringed then lenience is appropriate and the punishment should be set such that mild commensurability is provided.
- 25) Remorse cannot be accepted from those who continue in their evil doings, because they are only making a show of remorse and do not consider ceasing their evil doings, for which reason they shall be subject to a hard punishment in a place of fulfilment of guidelines (remote place or remote island) for a certain time in order to experience true remorse, so that they may be honestly connected to remorse and cease their evil doings.
- 26) Those amongst you, man and woman, who are connected to one another in a bond (marriage) in truth, equitableness (fairness) and in reckoning, it is not permitted for you to appropriate the goods and chattels and wealth of the other party against their will, neither shall you withhold the goods and wealth of the other party unlawfully or take away a part of it; and whatever you have given to one another shall not be demanded back, even if you are harmed by disgracefulness (badness) or if you break your bond, because a gift (present) is given in good memory that, given at its time, has its value and cannot be taken back, therefore demanding it back is the same as theft.
- 27) If you feel in yourselves anger or unwillingness (aversion) against the bonded companion, against man or woman, then also remember what goodness has been given by the other and what has been given in goodness and badness on your part, so that you make an assessment (pay attention/consider) from both sides in order to reach a truly fair (commensurate) arbitration (decision) and act in a decent wise.
- 28) And if you, woman and man, have already pledged (promised/vowed) a bond (marriage) to one another and if you nevertheless go your own ways again (separate/dissolve the betrothal), and you have already given one another treasures (jewels/property/presents) then do not take any of it back because a gift (present) is given in good memory that, given at its time, has its value and cannot be taken back, therefore demanding it back is the same as theft.
- 29) Gifts (presents) that have once been given shall remain gifts (presents) for all time and in all circumstances, and never be demanded back unless the one who demands back the gift (present) accuses (incriminates) himself or herself of having lied.



- 30) Truly, you cannot take back gifts (presents) from one another either if you have been alone with one another (joined in sexual intercourse); whether you have slept with one another (had sexual intercourse) in a fixed bond (marriage) or only in confidential unity (mutual liking).
- 31) And it is rightful if you are not in a bond (marriage) that you lie with (have sexual intercourse with) one another in confidential unity (mutual liking), if you do not yet have a wife or a husband (you are single) and you have come of age (grown up), but at the same time it shall be that a touchable companionship (open friendship) exists and not however a wild disorderliness (wild promiscuity) of changing partners with whom you lie (have sexual intercourse); if you are however in a vow (betrothal) for a bond (marriage) to be entered into with another man or woman, then it is unrightful if you lie with (have sexual intercourse with) others; and it is not rightful if you lie with (have sexual intercourse with) one another if you are in an untouchable companionship (platonic friendship) with one another.
- 32) And it is rightful that the woman has one man only, because it is only through one man alone that a procreation (fertilisation) for descendants can come about; a man, however, may have three women, because he is capable of undertaking several procreations (fertilisations) with several women, but it is given for him to be able to be fair to all women in all things and in their provision and in their equality; and if a man has several women then a bond (marriage) applies with each of them, within which the other women are also included and of which they also partake.
- 33) And it is not rightful if people in union of a bond (marriage), with a man or woman, lie with (have sexual intercourse with) another man or another woman who is not included in the bond, because that is a breach of the bond (marriage) and shall be punished by the jurisdiction with a fulfilment of guidelines in a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/isolated island) for a certain time.
- 34) And it is not rightful and means blood-disgrace (incest/inbreeding) to enter into a bond (marriage) with a woman who was intimate with (married to) your father or forefather (grandfather); therefore it is not rightful and amounts to blood-disgrace (incest/inbreeding) to enter into a bond (marriage) with a man who was intimate with (married to) your mother or foremother (grandmother); therefore a hard punishment shall be meted out by the jurisdiction if something of this kind is done (undertaken).
- 35) And it is not rightful and means blood-disgrace (incest/inbreeding) if a father or mother enters into a bond (marriage) or lies with (has sexual intercourse with) his or her sons or daughters; therefore a hard punishment shall be meted out by the jurisdiction if something of this kind is done (undertaken).
- 36) And it is not rightful and means blood-disgrace (incest/inbreeding) to lie with (have sexual intercourse with) your father or your mother, therefore a hard punishment shall be meted out by the jurisdiction if something of this kind is done (undertaken).
- 37) And it is not rightful and means blood-disgrace (incest/inbreeding) if brothers and sisters enter into bonds (marriages) with one another or lie with (have sexual intercourse with) one another, therefore a hard punishment shall be meted out by the jurisdiction if something of this kind is done (undertaken).
- 38) Therefore man and woman are not allowed (it is forbidden for them) to enter into a bond (marriage) or to lie with (have sexual intercourse with) their mothers and fathers, their daughters and sons and the daughters and sons of their own daughters and sons; and it is not allowed for man and woman (it is forbidden for them) to do so with their sisters and brothers as well as the sons and daughters of their brothers and the sons and daughters of their sisters; and the same applies to the sons and daughters of the sons and daughters of their brothers as well as to the children of the daughters of their sisters and the children of the sons of their sisters; therefore protection shall be granted you as far as the third generation so that no blood-disgrace (incest/inbreeding) may occur.
- 39) And it is not rightful, therefore it shall not occur, that related mothers and fathers (stepfathers/stepmothers and adoptive fathers/adoptive mothers) lie with (have sexual intercourse with) the related children (stepchildren and adopted children), therefore a hard punishment shall be meted out by the jurisdiction if something of this kind is done (undertaken); if there are joined children (stepchildren) who are not taken as your own (not adopted) then their protection shall take the form of their age until the time when they come of age (grow up), following which they may be raised to the status of a bond (marriage) by the joined father (stepfather) or the joined mother (stepmother), if this is in accordance with the will of the children and that of the father and the mother.
- 40) However, it is rightful if a man has several women at the same time who are sisters and he takes them into his hearth (home) in a bond (marriage).
- 41) And it is not rightful to have congress (sexual relations) with a man or a woman if that man or woman is intimate with another man or woman in another bond (marriage).
- 42) And it is rightful and allowed for you, if you are not in a bond (married) to look for a man or a woman with all your means of uprightness and in a noble wise, providing you do not commit any immoral and unseemly sexual behaviour and you enter into a bond (marriage) with the man or woman and found a clan (family); and it is rightful and permitted for not only man and woman to found a clan (family), but also for a woman and a woman and a man and a man, to whom it is also permitted to take orphaned children as their own (by



adoption) so that their line (family name) may be continued.

- 43) And for the joys that you receive from one another as man and woman, you shall give one another the gift of true love so that you always live in harmony and are good to one another.
- 44) And there shall be no defilement for you in anything that you mutually agree upon, whether it concerns your union (sexual intercourse) or your ingenious skills (practices) in this, because nothing shall be disallowed (forbidden) to you that you do with one another in mutual consent for your joys and your delectation.
- 45) And those of you who cannot afford or do not want to enter into a certified bond (officially certified, certified by the authority), then it is rightful for you to enter into a valid bond (marriage) without evidence (authorisation) from the authorities, and to have all the same rights as those who have evidence from the authority; thus this also applies to bonds (marriages) between woman and woman and between man and man.
- 46) And it is not rightful to coerce a man or a woman into a bond for whatever reason; yet hard punishment shall be meted out by the jurisdiction if this is contravened.
- 47) And if you are guilty of sexual excessiveness and fornication (sexual culpability) and of sexual enticement (whoring) when you have entered into a bond (marriage), then the jurisdiction shall impose a hard punishment on you as shall be prescribed by a fulfilment of guidelines; therefore the same shall also apply to those amongst you who are only guilty of making an approach (attempt) so that you may fear the unrightful doing and hold back because that is better for you.
- 48) Therefore it is rightful if you have undertaken to be true through a bond (marriage) that you do not bring any fornication (sexual culpability) onto yourselves and do not get involved in any harlotry (prostitution) and do not take lovers to yourselves in secret, either a man or a woman.
- 49) And do not consider taking the purity (chastity/innocence) from a man or woman out of pure revelry (sexual urge) and lustfulness (greed), so that you can fulfil your craving (desire) and give fullness (sufficiency) to your boastfulness amongst people of your kind (human beings).
- 50) And do not debase yourselves by sexual excessiveness and fornication (sexual culpability) and sexual enticement (whoring) by falling prey to lying with (having sexual intercourse with) partners out of drunkenness (desire) or taking possessions and a whore's payment.
- 51) And it is recommended for you to uphold the laws of people of your kind (human beings) so that everything will be granted to them that belongs to them, therefore also freedom, as slavery as well as other trafficking in people of your kind (human beings) and servitude as well as bondage contravene all rights and are reprehensible as well as disallowed (forbidden); you shall turn to people of your kind (fellow human beings) in kindheartedness and love and not harm them in any wise.
- 52) You shall ease the burden of the existence for yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings) because you are weak through your unknowing of the truth of the primal power (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, therefore you shall bring about assuagement for yourselves and people of your kind (human beings) by turning yourselves to the truth-teaching, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that it may go well with you.
- 53) Do not split up (share) your possessions amongst one another with illicit (forbidden) means (deception/theft); obtain (earn) everything with honest commerce and in mutual consent.
- 54) And be reputable (honest) and righteous (conscientious) to yourselves, so you shall not commit any outrage to your own body and life and not kill (murder) yourselves, neither shall you let yourselves be killed (murdered) by deceitful murderers; and do not kill (murder) for the sake of another's possessions; and do not rob those who are going about their business (wayfarers/business people, etc.) or who carry their wealth on their person or keep it in their house (home); and yet whoever contravenes this law nevertheless in outrageousness and inequity (unfairness) shall be severely punished by separation from men or women (cast out of society and separated by gender) and be excluded for a certain time through remaining in a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/isolated island) amongst people of their kind and in separation of the sexes (only men or only women) so that they may feel the fire of admonishment (conscience) in themselves and become of right sense.
- 55) Keep yourselves away from the minor and the major things which are illicit (forbidden) for you, and observe the laws and recommendations that are given in a fair (responsible) wise for the weal and for the protection of the life of all, then you will contribute to love amongst all, as well as to peace, freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 56) And do not desire that which sets others apart or what others have created, just as you shall not desire the possessions of another either; the things you want to have shall be created by your own power in righteousness (conscientiousness), so that every man shall have his share according to his merits, and so that every woman shall have her share according to her merits; do not be envious of things that others have more of than you do, so that you do not become slanderers (calumniators) of them and you do not become



thieves, deceivers and murderers (killers) if you dare to slander them, steal from them, deceive them or rob them.

- 57) Consider, each one is given everything according to his or her merits, and so it shall also be in a bond (contract) if you have concluded one with one another so that one party shall not be disadvantaged whilst the other is advantaged (receives a benefit), therefore everything shall always be regulated so that both parties receive the same shares and rights such that one does not have more than the other; and if you conclude a bond (contract) for a deal, then it shall be such that the one who is the grantor (seller) does not give excessive advantage to the receiver (purchaser) and the latter does not carry out his or her obligation to (towards) the grantor (seller) tardily (does not discharge the responsibility).
- 58) And you stand in responsibility for all things both as man and as woman, and therefore it shall also be kept rightful in this wise if you enter into a bond (marriage) as well as if you are still without a partner (unmarried); therefore whether in a bond (marriage) or in the unmarried state you bear the entire responsibility for every and each thing that you do; and in the bond (marriage) it is both the woman and the man who bear complete responsibility for the clan (family) and therefore the descendants as well as for the hearth (household) and possessions and wealth; and if everything is managed and created jointly then all parties have an equal right to all possessions and wealth, but if the bond breaks apart then everything that has been created jointly shall fall due in equal measure to the man and woman; if the man or woman brings his or her own possessions into the bond (marriage) then every possession and the wealth shall be due commensurately (accordingly) to the one who brought it with them as their own (goods brought with them), which shall also apply if the bond (marriage) is dissolved; neither man nor woman shall be preferred in the responsibility and management of the clan (family) and the descendants and the hearth (household) because the management and welfare of these are in the responsibility of both, but it shall be that the more discerning party, man or woman, bears a heavier responsibility than the less discerning party; and therefore it is rightful that both the man and the woman are obedient to one another in responsibility and keep their joint secrets of the bond (marriage) in public and therefore do not talk with interveners (third parties) about it so that the confidentiality of the unity of the bonded companions (marriage partners) may be retained; if however one bonded companion (married partner) behaves with intractability or vice or pathological craving so that the bond (marriage) and the management of the clan (family) and provision for the descendants and welfare of the hearth (household) suffer harm, then the jurisdiction shall make a choice (decision) about the reprimand so that the intractability, vice or pathological craving may be counteracted and resolved; and if the intractable party obeys and demonstrates throughout one year that the evil has been rectified, then no further measures shall be sought against him or her; if, however, it becomes apparent after one year that the choice (decision) and the reprimand are being contravened then the jurisdiction shall impose a punishment involving confinement to a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded regions or islands) for a time of two years for coming to terms (healing/recovery); if the fulfilment of measures (punishment by separation from society for a certain time) does not yield any benefit (success) then the bond (marriage) shall be dissolved so that the harm and destruction of the clan (family) does not continue to grow.
- 59) And if a rift comes about between a man and a woman in a bond (marriage) then one arbitrator each from the man's side and the woman's side shall be appointed to bring about a reconciliation between the man and the woman so that peace and consonance (harmony) may reign amongst them; if however no reconciliation comes about and the rift continues then it leads to destruction (breakdown) of the bond (marriage) so that this shall be dissolved one year after the desire for reconciliation, and one letter of separation each shall be given to the man and to the woman.
- 60) Direct yourselves in all things according to true equitableness (fairness) and do not set unright at its side, as you shall also do in the wise that you show kindheartedness and mildness to your parents and their parents (your grandparents), as well as to for your brothers and sisters and relations, to your immediate neighbours and those who are strangers to you, therefore you shall also act in the same wise towards the poor and needy as well as the companions at your side and travellers, all of whom shall have the same rights as people of your kind (human beings) and to whom you shall grant these rights because it is your duty towards people of your kind (fellow human beings); do not be of pride and do not be show-offs (loudmouths/boasters/big-mouths) towards people of your kind (fellow human beings), since truly you make yourselves unpopular and unthinkable (impossible) as you also prevent yourselves from being deemed as worthy (taken seriously).
- 61) Those amongst you who are stingy and mislead people of your kind (fellow human beings) into stinginess and, in stinginess, keep secret what has been granted to you and what you have created and the wealth you have achieved, so that you do not have to give to the poor and needy that part of which is their due from you, then you are also practising deceit with the share (tax) that you owe to the people (state) for its upkeep and for its efforts, in which case you shall be brought to punishment by the jurisdiction.
- 62) And those amongst you who share out (donate) some of your goods and chattels and wealth so that you are



seen and praised by the people, you shall know that you are only being guided (led) by evil and voracity for renown, and that falseness (deviousness) is your companion and your only reward will be disaster.

- 63) Consider what will happen to all of you if you have fallen prey to stinginess and do not present (donate) some of your possessions and wealth to the poor and needy; truly, you will find neither gladness nor love nor peace in yourselves, neither happiness nor consonance (harmony) and no true freedom, because you are captives of yourselves and of your stinginess.
- 64) Truly, not one iota of unright happens to any of you if you have fallen prey to unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and to stinginess, and the fire of admonishment (conscience) and dissonance (disharmony) as well as the fire of unlove and unfreedom and unpeace burns in you; therefore be remorseful and turn yourselves away from all your evil and from unright and do good deeds which you ought to redouble continuously so that the good deeds multiply and are sufficient to grant you a great reward.
- 65) And consider that it will go badly with you and that you will fall into great shame if you stand before the people and witnesses are brought forth who call you as witnesses against yourselves and your unrightful doings and against your unrighteousness (consciencelessness) so that you fall into disparagement (contemptibility/unworthiness) before the people.
- 66) Therefore the disparagement (contemptibility) of the people will, one fine day, also strike those amongst you who persist in the unknowledge about the truth-teaching and who rise up against the true prophets, because you grant your godliness (belief) to the priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods, and slander (calumniate) and persecute the prophets because of their teaching and strive to kill them; and truly, those of you who do such things will wish on that day when knowledge of the truth ripens in you and overwhelms you, that the earth would be covered over you because then the deepest things of the truth of the primal power (Creation) will befall you and you will wish to sink into the soil in your shame.
- 67) However, do not approach the truth out of evil striving if you are not of right sense (if the truth is denied), but do this only if you know what you want in a righteous (conscientious) wise and in equitableness (fairness) in order to learn about the truth; therefore you shall keep yourselves distant from the truth if you want to slander (calumniate) it, just as you shall only then turn to it if you have a righteous (conscientious) sense, because truly with an unrighteous (conscienceless) sense the truth will remain closed to you.
- 68) And if you are travelling, man or woman, then do the same as in your own house, involving washing or bathing daily to maintain your purity (hygiene) as often as the occasion (conditions) require; and this also applies to sick people and those working under dirty conditions, and also when you come from the privy (toilet); and it is also recommended for you to clean yourselves by washing or with a bath after you have lain with one another (had sexual intercourse); and man and woman remove your hair from your private parts in order to maintain your purity (hygiene) and health and so that no vermin may lodge themselves there; however, do not defile (circumcise) your sexual organ, so that it may be left in the status of appearance (nature) for the sake of completeness, and it may only be modified (circumcised) for reasons of health (medical/surgical measures); and if you do not find any water for you to clean yourselves with then obtain (take) suitable cloths (towels) and use them to clean yourselves.
- 69) Do not listen to the false prophets, neither to the priests and servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods who bring you false teachings and obligations (religions/beliefs) and false modes (forms) of attitude (behaviour) as well as false and delusional customs (rituals) so that you may gain (acquire) it in erroneous assumption and stray from the way of the true truth-teaching, and thus from the teaching of the wellspring of the life (Creation) in order to burn in the fire of the untruth and erroneous assumption.
- 70) Do not be those amongst you who twist (falsify) the words of the truth from their correct positions (in their true form), because truly you hear the words of the truth but you do not follow them; you hear the words of the truth but do not really listen to them, and with your tongues (words and lies) you conceal what is really in you in terms of untruth and unknowledge, and you attempt to slander (calumniate) the truth-teaching of the prophets and the truth of the Creation; and truly it would be better and more upright for you to turn to the truth and listen to it so that you do not curse yourselves because of your unknowledge and your slander (calumny).
- 71) Those of you who hear the teaching of the truth brought to you through the teaching of the prophets, strive to comprehend (understand) the teaching and to fulfil it as already happened before you with those who turned to the truth of the primal power (Creation); therefore do not destroy the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and do not persecute the true prophets and do not accuse (blame) them of lying, deception or dishonesty so that you do not deceive yourselves and curse yourselves.
- 72) Truly, it cannot be of any good to you if you remain far from the truth-teaching and if you place gods and tin gods as well as priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods at the side of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation); and whoever places gods and tin gods next to the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) has truthfully devised a disaster in themselves.



- 73) Consider those who think they are pure and truthful in the truth because they are trapped in the belief in a god or tin god fabricated (invented) by people of your kind (human beings) and lend their ear to the priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods, and therefore miss the way of the truth only to live in hatred and jealousy, in desires (vices/wantonness/pathological cravings/urges) and in the pathological craving for revenge as well as in the delusion of retaliation and of punishment, and only to wage battles (wars), to kill in many different ways and to do everything evil and bad, believing it to be rightful, such as the false prophets and priests of your belief and your obligation (religion) teach you, although it is evil unright and against the truth and against the equitableness (fairness) of the life; however, the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations do not know one iota of unright under which you and the people of your kind (fellow human beings) shall suffer.
- 74) Look at them so that you recognise them evidently as false prophets and as priests and other servants (hands/helpers) for fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods, and do not lend your ear to those who invent lies and slanders (calumnies) against the truth of the primal power (Creation) and against the true prophets and against the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 75) Know about all those and recognise them who receive the truth-teaching but who nevertheless believe in bad untruths and who follow the malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth such as false prophets, false teachers and priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods who lie to you and claim that you would be better guided as believers in their false teachings, but truly they slander (calumniate) the truth so that you are led into delusion by them and will not find any truthfully helpers amongst them.
- 76) Those who lead you into confusion with false teachings, they do not have any share in the real truth of the primal power (Creation), and therefore they are not even able to give (explain) as much as the groove in a grain of corn of the truth and of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 77) Truly, only the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and therefore the unknowing ones in the truth are envious of those amongst you because of the grace (kindheartedness) that you gain from learning about and following the truth; indeed, it would be quite possible for them to gain grace (kindheartedness) in the same way because the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and all the wisdom derived from it is given to them in the same way as to you, and if they followed the truth then they would win in themselves a mighty realm of knowledge and wisdom, love and truth as well as of peace and freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 78) Some amongst you know about the real truth of the wellspring of wisdom (Creation) and you follow its way of nobleness (virtue) and of righteousness (conscientiousness), but many amongst you turn away from it and so the shadow world blazes in you as a flaming fire.
- 79) At all times when you show contempt for and slander the truth of the wellspring of the life (Creation) and do not turn yourselves towards it, as it has been brought by the teaching of true prophets, for all this time you are refusing your happiness and your wellbeing, your freedom and consonance (harmony) and your peace in yourselves; and as often as you burn your inner skin (inner nature) on the fire of unknowledge, just as often do you taste to the full your punishment that you have brought down on yourselves.
- 80) If you turn to the truth of the primal wellspring (Creation) and do good deeds according to its laws and recommendations, then you form in yourselves blossoming gardens through which the streams of love and freedom, peace and harmony flow, wherein you will remain and enjoy yourselves in the benevolence of your existence; and in your status of your wellbeing, you will have pure and honest companions because you grant them access to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and to knowledge and wisdom as well as access to the true and beneficial love and to the freedom in themselves, so they also may have peace and harmony in themselves and you meet one another in solidarity and confidentiality (friendship).
- 81) Truly, the recommendations state that you shall only give your confidential matters of any kind to those who are worthy of them, so that they may be dealt with rightfully and held in esteem and passed on in dignity, be it a substantive case, a case of confidential advice, grief, love, care, discord or a thing of the authorities or juridical punishment or judgement.
- 82) And if you have to decide (determine) between people of your kind (human beings) in any things, then only decide according to equitableness (fairness) and according to the circumstances, but not however according to belief (assumptions) and apparent evidence (indications), so that you do not accuse unfairly but only reach a judgement in rightness according to the laws of the primal power (Creation) and prescribe a punishment in a commensurate way; and the hardest punishment in equitableness (fairness) shall be for a woman to be separated from men or a man separated from women (exclusion from the other sex) as fulfilment of guidelines in a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/isolated island) where even the fallible ones shall be given everything necessary to learn about the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and to follow them, as they shall also be given everything so that they can obtain their provision



(sustenance) and everything necessary through the power of their own hands.

- 83) And if fallible ones have to be integrated into a fulfilment of guidelines, then the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) recommend that each punishment shall be given in a helpful and kindhearted wise, but never in a wise of bodily (physical) chastisement (violation) or cruelty (torture), just as not by harming the psyche or killing in any wise because such a deed of any kind is entirely against the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which has arranged (determined) in any case that all life shall be shielded (protected) and untouchable.
- 84) All of you who turn to the teaching of the prophets, the teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life which is the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of the life (Creation), do not listen to your priests of gods and tin gods or any other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, but turn yourselves to the true teaching of the prophets and follow the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of the life (Creation); and be willing only to the righteous ones (conscientious ones) who have the Gewalt of direction (Gewalt of authority) over you, but ignore those who are unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones); and the same applies to the righteousness (conscientiousness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) of the authority, jurisdiction, demagogues, lords, Gewalt-rulers, rulers, provosts and masters.
- 85) And if there is disunity amongst you, then present your concerns to a wise advisor, to truly wise ones or to a true prophet, but not however to false advisors, false wise ones and not to false prophets and priests or other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, as well as also not to people of your kind (human beings) who purport to be envoys or authorised ones (substitutes) of gods and tin gods or who otherwise raise themselves up above themselves and above you as brilliant ones (sublime ones) or as endless ones (divine ones).
- 86) Do not bow down before what is presented to you as beliefs (assumptions) in gods and tin gods, but know about the truth-teaching from the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) which is revealed to you through the teaching of the prophets; and do not search for your rights from the indignant ones who are against the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because you are recommended not to listen to those who advocate evil and want to lead you into confusion, far away from the right way.
- 87) And if the ones who are indignant against the truth-teaching tell you that you shall come to them and to their false teaching of their false envoys (prophets) and priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods, then show your unwillingness (aversion) against the hypocrites of the falseness (deviousness) and turn yourselves away from them.
- 88) Think it over and protect yourselves when the indignant ones against the truth-teaching and the truth come separately (alone) and quickly to you and look for help from you with false discourses, when they are struck by calamity, because then they will swear that they only wanted the good and the conciliatory, although this will only be a lie because they will fall back into their untruthly deeds once your help has brought them benefit (success).
- 89) Heed the true attitude (mentality) of those who set themselves as indignant ones against the truth and look for help from you in order to deceive you; yet do not turn away from them without giving help, but remind them of the truth and speak a strong word to them about their state of their false thinking and their slander (calumny) so that they may consider this and search for the way to the truth.
- 90) And consider that the true prophets do not come to you so that you obey them and their teaching, because truly they are only admonishers (teachers and advisers) for you to strive for the truth of the primal power (Creation) and find the way to it, so that you fulfil the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and have a good life; the teaching of the true prophets is not a coercion and not a subservient subjection (obligation to obey), but it is given so that every one of you may illuminate yourselves (explain it) in voluntary considering and find the truth in order to turn towards it.
- 91) And those amongst you who have not yet found your way to the teaching of the truth, to the teaching of the wellspring of all life (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, therefore who are still living in unknowledge of the truth and in lapses, slanders, blame and unvirtues, you could find lenience (forgiveness) in the teaching of the truth, and therefore you would not dare to slander (calumniate) the true prophets, to persecute them and threaten them with death instead of begging (asking for) them for forgiveness for your disgraceful doings, so that you truly find sympathy (feelings for others) and benevolence from them.
- 92) Those amongst you, however, who are believers in gods and tin gods because you lend your ear to the priests of gods and priests of tin gods and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, you cannot become ones who have knowledge of the truth until you place yourselves as judges over your own selves and above everything that is contentious in you so that you may turn to the truth-teaching of the prophets and no longer have any doubts in yourselves about your decision to connect yourselves to the truth and to join this acquiescence (forbearance).



- 93) And it is not commanded to you by the laws and recommendations of the Creation that you shall kill people of your kind (fellow human beings), but a certain number amongst you leave your dwellings in order to kill and to break the law of the Creation: «You shall not kill in Ausartung»; truly, you are only allowed to kill when the necessity to protect your own life or the lives of your next ones requires it, but only a few amongst you abide by this, because through the false teachings of false prophets and false priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods, killing is more likely for many than the protection of the life; if you as descendants of your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) who received the truth-teaching in olden days before you, would do what you are requested to do even today by the true prophets and by their teaching of the laws and recommendations of the Creation, then it would truly be better for you and you would be led to greater strength (a life more amenable to the laws of the Creation) through yourselves and through your authority.
- 94) And truly, if you followed the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), then you would receive a magnificent reward as thanks, and your life would be an honourable pleasure if you would only direct (guide) yourselves onto the right way of the truth.
- 95) Anyone who is diligent (obedient) to the teaching of the prophets, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life will always be amongst those who gain grace (kindheartedness) and love in life and in whom there will be freedom and peace and therefore also consonance (harmony); and whoever follows the truth will comprehend (understand) the truthfulness of the true prophets, of the fair ones (responsible ones) and will see their signs (marvels) and enjoy their great wisdom, truly they will also have the truthly prophets as their best companions and teachers, because true kindheartedness emanates from them.
- 96) And those amongst you who know about the truth always take precautions so that you are not alone amongst the mass of the ones who have no knowledge of the truth, but that there are always several of you, in droves or many together, so that you are not annoyed (harassed/victimised) by the believers in gods and tin gods, so that you may be connected to the truth in prudence and without peevishness; consider that merely dwelling (living) as ones who are knowing of the truth in a minority amongst a large mass of people brings disaster because the superiority of the number of ones who are unknowing of the truth in the mass of the people is always boundless in its intemperateness (excessiveness) against any small number (minority); therefore as ones who are knowing of the truth you shall not stand out imprudently amongst the collection (mass) of the people who are unknowing of the truth, but only raise up the word of the truth and teach the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life where it is asked for and desired so that you do not commit misfeasance (proselytising) and do not do the same as the obligations (sects and religions) who look for and lure (bewitch/ ensnare) believers with lying, deceit and delusion in order to exploit them, beat them into subservience and rob them off their own will and their own responsibility.
- 97) There are some amongst you who grow weak (fainthearted) and lag behind (deteriorate in misery) if unfortune befalls you, but as you learn through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life which is explained to you by the teaching of the prophets, then you will be full of activity (energy) and full of power and will be strong so that you know how to overcome even the worst disaster without breaking down.
- 98) And there are some amongst you who are over-courageous if good fortune befalls you and you want to have more in the irrationality of your small thinking and in your greed; and if you gain profit from a deal with one of your kind (fellow human being) then you are robbing (plundering) that human being for your own benefit (advantage), therefore you cannot achieve any friendship between that human being and yourselves; and truly, if you would recognise (see) those in friendship with whom you are conducting a deal then you would achieve great successes.
- 99) And those amongst you who are connected to the real truth and therefore to the teaching of the prophets, only ever allow fair ones (responsible ones) and ones who are knowing of the truth to fight with the weapons of honesty, equitableness (fairness), virtues, esteem and deference for the truth of the primal power (Creation) and its laws and recommendations; and never be foolish enough to throw away your mortal (earthly) life because of the truth, because it is better to be quiet and silent and to keep the truth only in you so that your adversaries do not bring you affliction and do not endanger your life; therefore because you fight only in yourselves alone for the truth of the primal power (Creation) and thus for the truth-teaching, a magnificent reward will be granted to you in that true love and peace will prosper in you, and freedom and consonance (harmony) will bring you wellbeing in your inner nature.
- 100) But what is the matter with those amongst you who do not fight for the cause of the truth, nor for the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and therefore not for the teaching of the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) which is given by its laws and recommendations, and what is the matter with you who do not fight for the interests of the weak and the poor and needy, the women, the men



and the children who would like to be led out from their hardship and their misery and away from their oppressors (tyrants/despots)?; truly, you are neither protectors nor helpers for them because you leave them to waste away in their misery, but you will reap a disastrous reward for this.

- 101) Those amongst you who know about the truth of the wellspring of all origin (Creation), you are fighting with the weapons of the truth, love and consonance (harmony) and in peace and freedom for its cause; you, however, who are unknowing ones and unfair ones (irresponsible ones), you are fighting with the sword, and therefore with all weapons of death for the cause of evil, for the lie and untruth; but you are fighting a hopeless fight as the friends of evil, whose generalship is death and ruin and destruction.
- 102) Curb your hands holding the sword that you are wielding against the truth in your battle against it, because you are afraid of it and your fear grows ever greater; truly, the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) do not decree any fight with Gewalt of weapons in order to murder, rather they demand love and peace so that you may live in freedom and harmony.
- 103) Defer (terminate) your fight against the truth, because those amongst you who fight against the truth with the sword and other weapons of death, truly your advantage (benefit) will only be slight and of short duration, therefore it is better for you to turn to the truth and its teaching in deference so that you no longer spread a single iota of unright.
- 104) Be certain (knowing) that wherever you may be that you cannot escape death because it will befall you even though you may be inside the most strongly built tower, therefore heed death wherever you may be so that it seizes you in right deeds rather than unright deeds; and think at all times about death and learn that it is unavoidable and that you are bound to it, as is everything that lives and crawls and flies, so that you are not frightened when you stand before it and have to leave your life.
- 105) And consider, if goodness that makes you glad happens to you in life or dying, that, if it does not come from outside, it comes from your life-conduct, as it also is if bad befalls you in life or dying and you are afraid; truly, everyone of your kind (human beings) and therefore all people will always get what they merit because of what they have earned, whether it be good or evil, if only you would understand this.
- 106) Whatever goodness you get, all of it comes from your good mentality, just as everything terrible that strikes you comes from your own mentality; truly, you are yourselves your own prophets as you allot (determine) yourselves in all things of your life and announce what redounds to your benefit or harm, and for this you are your own witnesses.
- 107) If you direct yourselves in free determination (decision), willingly and knowingly (consciously), towards the teaching of the prophets, their teaching of the truth, their teaching of the spirit, their teaching of the life, then you are indeed guiding yourselves towards the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation); but if you all direct yourselves in free determination (decision), willingly and knowingly (consciously) away from the truth-teaching, then you make yourselves into guardians of the untruth and evil.
- 108) Coerced obedience is not the guideline (leading thought) of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, rather it is freedom of will in order to fathom out the truth in the freedom of will and to understand it so that it may be accepted in the freedom of will and that life may be led and managed with it.
- 109) Be certain (knowing) that those amongst you who regard the guideline (leading thought) of the teaching of the truth as coercion, you are feigning and are swearing falsely by day that you are connected to the truth and its teaching, but at night you turn away from it and strive to slander (calumniate) and destroy it, but your reward for this will be full of disaster; it is better for you not to concoct attacks against the truth-teaching, but to be honestly connected to it and build upon it so that you may be bearers of the trust for the truth.
- 110) Truly, do you not want to ponder on the teaching of the prophets and on the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), but do you want to continue to court with the untruth despite finding innumerable contradictions in it?; however, be certain (knowing) that the contradictions in the untruth always change to your disadvantage and kindle a fire in your inner nature and in your admonishment (conscience) on which you burn yourselves.
- 111) If a rumour reaches you, whether it contains peace or unpeace, joy or affliction, goodness or evil or friendliness or unfriendliness, then do not spread it, because rumours bring about enmity and hatred, and bring misery on those who are defamed; and if you bring rumours before the jurisdiction or before others who have the Gewalt of command and who understand how to bring out the truth, then be aware (on your guard) that no blame falls on you yourselves, because you are propagating slander (calumny); if you follow (spread) rumours then you will be disadvantaged in all cases because you will not receive any kindheartedness, love, lenience (forgiveness) from those whom your rumours have been about, so that they will hound you in hatred as if evil itself were on your heels.
- 112) And if defamatory rumours originate about the truth and the teaching of the laws and recommendations of



the primal power (Creation) then confront them and fight with peaceful means for the cause of the truth so that the rumours cease and all people of your kind (human beings) experience the truth; only in a peaceful wise should you counter the rumours against the truth and the truth-teaching, in order to rein in (moderate) the deeds of the rumour mongers and slanderers (calumniators) of the truth and its teaching and the teaching of the true prophets; do not impose any penal Gewalt on the adversaries and the ones who have no knowledge of the truth and the truth-teaching, but consider that the truth is stronger than any lie as is taught by a true-saying (aphorism/apophthegm/epigram) that the truth always comes to the light of the sun sooner or later.

- 113) Whoever intercedes in a fair (responsible) wise for the truth and for the teaching of the true prophets, for their teaching of the truth, their teaching of the spirit, their teaching of the life and therefore for the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all presence (existence), those will get a part for their good existence, in true love and freedom in their inner nature, as well as peace and consonance (harmony); however whoever intercedes for an unfair (irresponsible) cause, those will get a part in the unfair (irresponsible) cause because the foreordination from a cause and the effect (effect = cause and effect) is mighty over all things.
- 114) And if you are greeted with a wish of happiness (felicitations), then reply with an even more beautiful greeting, or if you do not like it then at least give a simple and decent greeting in return in order to pay account in fullness (sufficiency).
- 115) The real truth of the wellspring of all life (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations renders all lies and slanders (calumnies) worthless, and it is certain that only congregating around it is of excellence and there is no doubt about this; whoever, on the other hand, congregates before evil and kneels down in belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods or before people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up (make themselves great and important) and extol (identify) themselves as representatives (envoys) and authorised ones (substitutes) of gods and tin gods, they are not truthful (not upright/they are far from the truth) in their knowledge and in their words.
- 116) Do not let it happen that you are split into two parties against those who are unknowing of the truth, against the hypocrites and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) so that you will not cast yourselves out for what the unknowing ones and hypocrites and the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) have done and continue to do and thereby fall into ruin; and truly, whoever takes the way of ruin will not find a way to the true love, freedom and consonance (harmony) or to the peace in their own inner nature.
- 117) The ones who are unknowing of the truth, the hypocrites and unfair ones (irresponsible ones), the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and the ones without virtue are striving for you to be the same as them, because they have fallen prey to inequity (unfairness) and do not want to tolerate you speaking to their admonishment (conscience).
- 118) Do not take ones unknowing of the truth, unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), hypocrites or unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and ones without virtue to be your true friends if they want to make you the same as them: however, take them as friends if they want to set out on the way leading to the truth and to the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation); but if they turn away from the way leading to the truth once again and do not realise it, then do not bring any affliction down upon them or kill (murder) them, but instead be helpful to them wherever you find them so that they recognise and understand the truth-teaching and the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), and return and become friends and helpers of the truth.
- 119) Do not fight with the Gewalt of weapons against another people that is connected to you in a bond, and also do not fight with the Gewalt of weapons against a people that is strange to you and is not connected to you through a bond, because any fight with weapons involving killing (murder) is unrightful and against the laws of love as they are given by the Creation; therefore you shall be terrified from fighting with the weapons of death and never fight against your own or against another people; and if you have to fight against your own or another people, then it shall only be done with words that you use carefully (rationally) and with true discernment (intellect) so that peace and freedom may come about, but not however battle (war) and unpeace or the spilling of blood or bloody deeds (murder) and other killing.
- 120) If other people of your kind (human beings) or peoples gain might over you then defend yourselves with all your fair (appropriate) means, but never reach for weapons in order to kill, so you shall fight against your adversaries with gewaltsamer Gewaltlosigkeit so that all of those who are against you will stay away from you and your people; consider that the truth and righteousness (conscientiousness), peace and love as well as freedom do not permit any kind of attack or any kind of fight with deadly weapons.
- 121) Truly, you will find people of your kind (human beings) who wish to be protected from you and protected from their own people, and they want to live in peace with you or with their own people, but pay heed to them in watchfulness because once they are misled again into hostility, they will plunge themselves headfirst into it



once again; therefore, if they do not stay away from you and do not offer you either peace or restrain their hands in order not to be active using Gewalt and to offer peace, then do not capture them and do not kill (murder) them but strive to offer them the hand of peace and to teach them the truth; but if they continue their hostility, then repel them from yourselves wherever you find them so that they take other ways and move away.

- 122) No person of your kind (human being) is entitled to kill another person of your kind (human being) except if it is done in extreme defence; and therefore everyone take care that he or she does not kill someone of your kind (human being) by accident (unattentiveness) or out of carelessness; if however someone of your kind (human being) is killed (murdered) by accident (unattentiveness) or carelessness, man, woman or child, then the unwanted fallibility shall be punished for a time of three years at a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/ isolated island), after which assistance and help shall be provided to the bereaved family of the one who was killed (murdered), in the form of manual work and with silver and gold (money/financial means) according to the earlier responsibility of the one who was killed (murdered); but if the bereaved family waives the assistance and help out of mildness then this shall be rightful; if however a person of your kind (human being) is deliberately (intentionally) killed (murdered), for whatever reason, then the manslayer (murderer), man or woman, shall be subject to punishment by seclusion of the sexes (exclusion from society with separation of woman from man and man from woman) in a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/isolated island), with the time of punishment set at thirty years, after which the jurisdiction shall establish whether the fallible one, man or woman, has undergone a change and turned to the truth and to the laws; and if the change has come about, then freedom shall be granted again, after which assistance and help shall be provided to the bereaved family of the one who was killed (murdered), in the form of manual work and with silver and gold (money/financial means) according to the earlier responsibility of the one who was killed (murdered); but if the bereaved family waives the assistance and help out of mildness then this shall be rightful; if, however, children are guilty of killing with malice of forethought (with intent) then they shall be subject to a punishment at a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/isolated island) for a period of time appropriate (according) to their age, which shall be determined by the severity of the deed; and children are regarded as all who have not yet grown out of youth (not yet adult = differs from state to state); manslaughter (murderers) of any kind who deliberately (intentionally) kill people of your kind (human beings) shall be subject to the same punishment, without differentiation, of thirty years; if however a man, a woman or a child kills (murders) whilst their inner world (consciousness) and their psyche is confused or sick then they shall not be sent for punishment but to a place for healing their confusion or illness so that they may once again live up to their wellbeing and life-power, as well as to the clarity of their inner world (consciousness) and their psyche, following which they shall once again enjoy their freedom; if however healing the confusion or illness proves impossible then they shall be made to stay in a place (corresponding clinic, psychiatric hospital, etc.) for the duration of their life, for the good of their health and their safety; however, it is not given that those fallible of killing (murdering) of any kind or other nefarious ones and villains or law breakers shall be harmed in their body and limbs (extremities) or in their psyche or their inner world (consciousness) or chastised by cruelty (torture) or coerced into a confession (admission); truly, no person of your kind (human being) is entitled to harm another person of your kind (human being), to commit cruelty (torture) on him or her or to kill him or her; whoever nevertheless deliberately (intentionally) kills (murders), their reward shall be the fire of destruction and misery which burns unceasingly in the admonishment (conscience).
- 123) When you associate with people of your kind (fellow human beings), then only go out (go to them) if you take the way on which you have first undertaken pertinent (thorough/proper) investigations in order to discover who is the next one to whom you are turning; therefore, first consider which words you want to choose when you meet the human being so that you do not say to everyone who offers you a peaceful greeting that this human being is an unknowing one in the truth.
- 124) Truly, you are striving for the goods of earthly life, but in the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the life (Creation) given by the teaching of the prophets is goodness in fullness; once you were without the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, but the true prophets poured the truth-teaching over you in kindheartedness so that you shall be knowing in their richness; but you have forgotten all of it because you did not want to heed the teaching, therefore it befits you today that you undertake considerable (thorough/correct) research (giving attention) so that you will once again be knowing in the teaching of the prophets and follow it.
- 125) Those amongst you who sit still (remain inactive) although you are not infirm, and those amongst you who put chattels and silver and gold to use for the cause of the truth and do not conduct evil strife for the sake of the truth-teaching, you are different in your doing, because those who sit still (remain inactive) are indulging in unknowledge and terrible things whereas you who fight well and peacefully for the truth-teaching, you are bringing down tribulation on yourselves from the unknowing ones and the indolent ones, but in yourselves



you are creating love and peace as well as consonance (harmony) and freedom.

- 126) Consider that the truth-teaching does not bestow any levels of excellence in the knowledge and following of it, neither benevolence nor particular forgiveness, because truly if you want to be benevolent and forgiving then you must create that in yourselves, as well as the level-less excellence which is common to anyone who strives for the knowledge of the truth-teaching.
- 127) Truly, those amongst you who remain far from the truth, you will be carried off by everything evil and by all disasters so you miss the goodness and the values of the life, because you are not striving for the truth of the primal power (Creation) and its laws and recommendations as you treat yourselves as weak ones of the life; and for you weak ones, the truth is so far away that you cannot make your way to it unless you change your attitude (mentality) and place all false teachings of fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods behind your back so that you strive to reach the real truth in front of them; if, however you do not follow the way of the truth of the primal power (Creation) and continue to persist in unknowledge of the truth then you will continue to create the destiny in yourselves that your inner nature is a place where the shadow world (hell) resides, the fire of which will consume you.
- 128) And many amongst you have fallen prey to weakness, man and woman, as well as children, all of whom you teach weakness from the cradle onwards through the false teachings of the false prophets and priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of fabricated (invented/thought up) gods and tin gods so they cannot take a decision and find a way to recognise the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and to understand and follow them.
- 129) Truly, all your fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods as well as your false prophets and your priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods are unable to eliminate (eradicate) your faults that you commit, and therefore they cannot redeem your culpability which you bring down on yourselves, because the redeemers of your culpability and the eliminators (eradicators) of your faults are you yourselves.
- 130) And anyone who moves away (leaves) their dwelling or their country in order to stand up for (carry further) the cause of the truth in freedom and consonance (harmony) without cajoling (proselytising) and without the weapons of Gewalt and of death, but only by using the word and only letting those hear it who ask about it, you will find sufficient places of refuge and of fullness on Earth amongst those who are thirsting for the truth.
- 131) However, whoever leaves the house or their country in order to stand up for (carry further) the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, shall walk on the same way of modesty as the true prophets and in doing so, make sure that he or she is not done to death by those who persecute and slander (calumniate) him or her and who are out for his or her blood.
- 132) And if you pass through the land, and do not explain (teach) yourselves the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all existence (Creation) or curtail the explanation (teaching) then it shall be rightful for you if you nonetheless hold to and follow the laws and recommendations.
- 133) If you are afraid that ones who are unknowing of the truth may assail you, because they stand up as open enemies against the truth and against you, then you shall not acquire (buy/procure) weapons of Gewalt and of death in order to fight against them whenever possible, instead try to find a peaceful way of avoiding them or using words of clarity (rationality) to move them to insight (rationality) and to peace.
- 134) And if you as ones who have knowledge of the truth find yourselves amongst ones who have no knowledge of the truth and have to undertake a deed (work) or whatever else with them, then allow them to stand with you (undertake it together/cooperate) but take care that they do not raise up (make threats with) weapons of villainy (disingenuousness) against you and against the truth-teaching in order to cast you down (coerce you) into their belief (assumptions); and if they attempt to carry out your casting down then put them behind you (turn your back on them and go away), but you shall be on your guard (watchful) because their weapons of villainy (disingenuousness) can strike you again and again at any time in order to demoralise you.
- 135) The enemies of the truth and the enemies of the teaching of the prophets and therefore also the enemies of the truth-teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all things and all life (Creation), by which it is meant the confused people and its false prophets and priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods who make their adorers into like-minded ones and believers, they like it if you do not provide yourselves with weapons of precaution and of clear-sightedness (rationality) and leave aside all your watchfulness so that they can suddenly assail you (lead you into confusion), take away (pervert) your knowledge of the truth; against the enemies of the truth it is permitted and rightful for you to take their weapons of villainy (disingenuousness) away from them through true discernment (rationality) by striking back (countering) their false words and teachings so that they wash themselves clean and heal themselves of their illness (false belief) and lay down their weapons of villainy (disingenuousness) and slander (calumny) against the truth-teaching; but at all times be on your guard (watchful) because the intrigues (guilefulness) of those who declaim against the truth and the teaching of the truth and the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the Creation are manifold in their attempts to delude the ones who have knowledge of the truth and to turn



them away from their insight into the truth-teaching so that they shall fall prey to the traps of the godliness (religion) and of the belief (assumptions), as well as of the priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because truly they have disparaging (villainous/despicable) methods in order to achieve their intentions (purposes).

- 136) And if you are learning the teaching of the prophets, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and therefore the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the beauty (Creation), then remember with a prayer (invocation/edification) also your inner world (consciousness) in contemplation (meditation) at the same time so that you align yourselves towards true love and consonance (harmony) as well as to peace and freedom in your inner nature; and do this when seated or standing, when walking or when you are on your back, on your belly or lying on your side; and when you have finished learning, then make prayers (invocations/edification) to your inner world (consciousness) according to your need, so that its unfolding (evolution) may progress and everything may go well with you in all things; and carry out your prayers (invocations/edification) according to your needs, since you do not have to select specific hours for this, as you shall do for special contemplations (meditations) or initiations.
- 137) And never cease to search for the depths of the truth and the laws and recommendations of the primal well-spring of all truth (Creation), because if you do not do so then you will suffer and your inner world (consciousness) will remain unfruitful (remain fallow); and as you suffer so also people of your kind (fellow human beings) with whom you have dealings will also suffer; however, do not hope for things of cognition which you cannot hope for (shall not experience), because if you were to gain cognitions that are beyond your discernment (understanding) then you would not become knowing (conscious) and wise, but would fall prey to confusions (consciousness-confusion/sense-confusions).
- 138) The true prophets have brought the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to you, the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all the existence (Creation) and its appearance (nature) so that you do not decide (determine) and fight unfairly between people of your kind (human beings), but that you join yourselves with (fall in line with) the laws and recommendations as are given to you through the teaching of the prophets, so that you do not secede from the truth and do not become proponents of the ones who are unfaithful to the truth-teaching; and think about the true prophets from the line of Nokodemion, they did not come to Earth to one people alone, but brought the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to all peoples of your kind (humankind, all of humanity) so that everyone may experience the truth of the wellspring of the existence (Creation) and everyone may direct themselves according to its laws and recommendations; however, you have allowed that false prophets amongst you could bring delusional teachings and that you were able to fall prey to these, therefore you were disloyal to the way of the real truth and turned to gods and tin gods and their priests and other servants (hands/helpers) so that you could pray to them; and your scribes who were entrusted by the prophets with upholding the teaching by setting it down in writing, they falsified and slandered (calumniated) the teaching of the true prophets and obfuscated it (rendered it unrecognisable) in such a wise that only a few grains of real truth are contained in it.
- 139) Truly, the fallible scribes who falsified, slandered (calumniated) and obfuscated (rendered unrecognisable) the teaching of the prophets shall be excused in spite of their disgraceful doings, because they fell prey to an erroneous assumption when they falsified, slandered (calumniated) and obfuscated (rendered unrecognisable) the truth-teaching in their writings due to false insight (understanding); but there were some amongst the scribes who falsified, slandered (calumniated) and obfuscated (rendered unrecognisable) the teaching of the true prophets deliberately because it is directed against their own belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods.
- 140) Truly, you do not love any people of your kind (fellow human beings) who are villains and unfair ones (irresponsible ones), but ask yourselves whether you are not yourselves also villains and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) so that you do not defend yourselves if you deceive yourselves.
- 141) Truly, you would like to conceal your maliciousness and inequity (unfairness) from people of your kind (fellow human beings), but you cannot keep it concealed because you again and again forge intrigues (guilefulness) openly or in secret and do evil and unfair things (irresponsible things) of all kinds; however, all your deeds are seen through and are not approved.
- 142) See, you defend your maliciousness and your inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), your virtuelessness and your drunkenness (desire) and bad habits (vice), but you can never vindicate or defend them, therefore you will find no advocates and no protectors amongst the righteous ones (conscientious ones) and fair ones (responsible ones) of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 143) When you do evil or unfair things (irresponsible things) against people of your kind (fellow human beings) or against yourselves, against your inner nature or against your body or limbs (extremities), against life, the inner world (consciousness) or the psyche, whether it be Gewaltsamkeit (torture) or defilement (injury) or killing,



then you are breaching the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all love (Creation), therefore you will not find any calm or any peace, or any freedom and consonance (harmony) in yourselves because you cannot bring forth any benevolence or any forbearance for yourselves and so you cannot forgive yourselves for your *ausgeartet* doings.

- 144) And whoever commits an unright, that human being only commits it against himself or herself even if others are harmed thereby, because committing unright against other human beings gives rise to harm in one's inner nature and in addition it weighs on the admonishment (conscience) sooner or later.
- 145) And as you commit unright against the true prophets, so you take a decision that casts yourselves into ruin; but consider that you cannot do any harm to the true prophets even if you slander (calumniate) them and their teaching, if you stalk them and try to kill them, because also the true prophets know very well how to protect themselves, according to the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the true love (Creation).
- 146) Even before you, the prophets brought their teaching of the truth, their teaching of the spirit, their teaching of the life to you and taught your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) everything that these did not know about all the knowledge and all the wisdom, and you also do not know it, because like those before you who neglected the teaching and kindheartedness of the prophets, so you also neglect their great kindheartedness and the teaching because you plot (conspire) in secret talks against the truth-teaching and the true prophets, together with the priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of your fabricated (invented) and unsubstantial (imaginary) gods and tin gods; truly, you do not conduct open talks on beneficence or kindheartedness and bringing about peace in order to admonish the people of your kind (human beings); when you come together in talks, it is only in striving for your own pleasure and to stir one another up for battles (wars) and to bring down punishments of death and acts of *Gewalt* (torture) on people of your kind (fellow human beings) out of hatred and revenge and retaliation, for which you fallaciously believe that a magnificent reward will be granted to you; but you are deluding yourselves vastly, because all your doings are of evil and against all laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) as have always been taught to you by the true prophets since time immemorial.
- 147) Whoever amongst you sets themselves against the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life despite the fact that the right way to true existence has become clear to them, but nevertheless they follow a different way from that of the truth, they will have to follow a very difficult way because they will cast themselves into a self-created shadow world (hell) as their own determination (decision) and burn in its fire, and the way back to the truth will be seven times worse for them than at the time when they first found their way to the truth.
- 148) One day, your distant descendants will not be able to forgive you for your showing contempt to and slandering (calumniate) the teaching of the prophets and the prophets themselves and being out for their blood; and therefore your distant descendants (grandchildren, etc.) will not be able to forgive you because you are leading them into delusion and far from the truth with your false teachings, your false prophets and your priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because your false teachings reach (extend/carry themselves forwards) into the farthest future and create delusion (influence) there for your belief of your godliness (religion) because you do not follow the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all life (Creation), but waste away far from it and set unsubstantial (imaginary) gods and tin gods at the side of the wellspring of all life (Creation).
- 149) Truly, whoever sets fabricated (invented) gods or tin gods or fabricated (invented) representatives (substitutes) or others at the side of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) is indeed going very far into delusion; and truly there are no gods or tin gods who could be creators (originators) of the firmaments (universe) and of the earths (worlds/planets) and the heavenly lights (celestial bodies/comets/planets/moons/meteors/shooting stars/nebulae), because the creation of all things in all firmaments (in the universe) and on all earths (worlds/planets) is solely due to the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), because truly it alone is the creative power (energy) of all things and the unmeasurable secret.
- 150) Those amongst you who have fallen prey to belief (assumptions) in your priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of godliness (religion) and who make prayers (invocations/edification) to gods and tin gods, truly you are only calling on lifeless and unsubstantial things (imaginary/non-existent things) and are thereby cursing the truth of the Creation, so you are of evil and indignant ones against the truth and against the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 151) And those amongst you who call on unsubstantial (imaginary) gods and tin gods, you are cursing yourselves and truly you are servants (hands/helpers) of your own suffering which strikes you at all times through your own irrationality.
- 152) Lend your ear to the true prophets and to their teaching, because truly it is they alone who do not lead you into confusion, who do not lead you into hatred and battle (war), neither to revenge and retribution and nor to punishment that is meted out with *Gewalt* or to killing, and it is only the true prophets who bring you the



teaching of the truth of the love and harmony, of the freedom and peace and who do not stir up vain wishes in you and do not goad you into blindness (fanaticism) through which you kill your life (commit suicide) in order to kill many others (murderous attacks) because you are led into confusion by blind belief and have fallen prey to a hazy picture (delusion).

- 153) Truly, you shall not cut off the ears of animals (not torment any animals) and not deface or destroy anything that is given by the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) in the firmaments (universe) and on earths (worlds/planets) and anyone who does so nonetheless stands in friendship with evil and wreaks evident loss all around to what has been given by the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) to all life for joy and for benefit (prosperity) and for the preservation of existence.
- 154) Consider that false prophets and priests as well as all other servants of gods and servants of tin gods and all the rest in groups who are secessionists from the truth (sectists) or those who glorify themselves as (give themselves out as/give themselves airs as) divinities and heightened ones (sublime ones) or as sect leaders are fooling you with promises and stirring up desires (vices/wantonness/pathological cravings/urges) in you and wishes of Ausartung and unright, because they are seducers and everything that they promise is pure delusiveness.
- 155) And truly, if you follow the seducers then you will find no way to escape from the darkness of your inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), so you will continue to founder in unknowledge of the truth and without giving the virtues enough consideration.
- 156) Truly, all those amongst you who do your good deeds and are connected to the truth and the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation), you will create gardens of happiness in yourselves and cultivate (grow) plants of love and of knowledge and of wisdom, and streams of joy and of wellbeing will flow through the garden and allow peace and freedom and consonance (harmony) to prosper therein; this garden is your inner paradise which will forever dwell (live) in you, so you hold firm to it unswervingly and truthfully and care for your inner realm of pleasure (realm of the firmament/paradise).
- 157) Whoever amongst you does not however create the garden of knowledge, love and wisdom and therefore not the garden of freedom, peace and consonance (harmony) will create a shadow world (hell) with flaming (blazing) fire in themselves (in their nature), which will burn you up.
- 158) Truly, the laws and recommendations of the fullness of the life (Creation) do not go according to your wishes or the wishes of all peoples (humanity) because you and people of your kind (fellow human beings) have to fall in line with the laws and recommendations of the fullness of the life (Creation) so that you do rightfully and lead a pleasing life; if you do not heed the laws and recommendations of the fullness of the life (Creation) and if you do evil then you will find neither true friends nor helpers who stand by you in openness (honesty), and those who do not call themselves your friends, you will not find any grace from them.
- 159) If, however, you do good deeds, whether you are man or woman or child, and if you are connected to the truth then you will find true friends amongst people of your kind (like-minded ones), as also amongst those who are not attached to (connected to) the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because they value (esteem) your good deeds and show you thanks.
- 160) And all of you, whether you are man or woman or child, you will build up in yourselves a pleasing (favourable) realm of pleasure (realm of the firmament/paradise), and you will not be aware of (feel) any unright in yourselves, not even the smallest iota of weight, because your reward is righteousness (conscientiousness) and virtuousness.
- 161) And who amongst you has greater knowledge and greater wisdom than you who are connected to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, you who do good deeds and are upright ones in your righteousness (conscientiousness) and in your virtues and you who follow the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation)?; truly, those amongst you who are fair ones (responsible ones) and valiant in the fulfilment of your duties and your obligation (responsibility), life has you as its special friends.
- 162) Truly, the primal wellspring of all grace (Creation) is solely the truth of all reality (BEING) and the truth of all activity (existence) in the firmaments (universe), on the earths (worlds/planets) and whatever is in between (outer space), and it alone also encompasses all things of the life of each creature, of the waters, the airs, the firmness (stone/rock) and everything that crawls and flies.
- 163) If you are searching for a decision in the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all grace (Creation) concerning man and woman and child, then you will find it if you are in open willingness (of open sense); if your willingness (open sense) is not sufficiently skilful (educated) then rely on the teaching of the prophets which is the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all grace (Creation), in which you find the precious decision; and therefore act accordingly as is presented to you and taught to you through the truth-teaching of



the prophets when you have to decide about orphans, when they want to enter into a bond (want to marry) so that you give them your help for everything that they need; and act equally in good decision according to right, law and recommendation if you have weak ones (disabled ones) amongst children so that they may also be given equitableness (fairness) and help in all things and so may have a good life; also practise equitableness (approval/fairness) in all things of right and law and of recommendations for the orphans so that they may lead an existence to the extent of everything necessary; and heed the rights of man and woman and of children so that no unright or Gewalt is done to them and they may lead their existence rightfully in freedom and peace and therefore in consonance (harmony) and not be starved of food or drink and not suffer want of provision for all the things they need.

- 164) And if, in a bond (marriage), a woman or a man fears rough treatment or unconcernedness from the other, then it shall be of rightness for both that they discuss the difficulty (problem) with one another in a seemly wise and achieve reconciliation with one another, because reconciliation in righteousness (conscientiousness) and flawlessness (honesty) is truly the best so that peace may be brought about.
- 165) And make sure that you are not full of greed and avariciousness, whether you happen to be in a bond (marriage) or if you are unbound (single), because such doing brings unpeace and unfreedom in yourselves as well as dissonance (disharmony) and strife with people of your kind (fellow human beings); therefore it is better for you if you are truly versed in the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation) and follow them so that you may turn to righteousness (conscientiousness) and to goodness.
- 166) Truly, it may be that no matter how greatly you may wish it, you cannot find any comprehensive equality (balance) between yourselves if you are connected in a bond (marriage) as man and woman, or if you are connected in a straightforward bond of inclination (lesbian/homosexual bond/unity) between man and man or woman and woman, because truly there cannot be a perfection in equitableness (balance), but only an approximation (relativity/proportionality); therefore you can only achieve a limited (conditional) equality (balance) between yourselves, and even then only if you are inclined to one another and do not leave one another in abeyance (uncertainty); and if you act together in such a wise then your equality (balance) between one another will be excellent (the best); and if you do not separate and you are concerned to achieve an equality (balance) between yourselves then your fullness of love and consonance (harmony) will make you independent from useless strivings about one another; and consider that if you are connected to one another in true love then you nevertheless (all the same) have to retain your independence (free will) so that you do not fall prey to unfreedom (subservience) to the other; truly it is both in a bond and not in a bond rightful that man and woman have their own opinion and may announce it also without inhibition (fear), and this also applies to children in such a wise that what is said shall not be punished providing it is not of unright.
- 167) Truly, everything that has been created in the firmaments (universe) and on earths (worlds/planets) is the act (deed) of the Creation, and also its laws and recommendations by means of which you are protected in your existence if you give them ampleness (sufficiency); and you receive the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life through the true prophets by which you come to know the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the Creation so that you may turn yourselves to it and be knowing (conscious) in the truth and so you give yourselves satisfaction.
- 168) The firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds/planets) and all existence are created by the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), so that you are present (existent) and you may dedicate yourselves to the duty of unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness).
- 169) If you want to, you can keep yourselves from learning the truth-teaching, but you cannot put others in your place who could bring fullness (sufficiency) to the learning of the truth-teaching and to the unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness) for you (learning for you).
- 170) Whoever amongst you desires the reward of this world, may consider that the reward here below is always measured according to your conduct (behaviour) and how your deeds and words are evaluated.
- 171) And those amongst you who are firm in upholding (maintaining) equitableness (fairness), in righteousness (conscientiousness) and in the virtues, you are witnesses to the truth even if it is directed against yourselves or against your parents and siblings or against your children and relatives.
- 172) Whether you may be rich or poor, truly you all have the same rights and duties and obligation (responsibility) in all things whatever you do; therefore do not pursue base desires (vices/wantonness/pathological cravings/urges), so that you will always be capable, at any time and in all things, of acting according to equitableness (seemly/commensurate/modest/fair); and if you keep secret the truth in any things, if you falsify it or eschew it, then consider that it will push through to the light of day in good time and will accuse you as liars and slanderers (calumniators) or as those withdrawing from (eschewing) the truth.
- 173) All of you, turn to the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all things (Creation) which are given to you by the teaching of the true prophets which they reveal to you and already revealed to your



forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) so that you do not go into confusion in your existence and do not do unright.

- 174) Consider that if you become knowing (conscious) in the truth and then fall away from it again, but then come back to the truth a second time and to its teaching, and then fall away from it once more, that your unknowledgeness will rain down over you to such an extent that you will not find your way back to the truth, and you will wander on the way of ruin without forgiveness, directed by your false intentions (thoughts) and feelings.
- 175) Truly, those amongst you who are hypocrites, you yourselves are imposing a painful punishment on yourselves in your inner nature and in your psyche, because disguise (hypocrisy) makes you into outlaws (ostracised ones/outcasts) amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 176) And those amongst you who take unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and depraved ones (ones without virtue) as your friends, are you by any chance looking for honour under their hands (with them)?; but consider true honour is only ever with the fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) and with the virtuous ones.
- 177) You hear that the teaching of the prophets has been given to you, the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), revealed by the true prophets, as you hear it, but those amongst you who do not want to learn the truth but rather deny and mock it, truly you do not want to hear the truth-teaching, but you sit with other deniers and mockers of the truth and do not want to pass over to a debate about the truth with them, so that you may not become knowing in the truth.
- 178) Those amongst you who are waiting for a good evaluation of yourselves, no success will be granted to you if you do not go hand-in-hand with the truth and do not strive for the truth, because truly even if you prove to be the stronger ones in existence whilst however guarding yourselves against the truth and not allowing it to become your own, then you will be the losers and will only receive bad evaluations of yourselves; truly, you decide over yourselves and you will never give yourselves the opportunity to prevail if you do not integrate (fall in line) with the real truth as is given by the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all equitableness (Creation).
- 179) The hypocrites amongst you, you, together with your false prophets and priests and with other worshippers of gods and worshippers of tin gods, are attempting to delude and deceive people of your kind (fellow human beings) so you lead them to pray to fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods and people of your kind (human beings) who appear as god-equivalents and heightened ones (sublime ones) and as representatives (substitutes) of gods and tin gods, but with your delusion and your deceit and your prayers (invocations/edifications), you are merely standing there so that people of your kind (human beings) may see you and you may shine before them in order to mislead them into the untruth whilst you yourselves do not think one iota about the real truth.
- 180) Truly, there are many amongst you who sway to and fro between the truth and the untruth and between this and that, and belong neither to the truth nor to the untruth, therefore you are always threatened with casting yourselves into ruin because you do not find the way to the truth and to reality.
- 181) All those amongst you, you can give yourselves an evident proof of the truth only to yourselves, out of your inner nature, if you find the truth in yourselves through your own investigation (searching/researching), although this will only be of rightness if you keep away from the belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods which you are persuaded into by the godliness (religion) and its priests and other servants in erroneous assumption and in enticement.
- 182) Truly, those amongst you who are hypocrites, you are with no doubt creating a deep firing pit in yourselves in which you burn yourselves and you will not find any helpers to rescue you from the blaze.
- 183) But those amongst you who are sorry and better yourselves and turn away from your disguise (hypocrisy) and learn to hold yourselves sincerely and firmly to the truth and its teaching, you belong to those who receive a good reward in themselves because joy and happiness and therefore love, consonance (harmony) are current (present) in them; and those amongst you who are sincere and knowing (conscious) in the truth, you spread (give) your good reward of love and consonance (harmony) of freedom and peace also to people of your kind (fellow human beings), through which a new good reward will be granted to you.
- 184) And consider the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and that no punishments emanate from them, therefore you shall be thankful and shall not yourselves bring about any punishments, neither against yourselves nor against people of your kind (fellow human beings); therefore recognise the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) because they alone are included into equitableness (fairness) and true love, in contrast to the laws and recommendations that you yourselves make and which demand acts of Gewalt (torture) and killing (death penalty) as well as revenge and retaliation and battle (war) which are entirely unrightful.
- 185) It contradicts the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all existence (Creation) and



therefore of the true teaching of the prophets if you do unright, if you steal and rob, if you plunder and lie and deceive, if you slander and calumniate, if you practise amongst yourselves acts of Gewalt (torture) or other Gewalt and killing as a punishment and in battles (wars) or anywhere else.

- 186) And it is unrightful for you to make unseemly speeches openly (in public) or in secret, whether you happen to be in the right or in the unright, because the word and speaking only befit the dignity of appropriate seemliness.
- 187) If an unright happens to one amongst you then speak out for him or her in truth and equitableness (fairness), but do not debase yourselves by making unseemly remarks and speeches for him or her, because they are not only unbecoming (improper/inappropriate) of dignity but they also cause harm to the one to whom unright is done.
- 188) Whether you announce a good deed or conceal it is a matter of your attitude; but it is better to do good deeds in secret so you do not show conceit (stand out/raise yourselves) before people of your kind (fellow human beings), because truly doing good deeds in secret is full of goodness and dignity, but announcing the good deed detracts from its value and seriousness.
- 189) If harm is done to you through an evil deed or by defamatory statement (calumny), then forgive the evildoer so that neither hatred nor the pathological craving for revenge or retaliation may come alive in you; thus truly be the redeemers of the infamous actions (crimes) of those who do harm to you, lie to you and deceive you or slander (calumniate) you; do not be like the unfair ones (irresponsible ones), thus do not repay evil with evil or harm with harm, so that you may always be of good admonishment (conscience) and can enjoy your gladness in honesty.
- 190) And truly, those amongst you who make a differentiation between the true teaching of the prophets, which is the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation) and existence (life), you do not understand the truth and will not find the way to it, because you are attempting to strike a way in between them (middle way).
- 191) But truly, those of you who wish to take a way in between (middle way), you are preparing disparaging joylessness in yourselves because there is no way in between (middle way), between the real truth and the unreal untruth.
- 192) Those amongst you who are knowing (conscious) about the truliness of the primal wellspring (Creation) and the truliness of the prophets and their teaching, you are striving for the truth and equitableness (fairness); and therefore do not make any differentiation amongst people of your kind (human beings) as created creations (human beings), but only in their bearing (behaviour).
- 193) And truly, those of you who are fair to people of your kind (human beings) as a created Creation (human being), you receive for this in yourselves a good reward of love from people of your kind (love for human beings/love for the next one).
- 194) Even long before your time, many of your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) demanded of the true prophets that they should give you the writing of their teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life so that they would have it before their eyes time and time again; and truly, several of the true prophets from the line of Nokodemion, the originator of the truth-teaching, select (look for) people amongst you who are able to write so that they should set down (record) the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in writing for all coming time and for all descendants (children of children, etc.); but truly, throughout all of time all the scribes entrusted with this task falsify and slander (calumniate) the truth-teaching of the prophets so that all words are twisted (distorted) and rendered unrecognisable; but this had already been foreseen at an early stage so that the scribes entrusted with the task were encouraged to report (write down) the teaching of the prophets conscientiously, but they never paid attention to this; but the confidence is maintained that the teaching will after all be recorded recognisably by responsibility-conscious ones, although there is no great confidence in this respect because those who know how to write always have the sense of incorporating their own explanations (interpretations) into the writing and form it according to their opinion; truly, it was chosen (decided) that in the new time the scrolls of the teaching of the prophets will be set down (recorded) by the one who is probably the most versed in writing and the last prophet from the line of Nokodemion, in his own writing and in an understandable language for all those who are looking for the way to the truth, so that they may find it.
- 195) Consider at all times that there is no-one amongst the people, neither man nor woman, who, if given the task of setting something down, can authentically reflect the given word of the truth-teaching because each one feels the urge to perpetuate (immortalise) their own views (thoughts/imaginings) and explanations (interpretations), which explains why they defile (falsify) the word that is announced to them (dictated word) and why only slanders (calumnies) and lies as well as delusions and distortions (falsifications) are retained as handed-down knowledge (tradition/chronicle); however, this will not be the case in the new time because the last prophet from the line of Nokodemion, comprehensively fulfilling his matter of admonishment (matter of



conscience/matter of honour/duty), will set down (record) the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all love (Creation) and therefore the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in his own writing and without defilement (falsification) in many scrolls so that everything may be of permanence.

- 196) And truly, the last prophet from the line of Nokodemion will make the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life obvious (understandable) to you in the far-off time (far descendants), so that there will no longer be any doubt in the understanding and you will no longer worship gods and tin gods; the signs (marvels/ evidence) of the true prophet of the new time will be seen and recognised (understood) by his like-minded companions so that they will carry his signs (evidence) and the teaching into the time to come (future) so that in the far-off time there will be true love and freedom amongst the peoples (humankind) of Earth, as well as peace and consonance (harmony).
- 197) And the true prophet of the new time will live high on the top of the mountain that will resemble a horseshoe, and he will carry forth the signs (evidence) of peace, freedom, love and consonance (harmony) and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life throughout the whole earth so that his signs (evidence/marvels) and the teaching will be clear to all people of your kind (humankind) and they conclude a bond (agreement) with the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation).
- 198) Step through the door of the cognition into the truth-teaching so that you no longer neglect and contravene the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation); therefore you shall conclude a bond (agreement) with the truth and do rightfully in all things.
- 199) Enter into a bond (contract) with the truth and do not break it like your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) did when they denied the signs (evidence) of the truth of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation) and iniquitously slandered (calumniated) the teaching of the prophets and attempted to kill the prophets; truly, do not be like them who carelessly neglected their benevolence and sealed up their understanding.
- 200) Do not break the bond (agreement) with the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation) once you have concluded it, so that you do not once again start to misconstrue the signs (evidence) of the truth and become unknowing again, and do not turn yourselves to gods and tin gods once more.
- 201) So that you may be knowing (conscious) in the truth, you shall turn yourselves away from your gods and tin gods and from your priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods who all together speak slanders (calumnies) against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and against the true prophets and their teaching.
- 202) Truly, those amongst you who are in disunity and doubt regarding the real truth and its teaching, you do not have truthful (unfalsified) tidings from the truth-teaching, rather you are simply following a conceivableness (assumption) and you cannot turn this into certainty.
- 203) Those amongst you who live in unright and do evil and slander and infringe against the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring (Creation), forbid yourselves your wrong doing and only permit yourselves to do what is rightful, so that you no longer remain secessionists from the truth and only do clear things.
- 204) And if you speak about the truth and teach it, then do not take payment for it, because you shall not be allowed to turn the truth-teaching into commerce when you are teaching (instructing) it to the ones who are unknowing in the truth and therefore to the ones who are searching for the truth; only take a payment for this if it is given to you out of love and kindheartedness and given freely as a gift without your asking for it; and therefore you shall only take a payment in order to pay your costs which accrue to you when you are producing writings for which you yourselves have to give a payment; and in this wise the payment is rightful so that you do not suffer any disadvantage and may further spread the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 205) And it is not allowed for the ones who are truth-knowing to be recompensed as teachers for instructing the people in the truth-teaching by their municipality (community) or by the people (state), unless those who are thirsting for truth freely give forth gifts so that the instructing ones (teachers) may cover their living expenses.
- 206) And it is rightful that you do not pay false prophets and priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, and do not build for them any temples (houses of gods and houses of tin gods) or houses of prayer, so that they do not become mighty over the peoples (humankind) and lead them into delusion and plunder (exploit) them with their false teachings; truly, if you pay the false prophets, the priests and other worshippers of gods and worshippers of tin gods, and if you build for them temples (houses of gods/houses of tin gods), then they will take you and turn you into their servants in belief and will steal your possessions and your wealth (fortune), because their guilefulness knows no limits (is boundless).



- 207) And instruct (teach) your descendants amongst yourselves in the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all love (Creation), the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, once they have grown out of feeding at the mother's breast (suckling) so that, even from an early age, they may be knowing (conscious) in dealing with the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all love (Creation) and with the laws of the appearance (nature); but the instruction shall be an instruction only, not however a coercion, so that the descendants may decide for themselves at a later age whether they wish to follow the truth-teaching or not.
- 208) And it is rightful that children shall be taught (instructed) in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life at special places of learning (schools) based on free determination (decision); however, all instructing ones and preparing ones (educating ones) shall be concerned with instructing (teaching) the children in the truth-teaching so that they may find the true way to the existence (life) and may tread and fulfil (accomplish) it in equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness) as well as in the truth-knowledge and in all virtues.
- 209) You shall teach your children so that they are firmly grounded (taught) in the knowledge of all things of the existence (life) and in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, therefore also in the things of the life, dying and death, so that they do not worry about life and do not have one iota of uncertainty and so that the greatest reward of the life may be granted to them.
- 210) Truly, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is grounded (founded) on the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all life (Creation) and it is created by Nokodemion, the originator of the truth-teaching, and therefore after his demise (passing away) the true prophets from his line revealed the teaching again and anew over lengthy periods of time, so that true love and consonance (harmony) as well as peace and freedom shall be amongst all people of your kind (humankind).
- 211) The true prophets have come to you since time immemorial, amongst others who raised themselves up as false prophets, bringing teachings of unoccurrence (unreality) and founded many religions through which the many cults came about, all of which are far from the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all things (Creation).
- 212) The true prophets have been, since time immemorial, bringers of joyful news through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and therefore they are also admonishers and reveal plagues (misery/want/war/fight/unfortune, etc.) and disaster (catastrophes/destruction, etc.) for the coming time so that you consider them and change your actions and effects and your attitude (mentality) and lead them to the good so that the things do not occur which had been announced (proclaimed) by the true prophets as a warning of threatening plagues (misery/want/war/fight/unfortune, etc.) and troubles (evil happenings) and disaster (catastrophes/destruction, etc.).
- 213) The true prophets provide evidence through their revelations, through their teaching that they bring you, and through their signs (marvels) that they allow you to see that only the truth of the laws and recommendations of the Creation is able to guide everything in mightiness (mightfully) in all firmaments (universe) and on all earths (worlds/planets) and the heavenly lights (celestial bodies/suns/galaxies).
- 214) However, those amongst you who are unknowing in all things of the truth-teaching, truly, you have gone far astray, so you are persisting in the unknowledge about the truth and carrying out unright, so you cannot forgive yourselves and neither may you guide yourselves onto the right way.
- 215) Truly, if you are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and ones without virtue, then you are walking on the way of the shadow world (hell) which destroys you in your inner and burns you up in its flames.
- 216) Be knowing (conscious) that the true prophets come to you so that you become open to the truth and may be able to differentiate between what is good and what is evil, and so that you do only good for yourselves and for people of your kind (fellow human beings) and keep yourselves away from everything disastrous that you are able to commit in evil through hatred and the pathological craving for revenge, and through retaliation and jealousy.
- 217) Consider at all times the truth and the laws and recommendations of the power of all reality (Creation) and open your ear to the teaching of the prophets as you shall also heed their signs (marvels) that they do so that you may recognise the truth of all truth and be connected to it alone.
- 218) And when you think of the prophets, then make sure not to insult them by putting them on a level with false prophets and the priests of gods and tin gods to whom you pay homage (show extolment), because the true prophets do not tolerate any homage (extolment/glorification) and reject such doings; consider, all of the gods and tin gods are fabricated (invented) unsubstantialities without character (body/consistency/content), to whom equally no homage shall be paid as also not to their priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of any gods and tin gods, but also not to any other people of your kind (human beings), whoever and whatever and however they may be.



- 219) And do not pay homage to (glorify) either concoctors (founders/originators/creators) of pieties (religions) or concoctors (founders/originators/creators) and provosts of pious (religious) customs and rites (sects/cults), because they are only servants (hands/helpers) of fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods or of those who raise themselves up as gods and tin gods or to the state of heightened ones (sublime ones).
- 220) And therefore do not pay homage to (bow down before) any battle leaders (warlords), because their deeds are evil and against the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) concerning the life, love, freedom, peace, consonance (harmony) and the preservation of everything created by people of your kind (human beings); and if authorities and rulers or battle leaders (warlords) instigate battles (wars) then stand as a whole people in gewaltsamer Gewaltlosigkeit against them and refuse them your services, because every type of battle (war) is against the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation), against the dignity of people of your kind (human beings) and against all the right of the life, which teaches that there shall be no killing (murdering) in Ausartung, but only then if a life-threatening emergency (self-defence) makes it necessary; however, a life-threatening emergency (self-defence) does not arise through acts of battle (acts of war) and the like, because truly acts of battle (acts of war) amount to bloody deeds (murder) committed in consciousness (consciously).
- 221) And therefore it is also a bloody deed (murder) to cast away one's own life (commit suicide) in the delusion of godliness (religious delusion) and also through pious (religious) hatred and pious (religious) fervour (fanaticism), in order thereby to rip others out of the life (into the death) by these means (assassination).
- 222) And consider that the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation) also do not give any right to wage holy (consecrated) battles (wars) against people of your kind (fellow human beings) because falsifiers of scrolls are slandering (calumniating) the teaching of the prophets and bringing dishonour upon it and making you stupid thereby; and also it is not given by any laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation) that you shall wage holy (consecrated) battles (wars) for the purpose of godliness (religious war) in order to coerce (proselytise) believers in gods or tin gods to your belief (assumptions); and therefore it is beneath all right of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation) to bring about calamity and spread death and destruction amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings) through pious (religious) Gewalt (terror) so that people of your kind (fellow human beings) suffer harm to body and life and possessions as well as in their inner world (consciousness) and psyche; truly, the dignified (honoured/controlled) battle (war) presented by the true prophets and through their teaching is the holy (consecrated) battle (war) against yourselves, the fight against yourselves in your inner nature so that you form it for righteousness (conscientiousness) and equitableness (fairness) as well as greatheartedness (dignity) and esteem, and so that all-embracing love and consonance (harmony) as well as peace and freedom may come about in you in dignity and deference.
- 223) And never exceed the limits of the life which are set so that you may heed all life and treat it in respect, whether it be people of your kind (human) or the life of animals and of creatures (birds/fishes/snakes and all creatures that are not regarded as mammals); and as you kill animals or creatures (birds/fishes/snakes and all creatures that are not regarded as mammals) for your nourishment, do not slaughter (kill) them disgracefully by cutting through the neck of the animals or creatures (kosher/halal slaughter), as you are confusingly led to do by false prophets and priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because doing this to animals and creatures (birds/fishes/snakes and all creatures that are not regarded as mammals) is just as much of a murderer's doing (killer's doing) as when you do the same to people of your kind (human beings); therefore it is taught that killing animals and creatures is indeed rightful for you providing it serves the need for obtaining nourishment or amounts to another act of necessity, but at the same time it is given that the animal or creature shall not undergo any pain, but that it shall be killed in such a wise that it does not realise that it is dying; and therefore neither an animal nor a creature shall be struck or mistreated in another wise or exposed to torments because it too has a psyche, and therefore the animal and the creature also feel pain and suffering like people of your kind (human beings).
- 224) And just as you shall pay heed to animals and creatures, so you shall also pay heed to your world and not bring affliction or pain on it by bringing misery upon it (harassing it) through your unfolding (progress) and your gains (achievements) and by the large numbers of people of your kind (humankind); and do not go forth and multiply like vermin, because as vermin destroys itself when it spreads uncontrolled, so would also happen to you by you bringing about your own downfall.
- 225) And do not exceed the limits in your knowledge and always remain with the truth, because as you exceed your knowledge you bring your inner world (consciousness) and your true discernment (intellect) into confusion and you fall prey to megalomania, so that you then drive people of your kind (humankind) and your world to downfall (catastrophes).
- 226) And think about the truth at all times, namely that true prophets are not envoys of a god or tin god and are not servants (hands/helpers) of priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because they



appoint themselves to their task (mission) through their own efforts (determination/empowerment) and through their own power and responsibility, so you shall not assume anything else.

- 227) And consider that if you know all about this truth of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life that emanates from the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) then you will give a full reward for your inner world (consciousness) and your psyche, as also for your inner nature so that you may be in gladness full of happiness in true love, peace and freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 228) However, there are many amongst you who mistreat your inner nature and therefore your inner world (consciousness) and your psyche, making killers' pits (murderers' pits) out of it because you do not follow the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of the life (Creation) but nonsensically create your own and false laws and recommendations which deny all truth so that you can thereby satisfy all of your voracity and vice, your avarice, your unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and your inequity (unfairness/irresponsibility).
- 229) You do not give any grace (favour) to the truth that you can increase, rather you disdain it and you are proud that you can live according to your own unfair (irresponsible) laws and recommendations; but all of you who live according to this false sign (pattern), you will find neither a true friend nor a helper amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 230) All of you, since you came into existence (were created as human beings) have been given the signs of miracles (outstanding things) as the evidence of the reality (existence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and the laws of appearance (nature), therefore a clear light of the truth has been given to you; allow yourselves to be led by the light of the truth so that it may go well with you in all things of existence (life); therefore, you are advised to follow the instruction of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that you may be fair and righteous (conscientious) and virtuous and all of you may be treated alike, man and woman and child, and that you are rightful to them in all things; and do not play one off against another, but respect one another in honourableness and equality so that none of you may be more than another, whether man or woman or child; therefore one shall not receive more than another, but everything shall be apportioned to all in equitableness (fairness) with equal proportions, as must be arranged by the apportionment and the right thereto; therefore the equal distribution also applies to heritages so that male and female descendants receive equal shares of their inheritance, without any differentiation.



Chapter 5

- 1) Those amongst you who are knowing ones in the truth and are righteous ones (conscientious ones) and fair ones (responsible ones) as well as virtuous ones, fulfil your agreements that you conclude with one another, but also keep the unwritten agreements that exist between you and the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), so that it shall be well with you.
- 2) You are allowed to take as your food everything from animals (mammals) as well as other creatures (non-mammals) and their blood, with the exception of that which is poisonous to you; therefore you are allowed to partake of all four-footed animals and two-footed animals with claws, toes and shoes (hooves), with cloven hooves and with pads (flat feet) and everything that crawls and flies and swims, whether you keep it in your house (domesticated animals) or hunt it (game), if you are permitted to hunt; but do not hunt in wild behaviour (poaching) or out of pure lust for killing.
- 3) You are forbidden from partaking of beasts and animals and other creatures of all kinds that have passed away by themselves, because it is unclean (sick/poisonous/putrid), as well as everything that has been strangled, beheaded or beaten to death, because the flesh suffers from being struck to death, beheaded or strangled or by any other method of killing involving torment, because of the movement (swinging wave) of the psyche, leading to disfavour (loss/harm) and this affects your psyche and your attitude (behaviour), because the torments of dying of the creature that has been maltreated and painfully killed in this wise are transferred to you and form your mentality and your activities (deeds).
- 4) And it is prohibited (forbidden) to you to use cadavers for your food which have been gnawed at by rapacious animals (predators) and rapacious creatures (predatory creatures), because rapacious animals (predators) and rapacious creatures (predatory creatures) do not have the breath (bacteria in their mouth) of people of your



kind (humanity), but are mixed (polluted/contaminated) with poison (pathogens), thereby endangering your health and also your life if you take the flesh of gnawed cadavers as your food; therefore it is recommended to you that you only take as your food good flesh that you yourselves slaughter in a correct wise and without torment; therefore, however, you shall not eat any flesh of animals and other creatures that has served as a sacrificial offering on a sacrificial table, on a sacrificial stone or sacrificial fire by those who cannot understand the senselessness of such offerings (sacrificial offerings).

- 5) And all of those amongst you who are connected to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), see that you are not induced to make sacrificial offerings in foolishness and senselessness, because the truth of the laws and recommendations of the power of creation (Creation) does not require any sacrificial offerings in any form whatsoever, therefore it is taught that also no animals, no creatures and no people of your kind (human beings) as well as no fruits or other things shall be used as sacrificial offerings; performing sacrificial offerings is a loathsome kind of perversion and has only been part of your behaviour since time immemorial due to the fabulations (inventions) of people of your kind (human beings) to assuage and propitiate your fabulated (conceived) godheads and tin gods in your fear and chickenheartedness (cowardice) by making sacrificial offerings of all kinds; your making of sacrificial offerings is no dignified (honourable/controlled) undertaking (deed), but is a work of outlawry (disdain) and an abasement of that which is used as the sacrificial offering; and truly, no gods or tin gods can be placated by sacrificial offerings, because they are all equally unsubstantial and fabulated (conceived) ghosts (phantoms) as are their liberators (angels) and demons.
- 6) Those amongst you who wish to find benevolence (kindheartedness/grace) against your unknowledge of the truth, you will only be able to achieve (acquire) it if you are well-disposed towards the truth-teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all love (Creation); and as you search for a place where you can find the real truth, then search for a true prophet who teaches you his teaching, but if there is no true prophet amongst you, then search for the spring of wisdom in the place where the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is taught in truliness; a place of this kind may be a particular location of the learning of the truth, or it may be in your neighbour's house or on the summit of a mountain, in the desert, in a shelter (tent), on the shores of bodies of water or under trees; as you are searching for the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal well-spring of all life (Creation), then it requires your endeavour of searching because only those who truly search will find what they are looking for; and if you truly search and have found the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, and have put down (finished) your clothing of searching (course of learning) and have completed it in the first part (found the truth) then you shall no longer turn your back on (turn away from) what you have learned; and if you are hampered in any wise on your way of searching for the truth by people of your kind (fellow human beings) or are prevented from visiting a location or a place where the truth-teaching is taught, then neither the hostility of an individual nor of an entire people shall mislead you into contravening the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all life (Creation); and if there are several of you together searching for the truth, then help one another in righteousness (conscientiousness) in a wise that is pleasing to the truth (truthful), but do not help one another in hostility and inequitableness (unfairness), in unrighteousness (consciencelessness) or in virtuelessness, and not either in acts of Gewalt of any kind, in vice or evil desires (vices/wantonness/pathological cravings/urges).
- 7) Those amongst you who are unknowing ones in the truth, you attempt to find out your foreordination (destiny) by objects referred to as a *Lospfeil**, but this, like legerdemain (magic) and making fabulations from reading the stars, is only a harmful deceptive hallucination (delusional construction) of evil blabbermouths (charlatans) and deceivers and false seers who delude you and demand possessions and payment (money) from you for it; and do not fear their threats that you will be struck by a calamity or other terrible things, which they talk you into believing through their cunning and let you fall into grievance and fear, because these deceivers of you are entirely powerless (unable) to make truthful (unfalsified) predictions, although this is a capability of the true prophets and the true wise heralds (seers and harbingers), all of whom never take any payment for their insights into the future, just as they do not undertake commerce or swagger (boast) with their skill (ability), because they are truly wise ones and are dedicated to modesty, and do not make a fuss about themselves. – **(Lospfeil – pl. Lospfeile – is the German word for small arrows used for soothsaying which are dropped from the hand, allowing predictions to be made based on their positions; similarly to African stones, bones or shells, etc., used by so-called soothsayers of either sex even in the new time, who however also practise card tricks and other hocus-pocus in this wise nowadays.)*
- 8) All those amongst you, do not doubt your knowledge of the truth when you hear the blabbermouths (charlatans) and deceivers and the false seers telling lies about your foreordination (destiny), because all of their words are mere slander (calumny) of the truth; do not take their false words as the truth so that you do not begin to despair due to their deception and so you do not fear what the time to come (future) will bring you.



- 9) Choose for yourselves the truth of the Creation as true knowledge and its laws and recommendations, and therefore the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life proceeding from them, as your avowal of the truth, but do not transform) it into a belief-teaching which in its unworthiness and lying about the truth is only of use to fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods and their priests, believers and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, not however to the truth.
- 10) And do not create any godliness (religion) or any sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) from the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and therefore do not create from it either any handed-down knowledge (customs) with particular rules (rites), just as you shall not create any customs from the teaching, so that the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life may again and again allow you to recognise (see) new things in everything and so that you may always rejoice in a new ripening (further development/evolution).
- 11) Do not make your prayers (invocations/edification) to your inner world (consciousness) at specific times or in a specific number, so that you do not fall into habitualness; and if you no longer speak true prayers (invocations/edification) to yourselves and you take refuge in senseless babbling, then you are doing the same as the believers in godliness (religion) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) who pray and give supplications to gods and tin gods, and who fallaciously believe that the latter might be listening to them; turning towards a prayer at a particular time and in a particular number shall only be considered if you people of your kind (fellow human beings) gather together for the purpose of jointly partaking in contemplation (meditation) – in a prayer to yourselves.
- 12) Only make prayers (invocations/edification) at all times to yourselves, to your own inner world (consciousness), but never to a godhead or to a tin god or someone of your kind (human being), because only your inner world (consciousness) is the factor from which you obtain everything that you hope and wish for through your own power, but be certain (knowing) that you have to create everything yourselves that you are achieving from your inner world (consciousness); and as you make prayers (invocations/edification) to yourselves, then this may be during the day or the night, at sunrise or sunset and at any time which is convenient for you for this purpose.
- 13) And as you make your prayers (invocations/edification) to your inner world (consciousness) so you may do this in every state (condition) in which you currently find yourselves, whether your bodies and limbs (extremities) are clean or unclean, or while you are carrying out a work, on the path of idleness, while walking along or when you are lying on your bed, because your inner world (consciousness) does not care about this (is not concerned about all this), but only about what you bring near to it through your prayers.
- 14) And it is instructed (taught) to you what is also allowed for you to organise as your food in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the Creation namely that you train animals (mammals) and other creatures (non-mammals) for hunting so that they catch other animals and other creatures for you; and therefore eat from all which they catch for you and do not be afraid because you are not doing unrightfully in this.
- 15) All good things are allowed to you, and also the food and drink of other peoples shall be allowed to you if it is brought to you or if you are staying in another land (abroad); the only foods which shall be forbidden to you are those which make you ill or sick or which are poisonous to you; and fermented juices (alcohol such as wine, beer, spirits, etc.) shall only be forbidden to you in large quantities so that you do not become drunk; if you enjoy it in moderation then nothing speaks against it and you are not doing unrightfully.
- 16) It is not allowed for you to have congress (sexual intercourse) with male or female children before they have come of age (reached adulthood); also it is not allowed for you to have congress (sexual intercourse) with untouched ones (virgin ones) whether male or female, unless you have made a mutual agreement of marriage in the presence of bystanders (witnesses), through which lying with one another (having sexual intercourse) is also permitted before the bond (marriage) is entered into (concluded).
- 17) If you openly (publicly) or secretly visit whores and male whores then you, as they, are committing prostitution (sexual culpability), therefore you make yourselves contemptible and are just as dignityless as they are.
- 18) And those amongst you who deny or slander (calumniate) the truth, your deeds shall without doubt be brought to nought, and you shall be amongst the losers; therefore you may think about all truth that carries in itself in manifold wise guidelines (guiding principles) for your wellbeing (health) and for the hygiene of yourselves.
- 19) And as you think about the truth, then also consider that your hygiene of body and limbs is of immense importance for your wellbeing (health), that therefore you shall clean (wash) yourselves with water every day as often as the circumstances require; therefore it is recommended to you that you clean (wash) yourselves as appropriate (required) at each need (necessity); therefore clean (wash) diligently (thoroughly/properly) your face and your hands, and also your arms up to the elbows or higher as appropriate (required); and also wipe your head (through your hair) with wet hands and clean (wash) your feet up to the ankles or higher as appropriate (required); and as it is appropriate (required) when your body is dirty then clean it also with water or clean it entirely (take a bath) as appropriate (required), without however doing more than is appropriate



(required) or doing so every day; and clean your hands duly (properly) when you come from the privy (toilet/WC), and therefore you shall clean yourselves duly (properly) if you have lain (had sexual intercourse); and therefore also clean yourselves diligently (thoroughly/properly) if you have satisfied yourselves with your own hand on your private parts (sexual organ) and if you do not have any water available for cleansing (washing) then take fermented juices (alcohol such as wine, beer, spirits, etc.) or clean fabric (cloths/rags) and clean yourselves with them, because it shall not be that you allow your wellbeing (health) to be harmed by having impurity on your body and your limbs (extremities).

- 20) Listen to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that you may be connected to the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all existence (Creation), and that you may obey yourselves and fulfil the laws and recommendations if you accept them, because truly this is the only wise in which you will have nothing to fear because you know very well what in you and outside you is equitableness (fairness) and what is inequity (unfairness), by means of which you will be able to determine what you shall not do in unrighteousness (consciencelessness), but what you owe to righteousness (conscientiousness).
- 21) Therefore, it is recommended to you that you shall be steadfast in the cause of the truth and the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all existence (Creation), so that you can bear witness to the equitableness (fairness) and stand up for it; and no person of your kind (human being) or any group of people of your kind (group of fellow human beings) or even an entire people shall be able to mislead you into being anything other than fair providing you remain true to your steadfastness; consider that being fair emanates from the truth-teaching as a state (nature of truth), as this teaching carries manifold guidelines (sign-postings) in itself and shows you the way of your existence (life) that you may walk on it and that things may go well with you.
- 22) The real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation) promises to all those who are connected to the truth and who do good deeds that they will find forgiveness in themselves for things of falsehood that they do unknowingly and only understand it after they have already committed the misdeed; their cognition and the atonement (changing to the better) of the incorrect action will be the great reward that they create and receive in themselves; truly, misdeed (error) alone is the way that leads to cognition and unfolding (evolution), because it is only through committing misdeeds (errors) that people of your kind (you human beings) learn to differentiate (understand) things so that you become knowing (conscious), change yourselves and become connected to the truth, equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness) as well as evaluation (cognition) and true discernment (rationality).
- 23) Those, however, who persist in unknowledge and remain far from the truth and condemn the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all love (Creation), they are in their own inner nature occupants of a shadow world (hell) that they have created in themselves.
- 24) Always consider the goodness of the wellspring of all love (Creation) which it has set in its laws and recommendations so that you do not strive to raise your hands against another people (wage war) in order to subject it to yourselves, because as freedom is something that each of your kind (human being) is entitled to, so all peoples are entitled to it, therefore you shall not split them up or bring them under external dominance; do not be lightless (blind) in your obsession (greed) for might over other people of your kind (human beings), and neither be obsessed with (greedy for) might over other peoples, but hold back your hands and your desire for it, and do not assume that the ones you have subjugated will eternally remain your subjugated ones; because truly they will grow in their number (multiply) and strike back at a time when they have become strong enough against you and are more knowing in many things, and consequently they will no longer allow themselves to be suppressed; trust in true freedom which you shall grant to each one of you and to all peoples so that you keep the peace amongst one another and do not wage any battles (wars) against one another.
- 25) And truly, if you heed the truth and are connected to it then it will always be with you, thus you also heed freedom and peace; and if you heed the truth and are connected to it then you awaken in yourselves twelve leaders which accompany you at all times as true love, as esteem, as deference, as kindheartedness, as dignity, as virtues, as faithfulness, as equitableness (fairness), as righteousness (conscientiousness), as uprightness, as modesty and as obligation (responsibility) and determine your deeds in your existence (life).
- 26) See, the truth is always with you, but you have to make it your own, because simply the presence of the truth does not bring any benefit (success) unless you use it; therefore, be connected to the truth and heed it when you direct your prayer to your inner world (consciousness), when you distribute your alms and when you make a considerable commitment (effort/interest/attention) to learning about the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; and if you have committed misdeeds in the past, then you free yourselves of them if you are turned towards the truth and recognise the things in their reality, thus you can create a garden of the truth in yourselves through which streams of cognition, love, peace, freedom and consonance (harmony)



flow; however, anyone amongst you who falls away from this way of the truth and returns to the path of the unknowledge that is strewn with thorns, that human being is truly straying from the straight way.

- 27) Those amongst you who are ready to break your bond (agreement) with the truth, you are thereby hardening your inner nature yourselves, and therefore you are cursing yourselves in your striving because you are falsifying the words of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and therefore the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation).
- 28) And those amongst you who are false scribes and false explainers (interpreters) who shall write and teach the truth, you are falsifying and mixing up (changing) the true words from their correct places so that people of your kind (human beings) forget the majority (largest part) of the truth-teaching and the admonishments of the true prophets; and truly, since time immemorial, it has not ceased that treachery on their part against the truth-teaching has been discovered, so that only a few things have been retained which approach the truth and are given by the teaching of the prophets.
- 29) Those amongst you who are searching for the real truth, forgive the fallible ones and killers (destroyers) of the true truth-teaching and do not heed them, but remain sublime above their terrible doings and strive all the more to find the way of the truth and of its teaching, so that you may follow it and you can rejoice in the good reward of the truth.
- 30) Truly, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is not just intended for one people, but for all peoples of your world, and therefore the truth-teaching stands in the bond (agreement) with all peoples of the world who follow many false prophets and from whose false teachings a godliness (religion) and many sub-godlinesses (cults/sects) were created; but truly, in the past the truthfully truth-teaching was given to them already by true prophets far from (outside) the line of Nokodemion, but they have forgotten everything with which they had been admonished, and they have turned to false prophets and their false teachings; and because the false prophets and their false teachings were regarded as true by your forefathers and foremothers (forebears/ancestors) and by all peoples, they followed the false guidelines (leading thoughts) and kindled enmity and hatred amongst one another, leading to battles (wars) and evil acts of Gewalt which you have maintained as their far-distant descendants (children of children, etc.) up to the present day because you do not want to know the awful things that your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) had done by following the false prophets and their false teachings; and as you do not want to know what your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) did falsely with regard to the truth-teaching, so you do not want to know what you are doing in the same wise and are thereby trampling all things into the ground which are life's true values.
- 31) Truly, the real prophets came to you and come to you up to the new time (start of the new time from 1844 of the 19th century CE) and it is they who reveal to you time and time again many things about the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation); and there is always much of it which you keep hidden from yourselves and overlook out of chickenheartedness (cowardice), because you do not want it to be true and because you have learned it wrongly through the false prophets and their false teachings; but it is only in the teaching of the prophets, which is the teaching of the truthfulness, that no blemish (doubt), no falsehood (deviousness) and no lie is to be found, but the scribes charged by the prophets have falsified it so that finally a true prophet will come to give the truth-teaching in writing in order to really set a light of the real truth for you and provide the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in a clear source (book); and truly, through the source (book) of the true prophet from the line of Nokodemion, all those will be led in the new time (from the middle of the 20th Century) who are looking for their inner joy in the truth-teaching and will henceforth lead themselves out of their darkness of their going into confusion to the light of the truth; and as people of your kind (human beings) direct (lead) themselves on the right way through the teaching of the prophets, love and consonance (harmony) as well as peace and freedom will come about.
- 32) Truly, anyone amongst you who says that true prophets are only blabbermouths (charlatans) and deceivers whereas the false prophets are the true ones, you not only would like to destroy the truth but also the true prophets themselves, because as they admonish you to the truth and discover your lies, they are like thorns in your eyes; truly, despite your lies and your guilefulness (intrigues), the true prophets and their teaching are superior to you who are fallaciously searching for your kingdom of heaven in the heaven of a god or tin god (realm of gods and tin gods) through your godly (religious) beliefs (assumptions), despite the fact that these are only pseudo natures fabricated (invented) by people of your kind (human beings); and you do not want to understand that the kingdom of heaven is in you, as is the kingdom of the shadow world (hell), because truly heaven and the shadow world (hell) are a location (condition) in yourselves that you form according to your knowledge and unknowledge, whether for good or for evil; you yourselves alone have power over it because only you alone form your inner world (consciousness) and your psyche.
- 33) And there are many amongst you who say that you are sons and daughters of a god or tin god and are his



darlings, but ask yourselves why does he then punish you for your missteps (vices/guilt/unvirtues/offences) as is taught to you by the false prophets and their false teachings and priests and other servants of gods or servants of tin gods; truly, punishment which results in harm to body and life and psyche is a work of evil which you create in your thoughts and feelings through insights (ideas) and which people of your kind (fellow human beings) concoct (hatch) and have concocted (hatched/invented) in yourselves in order to practise revenge and retaliation for your own pleasure (gratification) and for your own craving (delectation); truly, the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation) do not know any punishment of this kind whatsoever, merely the recommendation of punishment that teaches that each error brings about distinct consequences from which emanates a recognition of the fallibility and of balancing (making good/change, i.e. learning to do better and to do right); and therefore this recommendation of the primal power of all life (Creation) shall be an ideal in order to form the jurisdiction and its deeds of punishment in the same wise through your ability, so that no-one of your kind (human being) may be harmed in body and life or in their psyche and so that punishment may only take place in order to balance out (make good/change, i.e. learning to do better and to do right); and what shall be given is a stay for a certain time in a suitable place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place) where the fallible ones can dedicate themselves to the truth-teaching in order to change and improve, but where they also shall be responsible for their prosperity and adversity and therefore for their own provision (subsistence).

- 34) The primal power of all life (Creation) does not forgive whomsoever it wants, and it does not punish whomsoever it wants, because it merely gives its laws and recommendations which you shall follow or disregard according to your free will, so that you yourselves decide what is right or wrong for you and your nature (attitude) according to the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation), from which it is given that you think and act subject to your own responsibility and you yourselves influence and form your feelings, your inner world (consciousness) and psyche, so that you may forgive yourselves or punish yourselves according to your own consideration (will/discretion), as is taught to you by the true prophets, to whose teaching many of you are traitors.
- 35) However, your betrayal will last for a long time, far into the time to come (future) beyond the new time when, following a long interruption in the line of the prophets, the last true prophet brings you the source (book) of the truthly writing of the teaching of the prophets; he it is who will make the things of the teaching clear to you as has never been achieved before in the fullness and amplex (quantity) so that you may not say that no bringer of joyful news and no warner has come to you; and therefore it will be that in the new time, in truth, the last true prophet from the line of Nokodemion, the originator of the true prophets, will come to you as a bringer of joyful news, but also as a warner; and his words and writings will be as powerful as never before so that you may finally grasp and differentiate (understand) between the truth of the teaching of the prophets and the untruth of the teachings of the false prophets and their priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods who drive you into beliefs (assumptions) of their godliness (religion) and who enslave you in your thoughts and feelings and in your inner world (consciousness).
- 36) And truly, all true prophets from the line of Nokodemion who have gone and taught before, they told you that you shall turn to the truth-teaching and the grace of the laws and recommendations of the Creation as individuals and as peoples; and truly, none of the true prophets from the line of Nokodemion are ever envoys of gods and tin gods, but they are children of people of your kind (human children) from your midst who, through their own willingness and diligence (activity/assiduousness), learned their knowledge and their wisdom and everything associated with it through their own power, which stays alive however through a spirit-body (spirit-form) which is ancient of days (age-old), vastly (eons) older than yours.
- 37) And truly, on your world since time immemorial, true prophets have only come about (appeared) from the line of Nokodemion, from whom true instructors took the teaching of the prophets and taught it, but these were also persecuted and slandered (calumniated) and exposed to persecution by people of your kind (human beings), just like the true prophets themselves.
- 38) The teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and therefore the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all existence (Creation) is given for all peoples of the world so that no one people shall have more than another and none shall be disadvantaged; and as you enter a country, you may listen to the same teaching of the prophets and follow it so that you do not have to turn your back on the foreign country and you do not have to turn around as ones who are lost.
- 39) And if a country contains an over-courageous and all-mighty people in which Gewalt is practised on strangers or in which strangers are limited in their freedom and in their knowledge, then do not enter this country so that you are not exposed to Gewalt (terror) and coercion; do not enter the country or move into its cities until its people and its authority have moderated and welcome you in benevolence and friendship or when they leave their country.
- 40) Do not enter a house or a country unless its inhabitants are endowed with kindheartedness, therefore, you



shall only go through the gate and move forwards if you are certain (without doubt) of being welcomed in benevolence and are sure of trust.

- 41) And if you, whether man or woman, enter a house or a country then greet in a seemly (commensurate) wise those who are within it; and if you are wearing a cover on your head as you enter and at the greeting, then remove it from your head and thereby show that you have freedom and dignity, therefore you shall do the same; and if you have covered your face, then remove the covering when you enter a house or a country so that the others may recognise (see) your uprightness; and cover your head and your face from the light (rays) of the sun, against the weather (influences of the weather) and against sand and storm so that your skin and your head (brain) are not harmed and do not sicken; but never cover your head before gods and tin gods and before people of your kind (human beings) who demand the same from you, because it is disgraceful to have to cover your head in submission; and therefore do not cover your face before people of your kind (fellow human beings), because covering the face means concealing evil defilement or unright; therefore go forth and wear your covering for your head and your face if the condition (situation = sun/weather conditions/sand/storm) demands it, but do not allow yourselves to fall into submissiveness through wearing coverings for your head and face.
- 42) And, whatever the condition (position/situation), consider that only you have might over yourselves and only you determine which way you want to take and which deeds you want to carry out, and therefore which thoughts and feelings you want to have; truly, no other people of your kind (fellow human beings) can have might over you if you do not voluntarily allow it to happen, therefore keep a distance between yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings), so that you always remain yourselves and solely exert might over yourselves, and that you do not fall into servitude (bondage) or slavery to people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 43) And wherever you go on Earth, make sure that you do not wander about senselessly for many years, but that you become settled in a place and make efforts (work) where you can spend your evening of life; and therefore make sure that you do not wander about for forty years or more on Earth with the result that you do not amass (save up) what is possible for you, and that you do not have any provision (support) in old age; and therefore make sure that you do not settle down amongst an insurrectional people so that you will not be troubled in your life or at the evening of your old age (evening of life); truly, make sure that you work hard in your life and set aside (save up) what is possible for you so that you will have a sufficiency at the evening of your old age (evening of life) and will not have to starve; because consider that if you have daughters and sons then these cannot look after you in your old age because they go their own ways and raise (found) their own clan (family), therefore you must support yourselves in old age (supply yourselves with what is necessary).
- 44) And be righteous (conscientious) in all things so that you are esteemed amongst all people of your kind (human beings), so it does not happen that one amongst you is accepted (considered) by people of your kind (fellow human beings) whilst another is rejected, because you will be assessed and treated by people of your kind (fellow human beings) according to your knowledge, according to your deeds, according to your virtues and according to your wisdom.
- 45) And if others reach out their hands towards you to kill you, to do you harm or to slander (calumniate) you, then do not do the same to them and do not reach out your hands against them to kill them, to do them harm or to slander (calumniate) them, because you shall neither kill in Ausartung nor bring about harm in Ausartung, neither shall you bring forth slanders (calumnies) out of hatred or irrationality; and forgive the stalkers (persecutors) who want to kill you, to do harm to you or to slander (calumniate) and decry (deny) you, because they are poor in their inner world (consciousness), evil in their thoughts and feelings, confused in their endeavour (striving) and therefore depraved in their considerations (reflecting); therefore forgive your stalkers (persecutors) and strive to inform them of their wrong doing and instruct them with regard to the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) so that they change (alter) to the truth and so that peace will exist between you and them, and that you may go forth safely along your way.
- 46) And you shall not voluntarily and falsely, out of false love or false friendship, take and bear the blame and atone for something that others have heaped upon themselves, so that no fire of guilt may kindle in you in which you will burn whilst the malefactors (lawbreakers) enjoy great reward for their guilt and their infamous actions (crimes); and do not take the blame of others upon yourselves in return for gratification (payment), so that you will have to atone for it whilst the guilty ones enjoy their freedom and great reward.
- 47) And if you have done unright in any wise, then think over your lapse (error) and be remorseful, so that you are not obliged to hide before people of your kind (fellow human beings) as unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and remorseless ones (incorrigible ones).
- 48) And consider that if you kill (murder) someone of your kind (human being), whether it be out of hatred or revenge or jealousy, in a battle (war) or in strife, then that is the same as if many had been killed (murdered) because many remain behind and sorrow as if they were themselves killed (murdered); therefore do not kill



(murder) people of your kind (human beings), because however you justify killing it is against all laws and recommendations of the Creation in which nothing rightful can be found which could justify your killing someone of your kind (human being) on any grounds whatsoever (for any reason).

- 49) And if you preserve the life of someone of your kind (human being), then that is the same as if you had preserved the lives of many, because none are left behind who wail in sorrow, but those who go forth in gladness and embrace one another in joy and happiness.
- 50) The reward for those who kill and wage battles (wars) or strive to kindle chaos in the land is that they are the ones who are ostracized by people of your kind (human beings) and are bound on either hand or foot (clapped in irons) by the authority or the jurisdiction and are brought for punishment to a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded places or islands) or are driven out of the country so that ignominy is heaped upon them and that they may learn rightfully from it and become righteous ones (conscientious ones); however, heed those who feel sorry for their misdeeds and present themselves before the jurisdiction for punishment and give themselves up into its Gewalt, because you shall impose upon them a milder punishment due to their remorse and their own admission (self-indictment), compared to those who first have to be brought to account through a fulfilment of guidelines and only then feel sorry; but do not heed the remorse and atonement (excuse) of the fallible ones against the laws and the standing rules and regulations if they are only declaring their remorse and atonement (excuse) through a negotiation (procedure) with the jurisdiction, because this approach is only taken in order to achieve a milder punishment, therefore such remorse and atonement (excuse) is only done with the intention (purpose = means to an end) of making the punishment mild.
- 51) Be afraid of doing unright, and search for the way of the unification with the truth and strive for it according to your cognition and understanding, so that it shall be well with you.
- 52) Do not be like the ones unknowing of the truth and the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) who strive for everything that is on the entire Earth, and nevertheless are never satisfied; and even if they have everything then truly they believe that they can buy themselves free from everything which may befall (happen to) them and what they believe they are able to deflect from themselves through their wealth, all terrible things and all illness, malediction (unfortune) and death; but truly, you cannot deflect either terrible things or illness or death or malediction (unfortune) from yourselves with your possessions and wealth, therefore you have to face everything that befalls you so that you may always make the best out of it in yourselves, in your thoughts and feelings.
- 53) Truly, you shall make the best out of death so that in yourselves you may be full of peace and love as well as full of joy and happiness and full of consonance (harmony) when you become aware of your dying and you leave your world in which you have led your life; but consider that you cannot take anything from this world with you, neither possessions nor wealth, neither food nor drink, neither jewellery (adornment) nor garments (clothing), neither people of your kind (human beings) nor beasts or animals and other creatures who might be able to protect you in death.
- 54) Be willing to learn the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that you understand all laws and recommendations of the life as they are given through the Creation; and as you follow them in honesty, you can escape from the fire of your own unknowledge and your dread (fear) of the death, which gives you great anguish.
- 55) And regarding the man who steals, and the thieving woman, do not do unright to them either, and do not cut off their hands as a retaliation for their outrage (misdemeanour/misdeed/defilement), so that they do not suffer terrible punishment, but are taken in a fair (commensurate) wise for punishment at a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/secluded island).
- 56) Act according to the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation) which is itself the kingdom of firmaments (universe) and all earths (worlds/planets), so that you are fair and do not mete out punishments as you wish, rather that you are forgiving and fair to all fallible ones in equal measure, both to man and woman, when you are punishing unfairness (irresponsibility).
- 57) And if you are sure of the remorse and the apology of fallible ones, and also that they will improve themselves and become righteous (conscientious), then be truly benevolent and forgiving.
- 58) Those amongst you who have knowledge of the truth, do not grieve about those who rashly fall prey to unknowledge and untruth; and do not take their words as truthful when they say that they are truly believers in the truth, because truly their thoughts are only caught up in a belief (assumptions), but in their attitude (mentality) they are of another sense and far from (outside) all truthliness.
- 59) Therefore, there are many amongst you who like to listen to each lie of the false prophets, in order to pass on the lie to others who have not yet come to it (not yet heard anything of it); and they displace the words of the truthfully truth-teaching from their places (twist/falsify) so that you might accept it, but be on your guard when they bring you the false teachings.
- 60) Heed those amongst you who are time-honoured (habitual) listeners of falseness (deviousness) and are



swallowers of (benefiters from) things that are not allowed (things that are forbidden), because when they come to you, then it is only because they want to ensnare you in the untruth and lead you away from the real truth; however, do not condemn them, but turn yourselves away from them, or, as far as it is possible, teach (instruct) them in the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) so that they may become knowing in the truth.

- 61) And if you turn yourselves away from them, then they cannot cause you any harm; but if you are deciding between them (between the individuals), then decide between them (between the individuals) in equitableness (fairness) and according to the attitude (mentality) of the individual; truly, people of your kind (fellow human beings) love it when you are fair.
- 62) When, however, you are deciding on unfair (irresponsible) deeds and thoughts of people of your kind (fellow human beings), then only decide by keeping yourselves aloof (remaining neutral) from the deeds and thoughts and whatever else that is terrible, and do not brand (condemn) and damn those over whose deeds and thoughts and whatever else you have to decide so that you may reach a fair (objective) appraisal (evaluation); and at all times be aware that when you have to decide on the deeds and thoughts and whatever else of people of your kind (fellow human beings), that you are only deciding on these things, but not on people of your kind (human beings) as people of your kind (human beings); because truly, someone of your kind (human being) as someone of your kind (human being) is inviolable in his or her dignity, because it is only his or her deeds and thoughts and whatever else that are reprehensible (villainous), whereas someone of your kind (human being) can never be subjected to appraisal (evaluation) as the like (as such) and therefore cannot either be evaluated through a decision; because truly, as a person of your kind (human being), each person of your kind (human being) is of equal worth (value) through the laws of the primal wellspring of all love (Creation), and therefore a created creation (life form) of excellence (the best), without treachery and reproach.
- 63) You shall not make yourselves a judge over people of your kind (fellow human beings), because people of your kind (human beings) cannot be subjected to a decision as such, therefore it is not possible to judge (legally assess, i.e. condemn) people of your kind (as human beings), so it is only possible to judge the deeds and thoughts as well as the false consideration (attitude) and other things; therefore heed in this wise (regard) the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all love (Creation) so that you always decide truthly and arrive at the commensurate judgement in the punishment (make the right judgement); in doing so, do not turn your back on the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all love (Creation), so that you may always do what is right in all things as well.
- 64) Truly, the prophets have brought you the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in which there is guidance and light for you, and they have taught you what is right and what is unright, so that all those unknowing of the truth and those knowing of the truth, and those who are proficient (versed) in the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) shall uphold everything and be guardians for the teaching; and therefore the teaching of the prophets is brought so that the authority and jurisdiction may also rightfully do their duty and issue their evaluations and decrees in equitableness (fairness) so that people of your kind (human beings) may achieve (acquire) equitableness (fairness) in all things and may be led (ruled) rightfully and that no-one amongst you has to fear any inequity (unfairness) from the authority or jurisdiction.
- 65) However, if the authority or the jurisdiction does not act according to equitableness (fairness), then it shall be removed (deposed) by the people and a new authority or jurisdiction shall be appointed; and both, the authority and the jurisdiction shall decide and lead according to the law and legislation in any wise that is rightful, so that equitableness (fairness) may be granted to all alike, irrespective of whether man or woman, rich or poor or someone has a name (title), or someone has the standing of a common citizen or of a beggar.
- 66) And consider that when you are practising equitableness (fairness), that you do not heed the old words of false prophets, priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods who slanderously (calumniously) and fallaciously teach that you shall demand terrible punishment and revenge for misdeeds and inequity (unfairness) and other disingenuous things and outrages (crimes), such as a life for a life, an eye for an eye, a nose for a nose, an ear for an ear, a tooth for a tooth and commensurate retaliation for other injuries; but truly, the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all Creation teach the truth which is opposed to punishment and revenge, so that you shall not exercise revenge, punishment or retaliation and shall not cause harm to or hurt (torment/injure) either body or life or either the inner world (consciousness) or the psyche of the fallible ones, because you shall forgive as is given through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all Creation, so that you do not punish the blame of another by bringing blame upon yourselves as well; and if you do not direct yourselves according to this then you are no better than those who have made themselves guilty, rather you are then unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and the same as them.
- 67) Since time immemorial, the true prophets have brought the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and reveal it as it was revealed already before you; and they give their entire existence



(life) to undertake their duty and to announce to you the guidance and the light of the truth-teaching in order to fulfil what was already given to your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) for learning, as guidance and admonishment, so that it shall be well with you.

- 68) Therefore you shall direct yourselves according to what has been revealed to you through the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all existence (Creation), but if you do not comply with what has been revealed to you, then you are indignant ones against the real truth.
- 69) Therefore, it is said to you time and time again that the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life has been revealed to you as fulfilment of what was already (earlier) revealed to your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears); and the truth-teaching is given to you so that you may be guardians over it and pass it on to your daughters and sons and to all those who are looking for it and manifest their thirst for knowledge.
- 70) However, do not fight with Gewalt (terror) against those who have evil penchants (talent) against the truth and come to you to dissuade you from the truth-teaching, rather remain in a peaceful wise with intelligent words so that you are able to instruct the adversaries in a fitting (proper) wise; clear guidelines (guiding principles) and distinct ways have been given to each one of you through the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) so that you may follow them through your own ruling (decision) and in the freedom of your own will; and truly, the source of all wisdom (Creation) does not expose you to temptation (delusion/ does not put you to the test) through its laws and recommendations, because such deeds are only the work of people of your kind (work of human beings); therefore do not compete with one another in temptations (delusions/trials) regarding who is connected to the truth and who is not connected to it; however, do compete to perform good deeds with one another and also alone, so that you may defeat evil in all things and be knowing (conscious) and wise and not stingy, but generous instead; and learn the teaching of the prophets, the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the formation of all things (Creation) amongst one another so that you bring about enlightenment in yourselves concerning all those things about which you are unknowing or at odds.
- 71) Do not wish for yourselves a return to the deceitful jurisdiction of all the false prophets, their priests and servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods, or to the unright from the olden days (former times) of unknowledgeness, and do not wish to follow the hypocritical jurisdiction of the false prophets of the present (present day), neither the jurisdiction of those false prophets and priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods who carry out their mischief in later days (future).
- 72) Do not take unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) or unfair ones (irresponsible ones) as your friends, because they are self-appointed friends (enemies) against you, and if you do name them as your friends nevertheless, then truly you will soon belong to them, as you yourselves become unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones); but strive in yourselves to create friendly thoughts and feelings for the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) so that you do not confront them unfairly and do not bear disgust or hatred and other things against them, but rather that you strive to be helpful to them when they fall into misery, when they need your kindhearted words or when they demand (want) your instruction.
- 73) The hearts (thoughts and feelings) of the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) harbour an illness to which they constantly hurry, which is why they always fear that they will be overtaken by vexation and downfall (misfortune), which means they cannot achieve any victory over themselves or any other event of goodness, therefore they require your help and your knowledge regarding the truth-teaching so that they may feel sorry and recognise (see) the truth in their hearts (thoughts and feelings) which they are concealing (falsifying).
- 74) And the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones), who swear a solemn oath for their belief (assumptions) in fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods and who cast their face down into the dust before their gods and tin gods (kiss the ground) and fall on their knees before them and pray to them and pay homage to (glorify) them, they stand destructively before the truth and in relation to you when you are knowing ones and fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) and virtuous ones; and truly, the unknowing ones and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) perform their terrible deeds conceitedly so they are ones who are lost from the truth.
- 75) And those who believe in fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods, as these all are, they have turned away from the truth and have assembled together in peoples of godliness (belief) and fight (wage war) against other peoples with death and destruction if they belong to another godliness (religion) and have different gods and tin gods; and all amongst them lie by saying that their godhead or their tin god is the same and the only one for all peoples and for each godliness (religion) and for all sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) (that only one god exists for all); and all the believers in gods and tin gods, they lie that their god or tin god loves them and all people of their kind (human beings) and is kindhearted to all providing it is loved and prayed to in submissiveness by



its believers; however those who are unbelievers and have rejected it or dispute (disapprove) it with words and thoughts and feelings shall be met with the accusation of reproach and made to fear, so that they receive a punishment from their god or tin god which shall be meted out to them by believers; but truly, this is not part of the wellspring of all love (Creation), because its laws and recommendations are directed towards true love and the wellbeing of all creatures (life forms), towards their peace and freedom and consonance (harmony); and all these high values are granted by the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all love (Creation) with out differentiation between the type of creature (life form), because truly, its laws and recommendations do not demand from any of its creatures (life forms) even one iota of punishment for delinquencies (transgressions/offences/wrongdoings, etc.), because each creature (life form) imposes a punishment on itself through a delinquency (transgression/offence/wrongdoing, etc.) from which it may learn and recognise and become more knowing and more wise; and truly, the misdeeds (errors) that you commit are stones on the way of cognition and of unfolding (evolution) that you are treading, therefore you shall pick up the stones which are the misdeeds (errors) and place them carefully at the side of the way (learn) so as to pick them up once again and continue carrying them (continue learning) when it is necessary.

- 76) And truly, on your way of cognition and of unfolding (evolution), you are walking alone in yourselves because it is in yourselves that you have to do the work of learning, the work of investigation (research), recognition and unfolding (evolution); from outside of yourselves you only have sight and hearing, and taste and touch, as well as the words and the teaching of the true prophets from which you can take (accomplish) everything that you have to investigate (research) and to recognise (see) in yourselves so that you may become knowing (conscious) and wise and therefore righteous (conscientious) and fair (responsible) and fulfil the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all modesty (Creation).
- 77) And if you follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and therefore the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of all equitableness (fairness) (Creation), then you can be assured that you will find in it true friendship, as can never be amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings), even when you gather in a great crowd to defeat the untruth and become friends in inseparability (connectedness).
- 78) Keep yourselves distant from those who make a mockery of your love for the truth and joke about it amongst people of their kind (like-minded ones) and amongst all those whom they meet.
- 79) And keep yourselves distant from those who make a mockery and a joke of it when you dedicate yourselves to the truth-teaching or when you make prayers (invocations/edification) to your own inner world (consciousness), because they do it out of not understanding and go around in foolishness.
- 80) The mockers who make jokes about the truth are those who reproach the truth-loving ones for their righteousness (conscientiousness) and equitableness (fairness) and virtues, because they themselves are too stupid to recognise (see) the truth and to understand it, because they prefer to be malefactors (doers of misdeeds) and truth-deniers.
- 81) But also be fair to those who mock and joke with the truth when they approach (harass/attack) you and you cannot escape (avoid) them; treat them as people of your kind (human beings) and do not heed their wrong doings, but strive to point out to them with clear words and without Gewalt (terror) what they are doing wrong; do not threaten them and do not make them worse than they are (do not insult them or estimate them worse than they are) so that they will not curse you as monkeys and pigs and that their rage will not befall you; consider that they are confused and praying to their evil in themselves and are bringing themselves into ever worse positions because they are continuously straying further and further from the right way of the truth.
- 82) And if they come to you in an upright wise because they would like to learn something of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all primal power (Creation), then allow them to escape from their unknowledge of the truth by explaining the truth to them so that they leave you as ones who are thirsty for knowledge regarding the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all primal power (Creation) in order to concern themselves with the truth henceforth and to be always connected to it.
- 83) And there are many amongst those who mock and joke about the truth who are only rebelling against the truth as mockers and jokers because they have been led into confusion by a godliness (religion) or sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) and have fallen prey to false teachers of false prophets and self-appointed godheads and their priests and other servants (hands/helpers).
- 84) And do not comply with the false teachings of these false prophets and self-appointed godheads who forbid you in maliciousness from eating and drinking of good things which taste good to you, because truly it is terrible what they do with such false teachings and they beat you into a godly (religious) servitude (bondage) with it.
- 85) Therefore you also have scribes who bring you false teachings because they set down (write down) the teachings of the false prophets faithfully, however they falsify the true teaching of the true prophets, therefore the scribes exert great might over you with their writing because you fall prey to the words of their



disingenuous eye powder (texts/writings/books) and are hanging on (believing in) their false oaths (guilefulness); and also your godly (religious and sectarian) priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of false teachings and gods and tin gods spread falsehoods (deviousness) amongst you, and truly everything that they do is of great disaster.

- 86) And the false prophets and their priests and servants (hands/helpers) and servants of gods and servants of tin gods slander (calumniate) the truth and lie that the truth-teaching only serves the intention (purpose) of binding your hands (thoughts) and your inner world (consciousness) so that you shall be accursed for the sake of what good things you learn through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; and they do insomuch that you shall become disloyal to the truth and become like people of their kind (like them); but know that the truth does not bind your hands (thoughts) nor your inner world (consciousness), because on the contrary it opens your hands (thoughts) and your inner world (consciousness) so you become free in it and find the way that allows your hands (thoughts) to reach ever further, by means of which you unendingly collect more and more knowledge and wisdom, create more and more true love in yourselves and turn to the real peace and freedom as well as consonance (harmony); and use the powers (ideas) of your hands (thoughts) so that you may find the truth in yourselves; and do not allow turmoil to rise up in you through unknowledge and untruth, so that you are not cast against yourselves in hostility and you do not hate yourselves; therefore do not kindle in yourselves the fire of battles (wars) with your hands (thoughts), but extinguish the fire of evil that burns you up from the inside because you are striving for unright and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and for virtuelessness, as well as for unpeace and unfreedom (bondage) as well as for chaos, because you are happy to wallow in it, as is the case with all causers of inequitableness (unfairness).
- 87) If your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) had been connected to the truth, then they would certainly (without doubt) also have fought and lost (eliminated) all the terrible things to which you are still attached to today and which you falsely indulge in with joy and do evil and unfairness (irresponsibility) as well as disingenuousness and dishonourableness and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), as you move far from (outside of) virtues; truly you do not move in the gardens of pleasures in you, but in gardens of evil that you have created in your inner nature.
- 88) If you followed the teaching of the prophets, the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of the light of the truth (Creation) then you would eat (learn) from all good things of the truth, so that you would understand what is above you and with you and what is below your feet; however, you are people (human beings) who only adhere to (carry on) the terrible path of idleness (laziness) in your hands (thoughts) and in your inner world (consciousness), therefore you do not become aware (feel) what true terribleness is in you and what you do.
- 89) It has been announced to you that if you do not listen to the truth and do not do what the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of the light of the truth (Creation) states as advantageous (recommended) for you because you do not want to hear its message, then you will also not find any protection from yourselves, because you cannot protect yourselves against your own unright against yourselves.
- 90) If you are unknowing ones in the truth and unfair ones (irresponsible ones), without virtues and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) then you are based on nothing that makes your existence worth living, because if you do not follow the truth that is brought to you by the «Goblet of the Truth», by the teaching of the prophets, then you are stepping in the darkness of your inner world (consciousness), and you will stumble continuously and permanently and be unable to find the way to the light of the truth; it is certain, however, that what the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the prophets, brings to you will make the turmoil and the unknowledge in you disappear when you turn to face (turn towards) the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and you change from the unknowledgeness of the truth to the knowledgeness of the truth, so that you will no longer be troubled.
- 91) Truly, if you follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, then you will be without fear and dread (fright) and without too great sorrow when you are oppressed by terrible things or even by death, because truly, the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the prophets, reveals to you everything required (necessary) for you to gain (manage) your existence in all situations.
- 92) Truly, true prophets come to you, but you deal with them like your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) did, because whenever they come to you with the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of the light of the truth (Creation), then you do not wish to have them because your demand is not for the truth, rather for inner fulfilment of your desirousness (vice/ wantonness/pathological cravings/urges) which are far from the truth; and you treat (insult) the true prophets as liars or even attempt to kill them, at the same time as paying homage to (glorifying) the false prophets and the priests and servants (hands/helpers) of fabulated (invented) false



godheads and tin gods, which are truthly and without exception hazy pictures (imaginings/illusions).

- 93) And you think that you will not be challenged for your deviation from the truth, but you are wrong in this because truly you are imposing a punishment on yourselves when you are blind and deaf to the truth and you cannot find any honourable and upright pity for yourselves.
- 94) Truly, you are ones unknowing of the truth and believers in gods and tin gods if you give belief (assumptions) to godly (religious) priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods and pray to their gods and tin gods as if they were indisputable and proven truthful (reality); but truly, if you place gods and tin gods and priests or other servants of gods and servants of tin gods at the side of the primal power of all life (Creation), then the truth of the primal power of all life (Creation) and its laws and recommendations will remain refused (concealed) from you, as there will be a dwelling of the shadow world (hell) in you with fire consuming you, from which you cannot liberate yourselves because, as great malefactors (truth-deniers), you do not find any upright helpers.
- 95) Truly, those who pray to gods and tin gods are ones unknowing of the truth, and tin gods are not only those that are equivalent to gods but tin gods are also cult objects that are esteemed (worshipped/deified) in a godly (religious) wise, or are used as intermediaries (facilitators/intercessors) for gods and tin gods.
- 96) And truly, there is no <one> god or tin god of the firmaments (universe) and of earths (worlds/planets) who would be a creator of the firmaments (universe) and of earths (worlds/planets), because the primal wellspring of all activity (existence) is the wellspring of reality (Creation) alone, which animates (is interwoven in/pulses through) its creations in all firmaments (universe) and on all earths (worlds/planets) in true love.
- 97) Consider that if you are praying to a god or tin god then you are praying to something that does not have the might to harm or benefit you; and if you pray to a person of your kind (human being) who raises himself or herself up as a godhead or a substitute or the like, then you are praying to a deceiver and blabbermouth (charlatan) who can bring you no salvation (prosperousness/wellbeing/liberation from terrible things), but only terrible things, exploitation and servitude (bondage).
- 98) See how the true prophets explain the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and its signs (marvels) to the best, and see how you turn away from them and therefore continuously bring about in a suggestive and forceful wise all the bad and disastrous things of the world such as battle (war) and hatred and bloody deed (murder) as well as revenge and retaliation, killing and unpeace, jealousy, strife, discord and outrageousness (misdeeds) and inequity (unfairness), and also defilement (crime) of all kinds, guilefulness (intrigues), lying and deception and everything that is directed against the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all existence (Creation).
- 99) You who hear the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, see that you understand and follow it so that you do not show contempt for the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) and you do not perform iniquitous deeds which are infringements, just as you do not follow evil penchants (talents) and you do not fall into confusion and also do not lead any people of your kind (fellow human beings) into confusion who are on the right way.
- 100) Make sure that you do not persist in unknowledge of the truth, so that you do not curse yourselves with your own tongue when you are disobedient and commit an outrage against the laws and recommendations of the power of all powers (Creation).
- 101) Truly, it is rightful for you to prevent one another from committing the misdeeds that you wish to commit, because verily you should not commit misdeeds, neither bloody deeds (murder) nor Gewaltsamkeit and battle (war), and neither pillage, atrocity nor destruction.
- 102) Truly, many amongst you are unfair ones (irresponsible ones), and you see to it that you take similarly (equally) unfair ones (irresponsible ones) for your friends so that you may be one and the same (of the same kind) amongst one another, so that you can iniquitously carry out with them the unright (false) deeds that you have planned in advance (thought up/thought out/hatched), and by doing so you create displeasure amongst the fair ones (responsible ones) and lay yourselves open to punishment.
- 103) And if all amongst you were connected to the truthly truth of the laws and recommendations of the Creation, then you would accept the true teaching of the prophets and their words and signs (marvels/evidence) that they reveal to you, so you would not take the false prophets as your friends who beat you into godly (religious) servitude (bondage) because you are disobedient to the truthly teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 104) And if you heed people of your kind (fellow human beings) with open eyes then you will certainly find that it is not those who are assiduous in the truth who are the ones that see to (foster) all the terrible things of the world and bring about battle (war), jealousy, hatred and revenge, retaliation and greed, death, ruin and destruction as well as hardship and misery on the world and all people of your kind (humankind), rather it is those who pray to gods and tin gods and who crawl before all kinds of godly (religious and sectarian) priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods who place images of gods and tin gods at the side of the well-



spring of all life (Creation); and truly it is without doubt those who are not connected to the truth of the well-spring of all life (Creation), and those who say that they stand in friendship with their god or tin gods as godly (religious or sectarian) believers and only carry out what is imposed on (commanded for) them through their godhead or their tin god; and they believe that their false prophets and priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods are savants in gods and savants in tin gods, which is why they are slimily subservient to them.

- 105) But if they hear the truth and understand it in the wise that it is explained by the teaching of the prophets, then you see their eyes flood with tears because of the truth that they recognise (see); and they raise themselves up then in modesty in order to prove themselves as witnesses to what the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life reveals.
- 106) And truly why shall you not make the truth of the primal wellspring of all life (Creation) and its laws and recommendations your own as people of your kind (human beings), after all, you do deeply wish that your life were formed (characterised) in this wise so that you may count yourselves amongst the right-minded ones?
- 107) And for the sake of what they wish and strive for, they build in their inner nature gardens as a reward, through which flow the streams of love and peace and freedom, of consonance (harmony) and of knowledge and of wisdom; and if they are steadfast then they will remain there for all time as a reward because they do good and follow the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all life (Creation).
- 108) Those, however, who persist in unknowledge and reject the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all life (Creation), they are occupants of the shadow world (hell) that they have created in themselves, the fire of which consumes them from within, therefore they are unsatisfied and do not bear any true love in themselves, neither any consonance (harmony), peace nor freedom.
- 109) Therefore be concerned to give fullness (sufficiency) to the truth so that you do not do things that are not permitted to you out of righteousness (conscientiousness) and equitableness (fairness) and virtue; and do not turn things that are permitted to you through righteousness (conscientiousness), equitableness (fairness) and virtue into something disallowed (forbidden); and do not exceed any law or recommendation that has been created by people of your kind (human beings) so that you do not come into dispute (conflict) with the authority, with jurisdiction or with your next ones, because infractors of any things whatsoever are always unpopular, and their infractions (illegalities) lead to hostility.
- 110) Truly, you will never be called to account for your good thoughts and deeds and works, but even one imprudent word can create hostility and hatred; and false vows (false oaths) bring you defilement and punishment, because if you have sworn falsely (sworn a false oath) with intent (deliberately) then you will be called to account; and if you swear an oath in righteousness (conscientiousness) for something, then keep the vow and give it fulfilment so that you give a sign (set an example) through your own honour and amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings), and so that you yourselves may be thankful; and truly, a vow shall never be broken, just as a pledge (promise) shall never be broken, because it is a word of honour, and whoever breaks the same casts themselves into defilement, into dishonour and disrepute (discredit).
- 111) Know that wine and all other fermented juices (alcohol such as beer/spirits, etc.) shall not be allowed if they are drunk beyond good measure and to drunkenness, because in drunkenness you lose your control over yourselves; therefore drunkenness lightens the tongue (makes it unrestrained) and leads to babbling in dignitylessness, as well as the disclosure (betrayal) of secrets; continuous drunkenness also leads to vice and to illness (pathological craving) of the body, both in the inner world (consciousness) and in the slings (viscera/kidneys/ liver, etc.), as well as to seeing through delusion (dipsomania/delirium tremens/methomania/oenomania) and to agitation (nervousness).
- 112) And know also that gambling leads to illness (pathological craving) as do images of gods and images of tin gods, godly cult objects and the belief in gods and tin gods which you transmit (pass on) to your descendants and so they are beset (affected by) them in Gewaltsamkeit already at their procreation, so that they fall prey in their lives to a godly (religious/sectarian) belief (assumptions) from which they can only escape with difficulty; avoid illness (pathological cravings/vices) which you yourselves create, because they are disgusting and shall be an abomination to you because they are a work of evil that you create and keep (nurture) in yourselves; avoid all these terrible things so that it shall be well with you.
- 113) Truly, the evil that you create in yourselves, also through wine and all kinds of fermented juices (alcohol/beer/spirits), gambling and godly (religious) belief (assumptions), only creates hostility and hatred and excites terrible vices (pathological cravings) and thoughts in you so that these become sick (manic) and destroy your inner world (consciousness) and your psyche, and therefore you shall refrain from them.
- 114) And as you are stricken by illness in your inner world (consciousness) and in your psyche, the more you wander about aimlessly and create further evil in yourselves, such as hatred and jealousy, hostility, pathological craving for revenge and the urge for retaliation so that then you kill and allow battles (wars) to break out and destroy everything that people of your kind (fellow human beings) have brought forth (created)



laboriously during their life; and as you behave in this wise, you put unright before right, therefore you are not helpful to one another, but kill (murder) one another and deceive, lie to, slander (calumniate) and defile (dishonour) in any wise that is possible to you; in your wrong doings, you assume (believe) yourselves to be strong and embitter (torment) the weak ones, in contradiction to the recommendations of the primal power (Creation) that the stronger one shall help the weaker one.

- 115) Therefore, it is recommended to you that you pay attention to the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and be on your guard against the evil that you are creating in yourselves; and if you are not on guard against yourselves and against everything evil and terrible that you create in yourselves because you have fallen away from the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which have been taught to you by the true prophets, then do not blame them because they only bring the clear proclamation of the message of truth and are your teachers, but what you choose to make of the teaching is purely a matter of your assiduousness (your own concern); truly, no prophet can change you and turn you to the better, because you are only capable of doing this to yourselves if you heed the signs (evidence) of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and follow them yourselves.
- 116) Truly, it is not enough to appear kindhearted (to look good) before people of your kind (fellow human beings) and to have yourselves raised up when you do good deeds in order to bedazzle (befool) and to make yourselves great and important, because good deeds are only of value if they are truthfully done in kindheartedness and love, in upright and deferential dignity.
- 117) And as you shall do good in uprightness and in venerability of the dignity towards people of your kind (human beings), so the same applies to animals and all creatures and everything that crawls and flies, and therefore do not kill any game, any animals or other creatures that you do not need for your food, except if it is sick or injured and would otherwise die in suffering; then you shall kill it and release it from its torment; but you can also kill animals and other creatures for support (gamekeeping and care through hunting) so that no excessive number (population) comes about through which harm would be caused to people of your kind (human beings) and to animals and other creatures or to the world (nature); if however, robbery (poaching) is conducted in any form then the fallible ones shall be brought to the authority or jurisdiction for punishment.
- 118) Animals and creatures of all kinds, of the land, the air and the seas and other waters are permitted for you as food without distinction, except those which are harmful or poisonous to you as nourishment; and if you are on a journey, then the same rules (regulations) apply, namely that you may use for your provision (food) all animals and other creatures that you can slay (hunt), in the same wise as all animals and other creatures that you have at your home and for your purchase (income) and for your provision (food), whether they be poultry of any kind, cattle of any kind, horses or pigs, sheep and goats, dogs and cats or whatever else serves as your food; however you shall not prepare your food simply from the flesh of animals and other creatures, but also from fruits and vegetables as well as herbs and grain (cereals) so that you have provision (nourishment) in reasonableness (balance) and so your body and your slings (viscera/intestines) are kept undamaged (healthy) through a good maceration (digestion).
- 119) And the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) created its laws and recommendations for all firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds/planets), for all animals and other creatures, for all people of your kind (humankind) and for all reality (existence), and all this has been taught to you through the teaching of the prophets so that you may be knowing (conscious) in all things and pay heed to the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and its laws and recommendations; but think (be aware) that the prophets are only your teachers and warners, and the proclaimers of the message of the truth-teaching which they make evident to you so that you may learn from it and may undergo a change in yourselves to the better.
- 120) But know, the true prophets are strict teachers and warners, but they are benevolent and forgiving, therefore you never need to fear evil from them; and simply through their kindheartedness, their teaching and their warning and forgiveness, you shall recognise (see) that bad and good are not the same (they are different) even if the quantity (amount) of the bad astonishes you; therefore learn from the true prophets and become understanding ones so that it shall be well with you.
- 121) Do not ask the true prophets for things which you cannot understand, because if they were revealed (explained) to you then they would cast you into confusion, although (nevertheless) many things are revealed (disclosed) to you when you ask a true prophet if there is one present with you; however he will only reveal those things to you which you can understand without you being cast into confusion; truly, it is not given to you to take more knowledge than your true discernment (intellect) can accept.
- 122) Truly, already many before you have asked for more knowledge than they could accept with their true discernment (intellect), but then they failed in their knowledge of the truth and became confused in their inner world (consciousness), because they did not consider the affliction (danger) that is concealed in excessive knowledge which cannot be accepted.
- 123) The teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life from the truth of the laws and



recommendations of the Creation does not contain any lie or any slander (calumny), nor does it contain anything that would be unrightful and of inequity (unfairness) or unrighteousness (consciencelessness) or unvirtues; many amongst you who, however, fabulate (invent) lies against the truth, you do not make any use of the power of your insight (discernment), because you have fallen prey to dull idleness (laziness) and to unwillingness against the truth.

- 124) Truly, it is wrong of you to think that what you find (receive handed down) from your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) is sufficient and rightful, because what has been revealed to them of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life was defiled (trodden underfoot) by them, so they did not have any knowledge and were not led, therefore you only find (receive handed down) from them unknowledge, unvirtues and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), as well as delusional teachings of false prophets and falsified writings of the scribes and priests of gods and tin gods.
- 125) Therefore it is recommended to you that you do not follow the old sources (books/writings) that are retained for you as guidelines (traditions), rather search for the truth yourselves so that you may find it and do not fall into confusion and do not harm yourselves; and truly, if you are looking for the truth then you will find it in the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all Creation which is given to you through the teaching of the prophets, which reveals all those things to you which are of great relevance (importance) for you, so that you may understand, follow and conduct (care for) them.
- 126) Learn and do everything the same as the true prophets, as they already turn to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life at a young age (in their childhood) and strengthen themselves in their inner world (consciousness) with kindheartedness and love and with the nature of the deference as well as of the wisdom; and do the same as them who learn from the cradle onwards and talk to people of your kind (human beings) and teach the writing of wisdom at a young age and at an age of having grown out of youth (adulthood); and do the same as them, the true prophets, so that you may learn the truth and carry it further to people of your kind (fellow human beings); and do it like in the allegory (comparison) of a figure that you create out of clay and remains lifeless until you breathe life into it, because the unknowing ones in the truth are the same as a lifeless figure made of clay which only awakes to true life when it is struck by (conscious of) the truth.
- 127) Do not allow yourselves to be deceived by false prophets and false teachings which are of such a nature that their falsehood (deviousness) is not evident, but only becomes obvious (recognisable) through true discernment (intellect); and do not allow yourselves to be deceived by wondrous signs from false prophets, because their signs (apparent evidence) are only a delusion and acts of trickery (legerdemain/tricks) in order to deceive you and to make you unfree (in bondage) through their false teachings; and if false prophets awaken the dead then they are deceiving and lying that the dead are dead, although they are only unaware of themselves (unconscious), therefore the false prophets do not do the same as the true prophets who teach that they only awaken ones who are lying in torpor (apparent death) back to wakeful life, because truly once a person of your kind (human being) has entered into death (died) then there can no longer be any return to life; therefore, the false prophets and all who do the same are deceiving you with false miracles (absurdities) and magic which is only acts of trickery (legerdemain/tricks) and has no might, as is also the case with the magicians (mages/practitioners of legerdemain/sorcerers/practitioners of suggestive spells and acts) themselves who only practise deceptive acts.
- 128) The false prophets teach lies and claim that they have been given great knowledge and that only they are the ones who know (have knowledge of) hidden things, but this is not at all the truth, because they are as unknowing as all the unknowing ones, however they are able to beat you into servitude (bondage) by lying and deception, so that you also fall prey to their lies and slanders (calumnies) as well as to their false words and teachings because they can give false signs (magic tricks) by means of magic (legerdemain) and other deceptive acts, which you accept as truthfulness although they are only lies and deception.
- 129) And do not believe them when they lie saying that they are the envoys of a god or tin god or their sons or daughters, born by mothers of people of your kind (human beings), because whatever is born to people of your kind (human beings) on Earth is also created by people of your kind (human beings of Earth) or by people of your kind from the firmaments (people from the universe); and truly, because there are no gods or tin gods who could create the firmaments (universe/outer space) and the earths (worlds/planets) and the lights in the firmament (celestial bodies), because they are only fabulated (invented) insubstantialities, therefore no people of your kind (human beings) can be created from them as they cannot either copulate with (impregnate) women of your kind (human women), but whoever teaches differently has maliciously fallen prey to lying and slander (calumny); truly, it is only people of your kind (human beings) who can raise themselves up in falseness (deviousness) as gods and tin gods and raise themselves up above other people of your kind (fellow human beings) and copulate with (fertilise/impregnate) your women, not however the fabulated (invented) and unsubstantial (imaginary) gods and tin gods or their fabulated (invented) power of the spirit-body (spiritual



power).

- 130) And the formation of all things (Creation) never induced (influenced) through one of its laws and recommendations that you must turn to its truth or the teaching of the prophets, because if you do this then you are doing it out of your own decision and out of free will so that you witness yourselves that you integrate yourselves in uprightness into the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and take the «Goblet of the Truth» as your guideline (sign-posting/leading thought).
- 131) Do not desire to eat (learn) of the false fruits (teachings) of the false prophets, but heed that you only eat (learn) of the good fruits (teaching) of the true prophets, so that you will get a part of all the food (truth) of the teaching of all firmaments (teaching of the whole universe) and create true love and wisdom in yourselves, as well as peace and freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 132) And truly, the teaching of the wisdom and truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all life (Creation) sends you a table (teaching) spread with food (knowledge) so that you may learn and that every day may be a day of festivity for you, whether you are the first or the last, so that you set the signs (evidence) of the truth in yourselves and you are your own providers (source of supply) for knowledge, wisdom and the truth.
- 133) See that you bond yourselves to the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all existence (Creation), so that you are knowing (conscious) in the truth and you do not deteriorate in unknowledge and you do not bring forth (create) punishment in yourselves and do not grieve.
- 134) Truly, since time immemorial the true prophets have spoken to you and brought you the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and taught you that you shall not place either one or two gods or tin gods next to the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), and the same for supposed sons and daughters of gods and tin gods, because the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) is superior (sublime) over all people of your kind (human beings) and over everything that you dare to place at its side; all that is honourable (venerable) is the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), and placing gods or tin gods or fabricated (supposed) sons and daughters or representatives (substitutes) at its side is a disparagement (contemptibility) beyond compare and a matter of shameful abjection; therefore never do, say or teach the same, because you have no right to do so, since it is a lie against all truth.
- 135) Do not teach anything other than the real truth as is taught to you by the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the prophets; and make prayers (invocations/edification) to your inner world (consciousness), so that you only present (dedicate) yourselves to the truth and follow the words of the prophets, who are witnesses to the truth and whom you shall respect for as long as they remain amongst you, because only for that time are you able to hear the words of wisdom with your own ears and have them as guardians over you, because when they die then they will disappear as warners for you, and you can only bear witness to their existence (life) and activity and carry the witness forward into the future by carrying forward their teaching of the truth, their teaching of the spirit, their teaching of the life and teach it to your children and your children's children and to all people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 136) The time during which a true prophet dwells amongst you is a time in which you can benefit as truthful ones (righteousness ones = conscientious ones/fair ones = responsible ones/virtuous ones and ones who have knowledge of the truth) from the truthfulness of the prophet at first hand, so that you may have pleasure in learning and create magnanimity (humanity) in yourselves.
- 137) And it is taught to you another time that you shall never punish people of your kind (human beings) in body and life or by punishing their psyche, but only punish their misdeeds (errors) and terrible deeds by separating them out to a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded place/isolated island) for a certain time where they are treated rightfully in accordance with the law and the recommendation of the creation of all things (Creation) and are dealt with in dignity, however they must look to their own provision (subsistence) and to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that they may become rightful and do rightfully when they return to the people (society).
- 138) Truly, if you heed and fulfil the laws and recommendations of the creation of all existence (Creation) then you have might over all things, and therefore you will one day find the way to all firmaments (the way to the universe, outer space) and to the earths (worlds/planets) through your progress of your inner world (consciousness), so that you also obtain might over that when you do rightfully; however, even then the laws and recommendations of the creation of all existence (Creation) apply in all firmaments (universe) and on all earths (worlds/planets), because all firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds/planets) are the kingdom of the creation of all existence (Creation); and the creation of all existence (Creation) has might over everything through its laws and recommendations.



Chapter 6

- 1) Deference is the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), which is the creation of all firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds/planets), of the darkness and the light, but there are many amongst you who place other things as equal to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), principally fabricated (conceived/invented) gods and tin gods, because you are unknowing in the truth and only lend your ear to (believe in) lies and slanders (calumnies).
- 2) You have proceeded from the might (idea) of the primal wellspring of all life (Creation); and it is through it that your destination is determined which you shall reach through the unbidden (voluntarily) unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness), so that you become one in a bond (agreement) with it (becoming one with Creation) in the very distant time to come (future).
- 3) Therefore, your destination in the very distant time to come (future = eons of years) is determined, which you shall however reach in unbiddenness (voluntariness) over considerable (many) existences (lives) that you will have again and again as new people of your kind (personalities) after you have died and are called back into existence (life) through your spirit-body (spirit-form).
- 4) And truly, it is the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) that has given its laws and recommendations for all firmaments (universe) and for the earths (worlds/planets) so that everywhere and in all things, externally and internally, everything is given so and as everything is necessary.
- 5) And nothing comes to you without you bringing it forth yourselves, whether it be love or unlove, peace or unpeace, hatred, pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation, suspicion, battle (war) or freedom and unfreedom (bondage) and everything that can be imagined, because truly, all signs (activities) of the signs (destiny) which come are created by you yourselves, both in the good and in the evil.
- 6) And if you reject the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), as they are recognisable to you if you go forth with open eyes, then you will yourselves become knowing of what you are mocking.
- 7) Look back from yourselves (into the past), and you will recognise how many peoples and species (family/clan) have eradicated themselves or have been eradicated by others; they had firm residences on Earth, but they allowed clouds (strife/war) to grow over themselves and allowed streams of rain (spilling of blood) to befall themselves and they swam therein until they drowned (died out); and their residences and their places (cities/villages) were destroyed and everything eradicated that bore witness to them; but after them came other peoples and species (families/clans), but they did the same as their predecessors.
- 8) And truly, even before you there came true prophets to your fore-forefathers and fore-foremothers (fore-forebears/forebears before them), long before the true prophets from the line of the seven from the line of Nokodemion came to your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) in order to instruct them in the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), but they rejected and slandered (calumniated) and falsified the teaching of the prophets; and the same was done by those scribes who were instructed by the prophets to put the teaching into writing (write down/record it) so that their work was merely lies and deception; and truly, if the prophets had written the writing themselves and if your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) had felt with their hands or read the writing, if they had been capable of writing (reading/had not been illiterate ones) then in their unknowledgeness of the truth and in their self-deception (self-delusion) of suggestive trickery (magic), they would have attacked (accused) the work of the prophets as being evident activities of the shadow world (activities of hell) and would have killed (murdered) the true prophets as servants of the devil, so the matter would not have rested with willingness (striving) for persecution and killing.
- 9) If the true prophets had brought the writing of the truth-teaching to your fore-forefathers and forefathers and to your fore-foremothers and foremothers (fore-forebears/forebears before them/ancestors/forebears) if they had been capable of reading, then they would have considered this to be the work of the devil because it would not have been a writing by their scribes and would not have been accepted; therefore it is recommended to you that you learn at first hand (directly) from the true prophets and from the true handed-down knowledge; but beware of the false handed-down knowledge of the scribes because their teachings are falsified and far from all truthfulness; but the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) shall be given to you in good word (language) and in clear writing as the source (book) of the truth when the last true prophet of the line of Nokodemion teaches the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that it may remain word-for-word in its expression



(explanation/presentation) and may be understandable to you, because then in the new time you are literate (capable of reading and writing) and understand the words of the teaching of the prophets so that miscomprehension (misunderstandings) vanish from you.

- 10) Truly, the source of wisdom (book of wisdom) could be given to you by a true prophet already before that far-off time, then it would be if it were to be feasible (possible), but the possibility can only be if the necessary contingencies (conditions) will be given so that the source of wisdom (book of wisdom) reaches the hands of all those who are ready for it; therefore it is still necessary to give you a deferment until the new time, however after that you will no longer be able to trot out the usual pretexts (excuses) that you had not been brought the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) in the form of the teaching of the prophets as the «Goblet of the Truth».
- 11) And truly, if it had been determined that more true prophets would come to you, then they would have appeared to you but not as fabulated (invented) liberators (angels) or as supposed envoys of gods and tin gods, because true prophets are people of your kind (human beings) and therefore also in the shape of people of your kind (human form); therefore true prophets cannot appear to you as higher Wesenheiten, because this would merely make you more confused than you already are.
- 12) However, just as your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) before you mocked the true prophets and lent their ear (believed in) the false prophets, so you are doing the same; but by mocking the true prophets, you are only mocking yourselves.
- 13) Truly, walk over the earth and see how miserable has been the end of those who treated the true prophets as liars; and walk over the earth and look how people of your kind (fellow human beings) are at present wallowing in unright and killing, in jealousy, hatred, lovelessness and battle (war) and do not know either peace or freedom or consonance (harmony) because they do not follow the teaching of the prophets and they treat them as liars, persecute them, slander (calumniate) them, dishonour them and strive to kill them.
- 14) But consider that the true prophets do not allow themselves to be driven forth from you, rather they grant you forgiveness for what you do to them and continue to fulfil their duty that they take (load) on themselves unbidden (voluntarily) in order to instruct you, you who deprave your thoughts and your feelings, in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; and there is no doubt about the righteousness (conscientiousness) of the true prophets.
- 15) Truly, everything that dwells and moves in the night and day belongs to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), but all is given to you by it so that you may look after it and bring it to blossom.
- 16) Through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), through the creation of the firmaments (universe) and the earths (worlds/planets), which itself enjoys nothing of food and drink such as you need them, everything is given to you which you need for life, food and drink and everything that you desire.
- 17) And through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), it is recommended to you that you dedicate yourselves to the guidelines (guiding rules) of the laws and recommendations so that you may be all faithful to the laws and faithful to the recommendations and that there may be none amongst you who places fabulated (invented) gods or tin gods or people of your kind (human beings) as gods or emissaries of god or as representatives (substitutes) at the side of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation).
- 18) Truly, you shall be afraid of what you do that is unrightful, because in its good time all your unright will have an effect on yourselves; if you do not follow the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) then you are acting (living) falsely towards your innermost (nature of the spirit), so that you form your inner nature falsely and are disobedient to yourselves.
- 19) If you remain saved from your own disobedience, if you turn to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), then you are bestowing yourselves benevolence and an open blissful happiness.
- 20) However, if you turn away from the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal well-spring of all vitalities (Creation), then do not be surprised if you are pursued by unfortune, such as no people of your kind (fellow human beings) can take away from you, so it pursues you until you become rightful and become connected to the truth; and if you are willing to make a bond with the truth then you will be touched by happiness, because it has the might to give you your inner peace, freedom and consonance (harmony) so that you may also live in love and take joy in your own existence (life).
- 21) The truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) does not demand that you be subservient to it in submissiveness or be its servants (hands/helpers), rather it recommends that you become knowing ones (ones who have knowledge) and wise ones in uncoercedness (voluntariness) by dedicating your existence (life) to the truth.
- 22) And if you ask yourselves what thing is for you the most important proof of your existence (life), then you



recognise the truth in the truliness (irrefutability) in all things of the existence and the witness of the primal well-spring of all vitalities (Creation).

- 23) And these things are obvious (recognisable) to you through the teaching of the prophets, through the 'Goblet of the Truth', so that you may understand and so that you are all warned through the teaching against doing things that are unrightful; and the truth-teaching is given so that it reaches everyone amongst you who want to be reached by it.
- 24) And truly, you cannot really bear witness to the existence of other mightes that are equal to the primal well-spring of all vitalities (Creation); and if you place gods and tin gods or people of your kind (human beings) next to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), then all of that is only the work of people of your kind (work of human beings); and truly, if gods or tin gods are named then they are only people of your kind (human beings) to whom a high designation (title) of god or tin god has been imputed and bestowed (awarded), but truly these cannot be set as the equivalent of or placed next to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); truly, the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) is the only one of its nature (kind/form), and it is far from (beyond) all those things, gods and tin gods and people of your kind (human beings) which you place at its side.
- 25) Those amongst you to whom the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is given and who with your daughters and sons recognise (see) the truth and follow it, you will live in gladness and fulfil (master) your existence (life) in deference (venerability), but those amongst you who do not follow the truth, you are depraving yourselves in yourselves and you are unsatisfied with everything that is given to you through the existence (life).
- 26) And who is more unfair (more irresponsible) than those amongst you who concoct lies against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and against the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) itself, and you who accuse its signs (unsurpassabilities) of being lies which you can recognise (see) in their appearance (nature)?
- 27) And if you turn to the truth, then ask yourselves because you recognise the truth, how it can be that people of your kind (human beings) pray to fabricated gods and tin gods and people of your kind (fellow human beings) who pass themselves off as their representatives (substitutes) or servants (hands/helpers), since no gods or tin gods and no people of your kind (human beings) as their representatives (substitutes) can be placed next to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), because it is sublime over all things.
- 28) Truly, it is only when you start to liberate yourselves from the enticement of your false prophet and false teachings that you recognise that you were servants of gods and servants of tin gods and prayed to insubstantialities; and only then do you recognise that you once again not only are lying against the truth but that you are lying to yourselves and are slandering (calumniating) yourselves, which is why everything that you concoct unrightfully betrays (abandons) you.
- 29) Truly, amongst you there are many who listen to the truth and yet have placed a veil over your true discernment (intellect) so that you cannot understand, and you have shut up your ears with deafness so that you cannot hear the truth in its value, and even if you see the signs (evidence) of the truth with your eyes, then you place a veil over it so that you cannot see truly, because you are fighting in yourselves against the truth and the untruth, with the effect that you cannot overcome the inner resistance and decide for the real truth and finally explain (teach) everything merely as fables of the old ones.
- 30) And those amongst you who hypocritically boast of having knowledge of the truth and yet do not act according to it, because you keep yourselves far from it, you dare to forbid people of your kind (fellow human beings) to turn to the truth, therefore you are casting people of your kind (fellow human beings) into ruin just as yourselves; it is just that you do not understand it.
- 31) If you could only see how you are placing yourselves into the fire of inequity (unfairness) then you would wish that you could turn back to the truth, although you are deprived of this because you treat the signs (evidence) of the truth as lies and are believers in godliness (religion) and its gods and tin gods.
- 32) And those amongst you who have turned to the truth but have not yet become clear about what you used to conceal (falsify and deny) with regard to the truth, you are constantly on the edge of the abyss (run the risk) of returning to forbidden things (falling back into unknowledgeness) and once again becoming ample liars and slanderers (calumniators) of the truth if you do not strengthen yourselves in what has been proclaimed (announced) to you through the truth-teaching.
- 33) And be certain (knowing) that there is no other life than the corporeal (earthly) one and therefore the mortal life in which you can fulfil (master) your conscientiousness (duty) in ample obligation (responsibility) for your unfolding (evolution) for your inner world (consciousness); and when you die then you cannot be reawakened, because your inner world (consciousness) and your all-of-yourself (personality) is dissolved into unsubstantial activity (energy) from which a new all-of-yourself (personality) and a new inner world (consciousness) is formed and born, together with the reawakening (rebirth/reincarnation) of the spirit-body



(spirit-form).

- 34) And the other life after dying is the death-life in the world of invisibility (other world), and you cannot either see or grasp it because it is of fineness (fine-fluidalness), and the world (sphere/level) of the incorporeal (spiritual) is of unearthly appearance (nature).
- 35) Truly, you shall be knowing (conscious) in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so that you are not losers and do not deny the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); be knowing (conscious) in the truth, so that the hour does not come on you unexpectedly when woe befalls you because you neglected the truth and the truth-teaching and you have to carry a heavy load on your back under which you collapse because you are too heavily loaded with unright and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), with inequity (unfairness) and virtuelessness.
- 36) Life in this world is not a game and no pastime, but an existence (life) for the fulfilment of the conscientiousness (duty) in obligation (responsibility), to give fullness (satisfaction) to the unfolding (evolving) of the inner world (consciousness) and for creating knowledge and wisdom as well as love and peace and consonance (harmony) and freedom; truly, you should understand this.
- 37) You are sad in your thoughts and feelings, and you become enraged if the truth is proclaimed (announced) to you through the true prophets, therefore you accuse them of falseness (deviousness) and deny the signs (marvels) that they do as activities of the shadow world (activities of hell) and outrages (crimes) against your fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods.
- 38) Truly, in your unknowledge about the truth you have since time immemorial accused the truth-teaching and the prophets as being fallacious, and you also do the same thing today; but despite your persecution and slander (calumny), they remained patient, as they still remain patient today and give you their help and teach you the teaching of the prophets; and truly, there is not one amongst you who could change even one word of the truth of the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), so the tidings of the teaching of the prophets will remain preserved for all time as the 'Goblet of the Truth'.
- 39) And when your own unwillingness towards the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life becomes painful to you, then it seems to you as if you were sinking into a deep shaft in the earth; however if you find willingness and gratification in the truth-teaching, then it is to you as if you had found a ladder leading to the firmaments (universe) and were receiving signs (evidence) of the truth from there; therefore it is your will to decide whether you will sink into the earth because of your unknowledge or whether you will climb into the firmaments (universe) through your truth-knowledge and the love and consonance (harmony) that proceeds out it as well as the freedom and peace in yourselves.
- 40) And truly, you can only listen and absorb (learn) as long as you are alive (connected to the truth and knowing), but when you are dead (not connected to the truth and unknowing) then you cannot listen and cannot absorb (learn), therefore you must awaken yourselves to the truth first so that you may become alive (connected to the truth and knowing).
- 41) Truly, you cannot say that no signs (evidence) have been given to you through the prophets regarding the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because they have been given to you on many occasions, as the truth-teaching has been proclaimed (announced) to you time and time again, but you have treated it with contempt and are now obliged to search for it anew.
- 42) And you have been taught that all animals and other creatures on Earth are collectives just as you, so each bird that flies on its wings, and each fish that swims as well as every animal that runs and countless others that crawl and fly.
- 43) Those amongst you, however, who do not heed these things and reject the signs (evidence) of the truth, you are deaf and dumb in yourselves and you live in darkness in your inner world (consciousness) without knowledge, love and wisdom, and without peace, freedom and consonance (harmony), because you are going into confusion and are refusing to walk on the right way which leads you to the light of the truth.
- 44) Consider your existence (life) in all things so that you are not sad and not full of fear when the hour (death) catches up with you, so that you may pass away (die) in peace and joy.
- 45) Truly, when your hour (death) comes then you will call for the truth, but you will not forget what evil and terrible things you have done in your life, therefore you will pass away (die) in fear.
- 46) Be certain (knowing) that you will always be rewarded according to how you lead your life in all things, because whatever you take in your hand (do), you create your own reward with it; this is given through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) so that you may receive your reward in equitableness (fairness) according to how you conduct (care for) your thoughts and feelings and how you carry out your deeds.
- 47) Therefore consider that it is you yourselves who form your foreordination (destiny), therefore it is not the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) because they merely advise you what



results as gain (activity) from the wellspring of power (cause); truly, you alone form everything therefore you create tribulation and misery for yourselves and humiliate yourselves if you do not heed and follow the guidelines (basic rules) of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation).

- 48) There is no law and no recommendation of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) that demands submissiveness or other subservience from you, because submissiveness is a punishable disparagement (contemptibility) that is only demanded by people of your kind (human beings) for people of your kind (fellow human beings) in order to keep you in abasement (subservience/servitude) so that you can be exploited in every possible wise; and truly, as the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and its laws and recommendations do not demand submissiveness from you, neither do they demand any punishment for what you do in inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) as well as in virtuelessness and in unknowledge of the truth, because what punishment you suffer is what you inflict on yourselves when you harden your thoughts and feelings and your inner world (consciousness) as well as your psyche because in yourselves you consider everything evil as well done (convenience) and are willingly devoted to it.
- 49) Truly, you continually forget what admonishments are granted to you through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, which opens the gateway of all things (knowledge and wisdom) to you so that you can comprehend (understand) everything, so that you can take joy in all things and do not cast yourselves into darkness (despair).
- 50) Do not be malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth, neither as a people nor as a single one (individual), but obtain for yourselves the gain (reward) that comes forth to you from the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) if you follow them.
- 51) If your hearing and your face (eyesight) were taken away and your inner world (consciousness) sealed, then you would be deaf and blind and without thoughts and feelings, and no-one could give you the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because you could not hear anything, see anything or comprehend (understand) anything in true discernment (intellect); but even without your hearing and your face (eyesight) being taken away and without your inner world (consciousness) being sealed, so that you can hear and see and use your true discernment (intellect), you still turn away from the teaching of the truth and do not heed the manifold signs (evidence) which are given to you through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and through its appearance (nature).
- 52) If an unexpected and evident punishment were meted out on you through the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) or through its laws and recommendations, as people of your kind (human beings) mete out punishment on people of your kind (fellow human beings), then you would be destroyed as a people and as single ones (individual ones); but the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) is fair and does not mete out punishment on its creatures and creations, because punishment is a concoction (invention) by people of your kind (human beings) in deviancy and Ausartung.
- 53) Truly, you can learn these things through the teaching of the prophets who bring their knowledge and their wisdom to you as the 'Goblet of the Truth'; but the true prophets are not envoys of fabulated (invented) gods or tin gods, rather they have arisen from themselves (from their own determination) so that they are for you bringers of joyful messages and are warners for you for what you do that is of terribleness and inequity (unfairness), as well as of unrightness and virtuelessness by which you create unlove, unfreedom (bondage), dissonance (disharmony) and unpeace and jealousy, as well as hatred, revenge and retaliation, killing, battle (war), destruction and outrage (crime) and other lawlessness.
- 54) Those amongst you, however, who follow the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and the laws and recommendations of people of your kind (society), no fear and no sorrow shall come over you through misdemeanours against the standing rules and regulations, because you allow yourselves to be led (guided) by the guideline (guidance) of the laws and recommendations; those amongst you, however, who reject the signs (evidence) of the truth and of the laws and recommendations, you will be brought to account through yourselves and through a punishment of the jurisdiction for your disobedience.
- 55) Truly, in the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and in its laws and recommendations there are all the treasures that you can imagine, but they remain hidden to you until you turn to them and follow them.
- 56) And if you turn and follow the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), then your inner world (consciousness) will be open and will recognise the truth of all truth, therefore you will also recognise that the true prophets are not liberators (angels) and not envoys of fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods, but that they are people of your kind (human beings) as you are yourselves, and that their knowledge and their wisdom has not been disclosed to them by gods or tin gods, rather that they fathom out (work out) everything themselves by learning the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and of its appearance (nature) in true discernment (intellect); and truly, you cannot match one another in your and their knowledge and in your and their wisdom, because you are the blind ones and



the true prophets are the seeing ones, even though they do not raise themselves up above you (threaten you), but place themselves as equal with you in contentment (modesty); truly, you should think this over.

- 57) Warn yourselves and be afraid that you might be gathered together and punished by people of your kind (fellow human beings) when you do things that are unrightful, so that you no longer find any friend or spokesperson (defender) to stand by you in order that you might find clemency (grace) by admitting to your unright and sincerely regretting it, so that you change yourselves and become righteous (conscientious) and fair (responsible).
- 58) And those amongst you who are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), do not drive out from their place those who do themselves good (learn) in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and who are striving for the face (flawlessness) of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), because as people of your kind (human beings), you are responsible for their wellbeing just as they are responsible for your wellbeing, therefore you shall not drive them out so that you do not act unfairly and do not straiten (endanger/harm) your own wellbeing.
- 59) If you are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), then put yourselves to the test as to what extent you are gracious (mild) towards yourselves and gracious (mild) towards people of your kind (fellow human beings), so that you may learn to appreciate in gratitude yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings) and to show them deference (esteem).
- 60) And if you find the way to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) then peace as well as truthly love will come to you, also consonance (harmony) and the freedom of your inner world (consciousness); and if you find the way to the real truth, then you accept yourselves in yourselves and show benevolence to yourselves; and if you are connected to the truth and you unknowingly do something evil and regret it thereafter and knowingly (consciously) abstain (liberate yourselves) from the same evil then you can forgive yourselves as also people of your kind (fellow human beings) forgive you.
- 61) And truly, the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life makes it clear to you through all its signs (explanations) that you will find the way to the truth of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and that you will become one with the truth if you connect yourselves (make a bond) with it.
- 62) The truth-teaching does not recommend for you to pray to gods and tin gods or people of your kind (human beings), because you shall not follow evil cravings that are concocted (hatched/invented) by people of your kind (human beings) so that you shall not be rightly led and go into confusion and serve fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods and people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as gods and tin gods or as their envoys or representatives (substitutes).
- 63) In all things in your life, refer to the clear evidence of the activity (existence) of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), of its laws and recommendations and of its appearance (nature), so that you may always see quickly what is the real truth and what is the untruth; you alone have the might to determine (decide) what is truth and what is untruth, because you are the assessors of this.
- 64) Everything that you wish to see and to experience through your determinations (decisions), that is solely in your might, therefore you shall decide yourselves and do rightfully so that you are not malefactors (truth-deniers) with regard to your determinations (decisions) and wishes.
- 65) The keys to what is hidden are in you yourselves, and you alone know these keys because you must open up your inner world (consciousness) so that you find what is hidden from you; and truly just as everything on the land and in the waters acts (lives) according to the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), and as no leaf falls from the tree and no grain starts to grow (sprout/flourishes) in the darkness of the earth, and no stalk of grass falls prey to the drought without the action of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), so also nothing prospers in you and cannot be torn out of the darkness of what is hidden if you do not follow your own laws and recommendations regarding the development of your inner world (consciousness).
- 66) And you shall always know what you do and create, both in the day and at night so that you always bring everything to fulfilment and you can tell people of your kind (fellow human beings) what your deeds have been if they want to know.
- 67) You, as people of your kind (human beings), are the highest life form amongst all life forms, and therefore you are your own intercessor (counsellor) and the guardians over yourselves, over your thoughts and feelings and over your doings (deeds); and therefore it remains so until death approaches you and your spirit-body (spirit-form) and your inner world (consciousness) escapes your body in order to escape into the impalpable (realm of the other world) without tarrying (quickly).
- 68) Truly, the spirit-body (spirit-form) returns to its own world (sphere/level) of the impalpability in order to be reawakened (reincarnated/reborn) in a new body of people of your kind (human beings) at the time of



necessity.

- 69) Truly, you alone protect yourselves and rescue yourselves from the dangers (risks) in your existence, such as on the land, on the waters, amongst the rocks (mountains), in the air, in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets) when you go out everywhere to where you want, because there are none of the fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods who can vouchsafe protection for you and rescue you because whatever is unsubstantial and delusion of the brain can neither help nor rescue nor perform miracles (outstanding things); and consider that even if you secretly call on gods and tin gods and make supplications to them in disparaging submissiveness, or to people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as godheads or as envoys and representatives (substitutes) of gods and tin gods, then they can bring you neither help nor rescue, because they are fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods or people of your kind (human beings) and are powerless (incapable), therefore any help and rescue in any wise is only provided by yourselves and in your power.
- 70) Rescue yourselves through your own power from your tribulation and from all things that bring you misery and disaster, because there are neither gods nor tin gods who can liberate you from it, as well as no people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as gods or tin gods or as their envoys or representatives (substitutes), because truly, all power and all support (endeavour) lies in you yourselves.
- 71) And do not assume (regard) the true prophets to be gods or tin gods, or that they are their envoys or representatives (substitutes) who shall have might over you and sit in judgement over you so that you shall come to the heights (heaven) or to the underworld of the shadows (hell), because truly the prophets are neither judges nor executioners (enforcers), nor are there any heights (heaven) in which a godhead or a tin god carries his sceptre and keeps a paradise ready for you, neither an underworld of the shadows (hell) in which a devil performs his mischief and burns you (roasts you, etc.) in the fire; therefore if you believe in the heights (heaven) and the underworld of the shadows (hell) then you will only find both places in yourselves, in your status of the inner world (consciousness) and in your psyche and in your attitude (mentality); and truly, if you believe in the heights (heaven) and the underworld of the shadows (hell) then you are following the delusions of the false prophets who are giving you fallacious teachings and are lying to you so that you may split up into godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults); so you are confused and through false teachings you let others feel acts of Gewalt and bring them through coercion to wage battle (war), to sow hatred, revenge, retaliation and jealousy and hostility and to bring about destruction as well as threats (terror); and guard yourselves against the manifold signs of distortion (deception) of the false prophets, so that you do not understand them as the truth, but rather recognise them as lies and slander (calumny).
- 72) Therefore do not reject the truth, because only the real truth is truthliness, therefore you also comprehend (recognise and know) that the true prophets are not guardians over you, but are only bringers of good news with regard to the truth-teaching and of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); and therefore they are only warners for you by pointing out (revealing) as a warning to you the things of the near and far time to come (future) which you must improve and therefore change (alter) to the good so that you are not assailed by calamity; the true prophets do not state to you good things that will occur in the near or far time to come (future) so that you do not act wrongly and do not make good into bad; therefore the true prophets only reveal to you things of the near and far time to come (future) which are evil, bad and disastrous, so that you may strive to regret your wrong activities (deeds) and henceforth do everything rightfully so that the prophecy will not fulfil.
- 73) Truly, a certain time is set for every prophecy at which point it will be fulfilled when you do not do your best to avert the evil, the bad, the disastrous, so you or your descendants (children's children, etc.) will experience, that the true prophets rightfully foresee when they name things of the near and far time to come (future); and consider, you are not to equate a prophecy of the true prophets with a prediction that true prophets use for announcing to you things of the near and far time to come (future) which are sealed (unavoidable) and which you can do nothing to change.
- 74) And those amongst you who talk foolishly about the prophecies and about the prediction and the explanations of the true prophets, you bear the blame if the prophetic words of the prophets come true, because you mislead yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings) not to listen to the discerning words of the true prophets, so that you all together continue acting unrightfully and suggestively and forcefully bring about the evil, the bad, and the disastrous which the prophets proclaim (announce).
- 75) And those amongst you who listen to the words of those who mock the true prophets and their prophecies and predictions, turn yourselves away from them until they talk about something else and conduct a discussion of true discernment (rationality); and should the false prophets with their delusional teachings make you forget this, then do not sit together with the mockers and slanderers (calumniators) of the true prophets after remembering again, so that you do not find yourselves in difficulties with the truth through them.



- 76) Be at all times righteous ones (conscientious ones) and fair ones (responsible ones) and ever (always) bear your obligation (responsibility) so that you may take the way of the truth, of equitableness (fairness) and of virtue, so true love may fill you and peace and freedom may grow in your inner world (consciousness), so that consonance (harmony) may prevail in you and in your psyche, and you may altogether carry out all these exceptional (unusual) comprehensions (capabilities) in order to instruct people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 77) Those amongst you who are connected to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, remain amongst yourselves and leave those alone who only take the teaching as a game and a pastime, and are infatuated by the earthly life; but admonish them so that they do not fall more and more victim to Ausartung through what they are doing which is of unright and of unfairness (irresponsibility), because except for you they have neither helpers nor intercessors (counsellors) unless they turn to the truth-teaching and take it in (learn it); and truly, if they offer you a ransom (bribe) in order to liberate them from their truth-unknowledge and from their inequity (unfairness), as well as from their unaccountability (irresponsibility) and virtuelessness, because they are of the belief that you might be able to take their blame off them and make them into ones knowing of the truth, then do not accept it because it would be unrightful since you do not have the might to satisfy their wishes and hopes; if they do not liberate themselves from their untruth and inequity (unfairness) as well as unrighteousness (consciencelessness) by learning from the truth-teaching, then they are in themselves abandoned to ruin for their own actions of the evil and of the terrible things, so they feel the pain in themselves as if they had taken a gulp of boiling water and thereby inflict a painful punishment on themselves because they are turning away from the truth.
- 78) Truly, if you call upon gods and tin gods or people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as gods, none of whom are able either to benefit you or harm you, then you are taking the wrong way; therefore you shall turn around on your heels (turn away from your false belief) so that you rescue yourselves from all evil and from everything terrible and quickly leave it behind; do not allow yourselves to be lured away from the truth through evil and falsehood which you call the devil so that you do not fall into confusion, but heed (search out) companions in the country who will call you to right leadership (guidance) and will show (reveal) to you the way to the teaching of the truth, to the teaching of the spirit, to the teaching of the life so that you may adopt the right leadership (guidance) over yourselves, as is recommended to you through the truth-teaching, as you dedicate yourselves to your own true discernment (intellect) and create in yourselves peace and love as well as freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 79) You are recommended to be trustful in yourselves and confident that you can master from your own power whatever you touch (approach), because only in yourselves is all the power to act (energy) given that you always build up when you tackle (undertake) anything.
- 80) The primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) is truly the sole great wisdom (Creation), it itself is the truth, the one which created the firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds/planets) and the heavenly lights (celestial bodies), and therefore it is the all-timely living one (BEING) since the days when it created everything, and it will remain the all-timely living one (BEING) until the day when it once again lies in slumber in order to reawaken (become existent once again) at its time, which is determined to it in the greatness of time (all-great-time); and truly, the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) is solely the bearer and knower of all concealments and for people of your kind (human beings) it is the unmeasurable secret (the unfathomable/inscrutable), no matter how all-knowing you may be.
- 81) And since only the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) is the truth of all truth and is the unmeasurable secret (the unfathomable/inscrutable), so you are not able to make any illusions of it, as you cannot set any gods and tin gods next to it or people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up over you as gods or tin gods; therefore, however, if you think differently and if you turn to other things, like the false teachings of the false prophets, then you are living in obvious confusion.
- 82) Raise your eyes and let your eyes wander about, over the firmaments (universe), over the heavenly lights (celestial bodies) and over your earth, so that you see what the truth of the reality is that cannot be created by people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as gods or tin gods, and neither by gods and tin gods, all of whom are only fantasies of invented hazy pictures (delusions); keep yourselves far away from the fabulations (inventions) of false prophets who present illusions to you that are far from the truth and reality, so that you may count yourselves amongst the firm ones (strong ones) in the knowledge of the truth.
- 83) And if the night overshadows you (if you are befallen by unknowledge) then look for a light (knowledge) which rises in you so that you do not founder in the darkness of the night (in unknowledge).
- 84) And if you see the moon rise (how knowledge is unfolding), spreading out its light (knowledge), then follow the light (expand the knowledge) so that it no longer sets (no longer disappears), so you are rightly led and are not amongst those who have gone astray.
- 85) And if you see the sun rise (great knowledge), spreading out its beams (wisdom), then it is the greatest thing



that you can achieve and from which you form your unfolding (evolution), which no longer sets once you have created it in yourselves.

- 86) Truly, if you have created radiation (wisdom) and unfolding (evolution) in yourselves then you have no part (blame) in whatever the ones unknowing of the truth and unfair ones (irresponsible ones), the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and virtueless ones have done of evil and of terribleness of all kinds, just as you also have no part (blame) if they place fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods next to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), or people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as gods or tin gods or their envoys or representatives (substitutes).
- 87) Look and turn your face to the truth, to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) which alone is the truth of all truth and alone the greatness of wisdom (Creation), because it is the sole might over everything that exists in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets) as well as in the lights of the sky (firmament); therefore you may recognise (see) this truth and be upright in your knowledge of it, so that you rely solely upon the truth and do not place any gods or tin gods next to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), and also no people of your kind (human beings), because all of these are powerless (incapable) and cannot bring forth (create) any life.
- 88) And whether you are a clan (family), people who live nearby (neighbours), friends, companions, followers (acquaintances) or a people or several peoples, then do not fight with one another but be fair amongst one another and lead yourselves fairly so that love and peace be amongst all, as well as freedom and consonance (harmony), so that you are rightly led.
- 89) And do not fear those who wish to sow ill blood, discord and strife amongst you, rather stand at their side with good words and instruct (teach) them in peace, in equitableness (fairness) and in righteousness (conscientiousness) and in all things of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), so that they may follow the right way and refrain from their terrible doings; but be peaceful to them and do not foment hatred and unlove or revenge and retaliation in yourselves against them, because they are people of your kind (human beings) and require instruction and good leadership (guidance).
- 90) Therefore you shall not fear those either who set gods and tin gods or people of your kind (human beings) next to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), who believe themselves to be gods, because you have the authority to instruct them through the truth so that they may become thinking and knowing in the truth, and may find their right and their safety in the truth.
- 91) And if they become knowing (conscious) in the truth and in equitableness (fairness) and they do not mix these up with untruths and inequity (unfairness), then they will find their peace and be rightly led; and truly, the evidence for this will be given to them when they raise themselves up to the weight (the level) of ones knowing of the truth and become wise.
- 92) The laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) are given to you so that you may recognise and follow them and be led rightly in your existence, so that you may be creators of good things and also instruct (teach) your descendants, so that also your offspring (children's children, etc.) may be fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), supporters of the truth, of equitableness (fairness) and of virtues.
- 93) And all in the group of the few before you who were fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), as well as ones knowing of the truth, they were led (guided) by the 'Goblet of the Truth' which is the teaching of the prophets, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as is given through the truthfulness of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); therefore you are recommended to do the same as the group of the few before you who were your forefathers and foremothers and from whose lines you proceeded as their descendants (children's children, etc.).
- 94) And truly, those in the group of the few before you who were fair ones (responsible ones), righteous ones (conscientious ones) and ones knowing of the truth, they were all talented amongst people of your kind (human beings) through their own efforts and they followed the truth as also they awakened (encouraged) their brothers and sisters and their children and friends to the truth so that they led (guided) themselves on the right way.
- 95) Truly, that is the leadership (guidance) of the truth itself, so that all who turn to it take the right way out of themselves and do not pray to gods and tin gods and not to people of your kind (human beings) because doing this is an ineffective activity (fruitless/without success).
- 96) And truly, these few before you were the ones who comprehended (recognised) the teaching of the prophets as truth, and followed it and also protected the true prophethood; but those amongst you who, as far descendants (children's children, etc.), have seized the dominance over all evil and inequity (unfairness) as well as over unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and virtuelessness, you show those before you ingratitude



for what they have done for you, and therefore you only show ingratitude for what the prophets do for you who trustingly give you the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.

- 97) There are only few amongst you who are rightly led (guided) by the teaching of the prophets; and the true prophets who do not demand any payment from you for their care (favour/effort), not only do they teach you in modesty the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), but they teach it as an admonishment and sign-posting for all the mass of all people of your kind (humankind); and truly, the teaching of the prophets is no discipline (coercion) and does not bear in itself any Gewalt (terror), because heeding of (following of/integrating with) the teaching is given as unbiddenness (free will) so that everyone may decide for himself or herself whether he or she wants to integrate with it or not.
- 98) Truly, those amongst you, you do not appraise the truth and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life correctly if you think that it reveals nothing to you that you do not already know, because truly, you are inexperienced (unknowing) in the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and in the laws and recommendations of its appearance (nature), therefore a light (instruction) has to be set for you and a leadership (guidance) has to be given through the true prophets so that you become rightful in your thoughts and feelings and in your inner world (consciousness) and follow the way of the truth; and consider whether you treat the teaching of the prophets like a shred of cheap fabric (material/cloth) or whether you accept it as a valuable treasure, in this wise you show through your behaviour which attitude (mentality) you are the child of; truly, even if you attempt to conceal your attitude (mentality) then it can be seen (read) in your face, so you therefore cannot conceal (hide) what your attitude (mentality) is, so you earn yourselves honour or defilement from people of your kind (fellow human beings) depending on what your face reveals.
- 99) Truly, if you want to reveal yourselves in defilement then continue to enjoy your wrong doings and continue your vain and foolish prattle which marks (stamps) you as idiots (fools) until you finally allow true discernment (intellect) to come forth in you when you overcome your unintellect (dumbness) in yourselves and you deliberately (consciously) turn to the truth and the truth-teaching.
- 100) And truly, what is being announced to you through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and is being revealed to you through the true prophets is full of boon (prosperousness) and of what you shall follow and fulfil (master) through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); and therefore it is the teaching of the warning so that you shall not do things that are unrightful and not do things of lovelessness, virtuelessness and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), as you shall not perform bloody deeds (murder and manslaughter), not wage battles (wars) and not destroy the works (achievements) of people of your kind (human beings), just as you shall not give yourselves over to unpeace and unfreedom (bondage), dissonance (disharmony) and jealousy, nor hatred, persecution, strife or the pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation.
- 101) If you fabulate (invent) lies against the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) or claim that the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life has become obvious (recognisable) to you and claim that you have understood it although this does not correspond to the truth, then you are not only unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and liars, but also slanderers (calumniators); and if you commit such inequity (unfairness) and spread lies and slanders (calumnies) then you are malefactors (doers of misdeeds) and slanderers against the truth which you see in the maws (jaws) of death (unknowledge of the truth) from which hands are outstretched attempting to drag you into depravity; and truly if you allow yourselves to be dragged into the depravity of unknowledgeness of the truth then your reward is defilement because you say false things against the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and slander the truth, therefore you are turning yourselves away from the signs (evidence) of the truth with disdain.
- 102) Those amongst you who commit outrages against the truth, you are probably looking for the real truth, one after the other just as you move (bestir) yourselves to this, but you are not looking to the truth itself but to gods and tin gods and their servants (hands/helpers) as is erroneously taught to you by the false prophets of the untruth through godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults); truly, you who are looking for the real truth and nevertheless are following the fallacious teachings of false prophets, you can only find the truth if you have intercessors (counsellors) for you and you leave the false teachings behind yourselves; but by doing so do not assume (believe) that your intercessors (counsellors) for finding the real truth are intercessors (counsellors) of a god or tin god, because if they were such then they would continue to ensnare you in inequity (unfairness) and lie, in slander (calumny) and in unaccountability as well as in all things of unright; truly, intercessors (advisers) of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life do not proclaim to you lies and slanders (calumnies) of the truth by binding (linking) you to gods and tin gods, rather they teach you the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); if you do not listen to the intercessors (counsellors) of the true truth-teaching then you will be cut off from the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), so everything will



disappear from you which you assume (believe) to receive through the truth.

- 103) Truly, only the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) allow the seeds to germinate that you put (sow) into the earth so that the living in it may come forth, which you imagine (consider) to be dead but is only sleeping and has life within it which however thrives again and grows up to a new aliveness through moisture (wetness/water), therefore new life comes forth out of the apparent lifeless; learn from this that you also are a seed, so to speak, which is reawakened (rebirth of the spirit-form) after death through the spirit-body (spirit-form); truly, be connected to this teaching and do not let yourselves be turned away (restrained) from it for the sake of false teachings by false prophets.
- 104) Let the day break in you (start the search for the truth) so that you may escape from the rest (semi-consciousness) of the night (unknowledgeness of the truth) and the weak light (searching) of the moon (semi-consciousness), in order to show your deference to the sun (wisdom) so that you may make your studies of the teaching and take the necessary time for this.
- 105) And truly, the lights (celestial bodies) in the firmament are also created for you that you are able to maintain the right direction with their help in the day and in the night when you are going across the land and travelling over the waters (seas) or flying through the airs if this will be possible for you; truly, these signs (evidence) are presented down to the last detail for people of your kind (human beings) who have the knowledge of this.
- 106) And as you have proceeded from the earth through its sequence (process) of unfolding (development) from animated (organic) acidic waters (amino acids) and from the minutest creatures (microorganisms) and you have unfolded (developed) into people of your kind (human beings), so Earth is also given to you in order for you to have a dwelling and a place to stay on it until you raise yourselves into the airs and search for new earths (worlds/planets) in the firmaments (universe) as new homesteads; and truly, these signs (evidence) are presented down to the last detail for people of your kind (human beings), if you want to understand it, if you open your ears and are connected to your true discernment (intellect) by taking the teaching of the prophets as the real truth.
- 107) And truly, the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) decide (determine) everything according to its value, therefore also that you unfold (evolve) yourselves in the striving for knowledge and wisdom, so that you will one day explore (control) the appearance (nature) and make the waters (rain) fall from the clouds according to your will and all growth to be brought forth (formed) according to your wish (will); therefore, everything will blossom and thrive according to your will, and you will make rowed corn (cereals) and many other things sprout according to your consideration (discretion) when you change it in its nature (gene manipulation); therefore you will bring forth (create) growth (plants) of which you yourselves are the creators, which however can only prosper through the laws of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); and through your unfolding (evolution) you bring forth gardens in which many growths (plants) prosper, which are similar or unsimilar to one another, so that you have a wide variety of provision (food) from all parts of the world; truly these are signs (evidence) for all those amongst you who understand the truth.
- 108) But as you transform (manipulate the genes of) growths (plants) in their growing and their yield, as well as transforming (manipulating the genes of) animals and other creatures and you modify (breed) them, then you cannot raise yourselves up as gods and tin gods or place yourselves at the side of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), because it alone is given the might to create out of itself created creations (creatures/creations/life forms) of all species and forms; people of your kind (human beings), however, are created creations (creations) of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), therefore you are integrated into its laws and recommendations, so you can only bring forth (create) new created creations (creatures/creations/life forms) and growths (plants) through transformation (gene manipulation) and change (breeding) as is permitted to you through the laws of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation).
- 109) Do not be presumptuous and do not regard yourselves as rivals of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), because no matter how knowing (conscious) and wise you may be, you as people of your kind (human beings) can never be equal to it; through its laws and recommendations, you have come forth from the earth as people of your kind (human beings); but do not impute to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) any sons or any daughters in your unknowledge, because it is sublime (superior) over having other mights next to itself, except itself.
- 110) The primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) is the sole and unaccompanied creator of all firmaments (universe) and earths (worlds/planets) and lights (celestial bodies) in the firmament, and therefore of all vitalities (life forms/existence), therefore how should it have sons and daughters as it has no companion and created everything alone and is knowing (conscious) of all things?
- 111) And truly, the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) is the sole might of all presence (existence) in the firmaments (universe) of all earths (worlds/planets) and lights (celestial bodies) in the firmament, as well as of all things over which it is the guardian.



- 112) The eyesight of people of your kind (human beings) cannot reach the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) in its value (power) of its invisible spirit-body (invisible spirituality/spirit-energy), but you can see its creation in the appearance (nature) and in the firmaments (universe) as well as on the earths (worlds/planets) and in the lights (celestial bodies) of the firmament, therefore it, which is uncomprehensible to you, reaches you with its fullness.
- 113) Through the firmaments (universe) and through the earths (worlds/planets), and also through the appearance (nature), through all created creations (life forms) and all things, you are given visible evidence of the presence (existence) of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); and whoever amongst you sees and comprehends (recognises) them, it is to their own benefit; but whoever is blind (does not see, i.e. recognise the evidence) this is to their own disadvantage because they do not recognise themselves as guardians over what has been given to them through the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and has been entrusted for protection and preservation.
- 114) If you heed all the manifold signs (unsurpassabilities) in the appearance (nature), then you will comprehend (recognise) the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) so that you will learn to interpret them and to make them clear to yourselves of what importance they are for people of your kind (human beings) and for the existence, so that you may know about the real truth and no longer go into confusion.
- 115) Follow what is revealed to you by the signs (unsurpassabilities) of the appearance (nature) so you comprehend (recognise) that there are no gods or tin gods and no people of your kind (human beings) who could accomplish such miracles (outstanding things) as the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) does and presents (gives) to you as a gift of love; therefore turn yourselves away from gods and tin gods and people of your kind who raise themselves up as gods or servants of gods or servants of tin gods and lead you into the delusion and servitude (bondage) of godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults).
- 116) Servants of gods and servants of tin gods compel your power to act (will) so that you fall prey to a belief (assumptions) in gods or tin gods and place these gods and tin gods at the side of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); but heed the truth that you shall be guardians of the real truth and watchers thereover that the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life keeps out all untruth and inequity (unfairness), all unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and dissonance (disharmony) from the world so that true love and peace shall prevail amongst all you people of your kind (humankind), as well as freedom and consonance (harmony), so that all hatred, all jealousy and all strife, all outrage (torture/Gewalt/coercion), all bloody deeds (murder in any form), all battles (war) and all pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation may also disappear (vanish), just like destruction, lying, deceit, slander (calumny), misdeeds and defilement (crime)
- 117) And do not vilify (humiliate) those who call on (search for) the truth and fight against it in doing so without knowledge (unknowingly) because they do not know how to come in contact with it on the right way and therefore do wrong things; therefore you shall be guides and intercessors (counsellors) to them so that they appear pleased towards the truth, find the right way and understand the truth-teaching and all its things; and if you do this then they will proclaim to you the prosperousness (success) of their learning and they will be thankful to you and announce to you what efforts they have made.
- 118) Do not swear a solemn oath on yourselves or on gods or tin gods that signs (evidence) should come to you which are favourable (pleasing) for you and which you want to believe in if they would appear to you, because truly if you do this then you are swearing an oath against the truth because you cannot understand it; true signs (evidence) are only with the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and with its appearance (nature), as well as with the true prophets who bring you the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation).
- 119) And do not confuse your inner world (consciousness) and your eyes through false signs (false evidence) from false prophets who want to convert (proselytise) you to their fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods through lying and deceptive pictures (delusions of the brain), as their priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods also do.
- 120) And be certain (knowing) that neither gods nor tin gods – because after all they all are only fabrications (inventions) of people of your kind (human beings) – send down to you rescuing liberators (angels) in order to bring you salvation (redemption) from your missteps (blame/unvirtues/offences) and vices and in order to wake the dead, because truly these are only lying words of enticement, without content of reality, which are only intended to make you fall prey to the belief (assumptions) in the hazy pictures (fantasies) which are presented to you as an illusion.
- 121) Therefore you cannot meet any liberator (angel) who saves you face-to-face, rather you can only see images of the delusions of the inner world (consciousness) if you go astray in it (have delusions), but this happens to you through the unknowledgeness of the truth because you devote yourselves to the belief (assumptions) in



fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods, and because you also believe in their fabulated (invented) rescuing liberators (angels) and demons.

- 122) Truly, as you believe in gods and demons as well as in liberators (angels) and venerable ones (holy ones) and in the evil of your kind (personified devil), then you do this in unknowledgeness of the real truth of the true presence (existence) of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) which in its consonance (harmony) and neutrality creates neither good nor evil, therefore such doings are solely in the might and in the reflection and striving of people of your kind (human beings), as you perform it (carry out) according to your free will.
- 123) And truly, as those amongst you who have your free will and act according to it, so you create in your rows, according to free will, a picture of enmity against the true prophets as well, thus you are the personified devilishness against them; and you make flaunting (pretentious) speeches against them amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings) which are lies and deception and slander (calumny), and you act as if the true prophets were wanting to influence your will through coercion with the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so you truly go forth in your fabulated (invented) lies and slanders (calumnies) and sow lies and unpeace against them.
- 124) And so that those amongst you, who do not open their ears to your words of lying and slander (calumny), shall fall in bondage to your words, you fabulate (invent) all kinds of false signs (false evidence) so that the ones to whom you are lying shall find pleasure in this, so that you can gain (rob) from them all that they acquire (earn) such as gold and possessions.
- 125) But truly, if you are amongst those who are evildoers and unfair ones and are connected to those who deceive the fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), then you will find no other judges than those who administer punishment to you in a fair (responsible) wise, so they lead you to places of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded places/isolated islands) where you shall stay for a time during which you turn yourselves away from unfair (irresponsible) and unrighteous (conscienceless) things.
- 126) Do not be doubters in these things, because it is the truth, but if you doubt it and do unfair things (irresponsible things) and unrighteous things (conscienceless things) and evil, so you will have to carry this burden because you will be called to account.
- 127) The laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) are fulfilled in truth and equitableness (fairness), and as people of your kind (human beings) you cannot change one speck of dust of a weight of them.
- 128) And if you follow the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), then you are knowing ones and wise ones; those of you, however, who follow the majority of those who are on Earth and are dismissive of the laws and recommendations, they are leading (guiding) themselves into delusion and are going forth on the wrong way, following a hazy picture (delusion) and lying against the truth and slandering (calumniating) it.
- 129) Truly, when you are of open sense, then you will very well recognise those who are not treading the right way of the truth and are straying from one terrible thing to the next and from one inequity (unfairness) to another, and are keeping themselves at arm's length from the rightly led ones.
- 130) And when you are eating and drinking, consider that everything is given to you because everything only prospers and grows through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), and that your existence also is integrated in this and you only breathe because it is regulated (determined) through the primal (creative) rights of the laws (principles).
- 131) And truly, you have no reason not to eat and drink of everything that is given to you through the appearance (nature) of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), excepting that which is inedible and poisonous to you; and therefore do not allow food and drink to be banned to you through coercion by worshippers of gods and worshippers of tin gods, and neither by priests and false prophets and the like, if it tastes good to you and serves for your provision (food); and truly, there are very many amongst you who pray to gods and tin gods and lie that you are not allowed to eat and drink of this and that because it is unclean, but do not open your ears to them because they are only lying and wallowing in their evil cravings of their might over you, and therefore they are wallowing in their lies through a lack of knowledge with regard to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) by making themselves guilty of infringement of the laws of the primal power (Creation).
- 132) And do not eat and drink and acquire anything that has been stolen and is offered to you, because truly it is unrightful to do so; also, do not buy anything that is stolen in order to offer it to others again in return for gain (dealing in stolen goods), because this is also unrightful; therefore do not allow yourselves to be ensnared in deeds of unright when false friends tell you to do so; and therefore do not fight with them regarding stolen goods either, but keep yourselves away both from the unright goods and from the false friends, because if you listen to them then you will fall into unright and do unrightful deeds, and your reward will be shameful.
- 133) And avoid obvious infamous actions (crimes) and outrages (deeds of Gewalt) as well as clandestine ones,



because truly whoever commits infamous actions (crimes) and outrages (actions of Gewalt) will receive a poor reward for it.

- 134) And do not lend your ear to practitioners of suggestive spells and acts (magicians) who lie that they could return to life what is dead through the activities of the shadow world (activities of hell/magic), because truly suggestive trickery (magic) and activities of the shadow world (activities of hell/magic) are merely delusion and pretence (deception) against you if you consider it to be the truth, because whatever is dead cannot be brought back to life again; therefore none are able to walk amongst you who were dead; but whoever insists on (claims) something different is one who is chained in the blackest darkness of the lie and is unable to come forth from it (unable to liberate oneself); truly, whatever they do in terms of suggestive trickery (magic) and activities of the shadow world (activities of hell/magic) and whatever they say about it is lies and deception and only serves them to appear pleasant towards you (to enjoy a high standing).
- 135) Truly, there is neither suggestive trickery (magic) nor activities of the shadow world (activities of hell/magic), because all this is merely lying and deception and acts of trickery (legerdemain), like everything that requires suggestive sayings (magic formulas).
- 136) Wherever you may go, over land, in any place and in any town, everywhere you will find impostors who boast of suggestive trickery (magic) and of activities of the shadow world (activities of hell/magic), but do not open your ears to them because everything is merely an illusion of the insubstantial and hallucinations (delusional constructions) in order to exploit you and to make you believe that inexplicable (supernatural) things exist which might bring you harm if you are not connected to the practitioners of suggestive spells and acts (magicians) and do not give them a high payment.
- 137) Do not allow yourselves to be deceived by practitioners of suggestive spells and acts (magicians) so that you do not live in total darkness in your thoughts and feelings and in your inner world (consciousness) and forge intrigues (guilefulness) yourselves in order to deceive others through suggestive trickery (magic); truly, if you do such things then you are merely forging intrigues (guilefulness) against yourselves, which you do not notice however because you are caught in yourselves through forging your own intrigues (guilefulness).
- 138) Truly, only the truth is the smith of all irrefutability (rightness/reality/flawlessness/realness/truthfulness), and if you receive a sign (evidence of the truth) of the real truth, then open yourselves to it and comprehend (recognise) what realities you are receiving so that you may know what you must begin with the truth, so you can pass on the message of truth to people of your kind (the next ones); but if people of your kind (human beings) do not want to accept your message then do not allow yourselves to be suppressed by them, and therefore show no submissiveness if they forge intrigues (guilefulness) against you.
- 139) You shall be strong and guide (lead) yourselves so that you broaden (open) your breast (feelings) for the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so that you accept the truth and do not fall into delusion, because if you make your breast (feelings) narrow (you close your feelings) for the truth, then you cannot rise into the insight (firmament/height) of all cognition (wisdom), because you impose affliction (danger) on yourselves and are unknowing ones in the truth.
- 140) Consider that the real truth is the way of the life, the straight way which is right; and only the truth presents to you the signs (evidence) of its reality so that you can consider (heed) them.
- 141) In yourselves is the dwelling of peace, of love and of freedom as well as of consonance (harmony) determined in all truth, so that you make all of these high values to your united (confidential) friend, with which you determine your deeds.
- 142) Truly, if you gather as righteous ones (conscientious ones) and fair ones (responsible ones) with people of your kind (fellow human beings) then search out those amongst you who are not dependent on infamous actions (crimes), inequity (unfairness) and unaccountability (consciencelessness), rather search out people of your kind (fellow human beings) as friends so that you may enjoy advantages (benefits) from one another in uprightness and dignity, and determine a lasting friendship at the end of the period of gathering.
- 143) Your dwelling place shall not be the fire of a shadow world (hell) in yourselves, but instead a garden of joy and love, of peace, of freedom and consonance (harmony), and you shall stay in it and be full of happiness.
- 144) Never place malefactors (doers of Gewalt) and shameful ones and other unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) above yourselves in order to lead (guide) you, rather be your own leaders (guides) in righteousness (conscientiousness), in equitableness (fairness) and dignity in order that it may go well with you.
- 145) Truly, the true prophets have come to you since time immemorial, come forth from your midst, to teach you the signs (evidence) of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and proclaim to you and warn you of the unrightful doings you shall not do so that you will not be brought to account one day for misdeeds and outrages (acts of Gewalt) and so that you allow love to awaken in you, creating freedom and peace and consonance (harmony) in you and connecting you to equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness).



- 146) Do not bear witness in unright against yourselves, so you do not deceive your life on Earth, and neither give false testimony (false oath) against the real truth and do not become unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) so that you do not have to be ashamed of yourselves.
- 147) Do not harbour enmity against yourselves, and also not against others who have different skin colours and languages as well as different customs from you, or who have fallen prey to a belief (assumptions) in gods or tin gods, and therefore do not wage battle (war) against them either, so you do not destroy their cities and hamlets (villages) or kill (murder) people of your kind (fellow human beings); and this shall be so irrespective of whether you warn or threaten the inhabitants of the towns in advance, because it is not rightful to harbour enmity against people of your kind (human beings) to wage battle (war) and to wreak destruction.
- 148) Heed yourselves to be fair ones (responsible ones), so that you are not out to condemn others for any sort of reasons that may be convenient for you, do not cause them harm or kill them in order to rob their possessions or destroy them; consider that all people of your kind (human beings) are on different steps (levels) of unfolding (evolution), so that some are further along than others and some are believers in gods and tin gods, in liberators (angels) and demons, whereas others are connected to the real truth; and therefore you cannot assess people of your kind (human beings) according to these things with regard to their being of your kind (being equal to you); and truly, you are all different from one another according to your doings, therefore you cannot oversee (assess) all people of your kind (human kind), but only one or another as you cannot consider (assess) an entire people according to the deeds of an individual or a collective (group).
- 149) Truly, you are the master over yourselves in all things, so you are self-sufficient ones and create for yourselves benevolence or malevolence; if you want, you can take away everything from yourselves that is of love, of peace, of freedom and of consonance (harmony), or on the other hand you can allow true love and freedom and consonance (harmony) as well as true peace to prosper in the place of your inner nature according to your preference; and therefore you can do the same for your descendants if you instruct (teach) them in one or another wise.
- 150) Truly, what you promise yourselves will happen for you, and you cannot thwart (prevent) it because your power to act (will) is your kingdom of heaven.
- 151) Act both alone (individually) and together as a people according to good ability with regard to the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) so that others will not act against you according to bad ability, therefore consider that your final reward will always be in accordance with how you acted in good or bad ability; therefore it will go well for the fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), and it will go badly for the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) because they will be called to account in punishment.
- 152) And do not allow fruits of the field to grow and livestock to be raised (bred) in order to be misused as sacrificial offerings to gods or tin gods because you fallaciously believe that it would bring you advantage (benefit) or placate the gods and tin gods; but truly, neither your prayers (invocations/edifications) nor your supplications, nor your offerings (sacrifices) reach the gods and tin gods because these are mere unsubstantial figures of delusion (illusions) which can neither bring you goodness nor evil; consider that only the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) with its laws and recommendations and its appearance (nature) is truth and reality, therefore you are making a terrible decision (conclusion) if you believe in gods and tin gods.
- 153) Truly, since long before you (time immemorial), you have been led astray by the false teachings of false prophets and by priests and all kinds of servants (hands/helpers) who pray to gods and tin gods and bring down calamities upon you; therefore, many of the priests, of the servants of gods and servants of tin gods have made the killing of your children and also of people of your kind (adults) appear as pleasing to you so that you become depraved and your belief in the gods and tin gods confuses you; and they do it so that you may be debased (made dependent) and subjugated (placed in bondage) by the false prophets and priests as well as by the leaders of the godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) and exploited by them; and they rob you of your goods and chattels as well as of your riches, at the same time as also outraging (committing torture and murder) on your blood, body and life and fulfilling (gratifying) their ausgeartet libidinous lustfulness (sexual Ausartung) on you and on your children in secret; and they lie that all these terrible things are pleasing to their gods and tin gods so that they can coerce everything from you and from your children that they want; and if their nefarious activity (villainy) is openly (publicly) cried out (known) amongst you then they deny it or fabulate (allege) that you and your children wanted it; truly, it is particularly heinous (villainous) to defile (sexually misuse) children through libidinous lustfulness, therefore everyone, man and woman, shall be brought to account for this through severe punishment.
- 154) And the false prophets and servants of gods and servants of tin gods lie to you that one or another domesticated animal or game animal as well as other creatures, fruits of the forest, fruits of the water, garden fruits and fruits of the field are forbidden to you so that you should not eat and drink of them, but truly everything is allowed to you for your provision (food) which is edible and drinkable for you and is good, if



you do not take any harm from it; such forbidding, as is taught to you by the false prophets, priests, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, is in truth only a lie and fabulated (invented) machinations in order to lead you astray and to strike you down into servitude (bondage) of belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods.

- 155) And do not be foolish and do not open your true discernment (intellect) to the lies of the false prophets, to the priests, the servants of gods and servants of tin gods who deceive you and say that what is flesh of this or another animal and of this or another creature shall be exclusively reserved for the man and forbidden for the woman, or that it is exclusively reserved for the woman and forbidden for the man; truly, such assertions are lies against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and of its appearance (nature), because all things that prosper, grow and live through the appearance (nature), so also all animals and other creatures and all the things that belong to them are equally given for the woman and for the man so that equitableness (fairness) shall prevail in all things for people of your kind (human beings) of both kinds (gender).
- 156) Truly, it is heinous (villainous) to kill children, whether out of unknowledgeness, out of jealousy or revenge, out of hatred or rage, in strife or on any grounds whatsoever, because the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) do not allow the killing of children, and neither the killing of those who have grown out of youth (grown up), except if it is in defence in extremis (self-defence) and no other possibility of defence (self-defence) is given; therefore you shall not overstep the bounds (limits) of defence in extremis (self-defence) and you shall not bring it about intentionally (consciously), so that you will not be called to account (punished).
- 157) And domesticated animals have come forth for you from the appearance (nature) through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), created in pairs, male and female, such as sheep and goats, horses and camels, and therefore also cattle, cats and dogs and poultry of various forms, so that they may be useful for you in work and as protection, as well as that you may feed yourselves from them; and nothing is forbidden to you as your provision (food) therefore you shall not lend your ears to the lies that people of your kind (human beings) concoct (hatch) against the truth namely that you shall not eat from this and that, because consider that those who are lying to you are without knowledge and merely want to lead you into confusion, both you alone and all people.
- 158) You will find nothing in what is obvious (recognisable) to you through the truth that is forbidden as food and drink, except for animals that are sick and perished or spilled blood which is unclean (slimy/bad) and no longer edible; and no flesh, no blood and no lard (fat) of any animals and other creatures is truly unclean (slimy/bad) unless it is dangerous for you because of noxiousness (toxicity); therefore it is permitted to you to eat all the flesh and all the blood and all lard (fat) of domesticated animals, poultry and game without exception so that you do not have to starve for want of provision (food); and you are permitted to eat all creatures and all animals as your provision (food) which have claws and shoes (hooves) on their feet, toes, claws and skin, and therefore you are allowed everything that crawls and flies and search out all innoxious things (non-toxic things) as drink and wine and other fermented juices providing you enjoy it in right measure, so that you do not fall prey to drunkenness.
- 159) And if the unfair ones (irresponsible ones), the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and believers in gods and believers in tin gods accuse (denounce) you of lying, that, on the contrary, you are not allowed to eat and drink of this and that, then tell them that it is a complete lie and that those turn away rigorously from the truth, who are lying in such a wise and are leading you and the entire people astray and wanting to make you guilty against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation).
- 160) And consider those who want to lead you into confusion and who place gods and tin gods at the side of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), they are committing their defilement in vain because the wisdom of all wisdom (Creation) cannot have any gods and tin gods placed next to it, neither any people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as gods or tin gods, because it is itself the highest heightening (sublimity) above everything else in its all-embracing wisdom; therefore not even your fore-fathers and fore-mothers (fore-fathers/foremothers before them) and your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) could place any gods or tin gods or any people of your kind (human beings) next to the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), just as you cannot either, because in your lowliness you are by no means of its kind, therefore you cannot illicitly place gods and tin gods or people of your kind (human beings) next to it; however, if you dare in the presumptuousness of a belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods and people of your kind (human beings) to place these at the side of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) by praying to your gods and tin gods and people of your kind (human beings) instead of being connected to it, then you are deceiving yourselves and committing an outrage against the truth.
- 161) And if you commit an outrage against the truth, then you are doing the same as those before you did, because truly, if you do the same as your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) did, then you also curse the true prophets and accuse them of falseness (deviousness) so they get to taste your strictness and inequity



(unfairness); and if you do such things then you truly do not have any truthly knowledge that could come forth in you, because you are only following a deception (delusion) and are merely lying.

- 162) And the convincing evidence that you are behaving in this way is given in that you blame the true prophets of lying and slander (calumny) and attempt to kill them so that they shall be silent and shall not announce the truth; and if it were down to your strivings then you would force them to say what you want to hear and to act only according to your convenience (will); but the true prophets do not allow themselves to be threatened (frightened) through your embitterment (tormenting), but continue to strive to lead (guide) you rightly.
- 163) And if you slander (calumniate) the true prophets and accuse them of dishonesty and false teaching, and claim that their teaching of the truth, their teaching of the spirit, their teaching of the life is forbidden through the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), then provide evidence and witnesses for this, but you cannot do this because if you bring forth evidence against the truth then it is full of lies, since there is no evidence against the truth; and if you bring witnesses against the truth, then they are making a false testimony (false oath) against the truth and thereby bear witness themselves that they are speaking a false testimony (false oath) and only following the cravings of those who are lying against the signs (evidence) of the truth and believe it to be machinations of unfairness (irresponsibility), because they equate the real truth with evil in their limitedness (unintellect).
- 164) But listen to what the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) teaches and what is to be presented to you so that you may understand what is rightful and what is unrightful; you shall not place anything at the side of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), and you shall also honour your parents and do good things to them; and you shall not kill your children, not out of poverty, not in strife, not out of jealousy, not out of revenge and retaliation, not because you are waging battles (wars), and not either because you would prefer to have sons rather than daughters or would prefer to have daughters rather than sons, also not from any reasons whatever they may be, rather look after them rightfully as you also look after yourselves; and you shall not approach the terrible (do nothing terrible) whether it is open (public) or concealed; and you shall not either kill any other life of people of your kind (human beings), because life is made through the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) such that it shall be inviolable by people of your kind (human beings) except through the right, when demanded by defence in extremis (self-defence) because you must protect your life; and killing people of your kind (human beings) is not permitted to you either through battle (war) or through a judgement of the authority or the jurisdiction, or through a kangaroo court (revenge) or through a law of honour created by people of your kind (human beings), because such killing is Ausartung against all laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); this is what is recommended to you so that you may understand it.
- 165) And do not approach the possessions of orphans (do not appropriate for yourselves the possessions of orphans) except if you are using the possessions for the best outcome of the orphans until they have grown out of youth (come of age) and can themselves determine (decide) over the possessions; and if you sell anything then give full measure and weight in equitableness (approval/fairness); and do not impose on people of your kind (fellow human beings) more (do not demand more) than they are able to bear (pay), and this shall apply in commerce as well as in true discernment (intellect) and with regard to admonishment (conscience); and when you make a judgement then practise equitableness (fairness) so that no-one is advantaged and no-one disadvantaged, even if it is someone from your own clan (family), from your relatives or from your friends; and you shall always retain the bond (agreement) with the truth so that you may always be admonished and may take the right way.
- 166) Learn everything of the teaching of the true prophets and go forth and announce that this is the true way, the straight one, the right one; follow this way and not the other paths so that you are not led far astray by them into the darkness of inequity (unfairness) and unknowledgeness of the truth; this is what is recommended to you through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) so that you enable yourselves to protect yourselves from evil.
- 167) And again: You receive the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life through the true prophets so that you may fulfil it and gain goodness for yourselves when you do good deeds; learn from the teaching of the prophets about the clarity of all things and form from it the leadership (guidance) for your life, so that you may always recognise the truth in all things and at all times, whether you meet it by day or in the night.
- 168) And truly, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is full of boon (prosperousness) and fullness (gain), when you strive to follow it and you guard yourselves against doing things that are evil, unfair (irresponsible), unrighteous (conscienceless) and unrightful; and if you follow the truth then you are creating benevolence for yourselves, and therefore you find in yourselves true love and consonance (harmony) as well as peace and freedom.
- 169) The teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is given to you today as it was also



given to all peoples before you, but like those before you also say that you indeed had no tidings of its explanation, but truly these tidings have been given to you therefore you only have to strive to understand it.

- 170) The truth-teaching is given to you as already to your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears), but like those before you, you do not want to have yourselves led (guided) better through it; however, the true prophets give you today a clear proof of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) through their teaching, so that you may finally understand it and follow the truth.
- 171) However, you are unfair and reject the signs (evidence) of the truth and turn yourselves away from it; but those amongst you who turn yourselves away from the signs (evidence), you will have a miserable existence and will serve yourselves with punishment in return because you will not find any true love or freedom or any peace or consonance (harmony) in yourselves.
- 172) Do not wait for liberators (angels) to come down from gods or tin gods to bring you help if you supplicate and wail to them, because they are without truth (forms invented by lies), which cannot give any signs (evidence).
- 173) And if signs (apparent evidence) happen which you demand through your belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods, then the signs (apparent evidence) are only hallucinations (delusional constructions) that you form as pictures of deception (delusions of the brain) through the might of your inner world (consciousness); therefore your belief in gods and tin gods serves you no purpose, because as fabulated (invented) insubstantialities, they bring you neither disadvantage (loss/damage) nor advantage (benefit).
- 174) And truly, if you are split (not firm) in the truth, then you easily fall away from it and turn yourselves to a belief (assumptions), so you fall prey to godlinesses (religions) or sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) and no longer have anything to do with the real truth.
- 175) And if you are far from the truth and unfamiliar with it, then the untruth announces itself in you and you fall prey to everything that is unrightful, of unright, of unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and virtuelessness.
- 176) Therefore take heed that you turn to the truth and do good deeds, because these will be rewarded to you tenfold; if, however, you perpetrate evil deeds then you will receive the same reward in evil and suffer under its unright.
- 177) See, the true prophets walk on the right and straight way which is given by the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), and truly, they are the upright ones who do not pray to any gods or tin gods or any people of your kind (human beings), and do not let themselves be subjugated (placed in bondage).
- 178) The true prophets have no-one next to them to whom they bow or pray, instead they are surrounded by true friends, by man and woman and child, who recognise (see) their love and kindheartedness to all created creations (life forms) and try to do the same as them, as they are the ones who follow the true prophets on the right and straight way and do not allow themselves to be led into confusion through the false teachings of false prophets, priests and all the servants of gods and servants of tin gods.
- 179) Truly, no other truth can be sought except for the real truth which is given through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation) and through its appearance (nature).
- 180) And no-one amongst you and no other created creation (life form) can act without the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation); therefore none of you can act against or in favour of themselves or against or in favour of others because everything is directed (regulated) through the laws and recommendations so that a distinct condition (cause) brings about a distinct decision (effect = cause and effect).
- 181) And see, the true prophets instruct you in these things because you are disunited in yourselves and amongst one another, so that you may become knowing (conscious) and wise and that it may go well with you by you heeding and following the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation).
- 182) And know that the true prophets are their own successors after their passing away (dying), always as new personalities, who are above you in knowledge and in wisdom with regard to the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all vitalities (Creation), but nevertheless they are modest and do not place themselves at higher levels above you, so they put themselves on an equal footing with you and do not demand any privileges over you, therefore they are people of your kind (human beings) in every wise in modesty and put themselves on an equal level with you.





Chapter 7

- 1) This is the «Goblet of the Truth», which is the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life given through the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) and the wellspring of the love (Creation); allow yourselves to be led (guided) by the teaching which is also the teaching of the prophets who teach you so that no trepidation may arise in your breast (feelings) and so that you may be warned as an admonishment so that you do not do unrightful things.
- 2) Follow what has been given to you through the truth-teaching, and do not follow any other protector than the real truth; how little you are mindful of this (how little you think about it).
- 3) Remember what has gone before (the past), because you have destroyed so many cities and killed (murdered) the inhabitants out of revenge, hatred, jealousy and enmity when you fell upon them by day or in the night whilst they were sleeping; and truly, you also do the same today because you have not freed yourselves from your unright; and those amongst you who have freed themselves from it, you have contempt for them and you accuse them of chickenheartedness (cowardice) when they protect their lives and people of their kind (family members), because you want them to be people of your kind (people just like you) so that they join you in killing and destruction.
- 4) However, if you are called to account for your outrage (murdering and destruction, etc.), then you yourselves fall prey to chickenheartedness (cowardice) and you bewail yourselves and make supplications for undeserved mercy in false remorse; but then, if equitableness (fairness) catches up to you, feign realisation of your infamous actions (crimes) and admit that you are malefactors (lawbreakers), but because your remorse is only a game you will continue your outrages (lawbreaking activities) unless you are brought to fair (commensurate) punishment and sent to a place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island or secluded place) for a certain period of time.
- 5) Truly, all those who are outrageous (breaking the law) will be brought to account, and if it is not through the law of condition (cause) and decision (effect = cause and effect) of the wellspring of the love (Creation) then it will be through the jurisdiction and its laws which you have conceived (created) as people of your kind (human beings).
- 6) And the laws conceived (created) by you will be implemented by your jurisdiction and authority because they are ever present and never absent when they have to condemn you; and they also will enumerate your actions to you which you have committed with knowledge and thereby infringed the law, so you will be judged according to your actions and sent for punishment.
- 7) And the weighing (assessing) of your actions will be conducted truly harshly by your jurisdiction or authority, because everything will be put into the scales of equitableness (fairness) and will amount to a great weight because nothing will be left out that you have done in unright and infamous actions (crimes).
- 8) And truly, there are many amongst you who have your own scales for yourselves which drag you down under because of their weight, because your lovelessness and unfreedom (bondage) in you as well as your dissonance (disharmony) and your own unpeace as well as your chickenheartedness (cowardice) weigh so heavily that you cannot free yourselves from them, because you constantly commit misdemeanours against the signs (teaching/ evidence) of the truth.
- 9) A dwelling has been given to you on Earth through the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), as has the land, so that you may build on it and thereby create the means for your welfare, but you defile your dwelling and the land because you are ungrateful; and in your ungratefulness you are presumptuous and you assume (believe) that you may place yourselves next to the wellspring of the love (Creation).
- 10) You are created from the appearance (nature) of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), and it is from the appearance (nature) that your form has also come forth, however also your freedom (autonomy) so that you are independent in your determinations (decisions) and in your power to act (will) and you do not have to submit yourselves to the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) if you do not strive to do so; but consider in this that even if you have your free determination (decision) and your free power to act (will), you are nevertheless integrated into the activity of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), therefore your actions bring forth distinct decisions (effects) (law of cause and effect).
- 11) And as you are not coerced to submit yourselves to the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) therefore you can always act according to free determination (decision) and in free power to act (will), so you shall not submit yourselves to people of your kind (human beings) either, and not to baseless (supposed/made up) gods and tin gods or liberators (angels).
- 12) You shall always prevent yourselves from submitting yourselves because ample freedom has been given to you in all things and for your life and everything that is in it, therefore it is beneath your dignity for you to submit



yourselves whether it be submission to someone of your kind (human being), to a fabulated (invented) god, tin god, liberator (angel), venerable one (holy one) or to anything else.

- 13) Consider that in your freedom (autonomy) you are always better than those who demand submission from you; therefore you shall heed your freedom and keep it for always.
- 14) And do not believe in false prophets and false believers, who bind themselves to gods and tin gods and believe that they have been created by the same from fire (breath) or from loam, because everything is only lying and slander (calumny), because you have been created from the earth and its appearance (nature) through its cycle (processes) of unfolding (evolution) from which animated (organic) acids (amino acids) were created and from which the minutest creatures (micro-organisms), and truly people of your kind (human beings) came about from that.
- 15) Therefore do not be slimily subservient and assume (believe) that you have come forth from the fire (breath) of a god or tin god or through its might and kindheartedness from loam; truly, it is not appropriate to open your ears to this delusional teaching, and if you do so nevertheless then you are making yourselves into abased ones who are bound to (dependent on) fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods.
- 16) Allow yourselves only to see the truth, to accept it and to live with it so that you do not need to demand deferment in order to understand the truth.
- 17) And truly, if you follow the truth, then you are not lost, therefore you do not condemn yourselves either to having unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) lying in wait for you, who certainly want to lead you away from the straight way of the truth.
- 18) If you observe people of your kind (fellow human beings) who have done evil and unfair things (irresponsible things) to you, then do not wish them evil and unfair things (irresponsible things) from all sides, but forgive them even if you find the majority of them are not grateful for it.
- 19) And if people of your kind (fellow human beings) do evil and unfair things (irresponsible things) to you and are unrighteous (conscienceless) towards you, then do not disdain them and do not push them away, but do not do as they do so that you do not create a shadow world (hell) in yourselves that you fill with unright, with evil and with unrighteousness (consciencelessness).
- 20) You people of your kind (human being), man and woman, dwell in a garden of peace and love, of freedom and of consonance (harmony), which you create in yourselves, and eat from all the good fruits thereof, wherever and whenever you wish; however, do not create in yourselves a garden in which fruits of lovelessness, of unpeace, of dissonance (disharmony), of unfreedom (bondage) grow as well as trees (conditions) of inequity (unfairness).
- 21) Always consider that many amongst you are unfair ones (irresponsible ones), unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and virtueless ones, and they are always concerned to whisper evil to you and to plant a tree (condition) of shame in you so that you will be ashamed to liberate yourselves from unright and evil, and so that you assume that the truth is forbidden to you so that you do not become fair ones (responsible ones), righteous ones (conscientious ones) and not full of virtues; and those who do evil and who are unfair ones (irresponsible ones), they are companions of the false prophets and other false teachers, of the priests, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, who present you the illusion that you are protected by liberators (angels) and that you will have eternal life if you commit (obligate yourselves) to the false teachings of the false prophets as well as the priests, gods and tin gods.
- 22) And be heedful, because the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), the virtueless ones, the priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods are continually concerned to catch you in their rapacious clutches, and they lie to you with vows that they are your good and sincere advisers, although they are not because truthly they only lead you into delusion and attempt to cast you down into the abysses and into the darkness of unknowledgeness of the truth.
- 23) They deceive you through lies and deception to sample from the tree of evil that grows in them and to eat its fruits so that you may become the same as them, so you are ashamed to live with the truth; and if they succeed in persuading you to eat their evil fruits then you take the leaves of their evil garden and wrap yourselves inside them, so that the truth remains closed to you and you do not realise that evil is your obvious enemy.
- 24) And if evil takes possession of you, then you bring shame down upon yourselves, and you cannot either forgive yourselves or take pity upon yourselves because you make yourselves into ones who are lost from the truth.
- 25) And as you are lost ones from the truth, so you are also lost ones and enemies against yourselves, as you make yourselves into enemies against people of your kind (fellow human beings); and truly, as you are enemies against yourselves on Earth and enemies against people of your kind (next ones), so you make your home planet into a shadow world (hell) and place of existence for a limited time, because you wreak destruction on the appearance (nature) and destroy your world through battles (wars) and hatred as well as through jealousy, through pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation and through everything evil.



- 26) Truly, you only live on your world for a limited period (one lifetime), and you also die thereat in order to be brought forth from the life-in-death (death-life) as a new individual being (personality), when your spirit-body (spirit-form) is reawakened (reincarnated).
- 27) Truly, the truth is given to you through the teaching of the prophets, this being the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so that you may have a clothing (protection) through it, by means of which you can cover your shame with regard to the untruth and you can free yourselves from it, so that the clothing (protection) may become a pleasing garment (security) for you in order to learn the truth-teaching; but consider that the garment (security) shall be a dress of the truth for you, but not a dress of the godliness (religion), so you are not attached to false prophets, priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods; therefore heed the signs (evidence) of the truth so that you may always think of (be reminded of) this.
- 28) Oh people of your kind (human beings) all around, do not allow the evil and unfair (irresponsible) things to deceive you, and do not allow yourselves to be driven out of your good garden in yourselves, rather always wear the clothing (knowledge) of the truth and do not allow it to be robbed from you so that you do not have to be ashamed of yourselves in front of yourselves and also in front of people of your kind (fellow human beings); truly, be careful that you do not become propitious (well-disposed/inclined) towards the untruth and are not overrun by the crowd of unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) if you do not see their secret doings by means of which they want to deceive you, because see, the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) harbour evil towards you, because they are themselves caught up in it since they have made evil their friend through not being connected to the truth.
- 29) And if the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) commit an infamous action (crime) then they think they are in the right because their forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) had already made the same deed their own which they had commanded themselves to do; but truly, the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) and therefore the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) never command infamous actions (crimes) of any kind whatsoever, neither lovelessness, hatred and revenge nor retaliation, jealousy or outrages of any kind (murder, killing, manslaughter, crimes, torture, act of Gewalt, violation, etc.), nor lovelessness, unpeace and unfreedom (bondage) and dissonance (disharmony); this is taught by the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that you may understand and follow it; therefore what do you want to say against the truth if you do not understand it (do not realise it), and what do you want to say about the truth if you know nothing of it?
- 30) The wellspring of the love (Creation) has recommended (included) equitableness (fairness) in its laws and recommendations and in those of the appearance (nature), therefore you shall search with attentiveness for this equitableness (fairness) and shall follow it at all times, so you are always open in honest knowledge when striving (endeavouring) to search for edification, so that you always return to equitableness (fairness) in the wise that you found it.
- 31) Truly, a certain proportion amongst you is well led (guided) by the truth, because you have made it your own, but another portion amongst you is in doubt between the truth and untruth, because you do not find the way to the truth, and another portion amongst you has erroneous assumption meted out to you in a fitting wise (own wrong behaviour), because you have made friends with evil and the unfair (irresponsible), as well as with the unrighteous (conscienceless), with Gewalt (terror) and coercion as well as with all terrible things, and you fallaciously assume (believe) that you would be rightly led therewith.
- 32) People of your kind (human beings), put on your jewellery at any time of your choosing, pursue your enjoyments, visit places of edification and take pleasure in this and that, and eat and drink, but do not exceed the limits (boundaries) in doing this, so that you always do rightful and fair (responsible) things, so you do not get very badly out of the control of the good human nature and do not fall prey to immoderacy.
- 33) And do not wear jewellery for gods and tin gods, but only in accordance with your fancy for your beauty, and therefore also do not wear jewellery for services to gods and services to tin gods, and not for the priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods, and also not for the false prophets and those who practise godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults); and do not wear jewellery for the good things and the provision (subsistence) that is given to you through the wellspring of the love (Creation), because truly it does not need your jewellery, and therefore jewellery is only intended for your own requirement for the sake of beauty; and as you act in this wise you are connected to the truth for all the days in this life; and therefore this part of the teaching is given as a sign (evidence) for people of your kind (human beings) who have cognisance of the truth.
- 34) Truly, through the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), all disgracefulnesses (badnesses) are not recommended to people of your kind (human beings) through upholding (maintaining) insight (rationality) and true discernment (intellect), neither those which are committed openly (in public) nor those which are done in secret; thus, however, disgracefulnesses (badnesses) are Gewalt (terror) and coercion



and everything that you place next to the wellspring of the love (Creation) which you have no right (entitlement) to do; and therefore it is disgracefulness (badness) if you curse the wellspring of the love (Creation) and say things about it which are the untruth and what you do not know of it; and disgracefulness (badness) is inside and outside of you, as well as lovelessness and unpeace, unfreedom (bondage), dissonance (disharmony) and also hatred and pathological craving for revenge, pathological craving for retaliation and jealousy, strife and battle (war), bloody deed (murder), outrage (act of Gewalt and coercion), inequity (unfairness), causing harm to the body and life and the psyche and the inner world (consciousness), as well as misdeeds (crimes) of all kinds.

- 35) For every action, a time is set at which a reckoning will be demanded for it, and when the hour has come then the demand for reckoning cannot be put off by even one moment, nor can it be postponed, be it by your jurisdiction or through the primal (creative) law of condition (cause) and decision (effect = cause and effect).
- 36) Consider, if true prophets come to you from your midst who present (teach) you all the signs (evidence) of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, then they come to point out (reveal) to you the way to the real truth in respect (venerability) so that you may do good deeds through the truth and no fear and no sorrow may come over you over which you cannot prevail (master).
- 37) Those amongst you, however, who condemn the signs (teaching, the explanations and marvels) of the true prophets and turn yourselves away from them with disdain, you are the inhabitants of an evil fire (unknowledge) and inequity (unfairness) in yourselves, in which you tarry so long until you bethink yourselves.
- 38) And truly, those amongst you who fabricate (invent) lies against the truth and against the true prophets or who accuse (blame) their signs (marvels) of being lies and deception, you choose your own destiny by afflicting yourselves with unpeace and unfreedom (bondage) as well as lovelessness and dissonance (disharmony) against yourselves, because truly, instead of you turning to the truth, you are accustomed to calling on and praying to gods and tin gods and people of your kind (human beings) despite the fact that you cannot find in them the truth and neither advantage (success) nor disadvantage (loss/damage) therefore you give an evil testimony against yourselves, against your own power and your own action (capability).
- 39) Those of you who are against the truth, you foment in yourselves a fire of evil and you band together with throngs of people of your kind (like-minded ones); and if one of your throngs meets another throng then you curse one another so that the ones talk badly about the others and yet once again return to doing terrible things together; but you also lead one another into delusion and deceive one another, therefore you are befallen doubly by anguish and the fire of hatred, and no righteous (conscientious) friendship comes about amongst you.
- 40) And those of you who are against the truth, you are unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) in yourselves and amongst one another, therefore you say to the others that they do not have any benefit (advantage) over you and are even worse than you are, and by doing so you bring forth hatred and strife amongst yourselves and start to strike and to kill one another.
- 41) Truly, you unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) you condemn all signs (evidence) of certain (actual) truth and turn away from it with disdain, although in doing so you do not realise how you are increasingly closing off your inner world (consciousness) to the true existence (reality) and are withering in your world of thoughts and feelings as well as in your psyche; truthfully, you cannot open your firmament of your inner world (consciousness) and cannot go into its firmament (consciousness-levels) in order to fathom them and to gain unfolding (evolutive) advantage (success) from them, and truly a camel would be more likely to pass through the eye of a needle than for you to turn to the truthfully truth without you first suffering great and painful harm and a serious calamity because you are truthfully great malefactors and only learn through harm and calamity.
- 42) And see that it is only if you turn to the truth in good measure and follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and if you learn from it and do good deeds both for yourselves and also for all people of your kind (fellow human beings), who always meet you and who need your help, only then do you cease to burden yourselves with inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) as well as with virtuelessness, so that you find freedom and peace and therefore also consonance (harmony) in your inner world (consciousness) and in its firmaments (consciousness-levels), so you are no longer inhabitants of the shadow world (hell) of evil in yourselves and you can henceforth also dwell in true love in yourselves.
- 43) And if you are knowing (conscious) in the truth and do good deeds from this, if you confirm (spread) true love and freedom as well as peace and consonance (harmony) in yourselves and outside yourselves amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings), then you do not burden yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings) above your and above their ability, so you find wellbeing in your inner world (consciousness) and in your psyche as inhabitants of your inner firmament (levels of consciousness) just as the inner firmaments (levels of consciousness) open for people of your kind (fellow human beings) and allow wellbeing to flood in.
- 44) Strive to sweep away everything that is in your thoughts and feelings in terms of resentment against people of your kind (next ones), and sweep away everything from in yourselves which burdens you through strife and



jealousy, through hatred and pathological craving for revenge as well as through depravity, pathological craving for retaliation and vice, as well as through avarice and pathological craving for recognition (ambition/megalomania) and all other terrible things; prize the true love and freedom in yourselves as well as the peace and consonance (harmony) so that you may be rightly led (guided); and truly, you can only find the right leadership (guidance) if you follow the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation); consider, that at all times the true prophets only brought to you the truth for you to follow, and never lies; call (say) to yourselves that the true prophets have given you the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as an inheritance for you to follow it and pass it on to your descendants and for your descendants to pass it on to their own descendants (children's children, etc.) in turn so that you and your descendants and their own descendants (children's children, etc.) are rewarded for what is effected through following the truth-teaching.

- 45) See, if you follow the truth-teaching then you are inhabitants of the firmament (delight) because you have found what the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) teach; but if you do not follow the truth-teaching then you are inhabitants of the shadow world (hell/dolefulness) because you cannot find what the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) teach; and because you cannot find the truth through your own blame since you are connected to the evil and unfairness (irresponsibility), and not connected to the truth, therefore you curse yourselves and turn yourselves into malefactors against the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation).
- 46) And those of you who are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and who are ones who curse the truth, you are at all times busily striving to make people of your kind (fellow human beings) turn away from the right way of the truth which you strive to make crooked so that those who are uncertain or wavering may fall victim to you.
- 47) Therefore there shall be a separation between you two, between the fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) and the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), this separation taking such a form that it is apparent through the characteristics of consideration (kind of thinking/attitude) which attitude (mentality) you are the child of; however irrespective of which attitude (mentality) you are the child of, respect one another nevertheless so that peace may prevail in you and with you so that you create the firmament of your inner world (consciousness) in goodness as you secretly hope it to be.
- 48) And if you meet one another and your eyes meet, then keep the peace amongst one another so that you do not kindle a fire of ruin between yourselves and do not commit outrages on one another (are not acting with Gewalt).
- 49) Truly, whether you are men or women who are attempting to reach heights of cognition and who recognise one another by the characteristics of your attitude (mentality), see to it that you are not arrogant (vain), but that you strive to it that your effort (endeavour) to obtain cognition regarding the truth bears good fruit.
- 50) And if you follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, then you do not have to swear false vows, rather you can show benevolence to yourselves so that you create a paradise in yourselves and no fear of unright and no sorrow comes over you which you are unable to accept.
- 51) Do not be inhabitants of dread in your firmament of your inner self (nature) in which a fire of erosion burns so that you do not have to pour water (remorse) into the fire, so that you do not burn in your inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness); verily, you must protect yourselves against the fire of inequity (unfairness) in you eating you up.
- 52) But if you take the knowledge of the truth as a pastime and as a game and allow yourselves to be seduced by mortal (earthly/material) life, then you are forgetting yourselves just as much as your unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness); and therefore you are forgetting the primal (creational) compulsions in yourselves to live according to the truth as you deny the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation).
- 53) And truly, the true prophets bring you the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, in which their knowledge and their wisdom are explained, so that you may have a guideline (sign-posting/leading thought) from it and you may gain benevolence (humanity) in yourselves for yourselves and for people of your kind (fellow human beings) by accepting the teaching and understanding its explanations.
- 54) Do not wait for the warnings of the true prophets to be fulfilled if they predict warning things of the time to come (future), because on the day when the warning call of the prophets comes about it will be too late; do not be of the kind, that, when the predictions are fulfilled, you are obliged to say that you had forgotten the prior warnings of the true prophets and had lent your ear to the false prophets although in fact only the true prophets spoke the truth; truly, if you do not listen to the predictions of the true prophets and they fulfil themselves then you will find no intercessors (attorneys) because you have suggestively and forcefully brought about calamity on yourselves; and truly, when the predicted events come to pass then you cannot turn back



(wind back) time in order to undo everything, because it is through your foolishness (irrationality), which you cultivate, that you bring yourselves and the world to ruin, and everything that you present to yourselves as an illusion (fantasise) regarding gods and tin gods and other senseless things will leave you alone (let you down).

- 55) See, the only thing above you is the wellspring of the love (Creation) which created all firmaments (the universe), all lights in the sky (celestial bodies) and all earths (worlds/planets), and it placed you people of your kind (human beings) on the throne (above everything) so that you shall be keepers (guardians) over the appearance (nature), over all firmaments (the universe) and over all earths (worlds/planets), as well as over all kinds of life (life forms), both when the night conceals the day as well as when the day supersedes the night; and truly as everything is integrated into the wellspring of love (Creation), the sun, the moon and all earths (worlds/planets), the lights in the firmament (celestial bodies in the sky) and all kinds of life (life forms), so everything is under your guardianship for you to take care of it and protect everything in accordance with right, law and recommendation, because you have the loaned rule over it.
- 56) And truly, you are your own influence (dominance) over yourselves, therefore you shall uphold and honour it also and not fall into submissiveness and not pray to gods and tin gods, neither openly (visibly) nor in concealment, because otherwise you are misdoers against the truth which does not demand (ask for) any submissiveness or worship.
- 57) And you are given the recommendation that you shall heed and honour the rules and regulations of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and shall not foment chaos on Earth, so that you do not have to call out for hope in fright for regulation to come about on Earth anew.
- 58) See, the appearance (nature) – which is created through the power of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) – carries winds ahead of it as a joyful message when the weather will be good, and it carries heavy clouds when rain is coming so that everything may thrive and the land be moistened if it is dry; and through the raining down of water, plants bring forth fruits of all kinds; and also the waters falling from the sky bring back secluded things (apparently dead things, i.e. withered things) back to life, just as also the spirit-body (spirit-form) will be reawakened (reborn) after the dying of people of your kind (human beings), together with a new individual being (personality) in a new body; may you be conscious of all this truth.
- 59) And the good land lets plants and vegetation grow and brings forth fruits in abundance, always in accordance with the laws of the primal power (Creation); but of those plants and vegetation that are bad for the good plants and vegetation, they thrive (grow) only meagrely, nevertheless you shall take care that they do not grow out of control and displace good plants and vegetation; therefore pay heed to the signs of the appearance (nature) so that you always do the right thing, so that you harvest good fruits and have sufficient provision (food).
- 60) And true prophets are sent to you from your midst so that you may hear the truth in all things and live rightfully, and also cultivate (till and plant) the land so that you do not have to fear the misery of hunger (famine).
- 61) But also be concerned that you do not have to suffer the misery of hunger (famine) if you breed a superfluity of descendants, therefore you shall not multiply like vermin; if you do however breed too many descendants then you are evidently acting in a mistaken wise because by doing so you invoke a calamity in great measure on yourselves, for your wellbeing (health) as well as for your world; and truly it is through your excessive descendants that you bring about great and worldwide battles (wars) and destruction, as well as hardship, misery, calamity and cataclysms in the extent of huge collapses (catastrophes) which you cannot set anything against, so you are helpless.
- 62) Be certain (knowing) that this will be the case if you do not do rightfully, because the true prophets do not foretell any erroneous assumptions, because they are the ones who know the time to come (future) and the time to come (farther future) and the time to come after the time to come (even farther future).
- 63) And the true prophets bring to you the message of what they have fathomed and learned about the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), and what they have learned from their foresight into the time to come (future), on the basis of which they give you sincere counsel, because they know many things that you do not know.
- 64) Therefore, do not be surprised that admonishments come to you through the true prophets who have arisen out of your midst, that they warn you and admonish you to be righteous (conscientious) and fair (responsible) and compassionate towards people of your kind (fellow human beings) and for all kinds of life (life forms), for the appearance (nature) and for your earth.
- 65) Therefore, do not accuse the true prophets of falseness (deviousness), because they want to save you from your inequity (unfairness) and unaccountability (consciencelessness) and virtuelessness, and truly they offer you an ark (boat of rescue) so that you may not drown in evil, in your lovelessness and unfreedom (bondage), but also in your dissonance (disharmony) and in unpeace, because you reject all signs (evidence) of the truth and



truly smite yourselves with blindness.

- 66) Turn to the truth, because in the end you have no other way (possibility), because your ultimate destination is defined in the unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness), if only you would comprehend this.
- 67) Do not be ones unknowing of the truth as individuals and as a people, like your heads (authorities/mightful ones/governing ones) are ones unknowing of the truth, so you are not prejudiced in foolishness (irrationality) like them and so you do not consider the true prophets to be liars, so that you also do not, in submissiveness, fall prey to lying before people of your kind (human beings) and before gods and tin gods and false prophets, priests and other servants (hands/helpers).
- 68) Know that there is no foolishness (irrationality) in the true prophets, but rather they are out of their own initiative proclaimers of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation).
- 69) The true prophets bring you the message of the truth, and they are your sincere and true counsellors.
- 70) Do not be surprised that they come to you to give you an admonition when they state to you your time to come (future), which you are willing to terribly run into in your undiscernment (unintellect); and do not be surprised that the true prophets come from your midst and have more knowledge and wisdom than you, but consider that they have determined (selected) themselves to do this and therefore they have also fathomed and learned the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and of its appearance (nature), so that they warn you about what will happen if you do not follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and thereby create a disaster; and think of the time of your existence (life) which you shall use to become knowing (conscious) and wise so that you may manage the inheritance that has been benignly (benevolently) given to you as Earth and each kind of life (life form) as well as all firmaments (the universe) and as earths (worlds/planets) and lights in the firmament (celestial bodies), so you are put in place as their guardians (protectors); and consider the constitution of your body which enables you to stand above all animals and above all creatures so that you may intentionally (consciously) unfold (evolve) in your inner world (consciousness), something which is only possible to you alone as people of your kind (human beings).
- 71) And the true prophets come to you so that you may meet the wellspring of the love (Creation), and everything that it has created, in veneration (deference), and not worship and pray to gods and tin gods or people of your kind (human beings); and truly you shall not worship and shall not pray to people of your kind (human beings) but, if they are worthy of it, you shall only show them deference as well as esteem and dignity; and consider that the true prophets indeed bring you admonishments and the truth-teaching, because they are truthful, but they do not bring you anything with which they threaten you, because if terrible things threaten you then you yourselves create threats in the wise that you do things which are wrong, by means of which the threats are fulfilled.
- 72) True prophets have never brought down punishment or rage on you, they also do not dispute with you about the truth and its name (the outstanding) as you do this and as your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) did it, although they had not received authority to do this from anywhere, just as you have not either; and because you do this, you remain amongst the waiting ones (ones unknowing of the truth) until you bethink yourselves and you turn to the truth.
- 73) The true prophets are attempting with their teaching of the truth, their teaching of the spirit, their teaching of the life to rescue you in benevolence (humanity) from all the harm, the misery and the hardship and from everything that you bring about deliberately and unfairly as well as unrighteously (in consciencelessness) in virtuelessness through lacking the knowledge of the truth, but you cut off the last twigs and branches from the tree on which you are sitting, because you repudiate the signs (evidence) of the truth and are unknowing in the truth.
- 74) Truly, turn to the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), and also to the laws and recommendations of its appearance (nature), because apart from these laws and recommendations there are no others through which all of the existence (life) with regard to the condition (cause) and decision (effect = cause and effect) would be determined; truly, right from the very start of your existence, clear signs (evidence) of the truth of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and its decision (nature), as well as of its laws and recommendations, have come to you so that you may recognise (see) them and follow the truth; therefore allow yourselves to be instructed (taught) in the truth so that you may follow all love-power (the creational) and you do not bring about any harm to yourselves, as you do not have to suffer anything painful in yourselves.
- 75) And consider the earth on which you are dwelling and which is given to you benignly (benevolently) as an inheritance so that you may build your dwellings and palaces upon its plains or so you can dig them into the mountains in order to be protected against the weather (elements); do rightfully in these things and do not rob land from one another, neither the plains nor the mountains nor the dwelling places, but do rightly and fairly in all things so that you do not commit any unright whatsoever on Earth and do not foment any



chaos.

- 76) And therefore do not elect arrogant (vain ones) and godly (religious/sectarian) heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) for your peoples, because they are weak and are believers in gods and tin gods, for which reason they issue evil laws and bring about (incite) battles (wars) through which many people of your kind (human beings) are killed (murdered) and also great destruction is brought about, quite apart from the fact that such heads (authorities/rulers and mighty ones) are responsible for much hardship and misery, unfreedom (bondage), unpeace and dissonance (disharmony); be certain (knowing) that they are delegates of their own evil in themselves and that they truly do not accept the truth which is brought to them by the prophets.
- 77) The arrogant (vain) and godly (religious/sectarian) heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) of your peoples do not care themselves about the truth and equitableness (fairness) either, nor do they care themselves about righteousness (conscientiousness), peace, freedom and consonance (harmony) in the people and for the people, as it is in the nature of those heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) to raise themselves up into their area (position) through outrage (Gewalt/murder/crimes/bribery), etc.
- 78) And these heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) defy your desires with commands of Gewalt (terror) which they instruct to be carried out upon you by their henchmen, and they threaten horrible things to you if you fail to follow their commands which are meted out by their envoys; therefore they have you tormented (tortured) or killed if you act contrary to what they are demanding from you in inequity (unfairness).
- 79) And if you are struck by an earthquake such that you are stretched out on the ground (dead) in your dwellings in the morning, then they instruct their henchmen to rob you even in death so that they can enrich themselves with your possessions, as is also done by many unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and virtueless ones who belong to godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) and undertake robbing of corpses (body stripping), which is something that ones knowing of the truth, righteous ones (conscientious ones), fair ones (responsible ones) and virtuous ones never do.
- 80) Do not follow these unfair ones (irresponsible ones), unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and virtueless ones, rather follow the truth-teaching which is brought to you by the true prophets as a message of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation); this message alone offers you sincere counsel and shows you the way for leading (guiding) existence (life), therefore you shall listen to the sincere counsel that the prophets give to you as true counsellors.
- 81) Follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that you do not commit any infamous actions (crimes) and are not worse and do not commit even more despicable actions, such as no-one before you in the world has committed.
- 82) Do not be excessive in your mode of the life and do not engage in desires (vice/wantonness/pathological cravings/urges); and if you have congress (sexual intercourse) as a man with a man, or as a woman with a woman, or man and woman together then keep discipline over yourselves (self-control) so that you do what is rightful.
- 83) And always be a people and of one sense for progression (progress) and prosperousness (success), as well as with regard to upholding the peace and everything that is good and of value; and never drive people of your kind (fellow human beings) out of your houses, hamlets (villages) or cities through hatred or jealousy, through unpeace, revenge, retaliation or for any other reasons of unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and inequity (unfairness), but keep yourselves clean (free) from such activities.
- 84) And if strangers come to you from other peoples and search for protection with you, then take them in, provide for (feed and clothe) them and offer them safety and activity (work) if they can show (prove) that they are persecuted and their body and life have been threatened; also, do not leave those behind (leave helpless) who are able to show (prove) that they need your help.
- 85) Provide for (feed and clothe) those who give you signs (evidence) of their poverty (need) so that things may be fair to them and you, and so that no powerful rain of disgust (inhumanity) may sweep down over you which will drown you in shame and guilt, such that you find a miserable end in the estimation of people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 86) Truly, kindheartedness and beneficence towards people of your kind (fellow human beings) is a clear sign (evidence) of your dignity and puts you on a par with benevolence (humanity); therefore give at all time in full measure (ampleness/sufficiency) and full weight (extent) and do not reduce the belongings (possessions) of people of your kind (fellow human beings), just as you shall not foment chaos on Earth or unpeace amongst people of your kind (human beings); keep your world in all things in regulation so that you do not destroy it and your space (dwelling space).
- 87) And do not threateningly lie in wait on each way for people of your kind (fellow human beings) because you want to make those turn away from the way of the truth who are striving for the truth and fulfilment of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation); do not try to make their way crooked (to



lead them away from the way), and remember that through your wrong doings you increase the calamity in yourselves and you will be befallen by unpleasant things if you foment chaos and unpeace and lead those away from the right way who are searching for the truth.

- 88) There are some amongst you who believe that the true prophets are envoys of a good god or tin god, and others who believe that they are envoys of the evil one (devil) of all abysses (hell), but whatever you believe, you are wrong in your belief (assumptions), because there are neither gods nor tin gods, nor evil as an individual being (devil as person/Wesenheit); however exercise patience and learn so that you experience the truth and are able to decide between it and your belief (assumptions), because you alone are the true determiners over whether you want to open your ears to the truth or to the untruth.
- 89) And as you yourselves must decide between the truth and untruth, the same must also be done by your heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones); even if they still want to deny the truth and drive it out (eradicate it) in order to wallow in their own might; and therefore they secretly foment unpeace and resistance amongst you (in the people) against the true prophets so that you drive them out of your hamlets (villages) and cities and chase them across the country, so you return to your avowal (belief) in gods and tin gods and in your heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones), also then if you do not have the volition to do this, in which case they then wreak Gewalt (terror) on you.
- 90) And like those amongst you who fabulate (invent) your lies against the truth and against the true prophets, your heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) do the same as people of your kind (as you), so you are not rescued by the truth which would make things fine in your existence (life), instead you are subjugated through the lie of the untruth and the heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) who maliciously exploit you and coerce you into hatred and pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation, so that they can misuse you for battles (wars) and destruction and you become manslayers (murderers); and also the false prophets teach you the same thing and lie saying that it is not seemly for you to lend your ear to the true prophets or not to return to the belief in gods and tin gods and the heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones); and the false prophets have the audacity to lie – as do your heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) – that it is the gods and tin gods who want everything according to their will and that their knowledge encompasses all things which is why you should place your trust in them, therefore you shall decide between them and the teaching of the prophets, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; therefore, however, they say you should decide according to their sense, according to what they want, so that you are not the ones who take the decision but rather them, the false prophets and heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones).
- 91) Your heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) who believe in gods and tin gods, and your false prophets who are truly no prophets, and their priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods lead you into servitude (bondage) and into the truth-unknowledge and they lie that you are the lost ones if you follow the truth-teaching of the true prophets; truly, they misuse you as slaves for their dark purposes (plans) so that they may exploit and deceive you through teachings of the lie; and they lie that it has been commanded by gods and tin gods for you to exert punishment on fallible ones and that you shall harm their body and life and their psyche and their inner life (consciousness); and they also lie that the gods and tin gods have commanded that you must wage battles (war) and kill (murder) and destroy by falling upon your next ones, people of your kind (fellow human beings) and other peoples with pillage, robbery, defilement (violation) and bloodthirstiness (killing) and mete out evil revenge and retaliation in hatred, or that you commit outrages (acts of Gewalt/torture/murder, etc.) in voracity for the riches of Earth (resources/mineral deposits) and for land and water; but truly, if you follow these false teachings of false prophets and of your heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) then you are lost to the truth, because the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and of its appearance (nature) only teach true love and freedom for every kind of life (life-form), as well as peace and consonance (harmony), and in no wise the opposite.
- 92) And truly, if you follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life then you are following the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and of its appearance (nature), whereas those amongst you who follow the false teaching of the false prophets cast yourselves downwards into the darkness of your unknowledge of the truth, so that on the morning of cognition (when you recognise the truth) it is as if you are struck by an earthquake and are stretched out on the ground in shame (shaken down to the ground).
- 93) As you are attached to the false prophets and denounce the true prophets of lying, so you take the truth away from yourselves (make the truth a stranger to yourselves), so you make yourselves into lost ones and fall into delusion.
- 94) Therefore turn away from the false prophets and from their gods and tin gods so that you connect yourselves with the message of the truth and may find sincere counsel with the true prophets who do not sadden you as the false prophets do and the priests and other servants (hands/helpers) of gods and tin gods who lead you



into delusion and make you beg and supplicate for help and goodness, for which you never receive any premium (gain/benefit).

- 95) Wherever false prophets appear, you as inhabitants of Earth, your hamlets (villages) and cities and everywhere are befallen by hardship and misery and by tribulation, battle (war), punishment and death and destruction due to their false teachings of the lie, because truthly they humiliate you and demand that you prostrate yourselves before their gods and tin gods and bloodthirsty (murderous) laws, as also do false heads (authorities/ rulers/mightful ones) and priests as well as other servants of gods and servants of tin gods who bewitch you with their belief (assumptions) and rob you of your own freedom (autonomy), peace, love and consonance (harmony).
- 96) Take your terrible state (condition) of belief in godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) as well as in false prophets and false heads (authorities/ruler/mightful ones) and change it into a good state (condition) so that you may gain a great wealth of truthly knowledge and wisdom and love, as well as of your own inner freedom and peace and consonance (harmony), so you switch from sorrow to joy and you are unexpectedly seized by happiness.
- 97) If you are righteous (conscientious) and you strive for the truth of the laws and recommendations of the well-spring of the love (Creation), then fruitfulnesses (wellbeing) will be opened to you by your firmament (consciousness) and your earth (psyche) which will exceed all your wishes; but if you are unrighteous (conscienceless) and you do not strive then you will persist in the state (condition) of inner misery and inner hardship, because you realise (create) in yourselves what you acquire through what you do and how you guide your thoughts and feelings.
- 98) Do right at all times and do not fear the truth so that you are not inhabitants of your own inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), so that you do not create punishment in yourselves which comes (breaks in) over you in the daytime whilst you are awake or at night when you are sleeping.
- 99) And do not be inhabitants of your own state (condition) of evil in yourselves, so that no punishment comes (breaks in) over you from out of yourselves neither in the day nor at night, nor in the early hours of the morning, nor in the early hours of the evening, not in the morning and not in the afternoon, neither when you are working or playing or taking enjoyment.
- 100) Never be sure in the face of evil and of the deceiving intentions (purposes) of the false prophets, because you can never feel secure when confronted by them, since they condemn you to downfall (unsatisfaction) through their lies and false teachings just like the priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods do in order to enslave you (place you in bondage) and exploit you, so that they can lead a life in pathological craving for admiration (pathological craving for glory/conceitedness/vanity) and in debauchery.
- 101) The laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) are a leadership (guidance) for you who, as inhabitants, have Earth as an inheritance in your care (trust) so that you are pleasing (beneficial) to Earth and do the best for it, so that you do not defile (curtail) it and its appearance (nature) and you maintain all kinds of life (life forms) so that your world may be a place of joyful living (paradise) for you.
- 102) The true prophets also come to you indeed to show clear signs (evidence) that Earth is also a life form which requires your protection and your keeping (care), therefore you shall take care for it and shall be favourable to it; if you however declare this message of the prophets to be a lie and you seal (close) your attitude towards harming (disadvantaging) your earth, then it will sicken in its appearance (nature), so that heavy gales and storms and upheavals and convulsions (catastrophes) will come over your world and over you, which you will no longer be able to master.
- 103) See therefore that you find the truth and follow the teaching of the prophets so that you hold fast to the bond (agreement) with the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), and you do not find yourselves as malefactors against (destroyers of) the appearance (nature) and against the earth.
- 104) And truly, since time immemorial you have condemned the signs (evidence) that the true prophets bring to you, as you are outrageous (dismissive and destructive) against them because you do not want to know the truth, but want to wallow in your Ausartungen of all kinds; but if you do not observe the signs (evidence and teaching) of the prophets and the signs of the time that they reveal to you then you are fomenting chaos in your world so it will suffer and be destroyed by this as you also cause suffering and harm to yourselves and you ruin your own gains (achievements).
- 105) Therefore open your ears and your eyes to the signs (evidence) that the true prophets bring to you so that you may use it for your advantage and may have an existence (life) in pleasure.
- 106) Truly, it is not seemly for the true prophets to speak other than the truth about the truth, therefore when they come to you they only bring clear signs (evidence) and speak clear words; thus allow those who are connected to the truth to go with the prophets and do not persecute them, because consider that you too at your time will also become knowing (conscious) of the truth and will not want to be persecuted by the unfair ones (irresponsible ones), the ones unknowing of the truth and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones).



- 107) And if you belong to the undisguised ones (truthful ones/truth-loving ones) and you are able to interpret and to understand the signs (evidence) of the prophets and of the appearance (nature) of the wellspring of the love (Creation), then show (teach) them to your next ones and to all those people of your kind (fellow human beings) who want to gain knowledge of them and to be connected to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 108) And if you are connected to the truth, then let it be in strength and not like a weak stick which breaks when it is bent, and be as watchful as a snake which does not want to be trodden underfoot but which can, however, defend itself if it is attacked; so shall you be in your knowledge and in your steadfastness about the truth, exactly like a strong and unbreakable rod and like a heedful snake so that you recognise when you are being attacked and you can defend yourselves according to right and the law without having contempt for the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), so that you do rightfully in all cases.
- 109) And heed that if you defend yourselves, that your hands are white (not besmirched through acts of Gewalt) so that all viewers (observers) of your deeds may see that you are protecting yourselves rightfully; and only use means for your defence which only serve in defence (self-defence), but not however for killing, so that you do not make yourselves guilty of manslaughter or of blood guilt (murder) and be called to take account (responsibility).
- 110) And heed that you do not deceive or steal from people of your kind (fellow human beings), neither openly (publicly) nor in secret, nor with activities of the shadow world (activities of hell/magic/legerdemain/tricks) so that you are not accused of committing evil (devilish things) or the black arts (suggestive trickery).
- 111) And heed that you do not commit unright in any wise whatsoever, so that you are not driven from your dwelling places and not out of your land; and heed the wise counsel (advice): «Do right and dread no-one.»
- 112) Restrain your unrightful doings and do not listen to summoners (bailiffs) of the heads (authorities/rulers/mightful ones) and the false prophet as well as the priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods of the godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) who take you prisoner in contravention of what is rightful and accuse (denounce) you of activities of the shadow world (activities of hell/magic), so that you shall be coerced into becoming unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and believers in gods and tin gods.
- 113) And do not allow yourselves to be ensnared through wealth and possessions which are offered to you as a reward if you give up the truth, because the summoners (bailiffs) of the godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) only want to reward you so that they may prevail over you.
- 114) They only want you to belong to those who are like them (the same as them) so that they may increase their throng through you and cause all kinds of calamity and be able to commit outrages (crimes) without being brought to account for them.
- 115) Therefore, do not belong to those who are their own next ones in inequity (unfairness) and unaccountability (consciencelessness) because they only see and love themselves, yet only use ones like them (ones the same as them) for pursuing their shameful (criminal) ends.
- 116) Be always watchful so that you may first cast far from you whatever is evil and unfair (irresponsible) before the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) can lull you into evil and unfairness (irresponsibility).
- 117) Cast far away from you all evil and unfairness (irresponsibility) so that you will not be spellbound and so you are righteous (conscientious) in the eyes of people of your kind (fellow human beings), so that you do not have to go in fear of them and do not have to bring forth lies and enormous hallucinations (magic) in order to be recognised by them as fair ones (responsible ones).
- 118) Be at all times as strong as an unbreakable rod so that you do not consume evil and unfairness (irresponsibility) and do not make these things to your food, but regard evil and unfairness (irresponsibility) as delusiveness which brings about all terrible things.
- 119) Be fair and connected to the real truth so that you recognise that all unrightful deeds are insidiousness and malice (contemptibility) against the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation).
- 120) Therefore be ashamed and turn away from evil and unfairness (irresponsibility), from the unrighteous (conscienceless) and from virtuelessness so that you are no longer overcome by unright.
- 121) Do not allow the hallucinations (magic) of the false prophets, the priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods to coerce you into praying to fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods, rather recognise yourselves and the truth, that you are created creations (life forms) of the sole wellspring of the love (Creation).
- 122) Be aware (conscious) that solely the wellspring of the love (Creation) is the might over all firmaments (the universe) and over all earths (worlds/planets), as well as over all lights in the firmament (celestial bodies/comets, etc.), over all kinds of life (life forms), over all existence and over everything that crawls and flies.



- 123) Since time immemorial you have believed in the false prophets who deceive you with cunning and have devised (hatched/invented) evil against you, so that you have been led away by them from the search for the truth, therefore you are experiencing bad consequences of your doings up to the present day.
- 124) Truly, through the false teaching of the false prophets, you have invented outrageous (criminal) laws in order to discipline and to punish people of your kind (fellow human beings) by causing pain (torture) on them and defiling (cutting) their trunk (body) and their limbs (extremities) and committing bloody deeds (murder) on them as punishment and practising barbarity (inhumanity); if you do the same then you are acting against the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), because they do not allow you to discipline and cause pain (torture) to people of your kind (fellow human beings), to cut off their hands and feet and crucify them, stone them, strangle them or cut off their head; truly, the false prophets do not teach you the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), but rather what is hellish (devilish), demonic and cruel, so that you shall be heinous (depraved) and fall prey to depravation.
- 125) Turn away from your villainy and see that you find the way to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) so that you are fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) and live in virtuousness, so that you no longer follow the false laws of the false prophets, but rather are fair to the dignity of people of your kind (being human in the real and true sense).
- 126) Do not mete out revenge or retaliation on people of your kind (fellow human beings) if they turn to the signs (evidence) of the truth and live according to the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), rather pour steadfastness into them so that they may continue to live in the truth and will one day die as ones knowing of the truth when their time has come.
- 127) Do not allow yourselves to foment chaos in the land and amongst the people, or that you turn to gods and tin gods as well as to the false prophets, priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods; truly, you have Gewalt over yourselves in order to do goodness and to turn to the truth and the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), if you are only willing to do so; and as you shall bind yourselves to the truth, so you shall not kill, neither your enemies nor your sons and daughters, just as you as man and woman shall not kill one another; Gewalt is given to you over life and death so that you may protect life and prevent death, so that it only takes possession of you and people of your kind (fellow human beings) on the way of the natural, because truly you shall not kill people of your kind (human beings) but rather save yourselves from death and Gewalt (terror).
- 128) Search at all times for help and guidance in the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and be steadfast in the knowledge and in the wisdom of the truth; truly, it is only in the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) that you will find the guideline (leading thought) of existence (life) so that you may honour life and avoid death in Ausartung, so that it only comes to you naturally; thus life is bequeathed (given) to you by the wellspring of the love (Creation), as well as death, but in such a wise that you make life worth living in order to avoid death until the way of the natural comes to an end and death calls you yourselves because you have completed the time of the life.
- 129) Do not create any enmity with other peoples and neither amongst people of your kind (next ones and fellow human beings) so that you do not suffer persecution by the enemies who want to eliminate you; and conduct yourselves with dignity and righteousness (conscientiousness), equitableness (fairness) and virtuousness, so no others raise themselves up over you as rulers and are able to steal your dwelling places and your land.
- 130) And cultivate your land and the whole Earth without tormenting and destroying it, and be admonished to do this because otherwise it will raise itself up against you and bring you unweather, high waters, enormous storms, fire and drought, as well as deaths of fruits and other provision (food).
- 131) See that only good comes to you from Earth, as it will be and as it is due to you (as you are entitled to) when you strive for it; do at all times rightfully with your world so that no calamity comes (breaks in) over you from it for which you yourselves are to blame; consider that if calamity comes (breaks in) over you that you alone are to blame for it, even if most of you do not know it, because you do not care about the laws of condition (cause) and of decision (effect = cause and effect).
- 132) See the signs of your appearance (nature) and allow yourselves to be captivated (influenced) by them so that you recognise that the earth with its laws of its appearance (nature) will not submit to you, but that you must fall in line with it (integrate yourselves) in order to spend your existence (life) in togetherness with it, and to obtain (draw) the best gains (effects) from it.
- 133) Therefore consider: Whatever you do with your earth, it will never submit to you.
- 134) And be certain (knowing) that if you do not do rightfully with your world and with all people of your kind (humankind) then grievances (vexations) will come over you, such as great storms and high waters, and you will be oppressed (plagued) by locusts, by lice and frogs, as well as by scourges (plagues) and vermin and many kinds of life (life forms) and people of your kind (human beings) who change into deformed ones (mutated ones) for which you are to blame and spread torment; therefore do not be arrogant (vain) and do not commit



outrages (misdemeanours) against the appearance (nature) or against the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) so that no calamity comes over you.

- 135) Do not bring about judgement on yourselves through your earth and its appearance (nature), but in all your doings be based on the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life which promises you goodness and wellbeing if you free yourselves from evil and unfairness (irresponsibility) and from unrighteousness (consciencelessness) as well as from unknowledge of the truth.
- 136) Do not put off the time for turning to the truth so that you do not become a victim of your own punishment that you carry out and complete on yourselves when you recognise that through a promise of a bond (agreement) with the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) you could have been able to lead a better life, which had not been given through your own blame.
- 137) Do not mete out revenge and retaliation on people of your kind (fellow human beings) if they have done bad things to you, but heed love and forgiveness so that you are truly people of your kind (human beings); do not allow people of your kind (fellow human beings) to drown in the sea or in other bodies of water or to lie in misery if they are in need, just so that you can mete out revenge and retaliation on them; and do not mete out revenge and retaliation on people of your kind (fellow human beings) because they treat the signs (evidence) of the truth as lies or because they do not heed your honour and dignity, because they do it out of unintellect (dumbness) and because they do not know what they are doing.
- 138) And give help to people of your kind (fellow human beings) if they are weak because the help is given to you as an inheritance and a boon (prosperousness) through the wellspring of the love (Creation) so that you may pass it on to people of your kind (fellow human beings) and all kinds of life (life forms) when they have need of it; therefore be full of kindheartedness to people of your kind (human beings) and to all kinds of life (life forms) and always find friendly and forgiving words for them so that you fulfil the laws of the feelings for others and provide steadfastness to those who need it; give them power and confidence for their existence (life) so that they do not destroy everything that they have built and created.
- 139) Do not leave your country and also do not take a ship over the sea and go to another land in order to go to a people that is devoted to gods or tin gods; and do not go there in order to do the same as them, so that you do not pray to gods and tins gods and you do not fall prey to the untruth.
- 140) And do not bear hatred towards people of your kind (next ones) and appreciate their good deeds and everything that they have created of goodness, therefore you shall not go there and you shall not cast into ruin the gains (achievements) that they have laboriously created; do not be conceited (arrogant) or obsessed by the things of people of your kind (next ones) that they have created, so that you do not desire them in an unrightful wise and you do not appropriate them for yourselves in an unrightful wise.
- 141) Consider that you shall not be raised above your desires (standing above your own wishes), but that you shall proceed in modesty and not demand the gain (achievement) of people of your kind (next ones), neither their possessions and wealth nor their woman or man.
- 142) Consider the time that bitter torment can oppress you if you yourselves are robbed of your possessions or wealth or your woman or man or if your gains (achievements) are stolen from you.
- 143) The laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) have given you a promise that you will live in joy and prosperity until your end if you do rightfully and fulfil the laws and recommendations to the best of your ability; and as you do rightfully and fulfil the laws and recommendations to the best of your ability, not fomenting any chaos, guiding yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings) rightly and honouring and rightly treating your earth, then you have the life of joy (paradise) on Earth.
- 144) Do not be presumptuous and do not dare to want to see the wellspring of the love (Creation) in its spirit-energy, because as an unmeasurable secret it exists so high above you that you would perish if you could view (see) its spirit-energy, but you can never behold it in this wise; but see that the wellspring of the love (Creation) is ubiquitous and in all and everything, so you merely have to look at everything that you can see with your eyes, the firmaments (universe), the earths (worlds/planets), the lights in the firmament (celestial bodies and comets, etc.), the appearance (nature) and all kinds of life (life forms), as well as people of your kind (human beings) and everything that crawls and flies, because the wellspring of the love (Creation) breathes in everything, because it is present in everything.
- 145) All of you people of your kind (human beings), you have been selected by the wellspring of the love (Creation) as its highest created kind of life (life form) to look after Earth, the firmaments (universe), the earths (worlds/planets), the lights in the firmament (celestial bodies and comets, etc.), as well as being the guardians (protectors) of them and all kinds of life (life forms), therefore you shall take and look after everything in this wise just as you shall be connected to the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and it itself in gratitude for this.
- 146) Always remember the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and the teaching of the prophets, through which you are admonished and find explanations in all things, so you shall hold fast to



it and make the best of it in all respects, so that you are not malefactors (lawbreakers) against the truth.

- 147) Consider that if you conduct yourselves arrogantly (vainly) against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), and if you are against all right and against the accountability, then although you can see the signs (evidence) of the wellspring of the love (Creation) in its appearance (nature) and all around in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets), as well as in the lights of the firmament (celestial bodies/comets) and in all kinds of life (life forms), in people of your kind (human beings) and in everything that crawls and flies, you nevertheless cannot recognise (see) the signs (evidence) as such and neither can you understand them because you do not live according to the truth and you do not know it either; and if you are shown the way of the truth and also see the way of fairness (responsibility) and of accountability, then you do not want to accept it or to walk upon it, but continue along the way of erroneous assumption which you have made your own, because you treat the signs (evidence) of the wellspring of the love (Creation) as a lie and do not heed them.
- 148) And those amongst you who do not heed the signs (evidence) of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and do not heed the truth – your deeds are arrogant (vain) and are not steadfast, and therefore you cannot be rewarded for goodness, but instead you can only receive a poor reward for what you do that is lacking goodness.
- 149) And do not make yourselves gods and tin gods out of gold and pieces of jewellery, neither from wood or from stone or from metal or anything else, because they are only lifeless insubstantialities which cannot bring forth any sound, because truly you shall be connected only to the truth of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, through which you are led (guided) onto the right way and which do not demand any worship from you, so that you are not malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth.
- 150) Truly, it is only rightful for you to be seized by remorse for what you do that is disgraceful (criminal) to the truth; recognise that you are truly going into delusion and are doing unright, so that you may give yourselves rightful instruction (teaching) and have pity for yourselves and forgive yourselves so that you are not lost ones who wallow in the untruth.
- 151) Be worried (concerned) if you take the way of falsehood and perpetrate evil, because you are in a rush to concoct (hatch) a way for yourselves that should bring you quickly to possessions and wealth, because truly only your worries (concern) about your evil striving and about your evil deeds can prevent you from doing what is unrightful, so that enemies do not rejoice over you and cannot rightfully accuse (blame) you of misdeeds.
- 152) Be worried (concerned) if unrighteous (conscienceless) and unfair (irresponsible) and virtueless thoughts and feelings befall you, so you grant yourselves access to your own equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness) and virtuousness and you are your own giver of compassion.
- 153) However, do not pray to yourselves so that you do not become arrogant (vain) to yourselves and you do not bring down upon yourselves rage and ignominy from people of your kind (fellow human beings); and lead your life here below in deference (honourableness) so that no others can fabricate (invent) lies and slanders (calumnies) against you which harm you; however, if they do invent lies and slanders (calumnies) against you if you are not arrogant (vain) and if you direct (maintain) your existence (life) in modesty, righteousness (conscientiousness), virtues and equitableness (fairness) then the lies and slanders (calumnies) will turn to your advantage and benefit (success) and become a disadvantage (detriment/harm) and a uselessness to the liars and slanderers (calumniators).
- 154) If you do evil and commit unfairness (irresponsibility), unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and virtuelessness then people of your kind (fellow human beings) will forgive you in the same wise as you can forgive yourselves if you feel sorry in uprightness and in openness (honesty) and you visibly (obviously) and recognisably change to the better.
- 155) And do not allow rage to rise up in you, but calm yourselves down if you become agitated, because you require your own leadership (guidance) in calmness (equanimity) so that you are afraid of what shameful (villainous) things you could do in rage.
- 156) Choose yourselves as righteous ones (conscientious ones) and fair ones (responsible ones) and do not set any delay in doing so, rather make the change in the moment (immediately) so that you no longer do unrighteous things (conscienceless things) and unfair things (irresponsible things); eradicate everything in you that cannot be brought into agreement with the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), and do it for the sake of being righteous ones (conscientious ones), fair ones (responsible ones) and virtuous ones, so that you withstand each temptation and you no longer fall into calamity; be your own protectors, take pity on yourselves and forgive yourselves, because you are the best forgivers if you are sincerely remorseful and you free yourselves from all unright and all unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and inequity (unfairness).
- 157) Determine goodness for yourselves in this world and turn honestly and remorsefully to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), so that no punishment whatsoever may strike



you because of yourselves or people of your kind (human beings), but rather that you may be surrounded by an all-embracing feeling of good protection as is given to all things when what is done is done rightfully, as is determined by the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation).

- 158) And if you follow the true prophets then you direct yourselves according to what is right and avoid unright, as is recommended to you through the recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation); and the recommendations recommend that you shall only allow yourselves good things, but deny yourselves bad things so that everything may vanish from you that places a burden upon you and which keeps you in chains, which makes you captives of your own selves; and if you open your ears to the word of your true prophets and make their teaching into your knowledge and your wisdom, thereby honouring the prophets in their duty (mission/ obligation) and strengthening them and helping them and following the light (clarity of teaching) that they spread, then things will be fine with you.
- 159) All you people of your kind (humankind), truly, your true prophets are the light (sign-post) on your world, and therefore they are the pioneers that you may one day understand the firmaments (universe) and the earths (worlds/planets), the lights in the firmaments (celestial bodies and comets, etc.) as well as the kinds of life (life forms) and people of your kind (human beings); and they teach you that the appearance (nature) and the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) give life and let it die again in order to reawaken it through the power of the spirit-body (spirit-form); therefore you are recommended to open your ears to the true prophets and their teaching and their words, and to follow them so that you may be rightly led (guided).
- 160) All people of your kind (humankind), be a unity (community) in which you admonish yourselves through the teaching of the prophets to the truth, according to its laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), its equitableness (fairness), righteousness (conscientiousness) and sincerity, as well as virtuousness and love.
- 161) Although you are divided into tribes and peoples, you are still a unity (community) as all people of your kind (humankind), therefore you shall not rise up against one another with hatred, battle (war), revenge and retribution so that peace and freedom, as well as consonance (harmony) may prevail amongst you, as is recommended to you through the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), therefore you shall not commit misdemeanours (infringements) against it.
- 162) Live as a great community of people of your kind (humankind) in true peace, in love, freedom and in consonance (harmony) on Earth, do good things for one another and create assuagement from all your burden; and do not allow yourselves to be driven through the gate of submissiveness by people of your kind (human beings) or by fabricated (invented) gods, tin gods and demons when priests and other servants of gods, servants of tin gods and servants of demons promise you salvation (redemption) and forgiveness for your missteps (vices/ blame/unvirtues/offences), vices, blames and unvirtues, because truly their promises are only lies and powerless words because they do not have the might to liberate you from your missteps, blames, vices and virtuelessnesses; only you yourselves can forgive yourselves if you sincerely feel sorry for your unrightful deeds and henceforth do good deeds and continuously increase the number of good deeds.
- 163) Do not be unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and do not confuse the word of the truth with words of the untruth when you speak with people of your kind (fellow human beings) so that you do not charge yourselves with lying and no shame comes over you as judgement from those to whom you twist the words of the truth into words of the untruth (calumny); do not be outrageous (presumptuous) with your words, but always use them carefully and decently so that you cannot be charged with impoliteness (boorishness).
- 164) And do not defile your honour and dignity by making enemies of (insulting) others and making yourselves out to be better than you are, so that other people will not be indignant at you.
- 165) And do not go to people of your kind (next ones) and amongst the people in order to preach that the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life shall be eradicated as a teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and that those who teach and live according to it shall have a strict punishment meted out on them; truly, such doing is only performed by unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and belief-oriented priests of the gods, tin gods and demons, and there are no pretexts (excuses) for this because such preaching amounts to all of the disgracefulness (badness/ignominy) that a person of your kind (human being) can load onto himself or herself in unrighteousness (consciencelessness).
- 166) Never forget what the true prophets warn you about through the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), so that you may save yourselves from the evil that is not recommended to you, so that you do not impose a strict punishment on yourselves and that you do not have to accuse (blame) yourselves in strictness as ones who are rebelling against the truth of the primal power (creation) and as unfair ones (irresponsible ones).
- 167) Do not rebel defiantly against the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) that are given to you so that you may do rightfully and impose prohibitions on yourselves for those things that are unrightful; cultivate your thoughts and feelings in equitableness (fairness), in righteousness (conscientiousness) and in



virtuousness so that you recognise yourselves in value as people of your kind (human beings) and you finally do not insult yourselves as contemptible apes.

- 168) And consider the words of the true prophets who teach and announce to you at their time that you will certainly (without doubt) awaken on the day of your appraisal (cognition) of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and will exert pressure on and eliminate the evil in you with grim anguish so that you bring about a resurrection of the good and truthly in yourselves and you can forgive yourselves.
- 169) As all-embracing people of your kind (humankind), you are divided into tribes and peoples, and so there are some amongst you with a belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods, and others with a belief (assumptions) in other gods and tin gods; and therefore there are amongst you as all-embracing people of your kind (humankind) righteous ones (conscientious ones) and fair ones (responsible ones), and there are amongst you some who are neither; but truly you are split up (not consolidated) in belief (assumptions) in gods, tin gods and demons so that you have many godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults), all of which offer fallacious teachings with much more lying and slander (calumny) than real truth; therefore all godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) are recommended to liberate themselves from their fabricated (invented) gods, tin gods and demons and to turn themselves to the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the well-spring of the love (Creation) so that they only continue to teach the truth and no longer lead all people of your kind (humankind) into confusion, but rather into the light of existence (reality), so that amongst all people of your kind (humankind) – in you and amongst you all – there may be true knowledge, truthly love and wisdom as well as peace and freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 170) You people of your kind (human beings), do not continue to allow awful things to come over you through the belief (assumptions) in gods, tin gods and demons as is preached to you in delusion by false prophets, priests, servants of gods, servants of tin gods and servants of demons who inherited false writings of false prophets and scribes and lead you into delusion with them; and do not reach for these delusional teachings or for the miserable goods of this world that mislead you into avarice and make you think (thinking) that you are more than people of your kind (fellow human beings) if you own more wealth and goods than the others; consider that the false prophets and false scribes have made a bond (agreement) with the untruth and slander (calumny), so that you also shall not reach for it and shall not allow yourselves to be led into delusion; only guide (lead) yourselves to the truthly teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as is given to you through the teaching of the prophets, out of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), that has been researched by the true prophets and who have recognised the real truth in it and proclaim and teach it to you.
- 171) But those amongst you who hold fast to the false teachings of the false prophets and false scribes and make prayers to gods and tin gods in submissiveness, and who worship priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods or people of your kind (human beings) as envoys or representatives (substitutes) of the gods, tin gods and demons, you lose the reward of righteousness (conscientiousness), of equitableness (fairness) and virtues, and your existence (life) will always be full of fear of punishment and of calamity.
- 172) Hold fast to the truth and do not allow mountains of unright and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) to fall down over you like a blanket, and be always conscious of the fact that only the truth can rescue you from levels of the unright and untruth.
- 173) And consider that if you bring forth (create) descendants from your loins that you shall teach (instruct) them the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that you do not make them into witnesses against their own selves and against the truth, so that they become knowing of the true existence (reality) and are not unknowing of the truth at the end of their days.
- 174) If you do not turn to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life under your own power and out of your own true discernment (intellect) and if you place gods, tin gods, demons and spirits next to the wellspring of the love (Creation) then do not lay the blame for this on your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/ forebears) who did the same at an earlier time; consider that you are living long after them and are of other seed (generations) and are yourselves responsible for what you do; therefore it is given to you yourselves as to whether you follow the truth and take joy in good living or whether you destroy your good living for the sake of what you do that is deceitful and unfair (irresponsible).
- 175) Truly, you can see and recognise the signs (evidence) of the presence (existence) of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) in all its appearance (nature) if you would only comprehend (understand) it, so that you may return to the truth.
- 176) Do not go past the signs (evidence) of the appearance (nature) of the wellspring of the love (Creation) without heeding them, so you do not reach out your hand to the evil in you, so that you go into delusion and act unrightfully.
- 177) Raise yourselves up over evil and do not tend towards the earthly (material) and do not follow the evil desires



that arise from it; do not demand excessively for earthly goods so that you do not resemble thirsty dogs which hang out their tongues when they are thirsty; therefore you shall not be the same as them and not thirstily chase after earthly goods and thereby forget the unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness), and not either the consonance (harmony) of your thoughts and feelings and your (psyche; therefore heed the signs (evidence) of the existence of the wellspring of the love (Creation) in its laws and recommendations of its appearance (nature) so that you are not deprived of the truth and you bethink the presentation (description/ explanations) of the true prophets.

- 178) Truly, things stand badly with those amongst you who treat the signs (evidence) of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) as a lie, because you are thereby lying against your own self and are slandering (calumniating) it.
- 179) Only if you allow yourselves to be led (guided) by the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) are you on the right way, but if you go astray then you are lost ones in existence (life), because you are afflicted by fear of punishment and calamity.
- 180) Truly, people of your kind (human beings) have created much calamity and shadows (hells) in the world and in themselves, and truly you are also doing the same as them; you have true discernment (intellect) but you do not use it and you have thoughts and feelings but you use them wrongly and do not understand their power, and you have eyes but you do not see and you have ears and do not hear, and truly you are like stubborn cattle when you should comprehend (understand) the truth; you have strayed badly from the truth and from the true equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness) and are truly inconsiderate, and so you are far from all truthly love and consonance (harmony), as well as far from any true freedom and the peace in you and amongst all people of your kind (humankind).
- 181) Search for the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and of its appearance (nature), call for it and unify yourselves with it, and do not allow at your side those who are fugitive from the truth, rather strive to teach them whilst keeping yourselves at a distance nevertheless so that they do not deceive you and do not make you go into confusion.
- 182) Consider, you are all created to learn the truth and to go hand-in-hand with it, and for you to lead (guide) people of your kind (fellow human beings) with the truth so that you practise equitableness (fairness) and they do the same.
- 183) And consider, if you repudiate the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and of its appearance (nature) then you are making yourselves step-by-step responsible for the elimination of true love, for unpeace, for unfreedom (bondage), virtuelessness and for dissonance (disharmony) in yourselves and amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings), because you do not know the law of condition (cause) and of decision (effect = cause and effect) and therefore you do not act according to it.
- 184) You give yourselves free rein in your unknowledge regarding the truth, so you mightfully make room for inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) which is used for waging battle (war) and for killing, in order to practise hatred, revenge and retaliation and to commit all kinds of outrages (acts of Gewalt and crimes).
- 185) Consider the words of the true prophets which clearly warn you that you shall not be obsessed by terrible things and by evil.
- 186) Take a look at the realm of the firmaments (universe) and of the earths (worlds/planets), at the lights in the firmament (celestial bodies/comets, etc.), as well as at yourselves and at all kinds of life (life forms) and at all other things that are created through the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), and see that a fixed lifetime is given to all, so that everything is integrated into the appearing (becoming) and the disappearing (passing = becoming and passing), in order to be reawakened (reborn) at its time, however.
- 187) Do not condemn yourselves to going astray, so that you have no leadership (guidance) through yourselves and you do not wander blindly through your existence (life) in intractability.
- 188) Do not ask during the time of your life when the hour will come that will be your last, so that you do not act unrightfully, but rather strive to learn the truth and to live according to it so that you can go on your way in joy at the end of your time; truly, even if you ask about the hour that will be your last during the time of your life then you cannot discover it because knowledge of it shall not weigh heavily upon you, so the hour (death) shall only break over you suddenly so that you are not sad in your existence (life), you do not become confused in your inner world (consciousness) and do not do terrible things and do not cause any calamity.
- 189) Truly, you as people of your kind (human being) have the might to benefit or to harm yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings), because neither a god nor tin god nor demon can determine over this, because all of them are entirely merely fabrications (inventions) of people of your kind (human beings) who fallaciously set might over you, who do not have any knowledge of the secret of what is hidden (creation), in which the fullness (measure) of goodness and of true love is secured and which is not touched by terrible things.



- 190) It is the wellspring of the love (Creation) that created you out of its unchangeabilities (laws), man and woman; and as you are therefore its created creations (creatures/creations/life forms), you shall revive yourselves with everything that it has created for your benefit (success), and so you do rightfully and recognise and follow the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), so you have a light burden to carry throughout your life; but if the burden becomes heavy for you then adjust yourselves in yourselves accordingly so that you will be of good courage and can with gratitude cast down (master) everything terrible.
- 191) And when things go well for you again and you are enjoying your life again, then do not impute (ascribe) it as a gift granted by gods, tin gods or demons, because truly it is you yourselves who give yourselves help and power because you are unsurpassable (sublime) over all things that you undertake and that you place at your side.
- 192) Truly, although you can place things at your side according to your preference (will) as people of your kind (human beings), you cannot place anything next to the wellspring of the love (Creation) which could also be equivalent to it in even a speck of dust of the weight, because as the creative one of all things (Creation), it is sublime over everything because it is the wellspring (origin) and the condition (cause) of all reality (existence).
- 193) You as people of your kind (human beings), you are dependent on the power of the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) because they grant you help in all things providing you follow their guidelines (explanations/instructions) and direct your existence (life) according to them, but you cannot offer help to the laws and recommendations because you are only ordinary and do not have might over them.
- 194) And if you want the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) to bend according to you, then they do not do this, irrespective of whether you call upon or curse them or you are silent, because they are formed according to the idea of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and only integrated into its might, however not into yours.
- 195) Truly, those people of your kind (human beings) whom you call upon as envoys or representatives (substitutes) of gods, tin gods or demons for them to bend the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) for you, they are as mightless as you yourselves, so that they can call out (call upon) whether by day or night and yet are unable to change anything, because they are not truthful (unfallible) and do not have the might of the wellspring of the love (Creation).
- 196) Truly, you do not have feet to go to the wellspring of the love (Creation), and therefore you do not have hands to grasp it, just as you do not have eyes to see it or ears to hear it, because truly it is of pure spiritual activity (energy) and power and is raised over all existence; therefore you shall honour and heed it and not call on gods and tin gods, neither on demons, just as you shall also not forge any cunning against it, but rather you shall use your time to be connected to the truth of its laws and recommendations..
- 197) Truly, the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) are your protectors when you do rightfully; and from them comes forth the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life which you shall learn and follow so that you may be fair (responsible), righteous (conscientious) and virtuous people of your kind (human beings).
- 198) Those amongst you, however, who do not follow the truth and who call on gods and tin gods, you cannot be helped by the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) to become fair ones (responsible ones), righteous ones (conscientious ones) and virtuous ones, because you cannot help yourselves.
- 199) And if you call upon your gods and tin gods, then they do not hear you, because something that is not living (not connected to the truth and knowing) cannot give an answer, and therefore you cannot look at (see) what is existing.
- 200) Be at all times lenient (forgiving) towards people of your kind (fellow human beings) and towards all creatures (life forms) and practise benevolence; turn away from what is unfair (irresponsible) so that you may be fair to all in your existence (life).
- 201) And if you are urged by an evil whispering from yourselves or through people of your kind (fellow human beings), then take refuge in the truth of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and in its laws and recommendations so that you do not fall prey to evil and unfairness (irresponsibility).
- 202) Truly, if you are fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) and are connected to the true teaching of the prophets, then you will think of (be reminded to) the truth when you start to see (understand) that you are befallen by evil whisperings, so you defend yourselves against them.
- 203) Therefore, always heed the truth in whatever things so that you obtain help from the truth and do not fall into erroneous assumption or continue in erroneous assumption; and if you turn away from the erroneous assumption, then it cannot pursue you or bring you onto the wrong way.
- 204) And if you see the signs (evidence) of the truth of the reality (existence) of the primal power (Creation) in the appearance (nature) and in the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation), then do not invent false truths (lies) and slanders (calumnies) about them, rather follow the signs (evidence) that are



revealed to you; truly the signs (evidence) of the wellspring of the love (Creation) are clear, and they are a clear leadership (guidance) for all peoples of all people of your kind (humankind).

- 205) And if the true teaching of the prophets is presented to you, which is created from the laws and recommendations of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and its appearance (nature), then lend it your ear so that you obtain cognition and true discernment (intellect) and clear-sightedness (understanding), so you find pity in yourselves and you become fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones).
- 206) And consider the truth at all times in an open wise of your inner world (consciousness), so that you do not fall into submissiveness and fear in front of it, and so that you do not speak great words about it morning and evening, so those who are searching for the truth do not turn away from it and become neglectful ones.
- 207) Truly, if you are close to the real truth of the wellspring of the love (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, as well as its appearance (nature), then no longer turn away from it arrogantly (vainly), but steep yourselves in it even more so that you may become even more knowing and wise and can live your life in true love and inner freedom as well as in peace and consonance (harmony).



Chapter 8

- 1) Honour the creation of all things (Creation) and its appearance (nature), because everything has proceeded from its laws and recommendations in concord (harmony) with its basic thought (idea) and its power.
- 2) And as you consider the creation of all things (Creation), then regulate in yourselves and amongst all people of your kind (humankind) all things in concord (harmony), and follow the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) so that you may go along with it in consonance (harmony).
- 3) Be truthly knowing ones and wise ones in your inner world (consciousness), so you vibrate in truth in your thoughts and feelings and in your psyche when you see the unsurpassabilities (miracles) of the appearance (nature) and the signs (evidence) of the creation of all things (Creation); and when you see the signs (evidence) and unsurpassabilities (miracles), then be still and introspective in deference (venerability) in yourselves, and trust in the goodness and love that go forth from the creation of all things (Creation) and through its laws and recommendations.
- 4) And fulfil your thanks for what it gives to you and has been preparing for you since time immemorial, so that you may live (exist) and enjoy your existence (life) in accordance with your own discretion.
- 5) Be true knowing ones in the truth amongst all people of your kind (humankind) and be thoughtful of (consider) that there are no different levels amongst yourselves as people of your kind (human beings), because you are unified and of equal value in the estimation of the creation of all things (Creation) without any difference; therefore you shall be without difference in your attitude also amongst yourselves and enjoy forgiveness amongst yourselves if you have done fallible things to one another; and therefore you shall stand up for one another and strive so that all people of your kind (humankind) have honourable provision (food/sustenance/ clothing) by you being helpful to one another and providing one another with welfare (support).
- 6) Wherever you go, conduct your goings and your deeds in equitableness (fairness), and never be averse to standing by people of your kind (fellow human beings) if someone requires your help; and always be connected in friendship and love and in amiableness as people of your kind (humanity) so that you never consider one another as enemies.
- 7) And do not dispute amongst yourselves concerning the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) once you have become knowing (conscious) of them; and do not allow yourselves to be driven to death because of the truth, because although you should be connected and loyal to the truth, you shall not become a victim (martyr) for its sake, rather be silent if you are asked about it and you are threatened with death; therefore keep the truth before your eyes and in your knowledge at all times for yourselves, but be silent concerning it and uphold the truth for yourselves alone if you are threatened with outrage (torture) on your body and with death; and whoever does not stay silent in dumbness regarding something which results in outrage (torture) or death for them thereby brings harm on themselves and commits a misdemeanour (infringement) against the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) which state that every person of your kind (human being) shall protect himself or herself against outrages (torture and acts of Gewalt).
- 8) By all means wish at all times that you can bring the truth to the light of day through your words and by your



efforts, but consider that you are unable to cut off the roots of the unbelievers of the truth if you deliver yourselves up to the outrage (torture/acts of Gewalt) of your adversaries and suffer (accept) death, so you can no longer stand up for the truth if you are once again afforded the opportunity to do so.

- 9) Only consider bringing the truth to the light of day and destroying the wrong things if you will not suffer for doing so at the hands of the ones unknowing of the truth, the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) because they do not like to hear the truth; do not give them the opportunity to cajole (constrain) you so that you cannot come to any harm if you stand up for the truth, therefore it is always for you to determine (decide) whether you shall stand up openly (publicly) for the truth (representing the truth) or whether you choose the way of silence; therefore do not do the same as the belief-oriented ones who worship gods and tin gods and, in the self-opinionated attitude (fanaticism) of their belief (assumptions), impatiently (fanatically) stand up for their devotion (belief), even as far as enduring an outrage (torture) on their body and as far as death; truly, this is not in accordance with the knowledge of the truth, but merely with going astray in a zealous (fanatical) belief (assumptions) that is settled far from all truth.
- 10) And truly, only the truth gives you a fair (right) answer to these things, just as it is only the truth that stands by you in understanding with a thousand pieces of advice.
- 11) And it is only the truth as the joyful message of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) and your following of the same that are capable of creating true calm in yourselves, so that you may gradually comprehend (understand) the guidelines (instructions) of the teaching of the prophets and become knowing (conscious) and wise.
- 12) And know that when sleep steals over you and you see pictures (dreams), then this is for your own safety so that your inner world (consciousness) and your sub-inner world (subconsciousness) become aware (perceive) and use (process) all unseen (unconscious) things, with the result that calm and understanding arises in you and you do not become deluded.
- 13) And the pictures (dreams) in your sleep are as water (rain) that falls down on you from the clouds, so that you may be cleaned (liberated) by it from maculations (unprocessed things) in your inner world (consciousness) and your sub-inner world (subconsciousness) which process the things which you have noticed (perceived) unseen (unconsciously), whereby you are strengthened and your step gets stronger.
- 14) It is also revealed to you that you shall strengthen yourselves in the knowledge of the truth so that you do not continuously fall into dread like the ones unknowing of the truth; but be righteous (conscientious) and fair (responsible) to the ones unknowing of the truth and do not beat them, either on the nape of their neck or on their head or body, and neither on their feet and toes or on the tips of their fingers, because to do so is an outrage (torture/punishment/act of Gewalt) to the body and limb (extremities), and it is also against all laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation).
- 15) And if the ones unknowing of the truth, the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) offer defiance against the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as is given as the teaching of the prophets through the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), then be fair to them and instruct (teach) them about the truth if they have a volition (desire) for this; give your instruction in loving accuracy (righteousness = conscientiousness), but do not exact retaliation if there is no compliance with the truth-teaching.
- 16) Never punish people of your kind (fellow human beings), whether children or those who have come of age (grown up), instead practise only punishment in equitableness (fairness) if it is necessary, although the body and life as well as the inner world (consciousness) and the psyche shall not be harmed.
- 17) If you are openly (publicly) attacked (accused) with words by ones unknowing of the truth, then turn your back on them (turn away from them) if you do not have the power and knowledge to contradict (counter) the words of the attack, but if you are knowing (conscious) and wise then do not turn your back on them (do not turn away from them), rather confront them with might and good (explanatory) words and teach (instruct) them in the truth if they have sufficient fullness (greatness) to open their ears to your instruction.
- 18) But turn your back on all attacks (advertisements) which are intended to drag you into a battle (war), because every battle (war) is against all laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation); but if you veer off into one or another battle (war) then truly you are loading your own rage on yourselves by creating a shadow world (hell) in yourselves (in your own nature) which will become your shelter in miserable determination (decision).
- 19) And if you slay (kill/murder) people of your kind (human beings) then you are also slaying (killing/murdering) the truth in yourselves which slumbers in the depths of your inner nature and which you only need to awaken in order to be fair (responsible) and righteous (conscientious); you cast dross onto your inner nature and this casts it out with Gewalt, by means of which you commit evil deeds and bring yourselves to a fall, and in doing so you mercilessly let your high inner world (consciousness) become wild.
- 20) If you are looking for a decision for enmity, then the decision has truly already come to you, because it is given



by the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) so that you may recognise them, follow them and distance yourselves (turn away) from evil, the unfair (irresponsible), virtueless, unrighteous (conscienceless) and from enmity; if you do however turn towards enmity against people of your kind (fellow human beings), then they will also return to enmity, and truly your enmity will be of no use (produce nothing of goodness), no matter how numerous you may be.

- 21) All of you who want to be knowing (conscious) in the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), open your ears to the teaching of the prophets and listen to the words of the true prophets and do not turn yourselves away from them, for as long as you hear them speaking.
- 22) Do not be arrogant (vain) and do not assume (believe) fallaciously that you are listening to the words of the prophets when you are in fact not listening to them and you do not understand (do not realise) their words.
- 23) Truly, the worst amongst people of your kind (human beings) are those who hear the truth but who conduct themselves in falseness (deviousness) like ones who are deaf and mute and pretend that they do not hear the truth and could not speak about it because they do not understand, but want to live knowingly (consciously) as unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones).
- 24) And if there is still anything of goodness in them, then they suppress it because they prefer wealth rather than following the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation); therefore they do not want to hear or to speak, because they turn away from the truth in unwillingness (aversion).
- 25) Do rightfully in all things and learn everything about the truth that you can learn; therefore listen to the true prophets, when they call you with the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life which is their teaching and is created from the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation); and learn the truth from the teaching of the prophets so that you give yourselves true life and know that you must gather all people of your kind (humankind) to the truth if you do not want to suffer your downfall and one day want to depart (migrate/emigrate) into the firmaments (universe) and onto the earths (worlds/planets).
- 26) Beware of all tribulation which you can create from unintellect (dumbness) and undiscernment (irrationality) and does not simply strike those amongst you who are inequitable (irresponsible) and unrighteous (conscienceless) and who do unright, because it always strikes everyone since you are a totality (community) with all people of your kind (humankind).
- 27) And always think that you can only be strong and not waver in fear if you stand together so that nothing can sweep you away; you yourselves must shield yourselves from evil, from calamity and from all terrible things, because it is only through you giving yourselves strength and you giving yourselves help and you providing yourselves with good things and you being thankful that you can bask in pleasure.
- 28) Do not act wrongly concerning the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), and do not act wrongly concerning the true prophets just as you shall not knowingly (consciously) act wrongly amongst yourselves and shall not practise lovelessness or unfaithfulness, neither lying nor slander (calumny), nor hatred, nor revenge and nor retaliation, nor outrage (acts of Gewalt/torture/murder) nor defilement (violation), and nor trafficking in people of your kind (human beings), man, woman and child; and you also shall not incite battles (wars), nor unfreedom (bondage), unpeace, misdeeds (crimes) and nor jealousy, nor voracity, nor stinginess and nothing else that is an infringement of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation).
- 29) And know that your goods and possessions and all your riches shall not be a temptation for you to be avaricious; and be thoughtful (reminded) that your children are a richness of your clan (family), but are not to be put to work like those amongst you who have come of age (grown-ups); and be thoughtful (reminded) that you shall not sell your children (offer them for sale) or defile (misuse) them for your revelry (sexuality); your children are the reward of your love in togetherness, therefore you shall also keep (care for and educate) them in love and guard (protect) them in deference (honourableness); and consider that your children are the time to come (future) for all people of your kind (humankind), because they are the ones who continue your heritage; love your children as you love yourselves and teach them the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) so that they may be rightfully led (educated) and bear this heritage in the time to come (future).
- 30) Know that if you fear unright and unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), as well as virtuelessness, unpeace and lovelessness, hatred, revenge and retaliation, outrage (act of Gewalt), unfreedom (bondage), all disgracefulness (badness) and all infamous actions (crimes) then you will be spared from all the terrible things and calamity that you bring down on yourselves through your undiscernment (irrationality).
- 31) Do not be ones unknowing of the truth and do not forge intrigues (guilefulnesses) against people of your kind (next ones/human beings) so that you are not captured by them and that they do not kill you or drive you away.
- 32) If the words of the teaching of the true prophets are presented to you, then open your ears and listen because



their words are nothing at all like the false, hazy speeches (fables) of the old ones that they learned from the false prophets.

- 33) And do not lend your ear to the false prophets who taught that their gods and tin gods would have stones rained down on you from the firmament or would bring down painful punishment on you if you acted against their wishes and directives (commands), because truly this is only lies.
- 34) The creation of all things (Creation) is not like the fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods who supposedly demand punishment and obedience from you; the creation of all things (Creation) and its laws and recommendations are however free from punishment and obedience.
- 35) Therefore, people of your kind (human beings) do not need any excuse towards the creation of all things (creation) if you commit errors and infamous actions (crimes), because truly if you commit unright and misdeeds then you only need an excuse for yourselves and amongst people of your kind (human beings), because you are yourselves responsible for vindication (responsibility) because you are your own teacher (master) and protector, therefore you yourselves determine your own accountability and unaccountability, even if you do not want to know this.
- 36) And if you do not change and cannot excuse yourselves to yourselves and to people of your kind (fellow human beings) because you do not turn to the truth, then do not be presumptuous (do not dare) to be unfair to the truth, to prophets and to those who strive to proclaim it and teach you the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation); and do not dare to whistle at them, to disrupt them by handclapping, catcalls and base words, or to incite others to do so.
- 37) Truly, those amongst you who are ones unknowing of the truth and who deny the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) and of the creation of all things (Creation), you dare to expend (use) your possessions and riches for bribery in order to turn (lead) away the ones knowing of the truth, fair ones (responsible ones), righteous ones (conscientious ones) and virtuous ones from the way of the truth; and certainly they will continue in their doing until calamity befalls them which gives them cause for remorse and they will be overwhelmed with the rightness of the truth, so that they eliminate the state (condition) in themselves which is a shadow world (hell) for them.
- 38) Those amongst you are lost in yourselves who do not separate the evil from the good, therefore you heap evil upon evil and you create darkness in yourselves with regard to equitableness (fairness), righteousness (conscientiousness) and virtuousness, as well as with regard to love and consonance (harmony), freedom and peace, so you are full of terrible things and you spin deeper and deeper into your shadow world (hell).
- 39) However, if you stand back (turn away) from all your inner terrible things of inequity (unfairness) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and you turn to equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness) and the real truth, then you can forgive yourselves what has past; and if you really turn to the truth, then you will find love and peace in yourselves, as well as freedom and consonance (harmony) by means of which you will also turn to virtues.
- 40) Fight against the evil and unfairness (irresponsibility) that is in you and against all terrible things so that you are no longer persecuted by them and your knowledge and your wisdom are directed to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation); however, if you stand back (turn away) from them and continue to follow evil, then truly you create further lovelessness, unpeace, unfreedom (bondage) and dissonance (disharmony) in yourselves.
- 41) And if you turn your back on your inequity (unfairness), unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and on all your inner terrible things, then you will become your own protector and your own perfect helper.
- 42) And know that whatever you do which is unright, it will come back on you; and battle (war) also belongs to unright and great terribleness and you shall avoid it with all good and fair (responsible) means as well as with love; only peace and freedom, love and consonance (harmony) amongst all peoples of your kind (humankind) is the way of equitableness (fairness) and of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation); consider, battle (war) is never a way to the creation of peace, freedom, love and consonance (harmony), but only a way of mishappening, hatred, unpeace, unfreedom (bondage), dissonance (disharmony), pillage, revenge and retaliation, robbery, destruction and boundless outrage with bloody deeds (killing) and defilement (violation); only you as people of your kind (human beings) have the might to avoid battles (wars) and to allow solely the laws and recommendations of the love to prevail, as they are given through the creation of all things (Creation), therefore you shall follow their truth so that it goes well with all people of your kind (humankind).
- 43) Do not stand on the side of evil and unfairness (irresponsibility), of unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and of all terrible things, rather stand on the side of right so that you do not fall into the depths of an abyss (of unright); if unclearness and dissensions (tensions/strifes) arise between people of your kind (fellow human beings) or between your peoples, then search for a mutual arrangement so that you may consider (clarify) your conflict (altercation) and unfavour (enmity) and create peace amongst one another; and bring about such



arrangements for consideration (clarification) of the situation before it is too late and your true discernment (rationality) turns into undiscernment (irrationality); determine through your agreements that peace and freedom as well as consonance (harmony) shall prevail rather than battle (war) being considered, because it is only in this wise that protection on Earth can be given to all people of your kind (humankind), and the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) can be fulfilled.

- 44) Do not concoct pictures (dreams/illusions) of how you can suppress people of your kind (fellow human beings) and your peoples, because doing such is not rightful and evidence of your pusillanimousness (fear and cowardice) against people of your kind (human beings), because you foment discord (resentment) against the truth and equitableness (fairness) which demands equality and freedom amongst all people of your kind (humankind), but this does not appeal to you because you want to rule over people of your kind (fellow human beings) and to exploit and capture (take advantage of) them in any wise whatsoever; and do not foment discord (resentment) against people of your kind (fellow human beings) if they are not willing to bend to your desire for something, since discord (resentment) creates enmity, which is against the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 45) And if you negotiate with people of your kind (fellow human beings) and reach agreements, then do not let them appear any less in your eyes than you are yourselves, so that all are of the same worth and the matter to be agreed on (arranged) may be brought about to the benefit of all; and bring about (arrange) everything so that a definitive decision is reached in the matter, through which peace and freedom and therefore also consonance (harmony) is given (guaranteed) for all parties.
- 46) And when you meet to reach agreements, then be firm in the matter so that the matter in hand is only regulated in the wise that peace, harmony and concord (consonance) prevail and also that freedom may be kept so that things go well with you.
- 47) And act in agreements in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), so that you do not foment discord (resentment) amongst one another and do not waste your power of true discernment (rationality), so that you remain truly steadfast.
- 48) Do not be ostentatious and do not go out of your dwelling in order to be seen and cheered by people of your kind (fellow human beings) and in order to appear brilliant before them, because in doing so you take the true discernment (intellect) away from people of your kind (fellow human beings) and make them into biddable ones (subservient ones) to you and into zealots (fanatics), which leads them to forget their own welfare and to do everything that you demand from them, whether it be robbing and killing or anything else that is baleful.
- 49) Do not assume that your ostentation and your brilliance (show off) appear as pleasing deeds to people of your kind (fellow human beings), whether it be through your actions or words or it be through a belief (assumptions) in gods, tin god or demons, or through delusional teachings of false prophets and false sages; be at all times honourable and equitable so that none amongst the people of your kind (fellow human beings) can have anything against you; and be at all times honourable and have regard for (turn to) the truth so that you do not have to turn on your heels (flee) when you do unright; truly, have nothing to do with unright, but always see the truth, right and equitableness (fairness) so that you have nothing to fear.
- 50) Do not be hypocrites and not deceivers, but trust at all times in the truth and follow it and build on right, on equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness), then you will live in peace and in freedom with yourselves and will also carry out everything of goodness to people of your kind (fellow human beings), therefore they will learn goodness from you.
- 51) However, be at all times watchful and make sure that unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) do not cheat you and hypocritically deceive you, making you lose your face (honour/dignity) and turning your back (turning away) from the truth; consider that if you turn your back (turn away) from the truth then a fire of defilement will be kindled in you, which will consume you if you fall into remorse and shame.
- 52) And heed that you do nothing of unright with your hands, because you cannot make it good again, since everything that you do cannot be taken back (not be undone); therefore if you have committed an action, whether rightful or unrightful, then it remains done and cannot be recalled.
- 53) And if you do not uphold the signs (evidence) of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), then you are punishing yourselves in your inner nature since you will not find any rest or any peace, and neither any love, freedom and consonance (harmony), so that you will live your life in inner distress and in misery, as well as in unsatisfaction and in pity of yourselves (feeling sorry for oneself) as well as in self-torment.
- 54) And if you live in your own self-torment and in pity of yourselves (feeling sorry for oneself), then you will find no pity in yourselves for yourselves, because your undiscernment (irrationality) does not allow you to find what is false in yourselves, so that you may recognise (see) and eliminate it, and so that you change to the better in



your inner constitution (condition) and become joyous of the life.

- 55) So do not repudiate the signs (evidence) of the truth, so that you do not eliminate yourselves in yourselves because of your unknowledge of the truth, so that you do not drown yourselves in your own inner misery and you are not malefactors (misdemeanants) against yourselves.
- 56) Do not be the worst amongst people of your kind (humankind) by being ungrateful towards life and denying the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), thereby killing (murdering) yourselves and people of your kind (human beings); killing (murdering) yourselves or others, be it out of chickenheartedness (cowardice) against illness, pain or fear, or be it out of jealousy, hatred or revenge and retaliation, so it is unrightful and against the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which honour life in all its kinds, whether in the present existence (life) of days on Earth or in the life of death (death-life) in the world of invisibility (other world).
- 57) Make a bond (agreement) with the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) and of the creation of all things (Creation) which you never break and which shall be permanent, so that you may lead a fair (responsible) life in righteousness (conscientiousness) and in liberation (fulfilment).
- 58) And if you are in a bond (agreement) with the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) then you are propitious (well-disposed) to no unright, and so you do not wage any battles (wars) and you do not live in fear, because you are continuously admonished to do nothing that is unrightful.
- 59) And if you fear betrayal by people of your kind (fellow human beings) or by a people, then do not cast your promises or agreements down before their feet according to equitableness (convenience/fairness), rather strive through words of true discernment (rationality), wisdom and peaceableness to achieve a clarifying outcome (agreement), so that peace may come about.
- 60) And if unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) believe that they might have exceeded (unduly advantaged) you, then do not leave them in any doubt that you know about their dishonesty, so that they recognise (see) their defilement and can draw their own conclusion (see) that they are wrecking themselves through their deeds.
- 61) Do not strive to wage battles (wars) against other peoples, and therefore do not strive to gather warriors (armed forces) and to cross the boundaries (frontiers) of other people and wage battles (wars) in order to instil dread in them and to kill them; strive not to have any enemies, neither those that you know nor those that you do not know; always do your utmost to live in peace and freedom, as well as in consonance (harmony) with people of your kind (fellow human beings) and with other peoples, as well as with all people of your kind (humankind) and enmity never arises in you and around you; truly, if you strive for friendship instead of enmity then it will be paid back to you, and no unright will happen, just as you will not suffer any unright, any misery or any hardship, so you will live well protected.
- 62) If you have enemies and these are inclined towards peace, then also be inclined to peace towards them and forgive them so that the enmity turns into friendship.
- 63) However, if you have enemies who make as if they are inclined towards peace but only want to deceive you in this, then the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) shall be enough for you, so you strengthen yourselves with its help and do rightfully towards your enemies by being well-disposed to them nevertheless and standing by them and teaching (instructing) them in the truth if they have the sense for it.
- 64) The laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) include love for all people of your kind (human beings), and therefore you shall take this love and use it also for all people of your kind (humankind) and for everything that is on Earth and lives and crawls and flies there; and truly, the love of the creation of all things (Creation) is included in all its created creations (creatures/creations/life forms) and in everything in existence (existing), therefore also in people of your kind (human beings), so you only have to awaken it in yourselves and bring it into activity (existence).
- 65) So the prophets teach you these things in ample measure so that you give your prudence (attention) to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and follow them, so your number of ones knowing of the truth increases.
- 66) Learn the truth through the teaching of the prophets so that you do not incite people of your kind (fellow human beings) to fight against the truth; learn the truth through the teaching of the prophets so that you may be steadfast in the truth and in following the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), so you overcome everything and turn your back on everything that is unrightful and disastrous and calamitous which you are accustomed to do in your undiscernment (unintellect) because you do not understand (do not realise) the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 67) Lighten your burden of your undiscernment (unintellect) and your intransigence (irrationality) as well as your unfreedom (bondage) and lovelessness, your unpeace, dissonance (disharmony), hatred and jealousy, revenge, retaliation and your weakness in order to become steadfast ones who take joy in life and wellbeing.
- 68) And let it be said to you once again that you shall not wage any battles (wars) and shall not take prisoners in



a fight either, because freedom is given to all people of your kind (human beings) and to all kinds of life (life forms) through the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation); and if it is the case nevertheless that you have prisoners, people of your kind (human beings) who have done something to deserve a punishment then you shall only restrict their freedom in such a wise that they do not have to spend their existence (life) behind walls, but instead in places of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place) where they can live in freedom and be responsible for their own provision (food/clothing, etc.), whilst however being excluded from the totality of people of your kind (society); and if you keep animals and other creatures in unfreedom, then ensure that their living space is sufficiently large for them to have an adequate space for freedom; and do not keep slaves, thralls or other subjugated ones, because they also live in imprisonment since they are the property of others and do not have their own freedom which allows them to do and to omit to do as they want, so they are the suppressed possession of slave masters, masters of subjugated ones and masters of thralls who do not have their own freedom of decision (free will) and are robbed of freedom.

- 69) And if you have fallible ones who are brought to places of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place), then take care for the wellbeing of their body, their inner world (consciousness) and their psyche so they are not beset by tribulation and thereby come to harm; and if fallible ones are brought to places of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place) who are regarded as a great danger for people of your kind (human beings) because it is certain that they will fall back into their outrageous (criminal) activities, then also provide for their wellbeing, and also that they can provide for themselves (food/clothing), and that they have access to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, but they shall remain in the place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place) for the duration of their life and so there is no longer any danger for the totality of people of your kind (society).
- 70) And teach the prisoners, the fallible ones, who are in your hands or at places of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place) that they shall recognise (see) the good and truthly in themselves, so that it may go better with them than before (previously) when they did unrightful things; and be benevolent and fair to them and forgive them if they show remorse.
- 71) However, if they only want to betray you because they do not change their attitude (mentality), in order to be able to leave (be released from) the place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place), then retain might over them and have them continue to remain in the place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place) so they can no longer carry out any outrages (crimes) against the totality of people of your kind (society) or against individuals of you.
- 72) Truly, if you are ones knowing of the truth and go out (leave) or remain in your homesteads in order to teach the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to those unknowing in the teaching, just as the true prophets do, then do not dispute the truth of the teaching with people of your kind (fellow human beings), but rather stand by them with help and also give them shelter if they require it, so that you are not strangers but friends to one another; and consider, even if you are strangers amongst one another as people of your kind (fellow human beings), so you shall nevertheless be conscientious (responsible) for one another by standing by (helping) one another when assistance (help) is required or recognisably (visibly) a necessity; and this not only applies to people of your kind (human beings) as individuals but also to an entire people and all people of your kind (humankind).
- 73) Awaken to the truth of the love as is firstly given and secondly recommended through the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), so that you only do good things to one another and do not foment calamity against yourselves and against people of your kind (fellow human beings), and therefore no chaos comes about.
- 74) And if you are knowing ones in the truth and you teach people of your kind (fellow human beings) the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as the true prophets also teach it and because you know about the truthly truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), are connected to them and follow them, then you are truthfully fair ones (responsible ones), righteous ones (conscientious ones) and full of virtues, so you forgive those who are against you, whatever their reasons may be.
- 75) And if you are knowing ones in the truth, then do not quarrel for the truth, rather live according to it and teach it, and therefore you are in your knowledge about the truth and in life an example for them, by means of which you always stand close to people of your kind (fellow human beings), whether you are blood relations, friends or strangers of one another.





Chapter 9

- 1) Make a declaration of a solemn release from any attachment (obligation) towards gods and tin gods and their servants of gods and servants of tin gods to whom you have made promises and in whom you believe.
- 2) Free yourselves from all beliefs (assumptions) of your godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) and learn the knowledge about the truth of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), so that you become knowing ones of the truth, following the true laws and recommendations of the life, so that you do not ruin anything that has been given to you through the appearance (nature) and through anything else of the fertilisation of the life (Creation); do not continue to spend your existence (life) in submissiveness and servitude (bondage) to gods and tin gods and to servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because submission casts you down into an abasement of yourselves, into subservience and denial of yourselves (self-denial), so that you are unfree and chained and cannot live according to your own determination (will) because you are bound by amenableness (obedience/servility).
- 3) Be unattached (free) from all gods, tin gods, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, regret your belief (assumptions) in them and turn yourselves away from them so that you become strong and can no longer ruin anything that is given to you in the extent (entirety) through the fertilisation of the life (Creation), such as true love and freedom, peace and consonance (harmony) in yourselves; make yourselves unattached (free) from gods, tin gods, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because it is through their belief (assumptions) which they have forced on you that they cause you pain in your thoughts and feelings, so in them you fall prey to uncertainty as well as anguish and fear, wherein you persist because they threaten you with punishment and judgement of the gods and tin gods.
- 4) Also, do not make any exception for those servants of gods and servants of tin gods as well as those godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) with whom you have entered into an agreement (credo), because they are in their entirety connected to the lie against the truth and they slander (calumniate) the fertilisation of the life (Creation) by praying and supplicating to gods and tin gods which are however nothing more than hazy pictures (fantasies) of people of your kind (human beings) who have fallen into confusion in their inner world (consciousness); do not heed the agreement (credo) entered into, because it is without value and is based on confused directives (regulations) of godly (religious) belief-oriented zealots (fanatics).
- 5) But consider that even the servants of gods and servants of tin gods are people of your kind (human beings) and therefore also they are not safe (protected) from erroneous assumption and confusion, therefore they pray to gods and tin gods and spend their existence (life) in belief (assumptions) in them; and because they are also people of your kind (human beings), treat them as such and do not persecute, seize or kill (murder) them, rather be kindhearted to them and instruct (teach) them the truth wherever you meet them; therefore do not wait in ambush for them and do not establish any ambushade against them, rather instruct (teach) them rightfully and in love so that they may recognise (see) their unknowledgeness of the truth and repent, so they turn to the real truth of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, and become free for the way to the truthly truth.
- 6) And if a servant of gods or servant of tin gods searches for protection amongst you, then grant him or her commensurate protection and, if he or she is willing, instruct (teach) him or her in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; and grant him or her protection and provision (nourishment) until he or she can once again safely continue on his or her way and reach the places of his or her safety (homestead, etc.) without danger.
- 7) And consider, there can never be an agreement (arrangement) between yourselves and the gods and tin gods, because they are only hazy pictures (fantasies) and without power, without knowledge, without love and without wisdom, and therefore, for the same reasons, there can also be no agreement (arrangement) between gods, tin gods and servants of gods and servants of tin gods, and thus if the servants of gods and servants of tin gods nevertheless claim that they have an agreement (arrangement) then they are shameful (disgraceful) liars and knowing (conscious) manipulators (cheaters), miserable ones (rascals) and Hanaken (riff-raff).
- 8) And even if the servants of gods and servants of tin gods prevail over you through agreements (credos), then there is nevertheless no bond (connection) between them and you, neither any blood relationship, nor do they heed any agreement made with you (any connection of belief), because they believe themselves to be superior to you; truly, they think they are more than you, and therefore they only say pleasing things to you with their mouths, whereas their attitude (mentality) refuses to set themselves equal with you, because truly most of them are full of malice.
- 9) The servants of gods and servants of tin gods sell you for a miserable price in order to multiple their riches through you and to lead you into the erroneous assumption of belief (assumptions), false signs (evidence/testimonies/avowals/confessions) of the godly (religious) belief (assumptions) and of the fabricated



(invented) gods and tin gods, so that you turn away from the way of the truth, and so they can repugnantly enslave you (make you in thrall to them).

- 10) Truly, they do not heed any bond (connection of belief) with you and therefore they do not keep (maintain) any faithfulness in a bond because they only heed their own false belief (assumptions) and are true misdoers against you because they lead you into evil erroneous assumption through false teachings.
- 11) They practise their submissive service to gods and tin gods and lie that they are your brothers and sisters, and they give you false signs (evidence/testimonies/avowals/confessions) of their belief (assumptions) so that you assume (believe) that they are signs (evidence) of the truth, whilst everything is mere lies, slanders (calumnies) and cheating.
- 12) And if you ask them about their agreement (credo) and about their oath and you approach their belief (assumptions) in an objective (neutral) wise, then they assume themselves attacked (accused) and fight (battle) against you as self-appointed leaders and representation of their belief (assumption) and of their gods and tin gods and accuse (blame) you of unbelief, because truly, they have no respect (venerability) towards you, because you do not stray from the truth.
- 13) And many amongst them violate the rights and offend against the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), because they secretly commit an offence in libidity (sexually) on children and on man and woman; and it is the servants of gods and servants of tin gods who are in dispute against the truliness of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and want to drive those away from it who live in constancy (unity/coalescence) with it; but do not be afraid of them because they do not have any might over you if you do not give it to them, because consider that if you are ones who are knowing of the truth then you stand above all fear with your dignity.
- 14) However, do not fight against the servants of gods and servants of tin gods through strife or through punishment from your own hand, rather let them be lost in their belief (assumptions) in their submissiveness to their gods and tin gods, because they must find the truth themselves; and it is only when they turn to the truth and they achieve victory over their false belief that you can teach them and help them onto the way of the truth, so that they may bring themselves healing (cognition) from their unknowledge of the truth, and become ones who are knowing of the truth.
- 15) If rage rises up in you against the servants of gods and servants of tin gods, then banish (drive out) the rage in you and choose forgiveness in yourselves so that you do rightfully and are attached to (follow) the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation).
- 16) Never assume that you have been abandoned by the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) because you do not recognise them or do not understand them, because if you turn yourselves to them and do not conduct strife against them (do not set yourselves against them), then they will become trusted friends to you if you become knowing (conscious) of them and you know what you are doing.
- 17) The servants of gods and servants of tin gods are however unable to recognise (see) the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) in their submissiveness, because they testify against it (Creation) through their belief (assumptions) in their gods and tin gods; and truly the deeds of the servants of gods and servants of tin gods are in vain, so they burn in the fire of their false belief (assumptions) and cannot liberate themselves from it.
- 18) Those amongst you who are connected to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, you shall be an ideal to all in following and fulfilling the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) so that you are a sign (evidence) to the ones who are unknowing of the truth that they do not have to be afraid of the truth if they find the right way.
- 19) As people of your kind (human beings), you are all the same, you have the same rights and conscientiousnesses (duties), therefore the one is no more than another; and all people of your kind (human beings) are integrated into the unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness), so you are also integrated into fallibilities (errors) that you commit and learn from them in order to give enough consideration to the unfolding (evolution).
- 20) Do not assume that you can spread the truth-teaching of the true laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), as is presented through the true prophets, by means of battles (wars) or in any other wise through Gewalt (terror) and coercion, because truly you only take the highest level in this and make a gain (success) if you fulfil your deeds of teaching in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and so you act out of love alone and heed freedom and peace as well as consonance (harmony).
- 21) Spread the joyful message of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in a peaceful wise amongst all those who open their ears to it and want to learn; never attempt to draw attention to the truth-teaching with Gewalt (terror), just as you shall also not represent the teaching with the sword or with other weapons of the dangerousness and killing, but rather only in true love and equitableness (fairness), in peace and freedom, so that a consonance (harmony) is given and that delight and permanent happiness



may arise.

- 22) The teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life shall never be passed on (spread) outrageously (using Gewalt), nor through lying and nor through slander (calumny), because as a teaching from the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), it is a teaching of the love, peace, freedom and consonance (harmony) from which neither outrage (act of Gewalt), bloody deed (murder), persecution, battle (war) nor strife can be allowed to emanate, but only permanent well-protectedness and all values of goodness.
- 23) Truly, living in well-protectedness in the love of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) is the highest good that can accrue to people of your kind (human beings) and in which you can dwell (live) forever as a magnificent reward if you are only fruitful (bearing) of your true discernment (rationality) and you recognise and follow the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) through your insight (intellect).
- 24) If you are undisguised (sincere) and strong in the knowledge about the truth, then it is also possible for you to keep your sisters, brothers and your father and your mother without blemish (without virtuelessness) in honour and dignity, even if they prefer a belief (assumptions) in gods or tin gods to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because they are the ones who are unknowing of the truth; therefore you are not unfair ones (irresponsible ones) if you have them as friends and love and honour and appreciate them, because they belong to your blood; therefore you are not unfair ones (irresponsible ones) either if you have acquaintances and friends, man and woman, and they prefer a belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods, but you are however undisguised (sincere) and strong in the knowledge about the truth, so that you do not become inconstant in it.
- 25) And if your father and your mother, your brothers, your sisters, your wife or husband or your clan (relations) or people of your kind (fellow human beings) have fallen prey to gods and tin gods, then you shall not make them your enemies because of this, rather esteem (honour and value) them highly because, regardless of how you look at it, they are people of your kind (human beings) who are due (entitled to) honour and dignity which you shall show them; and if they prize their riches and their commerce and their dwellings more highly (more valuefully) than the truth about the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and the recognition and fulfilment of the laws and recommendations of itself and its appearance (nature), then love and honour and appreciate them nevertheless as people of your kind (human beings), because they have proceeded from the primal (creative) unchangeabilities (principles) as you have, so you are one and the same kind, without difference, with the same rights and obligations (duties) with regard to the fulfilment of your existence (life) and the unfolding (evolution) of your inner world (consciousness).
- 26) Truly, if you wage battles (wars), then there is no god and no tin gods who lead you on the battlefield (field of war) because they are only hazy pictures (fantasies) of godly (religious) zealots (fanatics) who want to make you proud of them; everything godly (religious observances) is useless because fabricated (invented) forms such as godheads and tin gods possess neither power nor ability to effect anything; therefore, if you wage battles (wars) then they can neither help you to victory nor to flight.
- 27) Truly, it is decided (determined) through the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) that peace and love, as well as freedom and consonance (harmony) shall rule amongst people of your kind (human beings), therefore you shall follow them in order to receive a good reward.
- 28) Therefore it is also recommended to you that you also turn to those people of your kind (fellow human beings) in goodwill (respect), who are unknowing in the truth and need your instruction and help.
- 29) Consider however that the servants of gods and servants of tin gods who are unclean (without knowledge) in the knowledge of the truth, do everything to keep their believers in their gods and tin gods away from the truthfully truth of the reality of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and the laws and recommendations of itself and of its appearance (nature); therefore they attempt to ensure that those who are looking for the real truth of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) cannot approach the truth, by besetting their believers with apprehensions (anxieties and fear) of punishment from their gods and tin gods if they leave the belief (assumptions) in them, whilst promising them at the same time a liberation from punishment as well as a fullness (abundance) of love, blissful happiness as well as richness in consciousness and wellbeing if they stay with their belief (assumptions).
- 30) Fight in yourselves against the enticements of the servants of gods and servants of tin gods and against all those who have the audacity to slander (calumniate) and call into question the truth of the fertilisation of the life and the laws and recommendations of itself and of its appearance (nature); and be certain (knowing) that their actions are illicit (forbidden) and heinous (villainous) for the sake of right and equitableness (fairness), because by doing so they lead people of your kind (human beings) into shameful erroneous assumption far from any cognition of the truthfully truth of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation); they do not follow the real truth, and they will only do so when they have to pay tribute from their own inner world (consciousness) for the acknowledging of the real truth when they become knowing (conscious) of it.
- 31) What the servants of gods and servants of tin gods are speaking about and fallaciously teaching is not the



word of the truth, but only the word from their mouth which they think up through their thoughts and their inner world (consciousness); and therefore they only imitate the speeches of those who were already ones unknowing of the truth before them and who were of the same kind in their zealotry (fanaticism) which weighs banefully on them because they are misled.

- 32) The servants of gods and servants of tin gods have taken the old scribes and false prophets as their masters (examples) who extensively falsified the real truth of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and its laws and recommendations and made it unrecognisable; and they also lied that the truthly prophets were gods and children of gods or their representatives (substitutes) or heralds of evil (devils); and like the old servants of gods and servants of tin gods, the old scribes and false prophets demanded, your servants of gods and servants of tin gods and those versed in godly (religious) writings also demand (command) that you must join their belief (assumptions) and pray to their gods and tin gods or to the evil (devil) and supposedly venerable ones (holy ones) and that you shall not place the real truth of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) nor its laws and recommendations next to these.
- 33) The servants of gods and servants of tin gods would very much like the light of the truth of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) to be extinguished by the words coming from their mouth, but they are unable to do this over time because the light of the truth is perfect and will light up the world in its time, even though those unknowing of the truth and the servants of gods and servants of tin gods may dislike it.
- 34) And the real truth is that given to the true prophets so that they may guide the leadership of the truthly teaching of the truth and bring their cognition of the truth to you in order that it may prevail in you and liberate you from all the false avowals in gods and tin gods, in servants of gods and servants of tin gods and in godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults); be knowing (conscious) that many of the servants of gods and servants of tin gods and their godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) seize your goods and your riches and consume them through false means of belief (assumptions), and so they attempt to lead (turn) you away from the way of the truth with regard to the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations; and truly many amongst them heap up gold and silver by enriching themselves from you.
- 35) And they clothe themselves in expensive garments and have valuable coverings (hats) on their head, decorated with gold and silver and precious stones, and also they wear much valuable jewellery which they gain from your riches by exploiting you; and through their garments and their covering (hats) and through their jewellery they accuse (blame) you for your foolishness for giving them, as a result of your belief in gods and belief in tin gods, the things which you laboriously heap up (save) for yourselves to live on in old age.
- 36) Just as the servants of gods and servants of tin gods altogether exploit you with lies and slanders (calumnies) and fight (battle) against you so that you cannot find the truth of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) or its laws and recommendations, so you shall also fight (battle) against them in a good wise so that you do not open your ears to their lies and slanders (calumnies) of the truth, so that you do not present them with your riches and do not nourish them at your breast (do not pay for their welfare).
- 37) Truly, putting off learning the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life promotes a multiplication of the truth-unknowledge, because the ones who have no knowledge will be deluded even more through this by the untruth of the teachings of the false prophets and of the servants of gods and servants of tin gods who ban you the truth-teaching and do not allow you to learn from it; truly they only want to allow you to learn things of writings and teachings that correspond to their godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) and with their dogmas and submissiveness (belief), because they are zealots (fanatical believers) who make the goodness and the truth of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations appear evil (devilish) and make the real evil appear pleasing to you.
- 38) Do not be believers in gods and tin gods and in their servants (hands/helpers), for whom you are supposed to cast yourselves down onto the earth and worship and honour them, when they say to you that you shall walk on the way of the gods and tin gods; truly, you shall turn to the truthly life here below on Earth and be content with it; however, you shall not pray to gods and tin gods or to people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up as gods, their envoys or representatives (substitutes); and truly, the enjoyment of earthly life is not small, but very great and full of happiness and joy, full of peace and love, freedom and consonance (harmony) if you follow the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), the teaching that is given through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 39) And the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) not only demand (recommend) to maintain peace, love and freedom and consonance (harmony) amongst all people of your kind (humankind) and to take care not to go out to fight or wage battles (wars), but they also demand (recommend) that you do not practise outrageous (inhumane) punishment on people of your kind (human beings) and that you shall not harm the body and life of people of your kind (fellow human beings), either their inner world



(consciousness) or the psyche; truly, you have might over all things, but be fair and use your might rightfully as well.

- 40) Help people of your kind (the next ones), and help the other people of your kind (fellow human beings), just as you shall also help all people of your kind (humankind) so that everyone may escape from unknowledge, hardship and misery and are not forced to remain therein; and teach them that they must not be sorrowful for their unknowledge, their hardship and their misery if they turn to the truth which contains love and knowledge as well as peace, freedom and consonance (harmony) in itself, by means of which every person of your kind (human being) can elevate himself or herself to the highest heights and no longer debase themselves through the word of the slanderers (calumniators) against the truth and the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation).
- 41) But do not go forth, lightly or heavily (in lightness or onerosity), and do not struggle with your goods and riches or with your blood for the sake of the truth, because love, peace, freedom, consonance (harmony) as well as joy and happiness cannot be purchased with goods or riches, or paid for with blood.
- 42) And do not take any reward or any other gain if you teach the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life with your own mouth amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings), so that you are not as the servants of gods and servants of tin gods who pronounce with their mouth their false teachings of the false prophets for a high reward and blind (delude) you before alters, and who also rebuke people of your kind (human beings) from high places (pulpits) in hypocrisy; never take any compensation (payment) if you proclaim the truth-teaching out of your mouth, because the truth is not yours, but rather belongs to the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and its laws and recommendations, therefore you shall not conduct commerce with it through your mouth, because it is unrightful to trade (sell) the truth-teaching or advice from it through the mouth in return for compensation (payment); however, it is indeed rightful for you to take signs of gratitude (gifts) for your teaching and advice from your mouth if you do not demand (ask for) the same, but rather if it is given to you out of voluntariness and kindheartedness; and it is rightful for you to take compensation (payment) for the journey if you go out and travel in order to explain the truth-teaching through your mouth at a desired location; and also it is rightful for you to take in exchange (purchase price/remuneration) if you produce writings and sources (books) with the truth-teaching and you release (sell) them.
- 43) If you follow the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), then your worries will be taken away from you, and truly you will not lag behind in your unfolding (evolution), because when you know the real truth and follow it, things will be fine with you; and truly, if you recognise the truth and follow it, then you will recognise those amongst you who want to do you harm and who are liars and slanderers (calumniators) against the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so you will be able to guard yourselves against (watch out for) them and not allow them to make you turn away from the truth.
- 44) You who know about the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and about the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and who follow the laws and recommendations, you do not have to apply in yourselves especially for permission to be liberated from strife and not to fight with goods and blood for the truth, because through the following of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), you are already liberated from all strife, as well as from fighting for the truth with your goods and your blood.
- 45) And you who know about the truth of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), do not let yourselves be asked by those who are unknowing of the truth to stand by them and instruct (teach) them with your knowledge about the truth and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, rather be open (honest) with them, without conceit (imperiousness) and always ready to give (pass on) your knowledge without having to be asked to do so; do not leave people of your kind (fellow human beings) in doubt that you will always be helpful to them in finding the truth if they are striving to turn to the truth; and you shall not be vacillating in doubt regarding whether to help each person of your kind (next one) in finding the truth if he or she is striving for it and searching for enlightenment (clarification) from you.
- 46) And if you are not equipped with good knowledge in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, then do not decide to go out in order to spread the truth-teaching, rather be averse to such because without sufficient knowledge you can do more harm than good (success), therefore you shall stay back (remain at home) with the other sedentary ones (ones remaining at home) if you are not sufficiently skilful (well-versed/well-read) in the teaching.
- 47) If you go out to spread the truth and you are not sufficiently skilful (well-versed/well-read), then you will increase the worries of those who are to be taught, and also your own worries, because it is through your insufficient knowledge in the truth that you will run backwards and forwards without finding any stability, which gives rise



to discord between you and the ones to be taught because some will listen to you and some will be against you if you cannot explain the things of the truth to a sufficient extent (insufficiently), therefore leading to doubt and misunderstandings as well as outrage (acts of Gewalt).

- 48) And consider that many truth-unknowers and many unfair ones (irresponsible ones) are only concerned with striving for chaos and forging intrigues (guilefulnesses) against you, therefore they maliciously slander (calumniate) you if you are not steadfast in the truth-teaching; so you shall wait with the delivering (spreading) of the truth-teaching until the truth prevails (thrives) in you to such an extent that you are able to teach it rightfully, so that the unfair (irresponsible) conflict-seekers (troublemakers) who are unknowing of the truth cannot be averse to your explanation of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 49) Truly, many amongst those who are searching for the truth search for permission to stay back in the learning (just reflect) so that they are not put to the trial (proof), but truly, everyone is constantly put to the trial (proof) and cannot stay back (cannot continue reflecting), because the unfolding (evolution) continues without interruption and cannot be stopped, therefore everyone is befallen by it at any moment, even if many are unknowing and unfair in their inner nature and therefore create an inner shadow world (hell) in which they enclose themselves.
- 50) And there are many amongst those unknowing of the truth and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) who are mocking (gloating) if a calamity befalls you, and are saddened if goodness and wellbeing comes to you, but do not heed their evil impulsations, because they are unknowing and unfair and do not know what they do, and truly you can only show them compassion since they are going into confusion; do not however turn yourselves away from them, rather show them goodness and love and attempt to instruct them in the right attitude (behaviour) of their thoughts and feelings as well as in their assessment of things, so that they turn away from their wrong doing and enjoy right and fairness (responsibility).
- 51) And truly, nothing can befall you as your own foreordination (destiny) other than what you determine for yourselves, because just as you are your own protectors, so you are your own determiner (initiator) over yourselves and your doing, so you shall always trust yourselves and decide (determine) everything yourselves as is best, so that it may go well and favourably with you.
- 52) If you are expecting good things for yourselves, then direct your thoughts and feelings and your deeds in a good wise towards these things, because it is only thereby that you will come to what you wish and hope for yourselves, because all power always lies only by yourselves; however, if you act against this approach, then punishment will befall you through your own blame, because what you wish and hope for yourselves is not fulfilled.
- 53) And if you give (donate) to the poor and needy willingly or unwillingly simply for the sake of semblance (hypocrisy/sanctimoniousness), then you are making yourselves guilty of deceit, falseness (deviousness) and lying, therefore you shall only give donations in honesty and truthly kindheartedness, in order that you may receive honour and dignity for this in honesty.
- 54) Do not prevent yourselves from honestly giving alms (gifts) to the poor and needy or to any other good cause, because if you are righteous ones (responsible) then you do not allow yourselves to fall into passivity when you see poverty and need which you can relieve through gifts (alms and donations).
- 55) And truly, those amongst you who reproach those who are giving alms (gifts) in honesty, you would probably only be satisfied if you were to receive the alms (gifts) yourselves, but as you receive nothing of them then you are angry and reproach the righteous ones (conscientious ones) and fair ones (responsible ones).
- 56) Alms are only for the poor and needy, so those who are the entrusted ones (distributors) charged with the distribution of alms shall not make use (be beneficiaries) of the same, because truly sharing in the benefit of the alms by the entrusted ones (distributors) would be deception and thievery (theft) against the givers of alms and against the poor and needy; collectors of alms, as well as the entrusted ones (distributors) who hand over (give away/distribute) the collected alms in fair (commensurate) measure amongst the poor and needy shall not be entitled to take (siphon off) a cut (percentage) of the collected alms for themselves, because alms are a help in hardship which are expressly intended for the poor and needy and from which the entrusted ones (distributors) are not allowed to reward or enrich themselves; and if people of your kind (human beings) fall into hardship and misery through all kinds of inequity, cataclysm and destruction (catastrophes), whether it be through the appearance (nature) or through the hands of people of your kind (human beings), and if goods and gold and silver (money) are collected in order to help the desperate ones (those affected), whether the collection is undertaken by individuals amongst you or by several in a federation (group/society/organisation), then it is also not rightful for the collectors or the entrusted ones (distributors) to gain benefit (success) from what has been collected by channelling smaller or larger parts (percentages) off for themselves for their efforts (exertions) in order thereby to reward themselves and to reimburse themselves for their burden (expenses), because truly acting in this wise is full of shame, without dignity, full of deception and thievery



(theft) and contrary to the sense of providing help to those who need it; truly, it is a primal law of the Creation that people of your kind (human beings) shall always be helpful to people of your kind (human beings) without demanding any reward (remuneration/compensation) for this in any wise, because this effect proceeds equally from the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature), based on the presence (existence) of the fertilisation of the life (Creation).

- 57) Do not be amazed about the stinginess of many who have great riches, because they always demand more and more and greater riches, and at the same time they cannot rein in (moderate) their demand because they do not know any bounds (limits) in their greed for more and more riches; therefore do not be amazed about your children if they do the same as you, if you have yourselves fallen prey to stinginess, greed and riches.
- 58) Do not make yourselves guilty of thievery (theft) and do not swear on the truth that things truthfully belong to you which you have unrightfully appropriated, because truly they are the property of others from whom you have stolen them, therefore you are in the unright and will always live in fear of punishment, just as you will also be accused of thievery (theft) and you must give back the stolen goods.
- 59) And if you are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and breakers of the law (lawbreakers), then you will find no refuge amongst the fair ones (responsible ones) and the righteous ones (conscientious ones) of people of your kind (fellow human beings), except with those who are also unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and breakers of the law (lawbreakers); and truly, if you make yourselves guilty of breaking the laws (lawbreaking) then you will only find refuge in caves or in a bolthole if you flee there in great haste in order to escape giving account for your actions; but truly, equitableness (fairness) will catch up with you sooner or later even in caves and boltholes, so as breakers of the laws (lawbreakers) you will not be safe from punishment in any place.
- 60) Be at all times satisfied with what your life gives you and what you receive from it, what you create (work for) yourselves in assiduousness, because truly, your sufficiency (contentment) shall not be an endless fullness (unrestricted amassing), rather a measure of modesty.
- 61) Truly, amongst you there are many who are hostile to (make barbed remarks against) the truth and who offend the true prophets, slandering (calumniating) them, forging intrigues against them and attempting to kill them; and you cannot accept (tolerate) that they open their ears to all and lend their attention to all in order to advise them in goodness, whilst you, acting as seducers, are striving to make all into believers in your gods, tin gods and demons, and to drive them into the clutches of the servants of gods and servants of tin gods.
- 62) And you who are seducers, you are conspirators against the truth, and you swear by your gods and tin gods in order to please people of your kind (fellow human beings) and to seduce them, so that they may appreciate your gods and tin gods and pray to them and be pleasing to you if they become believers in you.
- 63) But truly, those of you who defy the truth and the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), you are living in yourselves in a shadow world (hell) full of flaming (blazing) fire which burns you up from the inside in hatred, submissiveness, inequity (unfairness), in lovelessness and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), so you will find neither rest nor peace, nor love, nor freedom and no consonance (harmony).
- 64) Truly, you are hypocrites to yourselves, and you are permanently afraid that the truth might be revealed in you, showing you what attitude (mentality) you are the child of, in other words what you are in your inner nature; go ahead, mock now, because truly, the truth will also bring your inner nature into the light, which you are afraid of.
- 65) And when the time comes that the truth becomes obvious (recognisable) to you, then you prove yourselves to be liars, because you recognise that you have not just chatted and japed foolishly against the truth, but have mocked and slandered (calumniated) it, as you do equivalently with the true prophets and their signs (evidence) of the truth.
- 66) And it will not help you in any wise if you apologise to the true prophets for your wrong doing, because you – even if they forgive you – must excuse yourselves to yourselves in order to find forgiveness in yourselves, because truly it is only if you can forgive yourselves in respect (venerability) before the truth and righteousness (conscientiousness) to which you turn that you will find truthfully forgiveness, because you can only liberate yourselves from your blame, if you truly live in the following of the truth.
- 67) Consider, however, that it is difficult for you and it requires your entire effort and attention if you are searching to liberate yourselves from your blame, because as you are hypocrites so you constantly search for the protection of people of your kind (hypocrites) whom you close ranks with and demand (endorse) unright and forbid what is right, so you go along in unright; therefore it is recommended to you that you leave (withdraw from) the circle of the hypocrites in its entirety (entirely) and search for the way to the truth so that you truthfully turn yourselves to goodness and find in yourselves and outside of yourselves love and freedom, peace and consonance (harmony) and so it goes well with you in everything.
- 68) If you are hypocrites then you live in a shadow world (hell) in yourselves, the flaming (blazing) fire of which burns you up from the inside, so you curse yourselves and you punish yourselves constantly because you do



not find in yourselves and outside of yourselves any true love, any freedom or any consonance (harmony) and no peace, just as it was with all those who came before you and were malefactors against (ones who neglected their duty to) the truth of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation).

- 69) Truly, even if you are mighty in power (influence) amongst people of your kind (human beings) as unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), and if you have many goods and riches and children, you will enjoy your fate for only a brief time, because you constantly hunt after new goods and riches, and your children take ways that do not please you and bring you grief and worries, because you spoil them with your goods and your riches and no longer let them be granted any good guidance (education); and as unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), you take delight in idle (feeble) speeches, although your works yield nothing, therefore you are lost ones in everything that you do.
- 70) You unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) have not been reached by the tidings, like those who came before you and did the same (equivalent) as you do; and as the true prophets came to them and brought them the message of the truth, so you will also have the real truth pointed out (instructed) to you by the true prophets, so that you shall not do anything that is unright.
- 71) Truly, you, man and woman and child, you shall be a true friend to the other, and therefore you shall demand (encourage) yourselves to do the right thing and to ban what is unright, so that you all undertake what is rightful and show pity to yourselves in such a wise that you eschew everything that is evil and unfair (irresponsible) and unrighteous (conscienceless).
- 72) If you as man, woman and child, prove yourselves to be ones who are knowing of the truth, fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), then there will be gardens of love and freedom in you, in which streams of peace and of consonance (harmony) and the highest happiness flow, in which you will find pleasure.
- 73) And if you, man, woman and child, are connected to the teaching of the prophets, then you are no hypocrites, and therefore you are not at strife against the prophets and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, as you others amongst you, who are unfair ones (irresponsible ones), do in a loveless wise because you live in a shadow world (hell) and you have created yourselves a disparaging (dishonourable) destiny (decision) for acting in unright.
- 74) Truly, you unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), you lie to and slander (calumniate) people of your kind (fellow human beings), and you do evil things, conduct indubitably slanderous speeches, do not bother about the truth and then you swear that you have not said anything; truly, you have not accepted the truth and are only brooding on what you cannot achieve in an honest wise, and therefore you nourish yourselves with hatred against people of your kind (fellow human beings) who have come into goods and riches through their own power; but you do not regret your wrong doing, but rather punish yourselves painfully with further hatred although it would be better for you with remorse because you would create a world in yourselves which would be your friend and helper for a good existence (life), in equitableness (fairness) and love, in inner freedom, in inner peace and in consonance (harmony).
- 75) Truly, if you would make a bond with the truth and turn yourselves to the truthfulness of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), then you could knowingly (consciously) gain love from a fullness (abundance) of fruitfulness of the primal power (Creation), so that you would not have to search for alms (gifts) of the life, which you do not find because you are ones who have contempt for the truth, unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones).
- 76) And truly, if you could, in your inequity (unfairness), knowingly (consciously) gain love out of the fullness (abundance) of the fruitfulness of the primal power (Creation), then you would be stinting with it and want to have everything just for yourselves alone, without giving any to people of your kind (fellow human beings), because you have an aversion to them
- 77) You unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), you pay back all kindheartedness that is given to you with hypocrisy and with evil deeds, but consider that one day you will meet the truth with might to which you must give your promise that henceforth you will only follow the way of equitableness (fairness) and no longer lie, slander (calumniate) or be inequitable (irresponsible).
- 78) Truly, you unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), place your trust in the true prophets because they know the secrets of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation); and therefore you shall build on the confidential counsels (talks) of the true prophets because they are the best knowers of what is hidden of the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) and of the fertilisation of the life (Creation).
- 79) And you unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), do not rebuke the ones who are knowing of the truth, the fair ones (responsible ones) and not the righteous ones (conscientious ones) who voluntarily and in honesty give alms (gifts) for the poor and needy; and do not disdain and ridicule those who cannot give any alms (gifts), because they only have the earnings from their work and have to live off this.



- 80) If you unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) want to become fair (responsible) and righteous (conscientious), then create forgiveness (reconciliation) in yourselves and then also ask forgiveness from those whom you have ridiculed, because it is only through finding forgiveness (reconciliation) in yourselves that you can take the way rightfully.
- 81) If you do not want to remain behind (persist in the old) and not continue to live in unright, then you are not allowed to remain behind the back (the teaching) of the prophets and sit still (learn nothing) and remain inclined towards (ready for) what is without law and without recommendation.
- 82) And if you do not incline (bend) towards the truth in its entirety (entirely), then you will laugh little and have to cry a lot as reward for what you acquire of evil in yourselves.
- 83) You shall never turn yourselves away from the truth of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and never fight (battle) against the truth as an enemy, because otherwise you will remain behind (not come closer to the truth).
- 84) And do not be resentful if people of your kind (fellow human beings) have done terrible things, rather forgive them and let everything be forgotten when it sinks into the past, so that you do not bring it back to the light of day anew, and you are not reproachful (incriminating) if there is no necessity for it; and also do not be resentful if a person of your kind (fellow human being) dies, and do not slander him, just as you shall not defile a grave either; consider, that if someone has died then he or she can no longer do anything in his or her defence, therefore it is a disgracefulness (defilement) to slander the deceased or to defile their graves.
- 85) Do not be amazed about people of your kind (fellow human beings) if they have goods and riches, because it is not for you to decide whether they have worked for, acquired (inherited) or won their goods and their riches rightfully; and do not be covetous (jealous/envious) of the goods and the riches of others, so that you do not depart (fall away) from the goodwill (recognition) for those others who have more goods and riches than you.
- 86) And if a truth is disclosed to you, then do not fight against it, rather search for the true value in it so that you may understand it and act according to it.
- 87) And be at all times satisfied together, man and woman, when you are connected to one another (married) so that you do not seal (close) yourselves off from one another and do not behave towards one another in aversion (weariness), and neither hating nor harming in any other wise.
- 88) And do not quarrel with one another as people of your kind (human beings) because you are not of the same opinion, and do not quarrel about your goods or about your riches, because only goodness shall be granted to you as people of your kind (human beings) so that it may go well with you.
- 89) Prepare in yourselves, in your inner nature, gardens of joy and of the highest happiness, so that you may have streams of true love and inner freedom as well as of inner peace and consonance (harmony) streaming through you.
- 90) Never search for pretexts if you have to adhere to something, so that you remain honest and give equitableness (fairness) enough consideration.
- 91) If you are weak ones (disabled ones) or sick ones and have nothing to give (donate), then no reproach shall strike you if you are upright and fair (moderate) as well as righteous (conscientious), because there is no cause for scolding against you if you do rightfully, but nevertheless cannot give (donate) anything.
- 92) Truly, if you do rightfully in all things then nothing will be found for which you could be rebuked; therefore do not allow your eyes to flood with tears either out of grief when you cannot find anything that you can give (donate).
- 93) There is only cause for reproach for those who are beseeching you for alms (gifts) and donations (hand-outs) despite themselves having many goods and riches, so that they can pile up a greater store of goods and enrich themselves even more.
- 94) Truly, heed (be careful of) the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) when they want to take alms (gifts) and hand-outs (donations) from you, therefore you shall not lend them your ears if they present excuses to you.
- 95) They swear to you many deceitful oaths (false oaths) that you shall not leave them to fend for themselves, but do not heed them because they only want to deceive you; but if they do need your help in any wise, then do not hold yourselves back and do help them, but when doing this make sure that they do not receive a hand-out (donation) from you if they have sufficient from what they earned themselves.
- 96) The unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) deceitfully swear oaths (false oaths) to you, that you shall be satisfied with them, but you cannot be satisfied with them because of their false oath (perjury) and their hypocrisy, because as they commit an outrage against you (treat you banefully), they are only exploiting you, therefore you shall have to be concerned to clarify everything and to act rightfully so that you are not harmed.
- 97) People of your kind (human beings) who unrestrainedly commit bloody deeds (mass murders) as boundless killers (mass murderers), whether they be individuals from the people or rulers, they are the worst amongst all



people of your kind (humankind), and truly they are greatest hypocrites and the most obdurate against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), against love of the next one (love for the next one), against freedom and consonance (harmony) and against peace amongst people of your kind (human beings); they lead a villainous life in unknowledge of the truth of the primal power (Creation), the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and they make their own laws and standard measures (regulations) on which they insist and through which they conduct their deadly dominance (rule).

- 98) And the boundless killers (mass murderers) are miserable creatures who regard all the values of the truth and of dignity as well as the kindheartedness and benevolence (humanity) of people of your kind as coerced atonement, therefore they only wait for you to perform a mischance so that they can commit outrages (torture) on you and kill (murder) you.
- 99) But all you amongst people of your kind (humankind), you should be concerned at all times that you do not tolerate any boundless killers (mass murderers) amongst you, whether they be individuals amongst you or rulers, and if some do indeed arise amongst you then you shall practise gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit by catching them and sending them to a suitable and special place of fulfilment of guidelines (secluded island/secluded place) in banishment for the term of their life as a fair (commensurate) punishment, without the possibility of return amongst people of your kind (society); but allow equitableness (fairness) to prevail over them so that they have the opportunity to provide for their provision (food/clothing, etc.) in a strict (hard) wise and to learn the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and therefore also the truth of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life, so that they may approach the truth and follow it; truly, doubtlessly this is the only possibility for boundless killers (mass murderers) to approach a life and to change themselves to the good, so that they no longer kill (murder), but truly there is no staunchness (certainty) that boundless killers (mass murderers) will change to the better and good, and to the truth-teaching therefore it is provided in any case that they shall be ostracised (banished) for the term of their life.
- 100) The foremost ones (administrators of the authority/government) of a people shall only be people of your kind (fellow human beings) which the people itself elects according to its best knowledge and best admonishment (conscience) so that only people of your kind (fellow human beings) are called (elected) to the authority (office/government/administration) who are in all respects upright (of integrity), fair (responsibility-conscious) and righteous (conscientious); and therefore the called ones (elected ones) shall be modest, assiduous (hard-working) and skilful (adept) in the leadership (guidance) of people of your kind (human beings) and in all affairs of the people.
- 101) Amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings) there are many hypocrites who believe in gods and tin gods and who propound (claim) that they are good believers, but truthly, you are obdurate in your belief (assumption) and in your hypocrisy and you follow the delusional lies and slanders (calumnies) of your priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods who present to you false teachings as illusions which they fabulate (invent) or have learned through false prophets; and in your obdurateness of your false belief (assumptions), you assume (regard) yourselves to be better than others and set yourselves above people of your kind (fellow human beings) although you do terrible and evil things and therefore infringe against the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life.
- 102) You do not admit your blame, and you mix one evil action with another even worse and think that people of your kind (fellow human beings) shall take pity upon you if you fall into hardship and misery.
- 103) And you take alms (gifts) despite you having great possessions or a good livelihood (subsistence), so that you enrich yourselves thereby and steal bread from the poor and needy, do unrightful and evil things, whilst at the same time passing yourselves off as good believers in your godliness (religion) or sub-godliness (sects/cult) and openly (publicly) praying to your gods or tin gods in order to assuage your admonishment (conscience) and in order to appear brilliant amongst people of your kind (fellow human beings); and you fallaciously believe that you are thereby refined (purified/unblemished) and that you obtain the affection of your gods and tin gods, the servants of gods and servants of tin gods as well of people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 104) Know that all of this is only lies and deception and that you do not achieve liberation (honesty) in yourselves if you are not truthfully remorseful, if you do not lose yourselves in thinking about your gods and tin gods and you do not lend your ears to your servants of gods and servants of tin gods who lead you into the greatest erroneous assumption to which you could fall prey.
- 105) Act only in the name of the truth and liberate yourselves from your belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods, in servants of gods and servants of tin gods and from belief (assumptions) in those who raise themselves up amongst people of your kind (human beings) as gods or as their envoys or appointees (substitutes); act (live) out of yourselves in equitableness (fairness), righteousness (conscientiousness), as fair ones (responsible ones), so that you can look at your own good deeds which you learn through the real truth and through the teaching



of the prophets who make you into ones who are knowing of the truth and show (reveal) to you the way upon which you escape from all untruth and from the false teachings of the false prophets who lie that they are bringing you the truth, but are however lying to you and spreading delusional teachings (fallacious teachings); follow only the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because it is only from it that you learn everything that is concealed and revealed (clarified) of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and of its appearance (nature), as the true prophets teach you, and as they do themselves.

- 106) And truly, if you postpone your going on the way and assume (believe) that you can also take it later, then this is a poor decision because the more time passes until you take the way, the more difficult it will be for you because you punish yourselves thereby in your inner nature by becoming ever more negligent and by moving yourselves farther and farther away from the way of the truth, as a result of which in the end you can no longer find any pity for yourselves in yourselves.
- 107) And it does not help you if you are unknowing of the truth and are hypocrites and you build temples (houses of gods and houses of tin gods) for the spreading of the truth whilst however practising rites of gods (god cults) and rites of tin gods (tin god cults) therein against the truth, which are against the truthly truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and attempt to harm these, in order to further unknowledgeness of the truth and to bring partedness amongst the rows of the ones who are knowing of the truth, as well as to create an ambushade for those who are searching for the truth; and truly, even if you swear that you are only doing good deeds by building such temples (houses of gods and houses of tin gods), then the truth bears witness against it (contrary witness) and reveals that you are only liars because in your temples (houses of gods and houses of tin gods) and in other houses that you build for your gods and tin gods, you do not teach the teaching of the truthly laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), but rather your false teachings of your false prophets and fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods.
- 108) And you upright ones and like-minded ones concerning the truth, you truth-knowers amongst people of your kind (human beings), it is said to you that you shall never stand in such temples (houses of gods and houses of tin gods) and that you shall not pray in them, because they are founded upon godlinesses (religions) and upon sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) and only serve to lead people of your kind (human beings) into great erroneous assumption and into the clutches of the servants of gods and servants of tin gods and their fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods so that you become servile (dependent) on them and that you may be exploited in your goods and riches; and truly it is only of dignity to uphold your knowledge of the truth-teaching outside such places rather than standing or sitting in such places and being lied to by the priests and worshippers of gods and worshippers of tin gods; man, woman and child, be of dignity in your knowledge of the truth-teaching, as it is given through the true prophets who have worked it out from the truthly laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) of the fertilisation of the life (Creation).
- 109) Do not think that those who have fallen prey to a belief (assumptions) in the fear of gods and tin gods are better than the ones who are knowing of the truth, because truly, godly (religious) belief is never founded on delight in the truth, rather the godly (religious) belief is like a house built on the edge of a rolling, undermined sandbank and which can never have the firmness (safety) of a house built on rock with its foundation walls anchored in the rock.
- 110) And truly, the house, the truth which is built on rock (firmness) and is anchored in the foundations of the rock, does not contain any doubt in itself and cannot be torn into pieces.
- 111) Those who build their house, their belief (assumptions) on undermined sand, they are fighting against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and therefore they are not the same as the ones who are knowing of the truth, the fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), rather they are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) who demand outrage (torture), punishment and death for people of their kind whenever fallibilities (errors) are committed, so they also do not hesitate to wage battles (wars) and to accurse people of your kind (human beings) if they have more goods and are richer, if they are of a different skin colour, of a different attitude (mentality) and a different godliness (religion/belief); they do not follow the recommendation of the truth-teaching that the promise of people of your kind (human beings) is the regulation (duty) of the love for the next one and that all people shall also for themselves fulfil the promise of the love in themselves to the best extent.
- 112) And only if you fulfil the promise of the regulation (duty) and create truthly love in yourselves, when you turn away from the lovelessness towards yourselves and towards people of your kind (fellow human beings) in remorse, and when you no longer pray to gods and tin gods and you no longer bow down and cast yourselves down before them and before the servants of gods and servants of tin gods, but when you change yourselves to the real truth and demand (direct) right in yourselves and forbid what is unright, so that you heed the dividing lines (boundaries) that are given through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and if you heed the joyful message of the truth-teaching through the true prophets, only then are



you on the way to the equitableness (fairness) and righteousness (conscientiousness) in order to become fair ones (responsible ones).

- 113) Truly, it is not appropriate either for you nor for the true prophets to supplicate (request) forgiveness or to grant forgiveness in any wise to believers in gods and tin gods, servants of gods and servants of tin gods and even for the nearest family members, because the believers in gods and tin gods or demons only can do this for themselves if they turn away from their erroneous assumption of belief (assumptions) and clearly proclaim to themselves that they will henceforth only be connected to the truthly truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 114) Therefore, no father and no mother can supplicate forgiveness for their children because of their belief (assumptions) in gods or tin gods, just as the children cannot do this either for their parents, and the man cannot do it for a woman or a woman for a man, because all people of your kind (human being) must liberate themselves from their belief (assumptions) in gods or tin gods through their own true discernment (intellect) and through their own insight (rationality), in order to be able to forgive themselves.
- 115) Truly, it is not in the sense of the truth and of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) to allow people of your kind (human beings) to go into confusion, rather the sense is given that you are guided (led) by them; but consider, all amongst you must yourselves take efforts to search for, recognise (see) and follow the creational laws and recommendations in the appearance (nature) of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) through the teaching of the true prophets; be certain (knowing) that you must steer (guide) yourselves, because you are your own guardians, as well as being the guardians of people of your kind (next ones) so that it may go well with all of you.
- 116) To you is given the kingdom of Earth, as well as the kingdom of the firmaments (universe) and of earths (worlds/planets) so that you may protect everything well and make it a place of happiness (paradise) in its entirety (entirely); but you have not been given the might of death, so you shall not decide over it, but give death its due when it calls on you of its own accord; do not bring about death unrightfully by killing (murdering) people of your kind (human beings) or yourselves, rather you shall be at all times a friend and helper to life; to you is merely given the might to create life within the dividing lines (boundaries) of the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), therefore between man and woman and, in the case of other creatures (life forms), between the male and female by raising (breeding) and modifying (crossing) as well as through replication (gene manipulation) which you may also use with regard to fruits and vegetables, and all things through which you facilitate much of your existence (life).
- 117) Therefore, you are taught through the teaching of the prophets that you may turn yourselves to everything that is knowingly (recognisably) given to you through the truth of the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) of the fertilisation of the life (Creation), as well as to everything that is unknown (unrecognisable) and concealed to you, but which you can however fathom and make useful for yourselves; therefore open your ears to the teaching of the prophets, because it is through them that many concealed things of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) are proclaimed (announced) to you, so that you may be aware of (feel) the secrets that are within them (disclose them) and be progressive.
- 118) And beware of breeding too many of people of your kind (human beings) so that the breadth of the earth does not become too narrow for you and there is no longer any refuge for you on it; therefore do not turn in pity to those who want to create descendants if there are too many of all the people of your kind (humankind), otherwise a cataclysm (catastrophe) is unavoidable when the appearance (nature) turns against you and you can no longer do anything about it; truly, the number of all people of your kind (humankind) is restricted for your world, but as you exceed the number then calamities of all kinds sweep over you, which you can no longer control.
- 119) All who are fruitful in (bear) true discernment (rationality) and insight (intellect), consider that you shall show esteem and honour (respect) to the appearance (nature) of your world and shall keep it in health and benevolence so that your world does not suffer its downfall (is not destroyed) through you.
- 120) It is not seemly for you as inhabitants of Earth that you commit misdemeanours against it and destroy it in itself and in its appearance (nature) through your might and undiscernment (irrationality); but if you do this, then you make yourselves into enemies of your world, which is your home, from which will spring misery, hardship and affliction for you, which must be ascribed to you as a disparaging (despicable) work; and truly your reward for this is terrible cataclysms (catastrophes) with enormous destruction and wholesale (mass) deaths of people of your kind (human beings).
- 121) And if you subject your world to an ordeal (torture), then you cannot give any amount (sum/money), whether great or small, to ward off the resulting calamity, because all the cataclysms (catastrophes) will be so great that you will no longer be able to resolve them, therefore the blame for it must be laid at your door, for which you will receive your reward of terrible things heaped upon terrible things and calamity upon calamity.



- 122) And if the time comes when you subject your world to an ordeal (torture), then many will have to leave their homes and lose their goods and chattels, and great throngs will flee from high waters and great storms, and much misery, hardship, affliction and many deaths will spread (be rampant); and if you do not open your ears to the admonishments (warnings) of the true prophets, who are adept in (know) many things of the time to come (future) and in the creational laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature), then great calamity and terrible things will come over you; therefore may you beware of the threatening terrible things and calamity and heed the admonishing words (warnings) of the prophets.
- 123) Truly, those of you who think that you must fight against the admonishments (warnings) of the prophets and accuse (blame) them of lying, it will go terribly with you, because you will find yourselves in the harshness of calamity, as is told to you by the prophets.
- 124) No matter how many times you are told the truth, you cast it into the wind, and you do not allow your paucity of knowledge and your paucity of wisdom to be strengthened through the teaching of the prophets, because you assume (believe) yourselves to be thinking (prudent) and full of true discernment (rationality) and insight (intellect) and take delight in this, whereby you suffer harm time and time again, wage battles (wars) and spread death, affliction, misery and destruction.
- 125) And consider, if you subject the appearance (nature) of your world to an ordeal (torture), then you and your animals and many other creatures will also fall victim to new illnesses and scourges (plagues), and one illness and scourge (plague) will usher in the next one, because it is through your own blame that you allow one terrible thing and calamity to follow on the heels of the next one, just as when you have dirt and add further dirt and it becomes rife.
- 126) Beware of this and see that the terrible things and calamity do not befall you, otherwise you will be harshly afflicted if you do not regret your false actions and you do not allow yourselves to be admonished.
- 127) And truly, even since the time before you, it has been the case that you do not allow yourselves to be admonished and you merely look at one another and laugh about the admonishments (warnings) of the prophets, just as you also turn away from them because you do not want to understand.
- 128) Your awakening, however, will be a painful one if you do not listen to the admonishments (warnings) and to the advices of the true prophets, but only to the falsehoods (deviousness) of the false prophets and the lies and slanders (calumny) of the hypocrites who present themselves as servants of gods and servants of tin gods; and if you do fall into calamity, then do not wait for kindheartedness and benevolence (humanity) from your gods and tin gods or your demons, because just as they are only powerless hazy pictures (fantasies), they do not have any power either to bring you help no matter how arduously you make entreaties to them, pray and kneel down before them.
- 129) However, if you turn yourselves away from your wrong doing, lend your ears to the true prophets and give enough consideration to the laws and recommendations of the fertilisation of the life (Creation) and trust in the mightiness of its guidelines (guiding principles) and its power, then it will go well with you and you will not be struck by the terrible things and the calamities about which you have been admonished (warned).



Chapter 10

- 1) Consider the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), so that you follow them and lead a good life.
- 2) This is the teaching of the true prophets who bring you words that are full of wisdom.
- 3) It appears wonderful to you that that a prophet from your midst proclaims the truth, admonishes (warns) you and also announces a joyful message to you; however do not be self-righteous (arrogant) and do not assume (believe) that you take on a special importance (rank) differing from other people of your kind (fellow human beings) because you may happen to possess more goods and riches or are in a position of authority; and do not view the true prophet as someone who might not be someone of your kind (a human being), and therefore do not view him as a charlatan or as a practitioner of suggestive spells and acts (magician); and learn what he teaches you in the name of the truth, so that you may follow the teaching and things may go well with you.
- 4) Truly, you have proceeded from the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) which set you into existence (life) as an inspiration (idea) at the start of your presence (existence); and it as the



primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) is the one which, in prehistory (primeval times) created the expanded (endless) space and all firmaments (universe) and all earths (worlds/planets) and all lights in the firmament (celestial bodies, etc.) and created the laws and recommendations for the guidance of the entirety (whole).

- 5) You have proceeded from the inspiration (idea) of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), and therefore you are animated through its breath (spirit/spirit-form), so that you are a minute part of itself which will return to it at the end of all time, and this promise is truthful; truly, the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) brought all life forth in prehistory (in the origin), all presence (existence), all kinds of life (life forms) and everything that is; and it created the law of appearing (becoming) and fading (passing = becoming and passing) by means of which it renews everything time and time again so that life may go on (continue) in reawakening (being reborn).
- 6) It is through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) that the sun shines a brightly beaming light and the moon gives forth its shimmer; and it is through them that the sun, the moon and the lights in the firmament (celestial bodies) have their course (track) by means of which you can calculate the time and determine the directions of the winds (compass directions); and, in truth, all this is created by the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and given to you as a sign (orientation) so that you may form knowledge from it.
- 7) Truly, the change of day and night, and everything that has been called into life in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets) through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) are signs (evidence) for you of the presence of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), and truly you only have to comprehend (recognise) them and interpret them correctly.
- 8) But if you are not willing to use the signs (evidence) in everything given through the primal power (Creation) for your knowledge, and you are instead simply well or half (halfway) satisfied with the life in this world and you reassure yourselves by simply failing to heed the signs (evidence), then you are truly not well off.
- 9) Those of you who are unheeding of the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), you will not create true love and freedom in yourselves for this reason, and neither will you have peace and consonance (harmony), because you will only have lovelessness, unpeace, unfreedom (bondage) and dissonance (disharmony) which you acquire for yourselves.
- 10) However, those others who are knowing (conscious) in the truth and in the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and who do good deeds, they are led (guided) in equitableness (fairness), righteousness (conscientiousness) and as fair ones (responsibility-conscious ones) for the sake of their truth-knowledge; through them flow streams of blissfulness, happiness and joy as well as of inner peace, love and freedom and of consonance (harmony).
- 11) Their thoughts honour the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and life, and their greeting will always be «Peace in wisdom», and their thanks belong to the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation).
- 12) And those amongst you who accelerate every calamity and every terrible thing, as you also wish to accelerate the accumulation of riches, your fixed time of life is flowing past senselessly, because you live an existence (life) of continuous hoping that goes unfulfilled because you find yourselves in haphazard confusion and, in your delusion, you do not see either the true life, its benefit (success) or the advantages.
- 13) And those amongst you who are believers in gods or tin gods, you fall down on your knees and make entreaties and call on them if misfortune strikes you, and you do this irrespective of whether you are lying on your side, standing or sitting; but truly, your gods or tin gods cannot take away your unfortune, because they are only fabrications (inventions), therefore you must continue helplessly on your way as if you had never called upon them and not begged for liberation from the calamity that has struck you.
- 14) And truly, you commit outrages (you are acting with Gewalt) in your belief (assumptions) in your gods or tin gods, and you destroy other clans (families), groups (tribes) and peoples in battles (wars), involving evil pillaging, spreading of calamity and bringing about destructions which exceeds all monstrousness.
- 15) Truly, consider that you shall keep freedom and peace amongst people of your kind (humankind) on your world, because no law of the primal power (Creation) demands (commands) that you shall wage battles (wars), just as no recommendation of the primal power (Creation) demands (recommends) killing; however, if you do wage battles (wars) then you are acting just as much against all the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) as when you kill (murder) in Ausartung, which means, if it is not done in self-defence in order to save life.
- 16) If you recognise the clear signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) in the appearance (nature) or in other things and know how to interpret them, then do not attempt to change them outrageously (against the truth) to your false favour, because it is not for you to want to change things that are against the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), but if you try to do so nevertheless, then do not be amazed if you suffer great harm which you bring down upon yourselves; only follow what is obvious (recognisable) to you through the laws and recommendations of the



primal power (Creation), because truly you will otherwise suffer evil, calamity and great harm.

- 17) If the real truth were not the real truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), then it would not be presented to you through the prophets, nor would it be proclaimed to you in any other wise; and truly, before this life your prophet already lived as another person of your kind (another personality) a lifetime of people of your kind (human lifetime) amongst you and taught the teaching of the prophets; do you not want to finally understand?
- 18) And consider that it is malicious if lies and slanders (calumnies) are fabricated (invented) against the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and against its laws and recommendations, or if its signs (evidence) are treated as lies; truly, those who do this make themselves guilty towards the truth, and so it will certainly not go well with them.
- 19) Do not honour what can neither harm nor benefit you, such as gods or tin gods, servant of gods, servant of tin gods and those who raise themselves up as envoys or appointees (substitutes) of gods or tin gods or raise themselves up as such; truly, if you do this then everything is only lies and calumny against the truth, and you are attempting thereby to place yourselves, people of your kind (human beings) or your gods or tin gods next to the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation).
- 20) Truly, in prehistoric (primeval) times, all people of your kind (humankind) formed a single people of many bloods (races) in the extent of your world (worldwide), but then they became disunited and began to fight (wage war against) each other.
- 21) And they divided themselves up into many peoples and fabricated gods and tin gods for themselves whom they set up over themselves and to whom they offered prayers and supplications, as has continued until your time (today), because you still worship gods and tin gods and slander the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) itself.
- 22) And if people of your kind (human beings) are struck by unfortune, then you let them taste your false benevolence (humanity) if you give alms (gifts) only in order to assuage your own admonishment (conscience) and in order to shine before people of your kind (fellow human beings) whilst you forge attacks against the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and offend against everything that is rightful, such as love and peace, freedom and consonance (harmony) as well as all dignity and respect (honourableness).
- 23) Truly, only the truth is the great value of the life, and only the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) render you capable (enable you through your inventive spirit) to travel over the land, to take ship over the sea and to fly through the airs like birds, but truly you bring forth no gratitude for this.
- 24) You do not give thanks for anything that is given through the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), and neither are you thankful if you are rescued from distress and fear, misery and danger by the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation); rather than gratitude, you only know Gewalt (terror) which you perpetrate against people of your kind (human beings) and against your worlds without right, but truly, your entire acts of Gewalt are always only directed against yourselves; truly, you should be fair ones (responsibility-conscious ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) so that you may enjoy the good gifts of the life here below, but instead of this you wreak calamity all around and so you only experience the harm that you cause.
- 25) Your earthly life is like water (rain) that falls from the clouds and then mixes with the soil and the vegetation of Earth from which people of your kind (human beings) and your livestock and all animals and other creatures feed until – when Earth stands in its adornment (in blossom) and appears beautifully cleaned and you all assume (believe) that you have might over it – inequitable (irresponsible) and unrighteous (conscienceless) rulers come and turn everything into a mown field (wage war and destroy) as if nothing had existed on the day before; truly, this is a sign (evidence) as an allegory (comparison), which you shall strive to contemplate.
- 26) Lend your ears to the teaching of the prophet so that you may learn peace from them and find the right path.
- 27) And if you do good things for peace and freedom, as well as for love and consonance (harmony), then you will receive the best reward for it and even more prosperousness (boon), so that neither gloom nor ignominy will cover your face, because you will be the carriers of a paradise (place of happiness) in yourselves.
- 28) If, however, you do evil, then evil will also strike you in equal measure, and you will also be covered by ignominy, and therefore there will be no one there to protect you, because it will be as if your face were covered (as if you did not exist) with dark shreds of night (parts of darkness).
- 29) And consider the equitableness (fairness) that will come to you if you recognise the truth that this is only given in the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), however not with the gods and tin gods whom you worship; and if you become knowing (conscious) of the truth then you sink down in shame because you followed the delusional teachings of the false prophets and have worshipped gods and tin gods.
- 30) And if you become knowing of the truth and want to prove this, then you can call the truth as a witness and



explain it with its signs (evidence), as is not possible through gods and tin gods because they can give no sign (evidence) of their presence (existence), because hazy constructions (figments of the imagination) are without power and cannot bring either benefit (success) or harm.

- 31) In the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), you can experience what comes forth from all the activity of your thoughts and feelings and from your actions, so you can already determine before acting what shall be with regard to the decision (effect) that comes forth from the condition (cause), so you do not falsify anything and you are not lost in your consideration (control).
- 32) It is only through the activities of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) that you are supplied with food from the earth; although you have Gewalt over your eyes and ears, it is nevertheless only through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) that the might is given for living things to be brought forth and vegetation (plants) to thrive, because through them all things are guided according to their kind; therefore, in this and in all things of existence (life), you need the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation), and without them and their activities you could not breathe (exist).
- 33) And everything in the extent of all firmaments (universe) and all earths (worlds/planets) and all kinds of life (life forms) is the presence (existence) of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) itself, because it is the inner world of all inner worlds and of all firmaments (universal consciousness); therefore do not live in erroneous assumption and do not reject the truth that it alone is the might of all mights in all firmaments (universe) and of all presence (existence); be drawn away (turn yourselves away) from all untruth and inequity (unfairness), from unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and therefore from your gods and tin gods which can neither help you nor harm you.
- 34) Do not be indignant ones against the truth, rather prove yourselves to be true as people of your kind (human beings) so that you may give honour and dignity for your kind.
- 35) Consider that amongst all your gods, tin gods and demons, all of whom you have fabricated and fabulate (have invented and invent), there is none which can bring forth (create) life or a created creation (life form) or any presence (existing thing), let it decay and become again; truly, it is only the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) which, through their activities, bring forth (create) everything, let it decay and renew again; truly, it is therefore necessary to ask why you let yourselves be drawn away (turn away) from this through fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods?
- 36) And consider that amongst your gods and tin gods, there is none, because they are all fabricated (invented), which could guide you to the truth, because truly a guidance to the truth can only be found in the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), and it is only through it that you are led (guided) in dignity to the truth; and the teaching of the prophets shows you the way to it if you are unable to find the way out of your own; but truly, even if you are led (guided) onto the right way through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, then you will have to take the way yourselves and lead (guide) yourselves because your own striving and your own perseverance (will) is your kingdom of heaven.
- 37) However, if you are searching for the truth and love to learn it, then search for it in the truth-teaching of the true prophets, so that you do not simply follow an expectation (assumption), because an expectation (assumption) does not serve any purpose towards the truth.
- 38) And consider that when you hear the teaching of the prophets, then it is not created in such a wise that it could have been concocted (hatched/invented) in untruth, because truly it is based in the truthfully laws and recommendations and in their activities as they are given through the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation); and the truth-teaching is a confirmation and explanation of that which precedes everything as condition (cause) through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), from which the outcome (result/effect) comes forth (= in accordance with causality, i.e. cause and effect), and there is no doubt about this, also that in it everything is assigned to appearing (becoming) and waning (passing = becoming and passing).
- 39) Truly, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is not fabricated (invented), but it is based in the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which you can recognise (see) in the appearance (nature) if you only go forth with open eyes and ears and natural in the striving (sense) and in an undisguised (truthful) wise, and perceive all signs (evidence) that are given openly (visibly) in the appearance (nature).
- 40) Do not reject this cognition, rather comprehend it so that you also comprehend its true meaning, so that you learn from it and can also instruct those who are still unknowing and who deny the truth.
- 41) And truly, there are many amongst you who are partially connected to the truth, but do not understand it in its value, therefore you shall strive to become knowing (conscious) and wise in the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and that things go well with you and your existence (life) is joy and happiness; and do not allow your striving (sense) to be depraved by those who are disapproving towards



- the truth-teaching and who are unfair ones (irresponsible ones), unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) as well as truth-deniers and slanderers (calumniators) of the truth.
- 42) And if they accuse (blame) you of lying, continue to do your good deed of learning and instructing the truth, because it is a deed that you do both for yourselves and for people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings); and you are indeed solely responsible for everything that you create in terms of thoughts and feelings, as well as for everything that you do in actions and deeds, and equally all other people of your kind (human beings) are themselves responsible for everything that they harbour in thoughts and feelings and that they complete in actions and deeds, irrespective of whether they are fair ones (responsible ones) or unfair ones (irresponsible ones), righteous ones (conscientious ones) or unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones).
 - 43) Be at all times fair and help those with instruction in the truth if they lend you their ear, even if they are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), because the only thing of significance (importance) is their will to search for the real truth, to listen to it and to learn it; although you cannot make the deaf hear or the blind see, nevertheless you can bring those who are unknowing of the truth to understanding through your instruction.
 - 44) And whether there are many or few who look to you and want to be instructed (taught) by you, even if they are hard of understanding, so you shall instruct them as often and as frequently as is necessary for them, so that they understand the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and can follow it.
 - 45) And if you instruct (teach) people of your kind (fellow human beings), then see to it that they no longer cause any unright to themselves and to others, and that they can liberate themselves from their own unright in themselves.
 - 46) See that you are good to one another and care for (maintain) love and connectedness, and be ready at all times to treat those amongst people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings) as equals to yourselves, even if they are not knowing of the truth, but are unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), because nevertheless they have the same rights to be treated like the fair ones (responsibility-conscious ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones).
 - 47) And if they are searching for fulfilment in the truth, then show them the way that they may take in order to achieve (acquire) proof (knowledge) through the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
 - 48) And if you have to decide between right and unright, then you can only find the way to it through your true discernment (rationality) and through your cognition (intellect) as well as through the knowledge and the wisdom that you gain from the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), because it is only through them that you can let equitableness (fairness) prevail, so that nobody suffers unright.
 - 49) And if you give promises, then these shall also be carried out if you are truthful (sincere).
 - 50) Certainly you alone have might over your own prosperity or adversity of your inner world (consciousness) and your psyche, as well as of your body, therefore you must care for (protect/look after) everything yourselves, because there is neither a god nor a tin god nor a demon who has might over it, because all of them are only hazy pictures (fantasies); therefore do not delay in liberating yourselves from them, rather turn yourselves immediately to your own might so that you may use it diligently (aware of your obligations) and you are your own teacher (master) and you do not remain behind (deteriorate in misery) in your unfolding (evolution).
 - 51) Truly, you cannot escape your unfolding (evolution) without making yourselves into guilty ones in yourselves and being unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones), because it is through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) that the compulsion for unfolding (evolution) is given to you so that you may gather knowledge and wisdom.
 - 52) Do not wait until death is hard on your heels before you strive for the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, rather be connected to it (learn about it) during the time of your life and foster the demand of the compulsion for higher values of unfolding (evolution).
 - 53) Learn the truth and do not continue to be malefactors (irresponsible ones) against the truth concerning the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and life, so that you do not create evil retaliation in yourselves for what you do wrong through hating yourselves and harbouring unpeace, dissonance (disharmony) and unfreedom (bondage) in yourselves.
 - 54) And truly, it is the truth that you cannot put an end to lovelessness and unpeace or to dissonance (disharmony) and unfreedom (bondage) in yourselves if you do not extensively turn to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and if you do not follow them and live according to them.
 - 55) If you commit unright and were the possessor of all the riches that are on Earth, then when you are near the time of your death, you will attempt to buy yourselves free from death, and truly you would make a play of fallacious remorse if you could escape death thereby, but truly all this will bring you no benefit (success),



because death does not allow itself to be fooled or cheated; life and death decide according to equitableness (fairness) and not according to unright, therefore with death the same foreordination (destiny) is determined for all people of your kind (human beings).

- 56) Know that everything that is in the firmaments (universe) as well as on Earth and on the earths (worlds/planets) and on the lights in the firmament (celestial bodies, etc.) is the work of the sole primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation); and its promise is life and true love, but most of you do not understand it.
- 57) It is the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) which gives life and brings about death to everything persisting (existing) through its all-embracing laws and recommendations, so that everything may come about anew in reawakening (new birth and rebirth), and will one day return to it because everything belongs to it and has come forth from it.
- 58) Now, once again, an admonishment is brought to you people of your kind (human beings) through the prophet, so that you become open to the knowledge and the wisdom of the truth and have healing in your wrong thinking regarding your gods, tin gods and demons, so that you create true love and peace in yourselves, as well as freedom and consonance (harmony), in order to carry everything forth outwards in the same wise amongst all people of your kind (human beings).
- 59) May everything be done in kindheartedness and benevolence (humanity) so that you and all people of your kind (humanity) may take joy in life and lead an existence (life) in dignity, respect (honourableness) as well as in gladness and in happiness, and you can build up (increase) your wellbeing.
- 60) Consider that you must first think for yourselves and care for yourselves so that you may be well and are of good courage, but if you are growing (outstanding/normal) in your inner world (consciousness) and in your psyche, and if you are open-minded, unscathed (healthy) and if you have sufficient for your provision (food/clothing/goods/money), then also remember people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings) and give them your alms and gifts (donations) in the measure which they need.
- 61) And consider that you shall be educated in your inner world (consciousness) so that you are able to stand by people of your kind (fellow human beings) no matter what their circumstances that are giving them grief in their inner world (consciousness) and psyche.
- 62) But do nothing of this if you do not have knowledge and you are not skilful concerning (you do not understand) the inner world (consciousness) and the psyche, so that you do not bring about any harm to people of your kind (fellow human beings); bear witness at all times only with your knowledge and your wisdom, and leave aside whatever you do not understand, because if you do not act in this wise then you will only cause harm, because truly you cannot afford even a speck of dust of a weight in things which you do not comprehend (understand).
- 63) And those whom you stand by helpfully in any things whatsoever shall experience true joy and wellbeing, and not be plagued by fear.
- 64) Therefore, you shall provide adequate help to all in equitableness (fairness) and in true knowledge as well as in true wisdom, so that the ones searching for help can rely on it.
- 65) Consider in this at all times the unchangeability of the words of the truth, because only they are helpful in need and a joyful message for anyone who is looking for help.
- 66) Do not sadden people of your kind (fellow human beings) through incorrect or evil speeches, but always have might over it so that you do not become bad mannered (offensive/personal).
- 67) Consider that whatever you say always falls back on you yourselves, both in good and in evil; therefore only ever speak about the real truth and therefore also of the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation); and teach the truth that gods and tin gods shall not be called upon because all of them are only fabrications (inventions), because truly whoever believes in gods and tin gods is only following a hazy picture (delusion) since it is a mere assumption and no truth is obtained.
- 68) Truly, it is only in the truth that you find the signs (evidence) of the occurrence (reality), therefore only search for them (it) if you are able to search for them (it).
- 69) Be at all times sufficient (adequate/commensurate) to yourselves so that you do not search for completeness (sufficiency) in others who, as people of your kind (human beings), do things that you lack (that you cannot do), so you admire (cheer and worship) them, because truly such doing is unworthy of people of your kind (human beings) because you debase (humiliate) yourselves; at all times practise contentment (modesty) if you pay deference (honourableness) to people of your kind (fellow human beings), so that you do not admire (cheer and worship) them and do not raise them up as gods in blindness (fanaticism); truly, you also have no guarantee that you are truthfully esteemed by those to whom you offer (show) your admiration (cheer and worship) in blindness (fanaticism), because they only want to appear brilliant before you, to be admired (cheered and worshipped) and to wring gain (profit) out of you.
- 70) And those amongst them whom you admire (cheer and worship) in your blindness (fanaticism), they invent lies that they do not want your admiration (cheer and worship) and your blindness (fanaticism), whilst continuing



to bathe in it and to believe themselves esteemed (honoured/fawned).

- 71) But truly, in this world their pleasure in it is of brief duration, because if they step out of line (commit an error), then they are trodden down by those who previously (earlier) admired (cheered and worshipped) them.
- 72) Truly, if the words of the truth and of the admonishments are annoying to you, then they are only annoying because you cannot comprehend (understand) the truth, you do not want to hear it and because the deepest darkness reigns in your cognition (intellect) and in your true discernment (rationality), as it also is in the case of the gods and tin gods to whom you pray and before whom you fall down (go down on your knees) and you do not want to accept the truth that they are only fabrications (inventions) and without power to benefit or harm you; and if the true prophet lets you know the truth about this then you undertake attacks (assaults) on him, slander him with accusations of lying, persecute him and try to kill him, so you give yourselves no time to hear and learn the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life from him.
- 73) Never turn your back on the truth, rather always remember that it is only through the truth that benefit (success) can truthfully be granted and that a fair reward only springs forth from it.
- 74) Therefore, do not reject the teaching of the prophets as is brought to you by your prophet; the teaching is that of the truth, that of the spirit, that of the life, by means of which you can rescue yourselves from all unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and from your unfairness (irresponsibility).
- 75) But do not search for the truthfully truth in the false teachings of the false prophets, in their gods and tin gods and in their priests, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because they cannot provide any signs (evidence) of their belief (assumptions) and of their godliness (religion) and their fabricated (invented) gods and tin gods, because their belief is only a hazy picture (delusion) and they reject the real truth of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations, and are therefore doers of misdeeds against the truth because they put it under a seal (deny it).
- 76) The signs (evidence) and the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) has always been brought to you and your heads (rulers/lords), as it is also brought today, but those who came before you disregarded and rejected everything, as you also disregard the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 77) And as you disregard the teaching of the truth, you have since time immemorial also disregarded the true prophets and have slandered them as evident practitioners of suggestive spells and acts (magicians) because they have been able to give you uncomprehensible things in signs (manifestations of the consciousness-powers) through the truth of the power of their inner world (consciousness), which you in your undiscernment (unintellect) assume (regard) to be suggestive trickery (magic) and activities of the shadow world (activities of hell).
- 78) Truly, however, it is not suggestive trickery (magic) nor is it activities of the shadow world (activities of hell) which is given to you through the true prophets as a sign (evidence) of the truth, rather it is signs (evidence) of the power of their inner world (consciousness) that they show you, so that you may learn and recognise the truth; and truly the powers of the inner world (consciousness) are not the same as the acts of trickery (legerdemain), as are presented to you by imposters and charlatans.
- 79) And the true prophets do not come to you in order to deceive you, but in order to instruct you in the truth so that you may draw yourselves away (turn away) from your false gods and tin gods, so that only the truth may prevail over you.
- 80) Trust in all times in the truth and do not allow temptations of unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (conscienceless) to arise in you.
- 81) Rescue yourselves from your unknowledgeness and turn yourselves to the truth so that you may live your life in equitableness (fairness) and accountability (conscientiousness) as fair ones (responsible ones).
- 82) Therefore it is recommended to you that you be steadfast in the truth and that you henceforth no longer follow the way of unknowledgeness.
- 83) Do not persecute people of your kind (human beings) against all right and in enmity if they do not share your willingness (sense), are not of your people, of your skin colour or of your opinion and are not of your avowal (knowledge or belief), because however and whoever they may be, they are the same as you and therefore people of your kind (human beings), and as such they do not need your persecution, but rather your protection.
- 84) Rescue all who are in misery in the body, in the life, in their inner world (consciousness) and in their psyche, so that you may be helpful and set a sign (evidence) of your kindheartedness and that you follow the truth-teaching.
- 85) And if you are in any doubt about what the true prophets teach you, then ask those who have long since been following the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as it is taught by the prophets, because truly they can bear witness that much benefit (success) and bearableness of the life is given to them through following the teaching of the prophets, as well as love and joy, happiness and internal and external freedom, consonance (harmony) and real freedom.



- 86) Therefore, do not listen to those who reject the truth-teaching and are thereby in themselves lost ones.
- 87) And if you teach the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to people of your kind (fellow human beings), then do not coerce their decisiveness (will) to learn it, because otherwise they will not become true knowing and wise ones with regard to the truth, but merely believers who live in a hazy picture (delusion) and who lack cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect), so they are unable to understand the truth-teaching.
- 88) Truly, no people of your kind (human beings) can become knowing (conscious) and wise if they are not afforded the freedom of learning, but rather if they are coerced to do so and thereby fall prey to being believers; and if someone is brought to belief (assumptions) through coercion, as is the wont of the godlinesses (religions), then there is no insight (rationality) and no true discernment (intellect) in all this, which is why rage against those who are connected to the truth originates from this.
- 89) But observe and consider all that moves in the firmaments (universe) and happens on your worlds, so that you recognise the signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and that they are of use to you, together with the teaching of the prophets, so that you finally become knowing (conscious) and wise, as well as fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones).
- 90) Rescue yourselves from your unknowledge, together with those amongst you people of your kind (fellow human beings) who also want to liberate themselves from their unknowledgeness.
- 91) Direct your face to the signs (evidence) of the truth and turn yourselves to the laws and recommendations of the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) so that you no longer belong to those who pray to gods and tin gods that can neither harm nor help you.
- 92) And do not place anything next to the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation) other than its laws and recommendations, therefore no gods or tin gods, no priests, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, because amongst all of these there are none who would be equal to the primal wellspring of all wisdom (Creation).
- 93) Now, through the prophet, the truth has come again in a new form to all people of your kind (humankind), so given through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as it results from the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation); and whoever now follows this leadership (guidance) is simply following the prosperousness (wellbeing) of his or her own inner world (consciousness), his or psyche, his or her inner nature and his or her entire attitude (kind of thinking/mentality); whoever falls into delusion, however, that human being is merely going astray to his or her own harm and can neither be his or her own guardian nor his or her own master.
- 94) Therefore follow what is obvious (recognisable) to you in real truth, be steadfast in yourselves and decide things righteously in yourselves, because you alone are the best assessors of yourselves.



Chapter 11

- 1) The teaching of the prophets is a tremendous word of the truth which proceeds from the true laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation), and it is explained in detail by each prophet in his wise and according to his word in knowledge and wisdom.
- 2) And the word of the truth teaches that you shall not pray to and worship any gods and tin gods, as well as no priests, false prophets, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, therefore however also no people of your kind (human beings), whatever and whoever and however they may be.
- 3) Listen to the true prophet because he is the bringer of the truth and a joyful message, as he is however also an admonisher who warns you against contravening the creational-causal laws and recommendations.
- 4) Arrange everything in yourselves to the good so that you may forgive yourselves for what you have done up until now that is evil, false, unfair (irresponsible), unright, inequitable (unfair) and unrighteous (conscienceless); and if you turn yourselves to the truth, then you will prepare in yourselves a rich provision until the end of your days, so that grace (favour) will be granted to you through life itself, to each one of you according to your merits; if you do not turn away from the truth then you have nothing to fear, and you will be able to bear all torments that may strike you in your existence (life) through all kinds of circumstances and which you bring about yourselves or which others bring about without your participation.
- 5) You shall find the real truth because it alone has truthly might over all things.
- 6) Do not yourselves seal up your true thoughts and feelings, and also do not hide them from people of your kind



- (fellow human beings) if you want to deal with them in uprightness; also, you shall not cover yourselves with the garments of the untruth (lie) and never keep the truth secret, but rather reveal it because uprightness endures (lasts) over and beyond all untruth (lies), and any keeping secret of the truth brings harm upon you and people of your kind (human beings/fellow human beings).
- 7) Consider that everything is based on the truth, also the existence of all things in the firmaments (universe), on the earths (worlds/planets) and on all lights (celestial bodies) of the firmament, and truly, not one created creation (life form) that lives, crawls, walks or flies anywhere was called into life by gods or tin gods, rather they were all called into life by the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation).
 - 8) Truly, you have stories (fables) of the origination of your world and of the firmaments (universe), conceived through hazy pictures (delusion) of people of your kind (human beings) who thought up gods and tin gods for themselves who are supposed to have created your Earth, but these are in truth only fabricated narratives (myths) by imposters without sense and value, and everything is only evident deception (delusion), because truly everything persisting (existing) was set into existence (life) solely through the determining laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation).
 - 9) Learn the truth if it becomes obvious (recognisable) to you, and do not put off learning the truth until a certain time, because if you do this then you are holding yourselves back and you will never arrive at the day when you really turn yourselves to the truth; if you set yourselves a date for when you want to start with your learning of the truth, then, by doing so, you already turn yourselves away from the truth and mock it, since if you do not instantly (at the moment/immediately) start the learning then you will never do it because truly it is the same as someone who says that he or she is going to make a journey but never makes the preparations for it and sits in his or her dwelling doing nothing.
 - 10) Allow people of your kind (fellow human beings) to taste your benevolence (humanity) and kindheartedness and do not take anything away from them that is good and dear to them, so that they do not fall into despair and are not ungrateful to you.
 - 11) And if people of your kind (fellow human beings) are befallen by tribulation (affliction/misery/poverty/mishappening) then let them taste the fullness of happiness and your help so that the terrible things may vanish from them and they can once again be glad.
 - 12) Be at all times steadfast in your good deeds which you do according to the model (example) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), so that great reward will be granted in yourselves which is love and peace as well as freedom and consonance (harmony).
 - 13) And never give up even a speck of dust of a weight or one part of that which you have learned through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so that your breast (feelings) and your thoughts will not be constrained; keep the treasure of the truth in you as it is given by the true prophets so that you may be always your own admonisher (warner) and guardian (protector) in all things, whatever you do.
 - 14) Do not fabricate (invent) your own truths that are not equivalent with the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and only serve you for the purpose of false and fallacious vindication; truly, there is only one truth of the reality that dwells in the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation) and is of all-embracing validity, whereas you as people of your kind (human beings) each forge your own truths according to how you observe and consider the things and assess them.
 - 15) Do not give yourselves over to your own truths, but only integrate yourselves into the real truth as is given through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) so that you only ever see the full (effective) truth in all things, therefore in everything that you think and gather (comprehend) in your feelings, or which you perceive with your eyes and ears or through your deeds and activity, because truly it is only through this one truthfully truth that knowledge and wisdom comes about (is formed) in you, and these are based on rightness (fact) and pure truth alone.
 - 16) If you are called (summoned) as a witness in a case, then only speak the truth and nothing but the truth, because it is inequitable (irresponsible) for you to fabricate (invent) lies in order to give a good testimony for yourselves or others; and if you fabricate (invent) lies against the truth then you will only reap harm for this because the lie will come to the light of day in its own good time.
 - 17) Also, do not make others turn away from the truth by attempting to motivate them to bend (falsify) the truth.
 - 18) And consider that no matter how often you invent lies against the truth, you cannot destroy the truth or kill it, and if you do invent lies nevertheless then you will not make any friends for yourselves, but only enemies who will defame (disdain) you and their defamation (disdain) will continuously double because they will neither honour you nor treat you with dignity.



- 19) Consider, nothing can substantiate the truth more than the truthly truth itself, which is why you shall be connected to it alone; therefore never be in doubt if you know the truthly truth and represent it, but if you doubt it then you are deceiving yourselves.
- 20) Whoever desires the earthly life and its splendour, it shall only be given to him or her through the truthly truth because whoever leads an existence (life) rightfully and undertakes deeds in love and in fulfilment of the truth, that human being will be fully rewarded in his or her life, because he or she will not suffer in himself or herself from unright.
- 21) Do not be vain (arrogant) in what you do, because vanity (arrogance) is of nought and of all kinds of evil, through which a loss in the esteem held by people of your kind (fellow human beings) comes about.
- 22) Do not cast yourselves or people of your kind (fellow human beings) into ruin through any kind of machinations, and do not concoct things which brand you as unfair ones (irresponsible ones).
- 23) Be at all times fair (responsible) and righteous (conscientious) to yourselves, so that you do not fall prey to doubtfulness regarding yourselves and you do not regard yourselves as lost in the depths of your inner nature; and be at all times fair (responsible) and righteous (conscientious) to people of your kind (fellow human beings) so that you do not fall into doubtfulness with them and they do not avoid you.
- 24) Truly, also practise equitableness (fairness) in all things and help people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings) when they need your help, but do your good deeds in such a wise that you do not humiliate the needy and others requiring help and so that they are not obliged to abase themselves in unseemly (improper/inappropriate) gratitude; consider, help to people of your kind (fellow human beings) is a duty given by the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), therefore it shall be a certainty (implicitness) for you which you shall do in contentment (modesty).
- 25) And consider when you give alms (gifts) that you shall not be stingy, rather act according to the best of your ability regarding what you can give in goods and riches, but see that you yourselves have enough and do not have to suffer privations through distributing (donating) alms and gifts (donations); but consider stinginess which is a terrible thing and is of no use to you at the end of your days, because you cannot take anything with you into the realm of death (death-life); therefore it is also senseless for you to have gifts and great riches (grave offerings) placed into the grave; and therefore it is senseless for you to have gold and other valuable things forged into coverings on your face (death masks) and to have yourselves wrapped in expensive and sumptuous garments or for you to want your dead body preserved (embalmed) with expensive oil since what has lost the bloom (breath) of the life remains behind on the earth and decays in its time (sooner or later); and truly neither your dead body nor anything of what you place into the grave can be taken into the realm of death (death-life) that is not made of firmness (material), but is in truth of the finest power (energy) which is the equivalent of that of the primal power of all primal power (Creation).
- 26) Comprehend what is the truth of the truthly truth, therefore you shall listen to the admonishing and instructive words of the true prophet so that you may become knowing (conscious) of the real truth and act and lead your life as is laid down for you through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 27) Do not pray to people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up above you, such as rulers who only want to exert mastery over you and to exploit you, but who do not have a speck of dust of a weight for your wellbeing.
- 28) They see in you only creatures who deny themselves in submissiveness, but who are however believers in them, the rulers (despots/dictators/absolutists), and are subjected (submissive) to them although they only flatter (blandish) you for as long as it is of benefit (success) for them; but if they do not require you any longer or if you turn against them then they do not hesitate to persecute and to kill you; therefore you have truthly no advantage (benefit) from them, rather only exploitation and a danger looming over your life, because they do not regard you as people of their kind, only as lowly and common folk (spineless creatures) amongst all.
- 29) See that you have clear evidence for the kind of thinking (mentality) that you have, so that you do everything to be fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones), and grant yourselves and people of your kind (fellow human beings) everything that leads you and them out of the gloom of that which is unright and against the truth of the primal power (Creation).
- 30) And do the same as the true prophet, so that you do not demand any compensation for bringing the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to people of your kind (fellow human beings) through your mouth (speaking), rather only take due and appropriate compensation for your contributions (expenses) or gifts (voluntary presents) if these are of an extent that is rightful for you or intended for you to do good deeds with them.
- 31) Appreciate all people of your kind (human beings) equally as people of your kind (human beings), because you are all, in all firmaments (universe) and on all earths (worlds/planets) a single people of the primal power of all primal power (Creation), therefore there is no difference between people of your kind (human beings), but only



- in your face, in the colour of your skin, as well as inside and outside your body and in your speaking (language).
- 32) Truly, through the truthly laws and recommendations the primal power of all primal power (Creation), you possess infinite treasures (means) through which you can lead your existence (life) and make (form) everything to the best and with which you can unfold (evolve) yourselves, however much is only given to you in concealment so that you must fathom it out (research it); and truly, much of what is hidden is revealed to you by the true prophet and is made known (conscious) to you through him; consider, however, that he is from your people and therefore no liberator (angel), but a person of your kind (human being), although with more knowledge and wisdom and cognisance than you yourselves have, therefore also of that which is given in the laws and recommendations of the appearance (nature) from the primal power of all primal power (Creation); therefore allow yourselves good and valuable things and learn from the teaching of the prophets as your prophet teaches you, so that you do not disdain him and the truth-teaching in your eyes and do not belong to the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) who still have a very long way to go before they can recognise (see) the real truth in their time (one day) and turn to it.
 - 33) However, they will truly strive against (reject) the truth for a long time and indeed bring about calamity many times over through jealousy and hatred, through peacelessness, unfreedom (bondage), dissonance (disharmony) and war, as well as through outrages of all kinds, activities of Gewalt such as bloody deeds (murder) and defilement (crime).
 - 34) And consider what is proclaimed (announced) to you through the true prophet regarding what expectations (foretelling) will accrue to you (befall you) in the time to come (future) and in the far off and even farther off time to come (far and farther future), that will be fulfilled; or that which has been given to you as an oracle (prophesy) is a warning of what will happen if you do not turn the course of things to the better and do not strive yourselves to follow the truth.
 - 35) If you do not listen to the words of the true prophet and do not heed his advice, then it will be that you yourselves destroy very much of what you have created (your achievements), just as you also destroy the appearance (nature) and stir up the weather (climate/climate change) against yourselves, as a result of which you are struck by enormous unweather, high waters and storms and earthquakes and many other calamities, so that many people of your kind (human beings) are carried off by the roaring (rampaging) of the elements of the appearance (nature) and through illness, unfortune, mishap (accident) and vexations (plagues).
 - 36) Do not think that the oracles (prophesies) of the true prophet are merely fabulations (inventions), because he does not lay any blame upon himself with lies; however, great guilt will fall on you if you do not lend your ears to the warnings and do not change everything to the better, so that the oracles (prophesies) are not fulfilled; but consider that which is proclaimed (announced) to you in terms of expectations (foretelling) cannot be changed by you because it will happen as it has been revealed, because you have already done everything to ensure that there is no possibility of change.
 - 37) Go in peace with your prophet who reveals to you the true teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, so that the truth may prosper in you and you may pass this on to your descendants and they in turn may pass it on to their descendants for all time to come (future); truly, your far-off descendants will be other clans (families) than those which you have now, and will be more knowing and wiser than you can be in your life, but nevertheless they also need the instruction of the teaching of the prophets, so you shall take care that you are connected to the truth and that you pass it on (teach it) to your descendants (children's children, etc.) so that in all the time to come (future) they will do the same, and in this wise people of your kind (humankind) will be spared a sizeable (very great) amount of affliction and hardship, misery and spilling of blood, as well as outrages (crimes) of all kinds.
 - 38) Consider at all times this message of the things that are still concealed to you, as it is revealed to you through the true prophet and which you do not know up until now; nevertheless persevere in hearing the message through the prophet so that you do rightfully and comprehend (understand) the teaching of the prophets and pass it on (teach it) to your descendants, so that they and their descendants and their descendants in turn into the far time to come (far future) will be able to reshape (change) the outcome of the oracles (prophesies) to the better.
 - 39) Do not be fabulators (inventors) of lies, rather be recognisers and bearers as well as keepers (protectors) of the truth, and never demand a compensation for this because the compensation comes of its own accord (automatically/by itself) from out of yourselves to you if you are faithful to the truth in a righteous (conscientious) and fair (responsible) wise.
 - 40) If you turn yourselves to the truth, then fruitful clouds will come over you with ample showers of rain which will wash you clean of your errors and from ununderstanding, so that your power of the truth will increase in you and you will increasingly fall away from all those things of unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) that bring continuous confusion in yourselves.
 - 41) And as you give faithfulness to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation), so you will also recognise (see) and understand the signs (evidence) of their reality (existence),



as you abandon your fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods, as well as their false prophets, priests, servants of gods and servants of tin gods, so that you no longer believe in them and worship them because of a mere and made up word.

- 42) Be knowing (conscious) that no gods and no tin gods can inflict an evil upon you or give you help in any things whatsoever; and truly, no-one can bear witness with good admonishment (conscience) to people of your kind (human beings) that he or she has ever received even a speck of dust of a weight of evil or calamity or help or benefit (success) through a god or tin god, no matter what fulsome (very great) entreaties and prayers were made to them, and irrespective of your falling down on your knees or making offerings (sacrifices) to them.
- 43) Truly, it is only through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) that help is granted to you if you follow them accountably (conscientiously) and fairly (responsibly) and at all times in equitableness (fairness); and if you do in this wise then you will have no share in what the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and unfair ones (irresponsible ones) do when they pray to gods and tin gods.
- 44) And though you are surrounded by ones who are unknowing of the truth, do not forge any evil plans against them and do not press them to learn about the truth, rather grant them their time that they need so that they may themselves find the way to interest in it.
- 45) Truly, trust at all times that each person of your kind (human being) will in his or her time (sooner or later) find the way to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation), even if it may take a long time until then.
- 46) Truly, even though you have the audacity to be turned away from (deny) the truth, you can do nothing to harm it, because as truth, it remains in existence for all time and is unchangeable, even if you place every lie and slander against it (deny it) within the scope of your ability.
- 47) And if you think that if you turn yourselves away from the belief (assumptions) in your gods or tin gods that you will then be struck by a bane, by uncalmness and unpeace, then this is only fabulated (invented) lying by the false prophets, their priests and servants of gods and servants of tin gods in order to bind you in your belief (assumptions) in your fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods, so that you reject the truthly truth.
- 48) But truly you will not find calmness and peace with fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods and with their false prophets, priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods, rather only in the truthly truth that is solely with the primal power of all primal power (Creation) and with its incessantly activating laws and recommendations; and you shall turn yourselves to its sole truth, because only through it will you find your truthly life-conduct in your existence (life).
- 49) Do not, like your fathers and mothers and like your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears), pray to gods and tin gods or demons, all of which are only hazy pictures (fantasies) of confused people of your kind (human beings), but rather search for and find the sole truth of all truth in the primal power of all primal power (Creation) and in its laws and recommendations.
- 50) And if you search for and find the truth of all truth, then you also recognise and understand its signs (evidence) as they are given to you by the appearance (nature) and through all things and occurrences of your life.
- 51) And heed that you do not commit outrage (misdemeanour) against right and regulation, and not against the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) so that you rescue yourselves from all terrible things before they befall you.
- 52) Place all your confidence (trust) in the truth as it is taught to you by the true prophet through the teaching of the prophets, so that you may be truthful (upright) and without unsettling doubts.
- 53) And if you trust in the truth then you do not need to have any fear because it brings you swelling (prosperousness) in yourselves, so that you stand above everything that comes (breaks in) over you from outside because that which is your good inner nature stands gloriously over all the unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) that can strike you from outside from people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 54) And if you are struck by unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and by unright and evil from people of your kind (fellow human beings), then do not become quivering with rage and not abusive (brazen), and do not do the same as those who attack you with evil and unright, rather be calm and behave with dignity in such a wise that you forgive the evildoers and offer them the hand of peace.
- 55) Truly, you alone have the might over yourselves for you to be able to examine (control) yourselves in your thoughts, feelings and in your actions, so that you do not pay back evil with evil, but rather always take the right measure in accordance with insight (intellect) and true discernment (rationality) in order to respond to attacks against you with dignity and in deference (honourableness).
- 56) And, if you want to honour something above yourselves, then do not honour fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods, nor people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up above you, rather exclusively honour the truth and the primal power of all primal power (Creation) just as you shall honour those people of your kind (fellow human beings) with suitable dignity who are truly people of your kind (human beings) and only follow the truthly truth and the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).



- 57) Your counsel shall be always the truth alone, so that you may be continuously upright (of integrity) and that you do not reduce the amount of weight (deceive) in any things whatsoever when you are conducting commerce and need to measure the weight; and therefore your counsel shall always be the truth, if you are called (summoned) as a witness or if you are asked about any things whatsoever; do rightfully at all times so that your wellbeing (health) will not be reduced in any things and you do not need to fear anything.
- 58) Therefore, in all things, always give full measure and weight according to rightness, even when you are speaking with one another, so that you do not deceive either through action or word and do not commit an outrage against the truth (do not use Gewalt) or commit unright.
- 59) Truly, if betterment shall be granted to you after doing unright, then there is no might except for your own that can give you betterment, because you alone possess the might over yourselves in order to do good and better things for yourselves which has an effect both in yourselves and outside yourselves; therefore it is given on the basis that you must always trust yourselves in all things and that you always only turn towards yourselves; however, if you require counsel from people of your kind (fellow human beings), then do not turn yourselves to fools and false prophets, but to truly wise ones who are versed in the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation) and have great true discernment of the life, so that you are not misguided (deluded).
- 60) The truly wise and discerning ones of the life are the ones who understand much of what can be interpreted from the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), just as your prophet also teaches; therefore see that you are not weak and not self-righteous (arrogant), so you do not try to ask the ones who are truthly knowing and wise when you need their counsel.
- 61) And always act with regard to the truth to the best of your ability (capability), and see that you do not unknowingly (without knowledge) mix up the truth with assumptions, which in certain circumstances are the equivalent of lies and slanders (calumnies).
- 62) And do not reject people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings) as the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and the unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) do, because they consider the others to be of less (lower) worth than themselves, indeed truly no-one amongst people of your kind (human beings) is more or less than another; truthly neither standing (rank) nor name nor goods and riches are of any importance (significance) as worth for people of your kind (human beings), just as the colour of skin, a belief, knowledge of the truth, descent from people (race) or shape (formation) of the body in the exterior or interior (physique and configuration of organs) are not of any significance either.
- 63) And do not do unright amongst one another in any wise, not through hatred and not out of acquisitiveness, not out of jealousy and not out of sheer lovelessness, and also not through false laws of false prophets, and not through false punishments which are fabulated (invented) by the false prophets for their bogus (mendaciously invented) gods or tin gods; be at all times knowing (conscious) of your being of your kind (being human in the real and true sense), so that you may take care for this great worth and do not fall prey to barbarity (inhumanity).
- 64) And do not do unright to yourselves and do not increase your ruin in yourselves by believing in gods and tin gods, in false prophets, in the priests of gods and priests of tin gods which make you turn away (lure you away) from the truth of the primal power of all primal powers (Creation) and from its laws and recommendations, so that you run into ruin in yourselves.
- 65) And know there is no judgement by gods and tin gods that can come over you, therefore you cannot come to a god or tin god in a kingdom of heaven and therefore also not to a place of blissfulness (paradise), just as you also cannot fall prey to a shadow world (hell) in which an embodied evil (devil) makes you burn in eternal fire, so that all that is left to you is groaning and sobbing; truly, these are delusional (schizophrenic) hazy constructions (fantasies) without any sense of the truth.
- 66) Therefore, do not incline to the delusional belief (assumptions) in gods and tin gods, and also not to demons, a place of blissfulness (paradise) in the kingdom of heaven of a god or tin god, and therefore also not to a shadow world (hell) in which a prince of the shadow world (prince of hell) wields his sceptre and is supposed to let you suffer torment in the fire; truly, the kingdom of heaven (paradise) and the shadow world (hell) are in yourselves, as a state (condition) of your inner world (consciousness) as your thoughts and feelings, and also as your psyche and your inner nature which you carry as yourselves (personality) and also your individuality (character).
- 67) Carry out your duty of the truth at all times in your existence (life), in the day and at night, and let good deeds drive out the evil deeds, hatred, jealousy, bloody deeds (murders), battles (wars) and all outrages of unfairness (irresponsibility), unrighteousness (consciencelessness) as well as all infamous actions (crimes).
- 68) Be steadfast and do not allow righteousness (conscientiousness) and fairness (responsibility) to become lost, rather use your true discernment (intellect) to prevent the depravity from spreading further throughout people of your kind (human beings), so that you learn to make all people of your kind (humankind) into a single and



peaceful people, and so that you no longer fight one another through hatred and battles (wars) and you no longer make yourselves guilty of bloody deeds (killings), of outrage (torture) and destruction as well as all other kinds of terrible things and calamity.

- 69) These are the tidings and the admonishment of your true prophet, so that you may strengthen yourselves in your inner nature and in your thoughts and feelings, as well as in your individuality (character), so that you may truthfully become people of your kind (truthfully human beings) and fulfil the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) in order to create true love and freedom, peace and consonance (harmony) amongst all people of your kind (humankind) just like in yourselves; this is where the truth of the teaching of your prophet and the teaching of all true prophets is to be found, so that you are admonished and that you finally understand that it is solely by following the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of all primal power (Creation) that you will be led into a better and good as well as fruitful (successful) time to come (future).
- 70) Therefore it is recommended to you that you turn to the truth and henceforth act according to the best of your knowledge and the best admonishment (conscience) as well as to the best of your ability for you to become knowing (conscious) in all the hidden things of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and that you follow it by using it in confidence through your cognition (intellect) and through your true discernment (rationality) so that everything will turn to the best with you and inside you.



Chapter 12

- 1) These are the words of the teaching of the prophets that is given to you as the teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life.
- 2) The words of the teaching of the prophets is the teaching of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the unfolding of BEING (Creation = unfolding = becoming, BEING = existence), and it is given to you so that you may understand the existence (life) and all things that are connected to it.
- 3) And the truth-teaching is proclaimed (announced) to you so that the hidden things of the primal (creational) laws and recommendations may be revealed to you, so that you learn to know how you shall bear (conduct) yourselves in your existence (life).
- 4) Truly, instead of you showing deference (honourableness) to the unfolding of BEING (Creation), you worship names (titles) and gods and tin gods which you yourselves fabulate (invent) and for which you have no authorisation of any kind; you alone have decided and demanded yourselves to fabulate (invent) gods and tin gods and high names (titles), to pray to them and to worship them, however this is not the way of the truth, even if most of the people of your kind (human beings) are caught up in this doing (indulge in this doing).
- 5) Therefore, against all the truth of freedom, you are genuflecting (suppliantly falling on your knees) before your fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods and names (titles), so that you disregard the truthfully freedom of people of your kind (human beings), as is taught to you through the primal (creational) laws and recommendations.
- 6) And you have created prejudice (partiality) amongst yourselves, so that you give wine to one and deliver the other to death, depending on what you think will be the most convenient (advantageous) for you; and you decide on this in vanity (imperiousness) over all right and over the truth of the primal (creational) laws and recommendations.
- 7) Consider, through the laws and recommendations of the unfolding of BEING (Creation), you are given the might over everything so that you guide (use) it rightly and do not make your own laws and recommendations that are against those of the unfolding of BEING (Creation); therefore if you make your own laws and recommendations then they shall be in harmony with the primal (creational) ones.
- 8) Truly, you have the dominance over everything, but use it according to right and the law, as everything proceeds from the laws and recommendations of the unfolding of BEING (Creation), so that you do not create right in unright or law in lawlessness.
- 9) To you are also given cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect) so that you can comprehend (understand) the right explanation of the primal (creational) laws and recommendations and can act accordingly, so that you are protectors of yourselves and protectors of all people of your kind (humanity), as well as of all kinds of life (life forms), of the firmaments (universe), your world and all earths (worlds/planets) and all lights in the firmament (stars/comets/nebulas).
- 10) To you is given the power (rationality and intellect) so that you may research into the hidden nature of the primal (creational) laws and recommendations and that you may direct yourselves according to the tidings



(message/teaching) that is given to you through the true prophets.

- 11) Therefore turn yourselves towards the truthly truth and do not foment intrigues (guilefulness) against it, because just as you do not like intrigues (guilefulness) against yourselves, so you shall also not like wanting to devalue the truth through intrigues (guilefulness).
- 12) Truly, most of those amongst you are not particularly well-versed in the truth and in its benefit (success), so that most diligently wish to achieve their intentions through untruth (lying) and unright, which is however directed against the primal (creational) laws and recommendations and for this reason brings harm to all in its time, because the truth cannot be deceived and comes to the light which discovers all untruth (lying) and all unright.
- 13) Therefore do not unrightfully demand a reward (payment) for any things whatsoever that are of unright, so that you do not heedlessly pass over equitableness (fairness) and you do not turn yourselves away from the admonishment through the truth.
- 14) And do not raise yourselves up as gods as you raise up gods and tin gods over yourselves in a fabulating (inventing) wise, so that you will not be worshipped by people of your kind (human beings) as you worship your fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods, who can neither benefit you nor harm you, in contrast to those whom you raise up into gods as people of your kind (human beings), who subdue (master) you, exploit you and make you into submissive slaves in bondage and without will, and believing in them.
- 15) And if you turn to the truth then it does not demand any reward from you if you follow it, rather it is a great honour for all people of your kind (human beings) if you turn to it and follow it.
- 16) And there are many signs (much evidence) in the appearance (nature) of your world as well as in the firmaments (universe) and on the earths (worlds/planets) and in all lights in the firmament (stars/comets/nebulas) for the reality of the primal (creational) truth, which you are recommended to follow; and you shall not pass over these signs (this evidence) of the unfolding of BEING (Creation) heedlessly, nor turn yourselves away from them.
- 17) Truly, many amongst you do not heed the signs (evidence) of the truth of the presence (existence) of the unfolding of BEING (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations, which is why you place fabulated (invented) gods and tin gods at its side, to whom you senselessly pray, as also unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) amongst you raise themselves up as fabulated (invented) god(s) and have you offer worship and supplication to them.
- 18) However, do not feel secure with your gods and tin gods because they can neither benefit you nor harm you, and therefore neither can they protect you, just as they cannot keep you safe from the terrible things that you yourselves create in your inner world (consciousness), in your psyche, in your inner nature and in your individuality (character) if you go along far away from (off the way of) truth and turn yourselves as unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) to all terrible things, through which you create hatred and jealousy, as well as battles (wars) and bloody deeds (murder), unfreedom (bondage), peacelessness and dissonance (disharmony); truly, you will suffer great harm and pain, affliction, hardship and misery through this if suddenly the hour of disaster comes (breaks in) over you without you suspecting anything.
- 19) Therefore, it is recommended to you that you follow the straight and secure way of the truth, and lead your lives on the basis of secure cognisance of the primal (creational) laws and recommendations, that you solely follow these and do not worship any gods and tin gods.
- 20) Listen to the true prophets and follow the teaching of the prophets who give you revelations regarding the unfolding of BEING (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations.
- 21) Do not think that the true prophets are lying to you, because they bring you true help for leading your existence (life), so that you may save yourselves from all the terrible things and disaster which you create out of yourselves and harm (worry) yourselves with.
- 22) Truly, the teaching of the prophets shows the way that you must take if you strive in cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect) to go along on it; the teaching of the prophets and their words are no fabulated (invented) speech, but rather a fulfilment of what the prophets recognised out of the primal (creational) laws and recommendations as their duty and which they bring to you as a clear explanation of all things, so that you may become knowing (conscious) and wise through following the sole truth that is given in the signs (evidence) of the presence of the unfolding of BEING (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations and which is substantive (visible).





Chapter 13

- 1) The teaching of the prophets is the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as has been revealed through the true prophets since time immemorial.
- 2) The teaching teaches the predetermined fulfilment which is the unfolding (evolution) of the inner world (consciousness) of people of your kind (human beings).
- 3) For this purpose, all things are regulated (determined) through the Creation and its laws and recommendations which are the laws and recommendations of all determination of the proceeding and the ceasing (becoming and passing).
- 4) All things are regulated (determined) through the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations, both on your world and in all firmaments (universe) as well as on all earths (worlds/planets), and in all lights of the firmament (moons/stars/nebulas/comets, etc.).
- 5) Heed the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations so that you may do rightfully and lead your lives rightfully, so that you do not create punishment in yourselves for things which you do unrightfully.
- 6) Therefore be also full of forgiveness for all people of your kind (human beings) who commit misdeeds (do unrightfully), but truly you cannot avoid integrating malefactors into a punishment, which, however, shall be fair (responsible) and appropriate, but not harm either body or life or the inner world (consciousness) or the psyche.
- 7) Truly, each thing has its measure, such as the punishment for misdeeds, as well as everything else that arises in the existence (life); however, because you do not know the signs (evidence) for this and you also do not strive to recognise the signs (evidence) of this in the appearance (nature) and therefore in the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations, true prophets come to you in order to reveal everything and to proclaim the hidden things of the proceeding (Creation) to you.
- 8) However, the true prophets are not rulers over you, but are ambassadors of the truth and leaders as well as admonishers (warners) for you, so that you may see all things in the right measure.
- 9) The true prophets are the knowers of the hidden and of the visible, but do not place themselves over you, so that you are always yourselves and you guide (lead) and think out (form) everything according to your own knowledge and your own admonishment (conscience).
- 10) Truly, to yourselves is due the honour for your good actions and deeds, because you undertake them yourselves and they do not belong to the doing of any tin gods or gods which you call on and make supplications to in your confused belief (assumptions) in them, and which do not listen to you in any case; truly, you alone are listening to yourselves when you call on your inner world (consciousness) and you complete your deeds through your thoughts and feelings and actions, because no gods or tin gods do you either good or ill, being only hazy pictures (figments of the imagination), rather it is out of yourselves that you complete everything just as if you stretch out your hand for water for it to reach your mouth; if, however, you assume (believe) that your hand stretching out for water for it to reach your mouth has been guided by some god or tin god, then you are merely entertaining wasted thoughts about something that is truthfully not given and also cannot be.
- 11) Wherever you are on your world or in the firmaments (universe) or on earths (worlds/planets), do not throw yourselves down willingly or unwillingly before gods or tin gods, because either they are merely fabrications (inventions) of confused people of your kind (human beings) or they are people of your kind (human beings) who presume to raise themselves up as gods before you.
- 12) Gods and tin gods are no helpers for you, because they have no might in order either to harm or to help you or themselves; consider as an allegory (comparison) that blind and sighted people cannot be the same as one another in observation (perception) just as the dark and the light are not the same, and in the same wise gods and tin gods are hazy pictures (pictures of the imagination) invented by people of your kind (human beings) or power and strength which are given to you and which you can use in cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect); therefore do not bow down (submit) before hazy (fleeting) delusions of supposed gods and tin gods because you alone are truthfully present (existent) and full of power and strength through which you can complete everything that you desire, whether it be for good or ill, according to your righteousness (conscientiousness) or unrighteousness (consciencelessness).
- 13) Know at all times what is revealed to you through the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations by means of signs (evidence) of their presence (existence), so that you may recognise false and true and keep it, so it does not escape you as foam which forms bubbles which immediately burst.
- 14) Goodness is determined by the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations to those who are extensively (amply) connected to the truth and the truth-teaching in such a wise that truthfully love awakens in them, and peace as well as freedom and consonance (harmony), as great values which are also carried to the outside and prompt (encourage) people of your kind (fellow human beings) to create the same in themselves.
- 15) But it is the truth that only those turn to the truth and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the



teaching of the life who use their recognition (rationality) and their true discernment (intellect) and knowingly (consciously) and willingly want to consider (think about) the truth.

- 16) Those, however, who connect everything that goes forth from and is recommended by the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations, connect themselves to the proceeding (Creation) itself and are not afraid to stand up according to right and law as well as due measure and obligation (responsibility) for what is rightful, of righteousness (conscientiousness), equitableness (fairness) and of fairness (responsibility), because they do not know any fear in going against the untruth and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) as well as what is unfair (irresponsible) and inequity (unfairness).
- 17) They remain steadfast in demanding the true life in truthly love and freedom as well as in demanding peace and consonance (harmony) in themselves and in the world amongst all people of your kind (humankind).
- 18) Learn to avert evil through goodness, so that peace may be upon you and upon people of your kind (fellow human beings) and you may be good to one another in love, knowledge and wisdom.
- 19) Therefore learn to recognise the signs (evidence) of the truth so that you may follow the guidelines (basic rules) of the laws and recommendations of the proceeding (Creation) and you may find your consolation in it if affliction befalls you.
- 20) And truly, happiness and joy are given to all in themselves who do good deeds in following the truth, because in their inner nature there is a homestead of true love, peace, freedom and of consonance (harmony).
- 21) But there are many amongst you who consider the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to be a lie, because you are bound to gods and tin gods and bound to false prophets who lie to you and make you believe that through their teaching of lies and their knowledge (belief) it is possible to move mountains and for you to speak with the dead, but truly everything is merely a lie and slander (calumny) against the truthly truth; truly, the word that mountains can be moved by belief (assumptions) is not possible, because it is only given as an allegory (comparison) that through knowledge it is possible to win (achieve) considerable things (very much); and that you can speak with the dead is merely a lie and deception, because something that is dead can neither be returned to life nor can it make itself understandable to people of your kind (human beings) in voice (words) or in thoughts.
- 22) If, however, you assume (believe) in these lies of the false prophets and those who follow the false teachings of the false prophets, then you will persist in unknowledge of the truth, therefore the calamity of your delusion (deluded belief) will not cease and will strike you again and again, and lead you into erroneous assumption and confusion, so that in good time (sooner or later) you will be struck by the boiling heat (madness/ schizophrenia) in your inner world (consciousness) and you will no longer be able to differentiate between occurrence (reality) and unoccurrence (unreality/illusion).
- 23) Truly, not only are there many amongst you who mock the true prophet, but even before you there were already many who mocked the prophets and did not accept their teaching as the truth, because they were unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) and were fully uneducated in the truth; but you can see what has truly come of this, that things that were previously still good are today turned into badness and evil, and this will continue if you do not listen to the teaching of the prophets, to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, which is created by the true prophets out of the laws and recommendations of the proceeding (Creation).
- 24) Truly, what you do not know about the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations is proclaimed to you by the prophets with the words of their teaching, and it is not merely an empty speech in order to make it appear pleasing to your eyes and ears, rather it is a speech of the truth through which you shall not be kept away from the right way, so that you do not go into confusion and so that you may find a true leader (guide) in the laws and recommendations of the proceeding (Creation).
- 25) Truly, the figure (extent) of the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations is endlessly great and wide (very extensive), and its fruits (effects) are everlasting and good for you if you follow their guidelines (rules), but they cast shadows over you if you are against them and have contempt for them.
- 26) Therefore, follow the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and fulfil the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations within the extent (frame) of fairness (responsibility) and righteousness (conscientiousness) and in equitableness (fairness), so that it shall be well with you and you may live in yourselves and outside yourselves in love and peace, as well as in freedom and consonance (harmony), as is taught to you by the true prophets.
- 27) They reveal the truth of the laws and recommendations of the proceeding (Creation) to you as clear guidance which you truly cannot misunderstand, if you strive to do so and do not follow evil cravings which go astray (deviate) from the knowledge and wisdom; take the clear guidance and follow it so that you may find true protection and friendship therein.
- 28) And also heed the signs (evidence) of the truth that you see and find in the proceeding (creational) laws and recommendations, as they are also given to you in the appearance (nature) so that you only need to see (notice)



them and to estimate (assess) them according to your cognition (intellect) and true discernment (rationality).



Chapter 14

- 1) The teaching of the prophets is the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life so that through it all people of your kind (human beings) may be guided out of the darkness of unknowledge into the light of knowledge through the laws and recommendations of the venerable one (Creation).
- 2) Everything that exists on your world and on the earths (worlds/planets) and in the firmaments (universe) has proceeded from it.
- 3) Here below, give your preference to goodness, fairness (responsibility) and righteousness (conscientiousness) in life over that which makes you turn away from the truth.
- 4) Do not strive to bend (falsify) the truth, whatever it may relate to.
- 5) Also, do not turn away from the truth, so that you do not fall prey to erring.
- 6) The teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is given to you in a language that you understand so that you can see the things clearly and cannot misunderstand them, and thereby you cannot go into confusion, as you are led (guided) at all times and are rightly led (guided) in your thoughts and feelings as well as in your actions and deeds.
- 7) Be concerned that you are admonished about the truth through yourselves everyday and that you always practise gratitude and patience.
- 8) Be at all times mindful of the love and kindheartedness that are given to you through the laws and recommendations of the venerable one (Creation), so that it shall be well with you if you follow them.
- 9) Trust the signs (evidence) of the venerable (creational) laws and recommendations that show (reveal to) you the way to the truth and to the truthly life, so that you do not cause any affliction in yourselves and also do not inflict any affliction on people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 10) Do not turn away so that you avoid hearing or seeing the truth, rather turn yourselves towards it and drive out everything in you which is far from the truth, such as your gods and tin gods and your godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults).
- 11) See that your deeds are not the same as ashes which the wind blows on a stormy day and casts them to all the winds (all points of the compass).
- 12) See that your deeds are long-lasting, just as if you are building a house on a rock with its foundations set into the rock.
- 13) Consider that you can create everything yourselves, because to you is given the might over your inner world (consciousness) and over your thoughts and imaginations (ideas), through which you can devise and carry out great and good deeds so that they are permanent.
- 14) And the most important permanent activity that you shall work on is the building of the truth in yourselves, by gathering truthly knowledge and true wisdom, by means of which you create true love and freedom in yourselves and outside yourselves, as well as peace and consonance (harmony).
- 15) If truthly progression (progress) is going to be made in all respects amongst all people of your kind (humankind), then it is unavoidable for you to turn yourselves to following the venerable (creational) laws and recommendations and to follow them evermore, so that you create peace and love amongst one another and in yourselves, as well as freedom and consonance (harmony), so that you fall away from hatred and battles (wars) in yourselves and all around (worldwide), as well as from all defilement (crime) and bloody deeds (murder) and also all other terrible things by which you are dominated and through which you continuously fall into ruin.
- 16) And as you learn and as you turn recognisingly (comprehendingly) and discerningly (rationally) to the truth of the venerable (creational) laws and recommendations, so do not show impatience but rather be patient and continuously strive to achieve recognition and understanding.
- 17) The laws and recommendations of the venerable one (Creation) promise you the promise of the truth by means of which you are rightly led (guided) and you have the might over yourselves to do everything rightfully if you follow the promise and learn everything that is offered to you by the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 18) Act in such a wise that you do not have to reproach yourselves, so that you can help yourselves in all circumstances (situations) and you do not place external powers at your side which determine over you and wield might over you.



- 19) And do not assume (believe) that you are doing good deeds if you do things of unright to the next one of people of your kind (next fellow human beings) in any wise, no matter how small it may be, because truly you can only do good, if also the smallest thing is rightful.
- 20) And do not assume (believe) that unright when committed will pass you by heedlessly, because whatever you do in the good or bad will redound on you in its time (sooner or later).
- 21) Go continuously forwards in your life and be without fear, if you do rightfully and hold your heads up (looking forwards) in order to make progress whilst you leave the past behind you and direct yourselves according to what you can do that is good and unfolding (evolutive) and renewing (progressive).
- 22) And truly, you must do what is unfolding (evolutive) and renewing (progressive) before your time of life (lifetime) comes to an end, because if you want to learn and forge plans once your time has expired then nothing more can succeed for you.
- 23) Do not form your inner nature as a dwelling of terrible things against which you yourselves commit outrages (do irresponsible deeds), because you do not make it clear to yourselves how you must proceed with yourselves in order to lead your existence (life) fairly (responsibly) and righteously (conscientiously).
- 24) And do not make yourselves promises that you cannot keep because you do not strive to keep them.
- 25) And if you do not do rightfully in all things in your life, then you will be remorseful about it at the end of your days (end of life) and feel yourselves blamefully clapped into chains that you can no longer cast off.
- 26) Therefore, be admonished so that in your existence (life) you do not do unrightfully (irresponsibly) and unrighteously (consciencelessly) in all things, so that at the end of your days (end of life) you can depart from this world calmly and with dignity, without fear.
- 27) Be upright and peaceful in yourselves and carry forth your uprightness and peaceableness into the world amongst people of your kind (human beings) so that all may be upright and peaceful in righteousness (conscientiousness) and fairness, and as fair ones (responsible ones).
- 28) Be admonished that you shall neither harbour hatred in yourselves nor jealousy nor any other terrible thing through which you fall prey to evil and unright and go out against one another in order to fight (be at war with) one another in bitterness, to wage battles (wars) against one another and to carry out pillage and bring forth destruction.



End of the immemorial teaching of the prophets

New section of the teaching according to the pre-given themes in the immemorial style of writing

By «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier (BEAM)



Chapter 15

- 1) Truly, many of those who are unknowing of the truth often wish that they were ones who are knowing of the truth, but they are unable to free themselves from what they do that is unright and evil, because they love to feast (eat) and to indulge themselves and to cherish vain (arrogant) hopes.
- 2) They do not like to admonish themselves and they ridicule themselves with their own hopes and wishes, so that lovelessness, unfreedom (bondage), peacelessness and inequality take root in their inner nature.
- 3) However, they are not able to recognise (see) what is the truthly truth, therefore they must be instructed (taught) in order to recognise (see) the truth; yet the truth is but one, although many ways lead to it, namely the same number as there are of people of your kind (human beings).
- 4) Truly, there is only one truth which is given through the laws and recommendations of the all-mightiness



(Creation), but it takes great concentration and perception of real substance to recognise it, because it is given through signs (evidence/proof) that you can recognise if you observe the appearance (nature) precisely and comprehend (perceive) everything that is concealed in it; truth is certainty in recognition of reality.

- 5) However, since you do not strive truly rightfully to comprehend (perceive) everything in the appearance (nature) and therefore in the laws and recommendations of the all-mightiness (Creation), true prophets have been given to you who engage themselves in (fathom) the comprehension (perception) and the explanation (teaching) of the signs (evidence) in order to expound (explain) them to you and all people of your kind (humankind) so that you may understand them and use them to the full extent (amply) for yourselves to the benefit of yourselves and all people of your kind (humankind).
- 6) And the true prophets are people of your kind (human beings) from amongst your midst, therefore they are neither envoys nor representatives (substitutes) of any fabulated (invented) gods as have been thought up since time immemorial by people of your kind (human beings) who were not mastering (bearing) the truth and who believed (assumed) that mights over them were steering their destiny.
- 7) But be certain (knowing) that there are no mights ruling over you determining your fate, therefore neither gods nor tin gods, because throning over you is only the all-mightiness (Creation) with its laws and recommendations which you shall follow, but which however leave you free in your volition (will) and do not determine what you have to do and what you have to refrain from.
- 8) If, however, you follow the all-mighty laws and recommendations then it will be fine with you because you knowingly (consciously) create true love in yourselves, as well as freedom, peace and harmony, which you shall carry forth and spread amongst people of your kind (human beings) as high values, so that the well-being of the love, peace, freedom and harmony may prevail over the entire world and amongst all people of your kind (humankind).
- 9) And know that you are protected against all evil and against any terribleness in you if you follow the laws and recommendations of the all-mightiness (Creation), but if you do not follow them then evil and calamity will break into you, whereby your inner nature will suffer great harm.
- 10) And truly, there is nothing which does not contain great treasures as guidelines (rules) in the all-mighty laws and recommendations, which will lead to great effect (success) if only they are followed.
- 11) Therefore be fair ones (responsible ones) and righteous ones (conscientious ones) following the laws and recommendations of the all-mightiness (Creation) in equitableness (fairness), so that it shall be well with you.
- 12) Allow love and peace, freedom and harmony to enter you so that you may be protected in it and you cast everything away from yourselves that there is of resentment.
- 13) And as people of your kind (human beings), be entirely like brothers and sisters to one another, so that you are in love to one another and that no-one feels any greater (more) in worth than any other.
- 14) Always practise love and uprightness as well as benevolence (humanity) towards one another and do not allow yourselves to be touched by fatigue in this, neither allow yourselves to be made uncertain in this.
- 15) And do not fear the true prophets, because they bring you glad tidings so that you may live amongst one another in goodness and in love, harmony and in freedom when you follow the laws and recommendations of the all-mightiness (Creation).
- 16) They bring you the pure truth which is as truthful (unadulterated) as the light of the sun which shines upon you and gives you warmth; and truly, the truth shall shine in you and warm you so that you are liberated in yourselves from all terrible things and evil and from all unright, unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness).
- 17) Therefore follow the teaching of the prophets, do not be afraid and do not cast yourselves into ignominy (sadness).
- 18) Do not direct your eyes towards what the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) are doing, and do not follow them, because they will only enjoy their unrightful doing for a short time and they are saddening themselves.
- 19) Therefore, listen to the true prophets and their teaching, because they are clear warners for you that you shall not commit evil and terrible things, so that no calamity comes (breaks in) over you and you do not cause punishment to yourselves.
- 20) Consider at all times that you will be brought to account in good time (sooner or later) in one or another wise for everything that you do which is unrightful.
- 21) Therefore, do not mock the truth and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, because if you are mockers then you only mock yourselves and impose an evil harm on yourselves, because the truth does not let itself be mocked.
- 22) But, if you do mock the truth, then your breast (thoughts and feelings) will become anguished, when your own mockery catches up with you and you have to give account for it.



Chapter 16

- 1) And words of wisdom are given to you through the true prophets which you shall heed and follow so that it shall be well with you.
- 2) Do not follow the advice of the deniers of the truth, neither take the way of those who are unfair ones (irresponsible ones), nor sit amongst the mockers, because they tread the truth down with their feet.
- 3) Follow at all times the laws and recommendations of the Creation and have a desire for love and for peace at all times.
- 4) Be in the truth like a tree that is planted along streams of water and brings forth good fruits, with leaves that never wither.
- 5) The ones having no knowledge of the truth are like useless chaff of the grain which are scattered by the wind, because all of their wrong actions are without weight and without value, and their words are like mist and smoke and without power.
- 6) The laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) are created for the striving towards true love, for the striving towards knowledge and wisdom and for the best possible, moral and virtuous flawlessness (perfection).
- 7) Each person of your kind (human being) has received natural gifts through the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), the powers of the body, the cognition (rationality) and the true discernment (intellect) of the inner world (consciousness), the psyche and the thoughts and feelings.
- 8) And it is the task of each person of your kind (human beings) to allow all these powers to grow forth (evolve) and to create capabilities from them, and to discover new things and to allow them to grow (evolve).
- 9) Truly, continued practice leads to proficiency (capability) and to strength and mastery, and whoever has accustomed themselves to doing truthful, i.e. infallible things through continued practice will do good things with ease, with joy and with certainty, and be full of virtue.
- 10) And every virtue helps to make it easy, joyful and certain to do the good, the fair (responsible) and the righteous (conscientious).
- 11) And everyone amongst you can acquire virtues by striving to form their character and to instruct and educate themselves; and this personal discipline (self-education) must never cease during the entire life.
- 12) In order to give enough consideration to the real truth which is given through the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), it is however not sufficient merely to dutifully carry out the natural powers and acquired virtues, because the truth requires very much more, namely also the power to act (energy) that proceeds from the creative power (spirit-form) in people of your kind (human beings) and which animates the body with its inner world (consciousness), its psyche and its thoughts and feelings; it is the natural creative-powerful (spirit-creational) energy through which people of your kind (human beings) are animated out of its creative power (spirit-form).
- 13) The powers are given through the animation of the body, but people of your kind (human beings) must bring forth (work out) the virtues themselves by integrating themselves into the creative-powerful (creational) laws and recommendations and following them in a responsible wise.
- 14) It is from the inner world (consciousness) that spring forth the thoughts, and out of these, the feelings which in turn are forming the psyche, and with this people of your kind (human beings) must form their character and their virtues as well as their individual being (personality) according to the guidelines of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), and therefore according to their guidelines (instructions).
- 15) Virtue is a capability (ability), i.e. a characteristic through which people of your kind (human beings) show the sublime of every characteristic of their character; the virtues in this case are manifold and relate both to the moral behaviour and the moral values as well as to the true discernment (intellect) and wisdom as well as to the teaching of ethics and morality, which finds its value in keeping to the rightful middle between extremes; truthly love, which also includes love for the next one, is regarded as significant virtue; virtue is also the readiness to bring about moral values in mentality and actions.
- 16) All people of your kind (human beings) can acquire virtues, and truthly it is also their duty to form their character and their virtues, which means that they must enable (educate) themselves; and the process of learning virtues and forming the character is personal discipline (self-education) which must never cease for as



long as people of your kind (human beings) live.

- 17) However, in order for people of your kind (human beings) to become ones having knowledge of the truth with regard to the creative-powerful (creational) laws and recommendations and their mode of functioning, it is not sufficient to have only the naturally obtained powers of virtues, because truthfully the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) must be recognised and evaluated in such a wise that they can be applied usefully in all circumstances (situations) of the life; this means that the laws and recommendations must be recognised, used and followed in accordance with their effects, so that well thought-out causes are created which become very specific effects resulting from these causes.
- 18) Knowing the creative-powerful (creational) laws and recommendations, as they are perceived for example in the free appearance (nature) as signs (evidence) of their activity (energy) and mode of functioning, is a basic prerequisite for them to be followed in the first place, therefore the principle is given that a success and therefore knowledge and wisdom can only be achieved through cognisance and knowledge.
- 19) However, in order for people of your kind (human beings) to perceive any of this, to act accordingly and to obtain success from it, it is necessary that the required power is given which people of your kind (human beings) acquire themselves, namely in such a wise that they motivate themselves for it, in which case the motivation is also a virtue.
- 20) There are no supernatural virtues which might have been given by a god, for example, because godheads as fabricated (invented) insubstantialities are not capable of distributing any virtues, rather virtues – if they are not endowed (genetically bequeathed) in small parts by parents – must be acquired by people of your kind (human beings) yourselves through your own discipline (self-education).
- 21) Therefore there are no godly virtues as is taught by false prophets, but only virtues that are fathomed out (worked out) by people of your kind (human beings) or are transferred in small parts through endowment (heredity) from parents.
- 22) Belief is thereby no virtue, rather a desire for something, of which is assumed that it can be beseeched and worshipped and can provide help, although as an assumed (fictitious) being it is invisible and fully powerless (incapable), and is not able to bring either harm or benefit (success).
- 23) Virtues are not the gifts of fabricated (invented) gods, rather they are gifts of decency, of recognition (rationality) and of true discernment (intellect), of character and the entirety of the nobleness that you bring forth (create) in yourselves.
- 24) However, virtue only originates in people of your kind (human beings) if you turn yourselves to the truth and to its honesty and you are moral in yourselves in its sense.
- 25) Truly, the truthfulness of all truth is only in the creative-powerful (creational) laws and recommendations, and it alone is that which cannot delude and cannot be deluded.
- 26) Only the truth leads you to love and wisdom, from which consonance (harmony), peace and freedom grow for you, in yourselves and outside yourselves as well.
- 27) If you follow the truth then it will lead you to your own well-being and to the well-being of all people of your kind (humankind), because it helps you to achieve peace and freedom as well as love and consonance (harmony) in your thoughts and feelings as well as in your deeds, and in how you deal with people of your kind (fellow human beings) through connecting (interhuman) bonds (relationships).
- 28) And learn this: True love is the queen of all virtues and therefore the building block of the life and for people of your kind (human beings) to live together.
- 29) And whoever effectuates (creates) true love in themselves and also protects it, are true friends to themselves and to people of their kind (fellow human beings) as well as to all people of their kind (humankind).
- 30) And whoever effectuates (creates) true love in themselves and also protects it, are peaceful and free in themselves and externally, and are continuously searching for consonance (harmony).
- 31) However, those who do not effectuate (create) true love in themselves and only know feigned love, as is given by fabricated (supposed) gods, they only effectuate (create) evil in themselves and they cry for hatred, revenge, retaliation and for battles (wars) as well as also for bloody deeds (murder) and outrage (torture and acts of Gewalt), because the fabricated (invented) love of the fabricated (invented) god(s) is merely a work of depraved people of your kind (human beings); fabricated (invented) love from fabricated (invented) gods as well as from godlinesses (religions) and sub-godlinesses (sects/cults) is no true love, but only semblance, lies and deception, which explains why people of your kind (human beings) who have fallen prey to this false love effectuate (create) hatred and jealousy in themselves, as well as a revengeful mentality and the urge for retaliation, by means of which they punish people of your kind (fellow human beings) with bloody deeds (death penalty) and also bring battles (wars) down on their own people or on other peoples, as they also wreak death and ruin on the people who live nearby (neighbours) or, out of a false sense of honour, also bring death and ruin (honour killings) on their own clan (family/relations).
- 32) The virtues are in their entirety indeed of great, but varying significance, and therefore also of varying value,



whereby these fundamental values of the virtues are the most important ones and are of the greatest significance as true love and love for the next one as well as love for the truth, which are followed by uprightness, equitableness (fairness) and accountability (conscientiousness) and being fair (assessing appropriately), as well as modesty and courageous strength.

- 33) The fundamental values of the virtues regulate the entirety of moral virtuous living, through which the bearing (behaviour) towards oneself is also determined, as well as the bearing (behaviour) towards people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 34) The appropriate virtues make the life of people of your kind (human beings) moral and good.
- 35) Many virtues are necessary in order to lead a good life in real truth and therefore according to the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation), these include kindheartedness, feeling for the other, diligence and dignity as well as many other great and small values of the life-conduct.
- 36) However, no virtues are ever poured into you (given to you as a gift) by a god that is certainly (in every case) only a fabulation (invention) by people of your kind (human beings), because all virtues are effectuations (creations) by people of your kind (human beings) out of yourselves, as you effectuate (create) or have effectuated (created) them in this life or in a life before the one that you are leading today.
- 37) And if you knowingly (consciously) and willingly learn the truth and the virtues, then you will gain an ever greater facility in this, which is why you shall always learn and practise what you have learned, because it is only by doing this that you will strengthen yourselves in the knowledge of the truth and in the virtues.
- 38) Always strive to increase your virtues, which is something that you can do through constant practice and overcoming yourself (self-conquest).
- 39) Every virtue becomes greater, richer in its extent (more extensive) and stronger the more frequently and more powerfully you practise it.
- 40) Consider that in each rank in society special requirements (duties/obligations of rank) are demanded, and therefore also special virtues and rank-virtues.
- 41) And if you are in a bond (marriage) then you have quite different requirements (duties) to fulfil (master) than those who are still without wife or without husband.
- 42) And truly, whoever fulfils the requirements (duties) made on them faithfully and to the best of their ability, also creates in themselves the virtues which are required for their rank in society.
- 43) And if the virtues are effectuated (created) then they will lead to ever greater wholeness (completeness), which is why there can never be enough however much is achieved, because there is always a going further.
- 44) The effort of achieving the wholeness (completeness) of the virtues is very great and very high, but every day in which they are practised brings you closer to the fulfilment of achieving the best possible (relative) wholeness – but every day without practise is a lost day.
- 45) The most beautiful examples of virtues are those people of your kind (human beings) who dedicate themselves to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and to all the high values of the life.
- 46) Those amongst you who bring the virtues to fruition up to the best possible (relative) wholeness (completeness), you are blissful ones (happy ones) in your inner world (consciousness) and ones living in the truth.
- 47) And you are blissful ones (happy ones) if you are rich in love, knowledge and wisdom in your inner world (consciousness), because yours is the truthfully life.
- 48) And they are rich in the inner world (consciousness) who do not bow down in submission before a god, and neither before priests nor other servants of gods or before those people of your kind (human beings) who raise themselves up above you as gods or emissaries of gods or their substitutes.
- 49) And truly, all gods are merely fabulations (inventions) of people of your kind (human beings) who have fallen prey to erroneous assumption, therefore you do not need to feel poor and small before any god, and you do not need to find your happiness and your consolation with them.
- 50) Do not attach your thoughts and feelings to earthly riches because you cannot attain the realm of the real truth through any earthly might, no matter of what kind, just as you cannot achieve even a single virtue.
- 51) If you lead a life in truth of the creative laws and recommendations, then you will be consoled and blissful (happy), even if sorrow befalls you.
- 52) And truly, they shall also be consoled who are sorrowing because of evil and who feel pain because of everything that people of your kind (human beings) are doing against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation) and are therefore themselves insulting the existence (life), such as infamous actions (crimes), bloody deeds (killings), persecution of the truthfully truth, battles (wars), hatred and jealousy, enmity and pathological craving for revenge, pathological craving for retaliation and all other terrible things by means of which calamity is brought down upon the world and on all people of your kind (humankind).



- 53) And you are blissful (happy) when you are mild in behaviour, because you are people of your kind (human beings) who remain patient in the face of troubles and worries and who regulate (arrange) everything calmly according to cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect), because you control your anger and pathological craving for revenge and only act according to the truth of the creative (creational) laws and recommendations.
- 54) And blissful (happy) are those amongst you who do rightfully in all things and allow equitableness (fairness) to prevail.
- 55) And blissful (happy) are those amongst you who provide food and drink to the starving and the thirsty, so that they may be assuaged; but truly people of your kind (human beings) are also given hunger and thirst for truthly love, for knowledge and wisdom of the truth, for equitableness (fairness), peace, freedom and consonance (harmony), and you will achieve all of this and find blissfulness (happiness) in yourselves when you strive for the truth and follow the creative (creational) laws and recommendations.
- 56) And you are blissful (happy) if you dedicate yourselves to benevolence (humanity); and they are connected to benevolence (humanity) who are able to help both themselves in their own distress as well as the nearby people of their kind (next ones) or strangers of their kind (fellow human beings) who have fallen into distress or otherwise need help, such as poor people, needy people, ill people, unfortunate people and people who commit outrages (deniers of the truth) of all kinds.
- 57) And blissful (happy) are all those amongst you who are pure in thoughts and feelings and are full of virtues, and always be mindful of the truth whatever you do; upright and honest thoughts and feelings are the joy of every fair one (responsibility-conscious one) and righteous one (conscientious one) amongst people of your kind (human beings).
- 58) And upright and honest thoughts and feelings are free from any evil intent and guile, and if you follow this wisdom then you will gain great blissfulness (happiness) in yourselves.
- 59) And you will live in blissfulness (happiness) if you go forth in peaceableness and give choice (preference) to your virtues in all thoughts and feelings as well as in all deeds and works.
- 60) Peace is a great virtue, and whoever keeps peace and promotes peace will live in true love and in inward and outward freedom and consonance (harmony), and is a true person of your kind (human being).
- 61) And blissful (happy) are those amongst you who have given (dedicated) themselves to equitableness (fairness), because righteousness (conscientiousness) and fairness (responsibility) are just as much their own as are many virtues.
- 62) And truly, those amongst you who are not connected to virtues and who persecute them, they also persecute the truth of the laws and recommendations of the creation of all things (Creation); and those who persecute the truth, they also persecute equitableness (fairness) and bring ignominy upon them, just as they also beset (affect) those having knowledge of the truth and those following the truth through persecution and slander.



Chapter 17

- 1) If you bestir yourselves and turn to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the inner world of all firmaments (universal consciousness/Creation) and follow its guidelines (instructions), then the cognition (rationality) and the true discernment (intellect) will give you at all times the right decision in what you shall do and what you shall refrain from.
- 2) True cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect) direct their view to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the inner world of all firmaments (universal consciousness/Creation), since it is through them alone that the activity (energy) of all reality (existence) is given.
- 3) Truly, life presents people of your kind (human beings) with new tasks every day, new questions, new difficulties (problems) and secrets that you must master or fathom (research) and which always lead you on new ways, so that you have to reach new decisions every day and face existence (life) again in a new form all the time.
- 4) And yet the only things that help you to make the right decision and to succeed in choosing the right action are the cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect) when you connect yourselves with the truthly truth that proves its mightiness in all things and in all decisions; without use of the truth, cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect) are just as insignificant (useless) as smoke that dissipates in the air, because truly cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect) can only effectuate (create) things of



reality if they determine the truth according to its rightness and use it according to the truth (in a right wise), whether this be thoughts and feelings, speaking (words) or actions.

- 5) If you are heedful then you will recognise that you admonish yourselves not to lose it from your sight or from your inner world (consciousness).
- 6) If you are searching, then always search for reality from first to last in the truth, and when you find it, then you will always be given very much more than you were looking for; therefore be discerning and only connect yourselves to the truth so that you leave everything aside that is cheating and delusion, carelessness and prejudice as well as what is against equitableness (fairness).
- 7) Note that equitableness (fairness), is not the same as being fair (being full of responsibility), because equitableness (fairness) is based (founded) on the value of insistent rightfulness (being insistent in the right), and this requires a firm determination (will) to do right in all things, to keep the right in all things and to represent it, as well as to give and allow to each person of your kind (human being) what belongs to him or her.
- 8) People of your kind (human beings) must practise equitableness (fairness) at all times, both towards friend and foe, because you must be ready at all times to pay an appropriate reward (to act in fairness), to demand and to give an honest price in negotiations, just as you must also be concerned not to defraud anybody.
- 9) Truly, the equitableness (fairness) of one person of your kind (one human being), as well as of a people, builds up (creates) happiness and peace and also freedom and consonance (harmony), whereas inequity (unfairness) tears down all these values.
- 10) Be at all times fair (responsible) and connected to the equitableness (fairness), and beware of carelessness in the fulfilment of your duty of any kind.
- 11) Equitableness (fairness) also includes that you show due deference to your parents and to people of your kind (fellow human beings) in general, and that you give to everyone what is theirs, what is commensurately due to them.
- 12) However, equitableness (fairness) also requires moderation (modesty) in all things, because if you act in equitableness (fairness), then you are practising moderation (modesty) to the extent of all the desires and wishes that you have, as well as what you have in enjoyment.
- 13) You must build up in yourselves equitableness (fairness) and moderation (modesty) as well as love, happiness, joy and peace, freedom, consonance (harmony), knowledge about the truth and wisdom, and whatever else that you may desire.
- 14) However, you can only win (learn) equitableness (fairness) and moderation (modesty) if you are moderate in all earthly things and in your life and do not get very badly out of the control of the good human nature, but rather that you move in righteousness (conscientiousness) and in fairness (responsibility) through all the highs and lows of your existence (life), always learning and being connected to the truthly truth of the laws and recommendations of the inner world of all firmaments (universal consciousness/Creation).
- 15) Truly, mighty activities (energies) are in motion (at work) in people of your kind (human beings), as are their powers which act in you as assiduousness (striving) for the unfolding (evolution) as well as requirements (necessities) and lust-inclinations (desires), and as agitations (passions); and all these activities (energies) and their powers drive you with the might of the appearance (Gewalt of nature) to maintain your life irrespective of however it turns out, therefore it shall be lived in any wise until the true (natural) end of days (end of life), so it is not ended at your own hand or by hired killers (murderers) before the true (natural) time of the end of life; those, however, who contravene this and kill (murder) themselves or have themselves cast out of the life by hired killers (murderers) are acting in chickenheartedness (cowardice) against the life-praising (affirming) laws and recommendations of the inner world of all firmaments (universal consciousness/Creation); and the same applies if killers (murderers) commit bloody deeds (murders/manslaughter) in whatever wise this happens, for example out of hatred, jealousy, pathological craving for revenge, pathological craving for retaliation or in battles (wars) and through any other outrage (terrorism/acts of Gewalt, etc.) or through hardness and physical and psychical violations of all kinds.
- 16) The mighty activities (energies) and their powers in people of your kind (human beings) drive you to want to be esteemed and honoured and to strive for all kinds of pleasures which make the existence (life) worth living for you, and truly this originates from your power of the life (drive for self-preservation), and also out of the drive for admiration and the drive for pleasure.
- 17) Truly, the drives (instincts) can bring about (create) much goodness for you people of your kind (human beings), although if unobserved (uncontrolled) they act blindly and with excessive power (go overboard), wreaking calamity and going beyond all moderation (modesty); therefore it is important for moderation (modesty) to prevail in all drives (instincts) and in any other things, because it is only moderation (modesty) that reins in your impetuous powers.
- 18) If you do not have the right amount of moderation (modesty), then this gives rise to immoderacy, hatred and



jealousy as well as avariciousness and all other kinds of pathological craving, stinginess, overbearance and the desire for glory as well as unpeace, unfreedom (bondage) and dissonance (disharmony), battles (wars) and acts of Gewalt.

- 19) And you shall not equate moderation (modesty) with submissiveness, because moderation (modesty) is based in undemandingness, restraint, well-educatedness and in plainness, in lenience, deference (honourableness) and patience; submissiveness, however, demands from people of your kind (human beings) abasement and subservience (willing/without dignity) as well as devotion (belief) and a slavish mentality (self-denial/self-abasement/surrendering of one's self), therefore you shall guard yourselves against any submissiveness through courageous strength, whether it be towards people of your kind (fellow human beings) or towards gods who are without exception only hazy pictures (fantasies).
- 20) And as you abandon submissiveness and turn yourselves to courageous strength which is the superior power, then you cannot wane in the good and will courageously overcome all obstacles.
- 21) Truly, all the good and the cognition of the truth can only be achieved through superior power, therefore with courageous strength and lots of effort and through a struggle of learning (with exertion) and with fortitude, but if you do not bring forth these values then you will not reach the endpoint.
- 22) However, the good and the truth do not tolerate any Gewalt (terror), therefore you cannot reach the realm of the good and of the truth through acts of Gewalt, nor either through weakness and chickenheartedness (cowardice) and fear; and if you wane (become discouraged) on the way of learning, then you will succumb again and again to the temptation of evil and unfairness (irresponsibility).
- 23) Courageous strength, the superior power, gives you the fortitude to defend the good and the true courageously, and to remain strong in the face of sorrow and trials.
- 24) And the crown (highest measure) of courageous strength, the superior power, can be achieved by all amongst you who are courageous and strong in the learning of the truth of the laws and recommendations of the inner world of all firmaments (universal consciousness/Creation).
- 25) However, if you are lacking the courageous strength, the superior power, the power and the courage to find the truth and for the truth itself, then you will be ruled by fear and indolence, as well as by pusillanimousness (faintheartedness) and despair; truly, courageous strength, the superior power, makes noble-minded (steadfast in character) and magnanimous (big-hearted), as well as patient and untiring.



Chapter 18

- 1) The ones truly having knowledge of the truth are like glittering stars in the firmament, because they are the reflection of the laws and recommendations as they have been given since the beginning of all unfolding (existence) through the primordial eternity (Creation).
- 2) And the ones truly having knowledge of the truth and the ones truly following the truth are people of your kind (human beings), as they are also mighty helpers and leaders for all people of your kind (humankind) on the thorny way to finding the truth and following the truth, and they stand by you for obtaining the virtues in the best possible fullness of value.
- 3) And the ones truly having knowledge of the truth and the ones truly following the truth amongst people of your kind (human beings) are the proclaimers (prophets) who arise from your midst; and they possess the virtues in a good wise and practise them in right measure.
- 4) The proclaimers are victorious over themselves, because they have vanquished and defeated the evil powers of unfairness (irresponsibility) and of unrighteousness (consciencelessness) in themselves, and as a prize for their victory they have indeed attained many of the virtues; however, they do not assume to be set over you, rather they adjust themselves to people of your kind (human beings) in moderateness (modesty), so that you shall not recognise (see) them as anything more than you yourselves are.
- 5) Consider, however, that it is not through your wise of the leading of the life (life-conduct) in unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), as well as through doing nothing and through good living, that they become proclaimers (prophets), rather it is only through affliction and pain and through danger that they become what they are, whereby their heads shine (they are well-versed in the knowledge of the truth).
- 6) And truly, not everyone amongst people of your kind (human beings) can be a proclaimer (prophet), because only the one who knows the laws and recommendations of the primordial eternity (Creation) in good



measure and can also master and follow them extensively (amply) can determine (select) themselves for this.

- 7) And if you people of your kind (human beings) wish to follow the proclaimer (prophet) then you must determine (select) yourselves to do this and take a special way on which you disconnect (liberate) yourselves from all that is earthly, which binds you to the unrighteous (conscienceless) and the unfair (irresponsible); this alone is extensively (amply) the way of the selected (completed) observation (control) of the primal-eternal (creational) laws and recommendations, from which true love and wisdom and high knowledge evolve, which are the highest good of the truthly proclaimer (prophet).



Chapter 19

- 1) The laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation) are given for all created creations (creatures/creations/life forms) that have arisen from the spark of inspiration (idea) of the primal power of the life (Creation), therefore both for those untalented in cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect), which are all animals and other creatures of the land, the air and the water, and also for people of your kind (human beings) who are fruitful (bearing/versed) in cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect) and who guide (lead) your existence willingly (consciously).
- 2) As you come into life, you are integrated into the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) which you shall follow in striving for higher things (evolution of the consciousness) and from which you shall draw valuable benefit (success) in order to achieve the best possible flawlessness (completion/relatively absolute full development) more easily and less onerously.
- 3) If, however, you are wayward (irrational) with regard to the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), then you are violating them, which will bring about evil harm (defeats) and even downfalls (catastrophes) and all other kinds of calamity on you.
- 4) Therefore, live in wisdom and be connected to love and truth, so that you may find peace and freedom as well as consonance (harmony) both inside yourselves and outside yourselves and you may lead an existence (life) in accordance with the primal power (Creation).
- 5) The way to the truth and to the truthly life lies open to everyone amongst you people of your kind (human beings), which is proven by the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation), if you would only heed them.
- 6) Listen to the voice of the truth, as is given to you through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, as it has been given to you since time immemorial.
- 7) Heed the virtues, because they are precious to you, therefore you shall bring them forth (create them) in yourselves when you contemplate the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 8) Listen in yourselves so that you may hear the voice (swinging waves) of the truth in the stillness and give ear to it so that you do not commit an omission and suffer harm thereby.
- 9) The laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation) are given to all its created creations (creatures/creations/life forms) so that they may follow them and lead a life in dignity; however, following the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) shall be a free and wilful (conscious) act so that no actions are committed in Gewalt (terror) or through coercion, because it is only the free will of the learning that will lead to success; where there is Gewalt (terror) and coercion, then only Gewalt (terror) and coercion are followed, whereas truthly learning goes unheeded, therefore no true success is won (achieved) in cognition (rationality) and true discernment (intellect), but only the path of ruin is taken.
- 10) Gewalt (terror) and coercion violate the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) of peacefulness and mildness as well as of uncoercedness, and all dignity of people of your kind (human beings) is harmed.
- 11) Wherever Gewalt (terror) and coercion rule, freedom cannot be spoken of because volition, love and knowledge are missing, consequently a blame is created which is the same as (equivalent to) an imposed (coerced) submissiveness (bondage).
- 12) Truly, many amongst you show contempt for the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation) as they are given and are also recognisable (visible) for you in great measure in the free appearance (free nature), if you would only see and comprehend (recognise) them and therefore understand them.



- 13) However, there are many amongst you who, in ungratefulness, show contempt for the appearance (nature) and go forth heedlessly and lovelessly in it and destroy it, leading to the greatest evil for all people of your kind (human beings).
- 14) Many of you are connected to ungratefulness and you do not show any gratitude (gratefulness) to true love either, also not to peace, freedom and consonance (harmony), which should also grow both in you and outside you amongst all people of your kind (human beings) on your world.
- 15) In return for you being presented (given) true love through the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), you treat them with hostility and pay back everything with evil, with hatred and jealousy, with lovelessness, unfreedom (bondage) and unpeace, as well as with disgracefulness (badness), with battles (wars), bloody deeds (murder) and defilement (crimes).
- 16) The greatest terrible things come over you through your unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness), so you will be befallen by affliction (unfortune/oppressive worries, etc.) and hardship, misery and tribulation loom over (threaten) you and even cast you into ruin.
- 17) Truly, threat of hardship and misery, as well as of tribulation, fear and fright comes over each and every person of your kind (human being), if you commit evil and unfair acts (irresponsible acts) and unrighteous acts (conscienceless acts), because the law of cause and of decision (effect = cause and effect) always catches up with you.
- 18) Be admonished to achieve insight (rationality), so that you may always recognise how bitter and baleful it is if you leave the way of the truth and of fairness and the way of righteousness (conscientiousness) and of fairness (responsibility) and therefore the way of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation).
- 19) Truly, you can commit evil and wreak calamity through your thoughts and feelings alone, but also through your desires (vices/wantonness/pathological cravings/drives), false hopes and unachievable wishes, through your words and through your actions and deeds, therefore however also through omission of all good things in any wise.
- 20) Therefore it is not the truth that you can nurture thoughts and feelings at a whim, without you having to give (make) an account for it, therefore you should consider everything if villainous thoughts and feelings proceed from you, such as in relation to killing (murder), adultery, sexual decadence (sexual culpability), robbery and thieving (theft), waging battles (waging war), giving false testimony, sacrilege and slander (calumny), hatred, jealousy, revenge and retaliation as well as stinginess and many other things of a wrong sense and negative value.
- 21) Through the pure truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power, you are demanded (recommended) to follow them as people of your kind (human beings) by voluntarily doing many good deeds and considering these as a duty.
- 22) Truly, you contravene the laws and recommendations of the primal power knowingly (consciously) and unknowingly (unconsciously), but consider that the decision (effect) of this is the same according to the law of cause and of decision (effect = cause and effect = law of causality).
- 23) If you heed yourselves inwardly, then you will be warned through your admonishment (conscience) against all inequitableness and against all unfairness (irresponsibility), as well as against all unrighteousness, so that you can then decide what you must do and what you must leave undone.
- 24) Know that the evil urge in you awakens desires for unfair (irresponsible) and unrighteous (conscienceless) joys, pleasures, vices and pathological cravings, therefore you must bring your penchant (talent) for reflecting and striving for evil under your assessment (control).
- 25) Truly, you are tempted by the bad example of evil by those people of your kind (human beings) who go forth as unfair ones (irresponsible ones) in debauchery and in unrighteousness (consciencelessness) and who deceive you, make bad speeches, spread false writings by false prophets, pursue all licentious enjoyments and commit infamous actions (crimes), deception, robbery and thieving (theft) in hatred, jealousy, in pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation as well as in battles (wars) and in pathological craving for killing (murder/death penalty).
- 26) Truly, the unfair ones (irresponsible ones) and unrighteous ones (conscienceless ones) amongst you do not omit any attempt to draw you to their side and to ruin you; and they approach you without admonishment (conscience) in a variety of inconsiderate (irresponsible) ways in order to deceive you.
- 27) Truly, all people of your kind (human beings) are exposed to temptations, but whoever does not allow all of his or her powers of the love for the truth to be tempted has unlimited might over himself or herself, therefore no evil is able to harm him or her, because it can neither bark nor growl, and neither chase nor bite.
- 28) It is possible to withstand any temptation if you are sufficiently strong in your knowledge about the truth and if you keep your powerful thoughts and feelings right from the start away from anything which is unreal



concerning the truth and therefore from any temptation; to achieve this it is necessary to continue your own admonishment and watchfulness on a permanent basis, because only through this are you guaranteed that you will not fall prey to any temptation as an offering (sacrifice).

- 29) Every temptation that you overcome gives you new power, benefits and more and more delight in the truth, through which you place a crown (permanence) on yourselves which is constantly ready for you and which you only need to grasp and put on yourselves.
- 30) And consider that if you fall prey to one temptation, then the next one will also follow, therefore you shall avoid them and turn yourselves to the virtues, because as the virtue is a source of good deeds, so every evil penchant (talent) and every vice is a source of the bad and unrighteous (conscienceless), as well as of the unfair (irresponsible) and of inequity (unfairness).
- 31) You must vanquish the temptations and turn yourselves away from them from the beginning and thereby withstand them by keeping your thoughts and feelings away from them.
- 32) Truly, if you always consider the truth in all things then you will be called to watchfulness through your admonishment (conscience) against temptations, therefore you must knowingly (consciously) keep watch that you do not fall into temptation.
- 33) Consider that there are very many and various types (forms) of temptation which befall you, such as arrogance (vanity) and avarice (stinginess), envy, immoderacy (immodesty), rage and indolence, hatred and jealousy as well as the urge for bloody deeds (murder), defilement (crimes), thieving (theft), deception and battles (wars), as well as many more things besides.
- 34) Arrogant (vain) are those who connect themselves to overbearingness and are also conceited (presumptuous) and thereby take the honour from the truth and disdain people of their kind (fellow human beings).
- 35) Arrogance (vanity) is also haughtiness and pride (hubris/craving for recognition/imperiousness), from which also originate false zeal (ambition) and hypocrisy as well as sanctimoniousness; but arrogance (vanity) can be overcome through being fair (being responsibility-conscious) and righteousness (conscientiousness), in which case the love for the truth gives the power to achieve this.
- 36) And avarice (stinginess) as a great terrible thing of people of your kind (human beings) is if you cling avariciously to possessions and riches and thereby leave others to go hungry and starve, if you are pitiless towards the poor and needy who require the help of your possessions and riches, but from whom you withhold that portion which you would be able to give them and through which they would not have to either go hungry or starve.
- 37) Avarice (stinginess) also includes lovelessness, theft, deception and lying, as well as envy towards other people whose goods and chattels and riches are begrudged them; and truly, avarice (stinginess) can only be overcome through true love and love for the next one, which also contains generosity in joy.
- 38) Envy itself arises when the happiness and love as well as the possessions, goods and riches of people of your kind (fellow human beings) is begrudged them; and truly, not only resentment springs forth from envy, but also lovelessness, jealousy and hatred, as however also revilement, slander (calumny), strife, unfairness, rightlessness and prattle (gossip mongering) and other terrible things; and envy can only be overcome through true love, generosity, benevolence and fairness.
- 39) Truly, envy also includes the mocking malice (schadenfreude), through which joy in the misfortune or mischance of others is expressed, because of begrudging others their happiness, joy, love and the happy fate (foreordination).
- 40) The mocking malice (schadenfreude) also carries defamation, slander (calumny), hatred and enmity in itself, as well as evil; and the mocking malice (schadenfreude) can only be overcome by bringing true love to bear and granting fruitfulness (sufficiency) to benevolence (humanity) as well as feeling for others, and also casting off immoderacy (immodesty).
- 41) Immoderacy (immodesty) is expressed in various scopes (areas) of the life, therefore within your own scope (personal area) as false satisfaction (egotistical satisfaction) and unsatisfaction (immoderateness), as well as externally towards people of your kind (human beings) as well in your thoughts, feelings, actions and deeds; immoderacy (immodesty) urgently requires constant composure (control/contentment) whether with regard to eating and drinking, in the bearing (behaviour/conduct) towards people of your kind (fellow human beings) or in your actions and activities.
- 42) Immoderacy is the source of pathological craving in the eating (gluttony), pathological craving in the drinking (alcoholism) and pathological craving to the drive (pathological craving for sex), however also a pathological craving of any kind which is detrimental to wellbeing (health) and instability, infamous actions (crimes) and licentiousness of any stripe (kind/form); and truly, immoderacy (immodesty/uncontentment) can only be overcome through a useful regulation in the thoughts and feelings and through truthly moderation (modesty/contentment), as well as through one's own composure (restraint) and a directed (controlled) regulation of the leading of the life (life-conduct).
- 43) And rage originates in people of your kind (human beings) when you are unable to observe and consider



(control) your agitation in composure (restraint) and you allow yourselves to be carried away into indignation as well as passionateness and unbridledness, jealousy, resentment and wildness.

- 44) Truly, rage gives rise to embitterment, enmity, hatred, strife as well as pathological craving for revenge and urge for retaliation, and also to wounding (injury) of the body, inner world (consciousness) and psyche of people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings).
- 45) Rage also leads to bloody deeds (killing), to battles (wars) and to infamous actions (crimes) of all stripes (kinds/forms), therefore also to coarseness and blindness towards other people of your kind (human beings), with your own parents, children, brothers and sisters, kith and kin (relatives) and even husband and wife not being excluded; however, rage can only be overcome through peaceableness, equanimity (composure), patience and mildness.
- 46) Truly, however, there is also a venerable rage which moves in fairness and in composure (restraint) and serves to fight (strive) against unfairness (irresponsibility) and unrighteousness (consciencelessness) through gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit (actions in logic and rationality) and to put a stop to them so that fairness (responsibility) and righteousness (conscientiousness) may come forth (come about). (= gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit is the way of passive, logical Gewalt, because gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit means in other words active Gewaltlosigkeit, in which Gewaltlosigkeit is practised and implemented with Gewalt, i.e. actively. In gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit as active Gewaltlosigkeit, Gewaltlosigkeit is practised and implemented with Gewalt, i.e. actively. However, gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit also means passive resistance, where passiveness in this sense means a power, i.e. a might or simply passive Gewalt, because power, might and Gewalt also in Gewalt-less, passive form as resistance represent a form of Gewalt, which is however carried out in gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit. At the same time, however, this Gewalt-less, i.e. passive Gewalt must not be understood in the sense of the usual understanding that human beings of Earth have of negative Gewalt, but rather only in the sense of a positive, peace bringing, harmonising, balancing, buoyant and regulation establishing effort in the form of a power, might and influence, etc. offering passive resistance in a logical wise.)
- 47) Indolence is a part of everyone amongst the people of your kind (human beings) who eschew and neglect work and effort and the tasks (duties) of the life, of the leading of the life (life-conduct) and for people of your kind (human beings) as well as for the appearance (nature) and all kinds of life (life forms) just as much as the tasks (duties) towards the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation).
- 48) And indolence brings forth recklessness (carelessness), negligence of tasks (neglect of duty), poorness through one's own blame, debauchery (slovenliness/sloppiness), idleness (laziness) and couragelessness.
- 49) And indolence is only overcome through activity (diligence), through courageous strength, through binding to the task (fulfilment of duty), taking joy in work and effort as well as assiduousness (activity), watchfulness, prudence and diligence (activity/assiduousness).
- 50) And as you rid yourselves of indolence, liberate yourselves also of many other terrible things through which you are hindered in your unfolding (evolution) of the inner world (consciousness) and in your progression (progress) in all things of your existence (life), such as in the consonance (harmony) of your psyche, in the achievement of true love, peace and freedom in yourselves and outside yourselves amongst all people of your kind (humankind).
- 51) Blatant badnesses and disgracefulnesses (ignominy) is the name given to those Ausartungen which you commit in malice and in response to which people of your kind (fellow human beings) cry for revenge and retaliation, such as slander (calumny), oppression of the poor, of orphans and of the maimed (disabled), and also withholding the fair reward and lying and false oath (perjury) against the truth, as well as defilement (sexual misuse) of man, woman and child, thieving (theft), deception and robbery and other things.
- 52) Blatant badnesses and disgracefulnesses (ignominy) are based in malicious resistance against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation) as well as against righteousness (conscientiousness), fairness and against being fair (being responsible).
- 53) For as long as people of your kind (human beings) maliciously or overbearingly (presumptuously/arrogantly) resist against the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and their guidelines (rules of regulation) and violate them, then you cannot find the way of the truthfully truth, therefore you cannot motivate (achieve) any improvement in yourselves and cannot forgive yourselves.
- 54) And as you are not connected to the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) you live in presumptuousness against the truth and heap errors and blame upon yourselves, through which so many people of your kind (human beings) fall prey to despair.
- 55) You do not recognise the truth, rather you strive against it, which is why you also envy those who are righteous (conscientious) and fair (responsible) as well as connected to fairness.
- 56) Truly, there are many amongst you who are hard of hearing (obdurate/obstinate) and do not listen to the admonishing words of the proclaimer (prophet), so that you continuously run towards your hardship



(misfortune) and do not look for reconciliation (making good), rather you persist in remorselessness.

- 57) And there are also externally bound errors and blame which arise when you make yourselves complicit in the errors and blame of others, if you advise others to commit errors which they then carry out, as well as if you command them or advise them to do evil, which they then do.
- 58) Truly, as the currents flow in the seas, so all of existence (life) flows into the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation).
- 59) And as everything of existence (life) flows into the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) so all virtues and the main virtue also flow in, which stands out as love amongst all.
- 60) Love as the main virtue also proceeds from the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation), from which you as people of your kind (human beings) shall also bring about (create) true love in yourselves with all of your activity (energy) and your powers so that you may love people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings) as yourselves.
- 61) Love is the main virtue and the main recommendation of the primal power (Creation), and therefore love for your others (love for the next one) and for people of your kind (fellow human beings) is the second important virtue and the second important recommendation of the primal power (Creation).
- 62) These two virtues and recommendations are included in all other virtues and recommendations of the primal power (Creation).
- 63) And truly, in the creational recommendations of the love are also included all other recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation), because love flows through all of them and all are led (guided) by love, just as it is given in the laws of the primal power (Creation), whose activity (energy) and its powers is given solely in the love of the primal power of the life (Creation).
- 64) The main recommendation is love, and included in this is the love for the truth of the primal power of the life (Creation), love for the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) as well as love for your others (love for the next one), love for all kinds of life (life forms), love for the appearance (nature), love for the real truth and love for the life.
- 65) And only those who are connected in true love to all these and to all other associated high values can also love themselves in dignity, moderation (modesty) as well as in righteousness (conscientiousness) and uprightness (honesty).
- 66) And truly, whoever loves the truthly love also loves themselves and all others in the right wise.
- 67) You shall love the true love with all your powers, because it is endlessly given in all existence (life), and everything that is good proceeds from it alone, and in it alone can complete happiness be found, as well as true peace, true freedom and consonance (harmony).
- 68) Everything that people of your kind (human beings) make, and everything that may be good and beautiful for people of your kind (human beings) outside of true love is as a minute speck of dust of a weight compared to the uncomprehensibility (miraculousness) of the love of the primal power of the life (Creation) and of its laws and recommendations.
- 69) And truly, the source (origin) of truthly love, which knows no limits (bounds) in its supremacy (Gewaltigkeit), lies solely in the primal power of the life (Creation).
- 70) Truthly love is the source of all goodness and of all beauty, and all the goodness and beauty on your world and on all earths (worlds/planets), in all lights in the firmament (stars/nebulae/comets, etc.) and in all firmaments (universe) is a beam of the eternal goodness and beauty of true love which is given in the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation) and out of itself.
- 71) Only in true love can you as people of your kind (human beings) find truthly fulfilment of the life, fulfilment of your expectations (longings) and your wishes.
- 72) You can win (achieve) true love as people of your kind (human beings) if you recognise the truthly, creational love and goodness from the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and from the deeds of the primal power of the life (Creation), and you make it your own.
- 73) If you want to make the creational love your own, it is necessary for you to live without blemish in your virtues, to take all the loads of efforts upon yourselves and to bring all necessary gifts of love into existence (life).
- 74) And truly, whoever recognises the truthly love as it is given in the laws and recommendations through the primal power of the life (Creation) can do nothing else but make this love their own.
- 75) But truly, only whoever is pure and without falseness in their inner world (consciousness) and strives in uprightness (honesty) for the truth of the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) can find true love and let it grow in themselves.
- 76) And people of your kind (human beings), you are not allowed to believe in a god or several gods or tin gods or demons and the like if you want to find the true love of the primal power (Creation) in its laws and recommendations, because truthly only the true knowledge about the truth can lead you to success.
- 77) The true secret of the life is truthly love which proceeds from the laws and recommendations of the primal



power (Creation), and truly everything is only brought to blossom through this love.

- 78) You, people of your kind (human beings), can primarily show true love by mastering the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation) and following them knowingly (consciously) and in good understanding.
- 79) Whoever amongst you masters the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) and follows them in good uprightness (honesty) and in dignity, you are truly connected to the truthfully love of the primal power of the life (Creation) and inseparably connected to it.
- 80) And whoever masters and follows the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation) evidences his or her truthfully love for all its deeds, therefore through his or her word, through his or her thoughts and feelings, through his or her feeling for others, as well as through his or her virtues, through his or her speaking and his or her moderation (modesty), as well as through his or her righteousness (conscientiousness), through his or her fair (responsible) actions, and also through his or her peacefulness, liberality and consonance (harmony).
- 81) True love is the first thing and the truthfully certain thing (absolute thing) of all and brings together what has already been unified by the inner nature of the primal power of the life (Creation).
- 82) Love is absolute certainty of oneself living together and breathing together (coexisting) with everything in everything, thus, in all reality (all that exists): in the world of the animals and other creatures (fauna) and in the world of plants (flora), in people of your kind (fellow human beings), in every solid (material) and all-eternal (spiritual) kind of life (life form) irrespective of its kind, and in the existence of the entire firmament (universe) and much more (laws and recommendations). (= Love is absolute certainty of oneself living together and co-existing together with everything in everything, thus, in all that exists: in fauna and flora, in fellow human beings, in every material and spiritual life form irrespective of its kind, and in the existence of the entire universe and much more (laws and recommendations).)
- 83) True love does not rule and cannot be ruled either, and truthfully, true life is true love and therefore the life of the life is true love.
- 84) The true warmth of the deepness of the life, which finds itself, is the love in which people of your kind (human beings) and every life are reconciled with all things of the existence (life) and of destiny.
- 85) If you people of your kind (human beings) truly love one another, then you will yourselves recognise that there is no other truthfully way rising to the near and far people of your kind (next ones and fellow human beings) and to the truth and following of the truth.
- 86) Your near and far people of your kind (next ones and fellow human beings) are anyone, both friend and foe, and you shall be connected to them in love, because they are all, like you, from one branch (species), brought forth from the effects of the laws and recommendations in all-embracing love of the primal power of the life (Creation).
- 87) The primal power of the life (Creation) is the effectuating (the creative) might of people of your kind (human beings) on your world, on all earths (worlds/planets) in all firmaments (universe); and truly it is the effectuating (creative) power for people of your kind (human beings) whatever the colour of their skin (skin colour), of any people and of all species characteristics (races) and of all other kinds of life (life forms).
- 88) And truly, everything living which moves itself in a wise that is visible for you, and everything living in stillness (material) that moves in a wise that is not visible to you, comes forth from the effects of the powerful laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation), so you as people of your kind (human beings) have also proceeded from it and will return to it again one day.
- 89) You have proceeded from its idea and from its decision, and it has laid in you the continuous assiduousness (striving) for the unfolding (evolution) of the love and of your inner world (consciousness), so that you may become knowing (conscious) and wise.
- 90) You shall love people of your kind (fellow human beings) as yourselves, and you shall wish them and do to them what you also wish and do for yourselves.
- 91) Therefore you shall also do to them everything of goodness that you expect from people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings).
- 92) Therefore you shall esteem and love people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings) and always give them a good example, as well as helping them in tribulation and misery, because truly whatever you do to people of your kind (next ones/fellow human beings), you also do for yourselves.
- 93) Every person of your kind (human being) has good appearances (natural characteristics), therefore learn to see their goodness in them and to value (esteem) it.
- 94) And consider that a good example is of more use than many good words, therefore you shall give many examples through deeds and works; thus you shall be at all times a good example for people of your kind (fellow human beings) in good friendship – and never be bad companions (comrades) and therefore neither deceivers nor false advisers either.



- 95) The love for people of your kind (love for the next one) is shown both in corporeal (physical/material) duties and in non-corporeal (consciousness-based) ideas which derive from the inner world (consciousness), therefore you shall not love one another with lips (words), but in action and truth.
- 96) And consider that as manifold the misery of people of your kind (fellow human beings) is, so manifold and varied shall your help also be in words, in deeds, in works and in charitable givings, in alms (gifts) and in meeting any necessity.
- 97) If you undertake corporeal (physical/material) duties, then these are to be done in food for the hungry, in giving drinks to the thirsty, in clothing the naked, in sheltering the wanderers (visitors/guests), in burying the dead, in visiting the sick, in doing good deeds and in giving alms (gifts), in the dignified treatment of the unfree (chained) and in everything else that are corporeal (physical/material) duties.
- 98) And non-corporeal (consciousness-related) deeds (=ideas) that spring forth from the inner world (consciousness) are those if you in good and wise words set the doers of terrible things (lawbreakers) right, if you guide (instruct) those to the right who are committing errors, if you teach (instruct) the ones having no knowledge of the truth in the real truth, if you advise the doubtful rightly, if you comfort the troubled, if you forgive your adversaries, slanderers (calumniators) and those who do evil to you, persecute you and strive to end your life, if you think about people of your kind (human beings) in love, if you do not repay unright with unright, if you do everything rightfully which you are capable of doing in a good and fair (responsible) and righteous (conscientious) and non-corporeal (consciousness-based) wise in all things.
- 99) And consider that duties of benevolence are particularly valuable because love is kept in them which is cared for according to the laws and recommendations of the primal power (Creation); and truly, whoever does no deeds in goodness and in benevolence is not truly alive (not connected to and knowing of the truth) in themselves and in their inner nature.
- 100) If true love is actively cared for, whether corporeally (physically/materially) or non-corporeally (in a consciousness-based wise), then it relieves all pain and difficulties (problems), but mere words only cause these to multiply if they are false and are pitiful instead of wise and with deep feelings for the others.
- 101) True love also includes your enemies and all those who are against you in any other wise, who do evil to you and cause you harm through slander (calumny) and lies; therefore do good to those who hate you, find good words for them and forgive them so that you may speak well about their misdeeds on demand (if you are asked about them), but without you being stirred up by hatred in you, but remaining impartial (objective/neutral).
- 102) Forgive your culprits (those who are culpable to you) their culpabilities, because they load this upon themselves since they are not knowing of the truth and therefore do not know what they are doing; therefore do not allow the lust for revenge to rise up in you, but rather consider that revenge is unright and any unright is evil; therefore there shall not be either revenge or retaliation in you, but love, cognition (comprehension) of the truth and forgiveness; therefore do not listen to the false teachings of the false prophets and the twisters of writings who lie that a god takes revenge and retaliation if unright is done, because any god and tin god is only fabricated (invented) by people of your kind (human beings) and of ineffectiveness (insignificance), as well as without the power to effectuate (create) good or ill that would be supposed to befall you.
- 103) True love also includes the love for yourselves as people of your kind (self-love), through which you care for yourselves in a regulated wise and create what your body and your inner world (consciousness) as well as your psyche need; and this love for yourselves as people of your kind (self-love) is not the same as ego-love (egoism) which is as a vice (pathological craving/self-addiction) addicted in mercilessness (ruthlessness) to its own desires (urges/drives/penchants); the first care of self-love shall be for the unfolding (evolution) of the inner world (consciousness), the world of thoughts and feelings and of the psyche as well as the virtues; and if you follow this form of the love for yourselves as people of your kind (self-love), then you are following fairness as well as responsibility and righteousness (conscientiousness).
- 104) The body also requires looking after and care, so with regard to its wellbeing (health), beauty, cleanliness (hygiene) and bodily strength, and also these are directed (maintained) through the love for yourselves as people of your kind (self-love).
- 105) The good and valuable forthbringings (creations/products) of the inner world (consciousness), such as education, knowledge, wisdom, ability (capabilities), talents (skills/being well-versed), the admonishment (conscience), the memory (remembering) as well as good character, belong to the most valuable things of the love for yourselves as people of your kind (self-love).
- 106) The true reward for the high values that proceed from the love for yourselves as people of your kind (self-love) is true love in exhaustive kindheartedness and dignity as well as taking care for your own life, therefore self-love truly does not stand in sonority (harmony) with the dissonance (disharmony) of ego-love (egoism).
- 107) The true love for yourselves as people of your kind (self-love) is true wisdom for your own life-conduct in peace, freedom and consonance (harmony) with yourselves as people of your kind (human beings); and if the love for



yourselves as people of your kind (self-love) is lived in purity within the bounds (frame) of the laws and recommendations of the primal power of the life (Creation) then the true love of all extent (love for all and in all) will also become the crown of the life.



Chapter 20

- 1) Confidence lies in people of your kind (human beings) themselves, also for all the time that still lies before your unused life (life still to come).
- 2) All the days of your time to come (future) still lie before you, and therefore these are still free for you and unburdened, and not characterised by impressions, so that they are still as untouched as the purity of innocence itself.
- 3) You are still free from the efforts and loads of the coming days, and you still have not failed in anything because everything still lies before you and is open, such as the hours of the love, joy and happiness, as well as those of the joylessness, worries and sorrow, because you are still living in the moment (today), because truly nothing has yet been of the time to come (future), in which you will first have to live into.
- 4) But what shall happen to you in the coming days and in the new time (future) is something that you already determine at the present time (now), therefore you can change much that was previously not good (bad/negative) in your existence (life), because truly nothing is obliged to be repeated if it already was once – and you shall not doubt this.
- 5) Truly, you think that you bring yourselves into the coming days and into the new time (future), but truly this is only partially correct because you do indeed live into the new days and into the time to come (future), but only together with the activity of the laws and recommendations of the life-giving (Creation) in which you are embedded.
- 6) And as everything in the extent of your world (all around you) changes, so you also change because everything is integrated into developmental change (renewal/change) so that there may be continuous advancement (progress).
- 7) Therefore also no person of your kind (human being) is the same as another in his or her inner nature, in his or her inner world (consciousness), in his or her thoughts and feelings or in his or her psyche, in his or her character in all other things that make him or her into a person of your kind (human being).
- 8) And no person of your kind (human being) will remain so in himself or herself as he or she is at the moment (currently), because everyone changes inexorably in order to unfold (evolve) so that he or she may fulfil the determination of the life.
- 9) All life changes constantly, above all the people of your kind (human beings), both in their body and their inner world (consciousness), as well as in their psyche, in knowledge and in wisdom, in ability (capabilities) and in talents (skills), in thoughts and feelings, in the admonishment (conscience) and in the fertilisation of the truth (learning of the knowledge about the truth) or in the belief of godliness (religiosity).
- 10) How and in what direction you people of your kind (human beings) change yourselves is principally dependent upon the extent to which you knowingly (consciously) involve yourselves in the process of evolution.
- 11) It is truly important for you to lead your lives upbuildingly (positively) yourselves in a knowing (conscious) wise, or whether you have it led (guided) by other people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 12) Therefore you can determine your own determinations yourselves just as your own thoughts and feelings, your striving for the fertilisation of the truth (learning of the knowledge about the truth) or in the belief of godliness (religiosity) – or you can give your own freedom in subordination (servitude) and have everything effected (determined) by external orders from people of your kind (fellow human beings).
- 13) Consider that each new day and the entire time to come (future) will not bring any fewer terrible things and calamities with it for all people of your kind (humankind) than all the days and the time before you (past), because truly you are not better than your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) who brought terrible things and calamity down upon your worlds and all people of your kind (humankind); therefore, in order for everything to change (alter) to the better, you must start in the moment (now) with yourselves and turn the terrible things and the calamity away from yourselves, otherwise everything will stay as it was in all the time before you (in the past).
- 14) Therefore see to it – but differently from your forefathers and foremothers (ancestors/forebears) in the times before you (past) – that you see (become aware of) the terrible things and the calamity and do not overlook anything so that you may recognise the evil in it and strive for all goodness which is waiting to be found by



you.

- 15) And consider that nothing in life is so quickly blown away (fleeting) as thoughts that could lead to the growth (expansion) of the knowledge and the wisdom of the inner world (consciousness) and to a life in true love and to gain (fulfilment) of the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations, because people of your kind (human beings) rather follow the life of earthly (material) joys, instead of the joys and values that proceed from the truth and the gain (fulfilment) of the love and of the truly life-giving (creational) mightiness which is your own, but which you must find in yourselves through insight (intellect) and true discernment (rationality) in a knowing (conscious) wise, and must unfold to a high value.
- 16) Truly, a good effect upon people of your kind (human beings) can only be had by what is in you and in your inner nature which you knowingly (consciously) take in and use (process) in the same wise; and only through you knowingly (consciously) taking in and using (processing) everything in the same wise will there be sufficient reasons for you to let you find a truly successful (strengthening) and prosperous (blossoming) life.
- 17) However, be knowing (conscious) that you can never experience the good (positive) if there were not also the bad (negative), therefore you would never know what is freedom in yourselves and outside yourselves if there were not unfreedom, and therefore there would not be any joy without joylessness, nor any happiness without affliction.
- 18) However, it is wrong that there shall be no love without hatred, because hatred is not laid down in the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations, but rather truthly love; but people of your kind (human beings) have the power of free determination (will), by means of which you can think out (form) everything according to your choice (discretion), therefore it is possible for you – instead of turning yourselves to the true love of the life-giving (Creation) according to free determination (will) – to effect (create) hatred, in which case you then fallaciously assume that this is laid down in a life-giving (creational) wise, which is however not at all the case; truthly, the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations only secure that you yourselves make your choice (decision) and act accordingly, therefore you act in free determination (will) according to your insight (intellect) and true discernment (rationality).
- 19) If you want to live and act solely according to the truth of the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations then you must first comprehend (recognise) them in order to understand their effect (mode of effectuation) of proceeding (origin) and decision (effect = cause and effect), because it is only with this insight (cognition and cognisance) that it is possible to act fairly (responsibly), righteously (conscientiously) and in fairness.
- 20) And truly, as a light in the firmament (celestial body/star) can only shine against the dark background of the firmaments (universe), so you can only shine in fairness (responsibility) and in righteousness (conscientiousness) as well as in equitableness (fairness) if you step out of your darkness of your unknowledge of the truth by turning to the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations, by fathoming (researching) them, grasping (recognising) them and understanding them in their effect (mode of effectuation), so that you may act according to them and therefore follow them.
- 21) And acting according to the laws and recommendations of the life-giving (Creation) is the same as the allegory (example/comparison) of the surging sea that inspires you because you know the high tide that always brings the water back after the ebb, because if you fall prey to all kinds of terrible things due to you falling away from the truth of the life-giving (creational) recommendations or simply show contempt for them, then the joy of living and happiness will return to you – like the water of the tide – if you once again bethink the laws and recommendations of the life-giving (Creation) and turn yourselves back to them and follow them.
- 22) Always consider that your life is given to people of your kind (human beings) in order to bring it to fulfilment, for which you require the life-giving (creational) principles and all recommendations, through the forming effects (mode of effectuation) of which you can only live and learn, from which you can see (recognise) that your life is indeed precious, which is however only possible for you because you are knowing (conscious) that this is limited by death.
- 23) Know, every differentness (contrariness) depends on each other (has a logic/precondition) like ebb and flow, like day and night and like life and death, because everything belongs together and is a whole (unity).
- 24) All amongst you, know, if you are capable of insight (rationality) and true discernment (intellect), that this is the pure truth which you shall follow and in doing so keep to the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations so that you have a good life in fairness and in righteousness (conscientiousness), as well as in responsibility.
- 25) Truly, you do not want the untruthful (false/negative) and not the evil and therefore not the bad (negative), just as also not affliction, not lovelessness, not unright, not inequity, not unrighteousness (consciencelessness), not badness (the dishonourable), not unfairness (irresponsibility), not unfreedom, not unpeace and not dissonance (disharmony) and nothing else that is villainous (heinous).
- 26) Just as, however, you do not want the untruthful (false/negative) but rather the truthful



(good/upright/positive), so at the same time you overlook the fact that precisely these pernicious (negative) things of the untruthful (false) are the prerequisites for the possibility that you are able to effectuate (create) all good (positive) things and values in yourselves, which are true love, internal and external freedom as well as peace and consonance (harmony) in yourselves and in the extent (amply) amongst people of your kind (human beings) individually as well as amongst all people of your kind (humankind).

- 27) Truly, you shall not effectuate (create) the untruthful (false/negative) in any wise in yourselves and you shall not bring it into life (not live it out), rather you shall only make it imaginable (conceivable) through your insight (rationality) and true discernment (intellect), thoughts and feelings so that you may have insight (recognition) of all terrible things at their root, so that you may knowingly (consciously) turn yourselves away from them before they can become effective (active).
- 28) Therefore it is not given through the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations that the untruthful (false/negative) shall be effectuated (created) in yourselves and serve as a cause for a decision (effect), because truthly it shall only serve as a source (means) of observation (imagination) for cognition and understanding (comprehension). (= The untruthfulnesses [the false/negative in any form] shall not be active and not become acute and therefore not break out, but be solely and exclusively created and become conscious in the imagination for the purpose of recognising (seeing) the false and the negative in it in order to take measures against it so that it cannot gain might over human beings and therefore cannot become active inwardly or outwards, and cannot come to an upsurge.)
- 29) If you are undisguised (truly open) in your world of thoughts then you would like nothing better than to avoid and remove (eradicate) everything that belongs to the extent (realm) of the untruthful (false/negative), however this may only be done in such a wise that all that is removed (eradicated) is what is really vigorous (active) and ausgearbeitet in the untruthful (false/negative) and is therefore lived; however the source (means) of viewing (imagining) for reaching the cognition of understanding (comprehending) may not be broken off (switched off), otherwise it will be (it will happen) that the internal whole (unity) of differentness (contrariness) will dissolve, by means of which people of your kind (human beings) will lose equality (identity).
- 30) Truly, this misinterpretation (misunderstanding) does produce (result in) very many difficulties in life (life problems) which you as people of your kind (human beings) experience as difficult hours, days and times, but which you can understand (comprehend) and experience quite differently if you make it clear to yourselves that you only then truly have a full life if you direct yourselves according to the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations and therefore according to the truth and bring about (form) truthly love in yourselves so that you also find your equality (identity) and you form your own character and your all-of-yourself (personality).
- 31) And truly, your all-of-yourself (personality), which you can continually widen until the moment that you depart from life, belongs to the characteristic things of people of your kind (human beings).
- 32) And those amongst you who do not know that shall be taught that this way (possibility) has to do with the fact that you as people of your kind (human beings) can bear (conduct) yourselves freely during your life and be able to determine (decide) everything freely according to your will, although you shall bear in mind that everything remains within certain boundaries (limits) which are set for you so that you may heed and follow the guidelines (instructions) of the regulation and the laws and recommendations of the life-giving (Creation).
- 33) The fact that you truly see (realise) and comprehend (implement) only little of this freedom of your right of determination (self-determination) is explained in your extraordinarily pervasive (profound) idleness (laziness) through which you turn yourselves away from the truth and from taking insight into the true life just as also you turn away from true love that is given to you along with everything else important in life through the life-giving (creational) laws and recommendations.
- 34) There is no phase in life in which people of your kind (human beings) necessarily find less sense, whether it be in the time of youth, in the time of middle (settled) age or in the time of old age (advancement in years), because each time brings forth its own laws of the life, exceptional (special) difficulties (problems) and special (particular) opportunities (possibilities) which you must meet (master) yourselves according to their condition (form).
- 35) Truthly, it is of significance (importance) for people of your kind (human beings) whether and how you allow yourselves to be touched by life, whether you make use of your inner freedom and consonance (harmony) or not, and at the same time you have to ask the question to your admonishment (conscience) as to whether you are willing to do so or not.



Chapter 21

- 1) If you human beings are actually observed and analysed, then it is noticeable that none amongst you can entirely accept himself or herself in his or her natural kind.
- 2) Built up in each of you are basic prerequisites and basic thoughts as well as thereout resulting basic feelings that belong to you, which are in you and remain in you until you pass on and depart out of the life through the dying, so for example the committing of errors and the striving – so that the process of the learning and of the evolving can function at all – as well as aggression, anxiety and fear, joy, happiness, guilt and sorrow, or thoughts and feelings of the superiority or the inferiority.
- 3) The whole is based therein that your human life – as all life indeed – is founded in an interaction between contrary factors, and this contrariness is a determining factor for everything which exists, lives, crawls and flies.
- 4) The law of the contrariness is given in everything, whether it be in the ebb and flood of the seas, whether in the blowing or the calm of the wind, in the day and in the night, in the light and in the darkness or in the male and the female, in the life and dying, in the birth and in the death, in the noise or in the stillness, in the love and in the hatred, in the peace and in the war, because this law of the contrariness is interwoven into all and everything and is therefore recognisable everywhere.
- 5) However, a closer observation and consideration of the law of the contrariness leads to the recognition that the basic prerequisites, basic thoughts and the thereout resulting basic feelings can by no way be regarded as scourges of you human beings, because they fundamentally represent challenges through which the life is primarily made worth living, since it is through this encouragement – which is what the challenge actually is – that more and more truth-cognitions, joy and more and more deep sense-reality is extracted from the life.
- 6) If, however, you human beings are of the view that you cannot accept yourselves amply, then this direction of reflecting corresponds to a view that is based on entirely wrong modes of understanding and wrong modes of observing and considering, which have been made in a wrong wise due to prior wrong interpretations of life-experiences.
- 7) Indeed, you generally urge yourselves to put all and everything that meets you or happens to you in the negative light and therefore to negate everything to a large extent, instead of recognising the good and positive and evaluating it so that it becomes to the positive knowledge and to the positive life-attitude.
- 8) The wrong doing of the negation is however truthly not the depth of the self-rejection of you human beings, but rather a no more and no less strongly distorted picture of your own thought- and feeling-world which, namely, esteems you in the bottom of your inner nature as extremely valuable, but which you want to turn to the opposite through wrong thoughts and views.
- 9) Truthly, indeed, built up in each one of you human beings, in accordance with the law of the contrariness, are not only negative basic prerequisites, basic thoughts and basic feelings that you have created yourselves, but also positive ones, only that these are generally covered and overlaid through negative ones, and so are hardly or not at all felt and diffusely deformed.
- 10) In spite of being covered and overlaid through negative things, however, the positive basic prerequisites, basic thoughts and basic feelings do exist and are merely waiting to be brought forth and utilised.
- 11) These positive basic prerequisites, basic thoughts and basic feelings are high inner values of you human beings, such as true love, inner freedom, harmony and inner peace, as well as virtues, honesty, courage, compulsion to be active, character-strength, personality-development, longing for the truthly life, for the creational laws and recommendations, for the fulfilment of the sense of the life as well as for wanting to be something oneself and for wanting to be oneself.
- 12) Truly, you human beings are chased by your drives, but you must yourselves search for their sense, since through the creational laws and recommendations you are given the freedom in your own will so that you yourselves may fathom out everything and subsequently decide the whole.
- 13) Therefore you also decide yourselves if you are befallen by anger, that you once again struggle for reconciliation, are not seized by hatred, so that you can create the love in yourselves and also win the love of your fellow human beings.
- 14) Often, melancholy creeps into you human beings, however only so that you may find the origins of the true



joy without you letting yourselves be encircled by compulsions and you can reach out for true love and inner freedom, harmony and inner peace.

- 15) And truly, the volition never comes from nothing, because in truth you must search for what you want as human beings in your own inner nature, find it and motivate it to the will, but to do this, thought-impulses are needed, through which then the will is built up and through which then the life is changed, if you only let yourselves be touched and guided by your true inner nature; therefore you shall involve yourselves in things which you recognise to be really valuable and of which you think, that it can stimulate you.
- 16) Naturally, each of you human beings – with extremely few exceptions – has quite distinct fundamental problems which accompany you and which weigh on you to a greater or lesser extent, whether it be anxiety or fear, jealousy, envy, stinginess, vice, pathological craving, hatred, immoderateness or pathological craving for wasting things, etc., however it should be important for each of you to recognise these problems in detail, because they determine the life and therefore should be fought and cleared up.
- 17) Such fundamental problems are not only the greatest tasks and challenges which you human beings have to master, because you must also become aware and learn to understand that everything in the life is founded upon contrarinesses, as a result of which, given the due effort, each thief or deceiver can become honest, the angry mild, the immoderate modest and the angstful courageous.
- 18) Indeed, your life is extremely exciting and instructive in every wise – it only needs to be understood.
- 19) However, understanding what is exciting and instructive is not merely a matter of these two factors, but in truth it is about the effective life which demands that you as human beings are your own best friends.
- 20) Being your own best friend means that you are such towards yourselves as you sometimes can be towards the most beloved fellow human being and friend.
- 21) And if you do not succeed in upholding the friendship to yourselves on one day or even on two or three occasions, then the rule to follow is not to build up any vexation about this, because the next day will certainly come on which the friendship to yourselves will once again be successful; because just as the next day comes and the world exists, everything of high values in you human beings yourselves can also be made permanent – if only the initiative thereto is seized.
- 22) And because you can make everything in yourselves that is of high values permanent, there is no reason not to want to continue living in this world.
- 23) Truly, there are very many terrible things in the world, such as the air, the earth, the nature, the rivers and other bodies of water which are polluted, and the wars that are becoming increasingly more brutal, the unhumaneness, the crimes, the criminality, the hatred, the murdering, the fights of all kinds and the anxiety and fear and uncalmness in the human beings, but the life is nevertheless worth living and is a valuable gift.
- 24) But you human beings of Earth, you do not live and vegetate from day to day if you are striving for your existence – and despite all the existing terrible things and many evils and unfairnesses that you experience, you still like many things that give you joy.
- 25) And you human beings of Earth, always consider that, whether you are joyful or sorrowful, this world from which you suffer is your world – your home, a wonderful paradise in the expanses of the universe; you only need to recognise it as paradise and do everything for it to remain a paradise.
- 26) And consider this time through which you are going, because it is your time, just as this life that you are now leading on this world and at this time, is your life.
- 27) Truly, this world is for you human beings of Earth an endangerment with regard to many kinds of things, but at the same time it is also a possibility and a task for you which you can fulfil in free will, in order to maintain the world as a paradise and, at the same time, to create a paradisiacal condition in yourselves, through which you truly begin to live.
- 28) You can reject or accept your world, just as you can also reject or accept the good world in yourselves, therefore, starting from today, you can make yourselves available to this world and to the truthly world in yourselves and work thereon so that everything turns to the best – in your inner world and in the outer one in which you live and which is your home.
- 29) Truly, you cannot give the bland speech that you are unable to change anything in yourselves to the better and, as individuals, that you cannot do anything for the world either in which you live, because these are only conscienceless and irresponsible pretexts of the cowardice.
- 30) If you however hold to this standpoint of the pretexts and cowardice, then it indeed looks very dark in you, as a result of which everything will be aggravated and rendered even darker, and indeed both in yourselves and in your world that you will turn from the paradise into the hell if you continue everything in the same wise.





Chapter 22

- 1) You human beings, you are part of the universe with its immutable, eternal laws and recommendations of the Creation in which a purpose for existence is also determined for you, the sense of the life which is given in the relatively highest possible evolution of the consciousness.
- 2) And if you recognise this life-purpose and life-sense and bring it into relationship with your own existence at every hour, every day and at all times, then you will unavoidably recognise yourselves and be lord and master over yourselves.
- 3) And if you are lord and master of yourselves, then you will be able to arrange your surroundings in a favourable wise through your knowledge and your wisdom, in order to do things of the right, of the fairness and of the progress as well as of the evolution of the consciousness.
- 4) With such knowledge and such wisdom, however, worries, affliction, misery and hardship as well as the deepest sorrow and pain can also be overcome.
- 5) Therefore, the real life is made up of more than just those things that are learned and taken in as school knowledge, because truly there is a really true and higher regulation in the life which is based in the creational laws and recommendations from out of which everything comes forth which becomes and passes, therefore it is through this regulation that the becoming and passing is determined as well as the causality, i.e. the cause and effect.
- 6) Painful happenings also have their place in the higher regulation of the life, because they also fulfil their purpose.
- 7) Solely the causes and interconnections as well as the effects must be recognised and understood, through which a learning results, out of which, in the end, the evolution results.
- 8) If you human beings are pursued by the unfortune and are unable to form your lives as harmoniously as you would like, then you are able to change this if you turn to the consonance of the cosmic regulation and therefore to the creational laws and recommendations, and follow them.
- 9) Therefore it is useful to consider why precisely this or that is done, so that it is possible to act with confidence and for everything to turn to the good.
- 10) Truly, creational powers that are building up you human beings are always at work in you, which penetrate into the consciousness and trigger processes through which consciousness-powers come about, the task of which is to heal the harms inflicted on the body or to remove tensions in the realm of the psyche, as well as to show in you, in your mental, feeling-based and willing undecidedness, the right way.
- 11) The creational laws and recommendations and their powers also cause swinging waves to act in the universe, through which you human beings are influenced and wherethrough you can direct your consciousness and its capabilities as well as your thoughts and feelings, and form your psyche.
- 12) And it is necessary for you to know and understand the entirety of these things if you want to have real and valuable success in the life.
- 13) It is necessary that you live in ample harmony with the powers that are in you and around you, as well as with the disharmonious powers that stand in contradiction to them, since everything is built up on contrarinesses and therefore always both poles, positive and negative must be taken into consideration and included in the efficacy of the equalisation, for which there is no middle way.
- 14) Solely the understanding of the creational laws and recommendations is truthly the key to the right guidance and mastery of the life.
- 15) The understanding of the higher regulation of the creational laws and recommendations forms the constitution of the life, therefore it is of decisive importance for the existence.
- 16) You human beings have a larger innermost self, the spirit-form, which animates your consciousness-block as a tiny part-piece of the Creation, therefore your life-power is dependent on it physically, i.e. bodily; however, you are no form of the duality, because as material bodies you are, as a human being, your own oneness which is, however, dependent on the spirit-form which gives you the life and which is in itself also a oneness; therefore the spirit-form lives in the body of you human beings, i.e. in the region of the superior colliculus (seat of the spirit, i.e. of the spirit-form in the human being in the «roof of the midbrain» = paired junction).
- 17) The spirit-form cannot be influenced through effects on the body, therefore neither through heat, cold, hunger, pain, illness or well-feeling; and solely this spirit-form is immortal, because if the physical life ceases then it escapes into its realm of the other world in order to be reborn in its time when a new human body is born, with a new consciousness-block, new consciousness, subconsciousness and with a new personality that are created through the overall consciousness-block.
- 18) These creational principles are to be recognised in all life and in all that which is existent, as in the dying and



reawakening of the plant-world, therefore also in the becoming and passing and becoming again of light and darkness, as well as in the tides of the seas and in uncountable other things that are created through the laws and recommendations of the Creation in the environment of you human beings, in the nature and in the entire universe.

- 19) It is only through observing the sky, i.e. the universe with the stars which are integrated into their thousand million year-old orbits and cannot be influenced through you human beings, that it comes about that a universal regulation is given which not only includes you human beings but also all existing things, all life forms of all kinds.
- 20) Therefore, you human beings of Earth with all your daily occurrences are a minute part, a minute speck of dust in the entire and unmeasurable, gigantic Wesen of the Creation.
- 21) And whoever knows the truth about the Creation and about its laws and recommendations, and learns knowledge and wisdom out of this, will be free in himself or herself, because he or she creates true love and freedom as well as peace and harmony in his or her inner nature, out of which a consciousness-based and psychical wellbeing shines forth.
- 22) Thus everything falls away which greedily craves for absolute might through which the thinking and the life of the fellow human beings shall be ruled, as is normal amongst those who in their Ausartung of the might-greed not only hold the sceptre above you human beings, but also make you subserviently dependent, enslave you and exploit you in every possible form.
- 23) Often brutal mightful ones of a state are religious zealots who have been led into the unreal, i.e. fanatics who do not know any limits or humaneness, and who see in all of you human beings a threat to their own claims for might if the human beings have self-confidence and truthly or in some other wise above-average knowledge, and perhaps also have influence in some wise or other.
- 24) Already the 'Teaching of the Prophets' that has been given since time immemorial speaks of these things and that you shall defend yourselves against these might-greedy machinations of the authorities and mightful ones, so that fairness, responsibility and conscientiousness may prevail amongst all peoples, yes amongst your entire humankind, so that true love may spread all around amongst you human beings and there may be peace, freedom and harmony in the human being and on the whole world.
- 25) The 'Teaching of the Prophets', however, has been delivered as a precious good and recorded in the 'Goblet of the Truth' in order to encourage you to turn to the truthly truth and therefore also to the creational laws and recommendations and to follow them so that the human beings change themselves to the better in the sense of the values of the laws and recommendations, and that this developmental change will be carried into the posterity through the descendants.
- 26) Truly, the knowledge of the truth, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life is open to all who are searching for it – to all who are of open-minded consciousness and who are willing to turn to the truth and to follow it.
- 27) And truly, the efficacy of the creational laws and recommendations can give rise to wonderful results in the life of each of you human beings, if you only reach for these efficacies and follow them.
- 28) Many different processes influence the life of you, but you cannot explain these happenings to yourselves, although this is only because you do not possess the knowledge about the efficacies of the creational laws and recommendations.
- 29) To many of you, these processes appear oppressive or subsequently ridiculous, nevertheless, it is precisely such and sometimes apparently insignificant incidents that lead to an inner burden and unfreedom, to inner unpeace and to disharmony, and these factors can be so strong that you are hindered in pursuing a distinct end or simply no longer find the power to liberate yourselves from your worries and from all your other burdens.
- 30) The factors that have an effect on you human beings in this case are very manifold and can also take on extremely peculiar forms, for example if you meet another human being for the first time, whose appearance and language make a good impression, in which case however aversion and mistrust nevertheless come forth.
- 31) On the other hand, you might meet another human being whose appearance is squalid and whose language is rough, thereby giving a poor impression, whereas an inclination and trust become perceptible.
- 32) Truthly, this process is a matter of a fluidal radiation from you human beings, in which case your swinging waves communicate sympathy or antipathy, and in fact this is entirely according to the condition of your thoughts and feelings, which form the condition of the psyche, your consciousness and personality as well as the character.
- 33) Equally, fluidal-powers are involved if, for example, you enter a room for the first time and immediately experience oppressive thoughts and feelings, and although the room is clean and tidy, it appears impossible that a well-feeling could come about there or that it would be possible to work there.



- 34) The solution for such a perception lies in the radiated fluidal-powers of human beings who work or live in the room, in which case the fluidal-powers-radiations of the thought- and feeling-impulsations as well as of the character, of the consciousness and of the personality are of those human beings who use the room for their purposes.
- 35) To understand this means that you human beings must carefully study the creational laws and recommendations and their modes of functioning in order to be able to understand that the fluidal-powers arise out of the thought-, feeling-, consciousness- and psyche-impulsations as well as out of the consciousness-activity and out of all impulsations, such as love and hatred, jealousy, rage, anger and irascibility, etc., the swinging waves,
i.e. fluidal-powers of which are stored in objects, furniture and walls, etc. and are perceived by the person who is confronted with them, bringing forth an oppressive or uplifting mood; and truly these explanations are not presumptions or deluded beliefs, but the fluidal-powers are truthful effects of natural laws which are only little or not at all known to you.
- 36) A sudden imagination, an idea, a decision or a thought appears like a light out of an unknown source, an intuition which provides an answer to almost every question and makes it possible to find a way out of many lackings, if the truth is pursued and enough consideration is given to it by following the efficacies of the creational laws and recommendations.
- 37) The light out of the unknown source, the intuition, is a part of your human consciousness-power which is supplied through your Creation-given spirit-form which animates your human body, and which weaves through each cell of the body and of the inner nature of you human beings.
- 38) Your entire consciousness-power can be used by you if you only strive to do so and you create the capabilities to do so, but unfortunately the bulk of your entire humankind only uses a small part of its own powers of the consciousness, therefore also only a small part of the possible capabilities is created, whilst in turn only an exceedingly small part of the acquired capabilities is also actually put into action.
- 39) Truthly, however, it is possible for all capabilities to be created, used and rendered serviceable if the creational laws and recommendations of the truth are taken, understood and used, wherethrough an enriched, fulfilled and joyful life can then be led.
- 40) Truthly, the creational laws and recommendations are and remain no secrets if they are really fathomed, and they are equal throughout the entire universe, therefore they can be understood by each of you human beings if you fathom and recognise them.
- 41) Unfortunately, however, this knowledge is not generally spread, and the reason for this is because it has no longer been taught since time immemorial although the true prophets have taught it through the 'Teaching of the Prophets', through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life again and again through the 'Goblet of the Truth'.
- 42) Unfortunately, for one thing, the teaching has been falsified by scribes according to their own whim after they had been tasked through the prophets to record the teaching in writing so as to deliver it up to the future, and for another thing the teaching was calumniated as a work of the evil by those who set themselves against the 'Teaching of the Prophets', just as they persecuted the prophets and threatened their life and decried their signs, i.e. the evidence they gave as magic; therefore the bulk of your earthly humankind has been excluded from the existing and illuminating truth.
- 43) Over hundreds and thousands of years, the attempts of the true prophets to teach the teaching of the wisdom and of the truth have been suppressed with Gewalt, and indeed this continues up to the present day, in which many religions exist, whose believers offer worship and supplication to gods and tin gods invented by you human beings, although this can bring neither benefit nor harm to them.
- 44) And the worshippers of gods and worshippers of tin gods of the godly religions are the ones who suppress and falsify the truth of the Creation and the mode of functioning of its laws and recommendations with all their might, who deny and calumniate the true prophets in order to inflict harm on their reputation and their mission-work.
- 45) Therefore, it is still the case in the new time, that the worshippers of gods and worshippers of tin gods and the mightiness of religions do everything so that the knowledge of the teaching of the true prophets, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, the 'Goblet of the Truth' cannot be passed on unrestrictedly, but can only be taught in small groups, and indeed also only there, where you human beings liberate yourselves from the religions and their servants of gods and servants of tin gods out of your own initiative and out of your own interest in the real truth, and are able to turn to the effective creational truth.
- 46) Therefore it is a fact that the god-worshippers and tin-god-believers of the religions who are ethically unschooled in the effective creational truth use their belief in supposed gods and tin gods for self-seeking purposes, in order to shine before you human beings, to obtain a good reward for untruth and to be able to lead a good life in idleness, and it goes without saying that all of this is on the back of the laboriously



acquired mite and taxes that are taken from the believers.

- 47) And truly, you human beings are guided through the religious belief into the unreal and are misused for the exploitation of the truth-unknowners, in which case you are held distant from the truth and taught irrationally with regard to supposed things that are imputed to be supernatural or unnatural.
- 48) Truthly, however, there are no unnatural and also no supernatural things, because everything moves according to the fixed creational laws and recommendations.
- 49) There are no secrets in the creational laws and recommendations, but only things of your human uncognition, through which the laws and recommendations of the Creation are wrongly interpreted and untruly explained due to wrong understanding or through unknowledge, and that also relates to the investigation of your human self and to the universe.
- 50) Indeed, for you human beings there is nothing more enthralling than the fathoming of yourself and of the universe and of your entire world in which you live, in order to experience the effective truth.
- 51) And truly, there is no stronger source of the confidence than the recognition of the truth in all things, and that, except for the true love, there is no greater might than the knowledge and the wisdom that can be used and enable things and miracles to be done which you as human beings cannot dream about – if only you create the necessary capabilities in yourselves or awaken them out of the slumber, if they already exist but are lying dormant.
- 52) And these capabilities are great, extensive, gigantic and wide-ranging, so alone the touching of objects can transfer many kinds of messages, or thoughts and feelings can be transmitted into the surroundings or indeed far away through swinging waves.
- 53) And, indeed, it is possible for you human beings to perceive the outgoing swinging waves from another human being and to define them in order to determine their feelings or character, etc. in this wise.
- 54) Truly, the entire life is influenced through the capabilities you have acquired as are also the thoughts and feelings, deeds and actions through the fundamental creational truth which is to be found alone in the laws and recommendations of the Creation and also in the thereout resulting nature.
- 55) And if you turn to this all-embracing truth and make it your own, then you will find a way to re-form your entire life and to learn to find yourselves and to guide yourselves.
- 56) And if you find the way, then every minute, every hour and every day, week-in and week-out, month-in and month-out and year-in and year-out will become a joyful experience because the sequence of all things is determined by yourselves and is no longer left to chance.
- 57) And in order to go this way, it is not necessary to change your previous activity or to abandon the social obligations which you had had until now, because truthly you human beings can leave the developmental change of outer things to the guidance of the truth, which is found in the creational laws and recommendations.
- 58) The fathoming and learning of the creational laws and recommendations reveals the secrets of the creational life, in which case learning them is not simply the same as a teaching through which mere school knowledge is imparted, wherethrough the memory is unnecessarily burdened with many worthless things; quite to the contrary, indeed, the creational laws and recommendations activate innate powers in you human beings which show effect in the consciousness and promote, create or awaken capabilities when you are at rest, which in turn leads to the strengthening of your self-consciousness; through that, however, it is also learned that the right and best way is taken and therefore not only one's own life but also the environment are understood and mastered.
- 59) If you strive for the truth that proceeds out of the creational laws and recommendations, then you will guide yourselves step by step into new knowledge and into new areas of knowledge, at the same time as which the truthly truth will flow into the consciousness almost unnoticed, bringing solutions to secrets that had existed up until now, out of which practical experience and living experience proceed, becoming knowledge, and finally, life-wisdom.
- 60) If you work yourselves into the truthly truth in the form of the creational laws and recommendations with motivation and with interest, then you will rather soon experience a considerable developmental change in the thought- and feeling-world, which will also be realised in the life itself, if the essence of the learning is implemented practically in everyday life, through which a greater help in the mastering of all problems arises in a perceptible wise.
- 61) And truly, it is through the learning of the truth out of the creational laws and recommendations that the creational guidelines become clear which are necessary in order to tread the life-way rightly and to live in conformity with the laws and recommendations of the Creation which guarantee that you human beings experience uplifting times in your existence.



Chapter 23

- 1) Truly, at all times, you human beings of Earth have searched for something that extends far beyond what you call your material wellbeing – something that is the truthfully truth and that can be called reality.
- 2) You see this reality as a timeless state, as something that cannot be affected in any kind and wise through any circumstances and therefore also not through your human thoughts and feelings or through your depravity.
- 3) This reality is the truthfulness of the Creation with its uncontrovertible laws and recommendations which you, human beings of Earth, raise up to a godhead in your unintellect, to which you pray and supplicate, without ever receiving a sign from it that it is responding to the supplicating, begging and praying, although this is hardly surprising because the godhead is of course only fantasifully thought up and invented, but is in every respect completely powerless and without might to do any things in the good or evil.
- 4) Continuously, since time immemorial, you have asked what it is that stands mightily over you and is the well-spring of all existence and BEING, and is called Creation.
- 5) And you ask yourselves whether there is actually any sense to the life because you are looking at the dignityless chaos of your life, all the evil, the murdering and jealousy, the coarsenesses and torturing, the hatred in manifold forms, the crimes and criminality, all the terrorism as well as the splittings (different forms of opinions, views, etc.) proceeding out of the ideologies, religions, sects and philosophies and out of the politics of all nations which are continuously growing and apparently never cease.
- 6) And truly, it is understandable that you ask yourselves in deep disappointment what you shall do against it, what in truth is that which you call life, and whether this really goes beyond that which you call god.
- 7) The truth is that no such godhead exists, because that to which you pray and supplicate as god is only a fantasy-form invented through you human beings which cannot help you in any wise.
- 8) The truth is namely that only the Creation stands over you, and you are integrated into its laws and recommendations and into its effects.
- 9) However, neither the Creation nor its laws and recommendations determine what you have to do and not do, because that is left up to you through your will according to which you can determine and act as you wish.
- 10) It is therefore through your free will that you determine all and everything with regard to your life-conduct and your destiny, with no determinations whatsoever influencing you on the part of the Creation or on the part of its laws and recommendations.
- 11) Therefore, if you care for your thoughts and feelings and act according to your ideas and motivations, then this is done through your own responsibility which you alone must bear, without any involvement through the Creation or its laws and recommendations.
- 12) The only thing which comes forth out of the creational laws and recommendations are its effects which regulate that from out of a distinct cause a thereout resulting effect arises.
- 13) And if you therefore ask what you can do for your life and against all the evil world-happenings through which you are disappointed, then the answer is found in that you must strive as individuals in every wise to achieve in yourselves true love as well as peace, freedom and harmony in order to carry these high values forth amongst your fellow human beings and throughout the whole world.
- 14) If you as humankind are to be changed to the better, then you must start with yourselves as individuals and reach for the creational laws and recommendations in order to fulfil them in yourselves; and, once you have fulfilled them on yourselves, it requires for you to live them outwardly, into the world around you, so that your fellow human beings can take you as an example, because truly it is only in this kind and wise that a change to the better can come about in a greater and great extent.
- 15) At the same time, it is not to be assumed that you as human beings could only be altered in whole or in part in your inner nature solely through the words of your fellow human beings, because none amongst you can change another in any wise, since it is only the human being in question who can do this through his or her own endeavours, if they require a change of the inner nature and also want this.
- 16) Therefore, if there is to be an end to all the wars and crimes, the terrorism and hatred of all kinds, the jealousy and the criminality as well as the murdering and torture, the altercations, the outbreaks of anger and rage, and also an end to the acts of Gewalt of all kinds, the cheating and thievery, the human trafficking and the pathological cravings and vices and other terrible things of all kinds, then it is the individual who is called upon, and indeed in such a wise that individuals must first bring under control within themselves all the terrible



things and their baleful thoughts and feelings and clear them up, in order to lead their lives in fairness and in full responsibility and conscientiousness.

- 17) However, what you are looking for with regard to the indescribable, which stands as true might over yourselves and over all existence and to which you give a thousand names, which, however, you name god in your delusion of belief, is truthly the Creation with its laws and recommendations, and you have always searched for these since time immemorial without being able to find them, because false prophets have guided you with false teachings into the unreal and to a belief in gods and tin gods, and thus into religious aberration and confusion.
- 18) The truthly prophets, however, who brought you the real truth, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, it is those whom you have persecuted at all times and even to the present day, seeking to kill them; and you have cursed their teaching and calumniated their signs, their evidence which they gave to you as being magic and the work of the devil.
- 19) And it is mainly your servants of gods, your priests and the like who in no wise acknowledge and follow the truthly *Teaching of the Prophets*, because they only acknowledge their teachings of gods and curse the truth of the *Teaching of the Prophets* which is against the godly servile and irrational teachings and does not proclaim any godly ideals, such as the teachings of gods do, which could not be more confusing and more false.
- 20) And because the servants of gods believe and represent their false teachings of their false prophets and falsifiers of scrolls, therefore they, in their religiously deluded belief, invent lies about ideals that are far removed from reality, as well as about redeemers and paradises in godly heavens, which are devoid of all reality.
- 21) The worshippers of gods are directed towards religious belief-forms thought up by you human beings which are devoid of all reality and contradict and derisively mock all the truth of the Creation and of its laws and recommendations, which inevitably leads to differences in the understanding and following of the belief-forms through the believers, with the effect that every belief will inevitably lead to the *Gewaltsamkeit* in itself as well as to the extensive *Gewaltsamkeit* amongst all you human beings of Earth.
- 22) In the continuous battle which you call life, you attempt to create a codex of behaviour which shall correspond to your society, in which you grew up, and indeed irrespective of whether this is a so-called unfree or free society.
- 23) Fundamentally, you only accept a normalised life-attitude of your belief as a constituent part of your traditions and customs, which proceed from out of your cults, religions and sects, and so you always look for a godhead invented through you human beings who supposedly says to you what things you shall do that are rightful or shall leave that are unrightful.
- 24) You look to your godhead or to your tin god to see what they shall say to you, what your right or wrong behaviour shall be and what your right thoughts and feelings shall be, and you then believe your priests and your other worshippers of gods, worshippers of tin gods who fabulate away or consciously lie about what their deity or their tin god have given as rules, although neither an invented god nor tin god can give any rules of behaviour or any other rules and regulations of any kind, because they do not exist.
- 25) You, however, who are searching for the truth of all truth, you fall prey to the belief in your gods and tin gods and the false assertions and irrational teachings of the priests, therefore you direct yourselves according to the supposed norms of the supposed gods and tin gods, through which your behaviour as well as your thoughts and feelings become mechanical in terms of belief or religion, and your reactions become automatic due to being bound by belief, as a result of which you are no longer capable of free thoughts and feelings because they are only controlled through the belief and the religion.
- 26) If you would direct your interest to this fact, then you would recognise the truth and turn away from the belief and from the religions, but as you are captured in yourselves through your own religious belief, you are unable to break through your own prison and cannot get through to the outside in order to experience the effective truth of all truth, as is given through the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 27) Truly, for thousands of years, you human beings of Earth have been patronised through your teachers who have been misguiding you and through your authorities with false teachings and through false prophets, as well as through many of your fellow human beings who have raised themselves to gods or representatives of gods, to godly ambassadors as well as to leaders of religions and sects, and have written scripts and books about their irrational and false teachings.
- 28) And, for thousands of years, you have been believing these deceivers and charlatans, the false prophets, whereas you have been insulting the true prophets by calling them liars, calumniating them, persecuting them and striving to kill them.
- 29) You believe the charlatans and deceivers, the false prophets as well as their priests and other servants of gods, and you expect from them that they can reveal everything to you which is the truthly truth and what is hidden behind the truthly laws and recommendations of the life.



- 30) They, however, cannot give you any answer to this, because their knowledge is not built up on the creational truth, but rather on an unreal belief in a godhead or in tin gods and their cults and rites.
- 31) You however, you are satisfied with their false presentations and explanations, and you willingly let yourselves be guided into the unreal, and indeed without you yourselves searching for the fundamental truth of the life, because you are captured in a religious belief, which is your belief of the servitude.
- 32) Truly, you only live according to the misguiding words of your priests, who maintain that they are repeating the words of their god, which, however, truthfully does not exist and, as an imaginary unreality, has neither the power to do good or evil.
- 33) And since you only live according to the misguiding and false words of your priests and supposed gods and tin gods, therefore your life is hollow and empty.
- 34) And because you do not determine over yourselves, but let yourselves be determined through your belief in imaginary gods and tin gods as well as through their priests and other worshippers of gods and worshippers of tin gods, therefore you are no more than human beings at second hand, because you only take from what is prescribed to you through the belief and what is said to you through the priests and worshippers of gods as well as worshippers of tin gods, without you truthfully deciding for yourselves.
- 35) You are not using your intellect and your rationality in order to fathom out the truthfully truth of the life through your own thoughts and feelings and to find it in the creational laws and recommendations, as they are manifoldly also recognisable in the free nature.
- 36) And by leading your life in your belief in gods and tin gods, you do not let any true control prevail over yourselves and your doing as well as over your thoughts, feelings and deeds, rather you let yourselves be led simply uncontrolled through your intentions and inclinations as well as through your lustfulnesses and attitudes, as well as through what is forcefully imposed upon you through the circumstances and through your fellow human beings or through the environment.
- 37) Therefore you are not the result of yourselves, but rather the result of many and manifold influences that continuously break in upon you, in particular influences that result out of your belief in your invented gods and tin gods.
- 38) In you, there is only the long-standing belief in your deities and tin gods, however nothing new, nothing that you have discovered yourselves, and nothing that you discover yourselves, because you are truly empty and hollow with regard to the truthfully knowledge about the reality of the Creation and of its laws and recommendations, therefore there is nothing original and nothing primeval in you – only belief in a fabricated god or tin god.
- 39) Truly, since time immemorial, since the entire religious past, you human beings of Earth have been irrationally taught and assured through religious or sectarian teachers, and you continue to be taught irrationally and assured that you, providing you undertake cult activities such as rites and sacrifices as well as repeating certain prayers or mantras, will receive enlightenment and a propitious existence.
- 40) And it has been and is said to you that it is necessary that you shall suppress your needs and wishes, and that you shall adapt yourselves to certain norms and control your thoughts as well as purify your passions and raise them into higher levels, so you shall be god-pleasing.
- 41) And, furthermore, it has been and continues to be said to you through the religions that you shall restrain your drives and refrain from sexual debaucheries so that your «spirit» and your body will be purified.
- 42) And, as has been and continues to be religiously taught to you, it is only when your «spirit» and body are sufficiently tortured that you shall find a higher life, which is only to be found beyond the meaningless earthly life.
- 43) And truly, so-called religious human beings amongst you, numbering in the millions, have done in this wise over the past hundreds and thousands of years, and many amongst you human beings of Earth still do so equally today, however without success as always since time immemorial.
- 44) As your forefathers before you, you go into the seclusion, into monasteries, into the quiet cell, into the mountains, into the forest, into a cave, into the desert or you go begging through the world, alone or in groups, in order to force your consciousness (erroneously called «spirit») to join into a belief and to adapt itself to an unreality thought up through you human beings.
- 45) But, truly, through that you are merely going even more astray in the irrational teachings and in the belief in gods and tin gods and the like, because the more you do this, the deeper you fall into the darkness of the not-knowing and the untruth.
- 46) Consider, human beings of Earth, what you are doing in this wise makes you into tormented human beings with a broken consciousness, broken thoughts and feelings and a broken psyche.
- 47) In this wise, you truly cannot escape from the tumult of the world-happenings, even if you strive to do so, because if you attempt to abdicate the outside world through such discipline and through that to adapt yourselves to your belief and its requirements and expectations, then you will only be insensitive against the



truth and reality, and furthermore, no matter how long you may strive and struggle, you will only ever find what corresponds to your misguided thoughts and feelings and therefore to your delusions.

- 48) Truthly, a completely different way must be taken if you want to find and discover those things on the other side of the tumult of the world and of the angstful and ambitious, fear-filled as well as guiltful and nervous life which contain higher values, which, however, has nothing to do with illusory enlightenments and fabricated, godly spheres and unrealities of being, but rather solely and alone with the effective truth of reality.
- 49) Fundamentally, you human beings of Earth must go into yourselves in order to acquire everything in yourselves by you creating true love in yourselves as well as inner peace, inner freedom and harmony.
- 50) If, in doing so, you give up all lovelessness, all unpeace as well as all disharmony and unfreedom by which you are bound, and if you practise the status of equalisedness and neutrality in yourselves, then over the course of time an inner blossoming of that inner love and beauty will arise which opens the entire life in full magnificence.
- 51) You, however, human beings of Earth, you are in reality doing precisely the opposite and therefore everything in order to be narrow-minded, loveless, inferior and insignificant.
- 52) If you are fathoming out your true core, if you are peeling away layer by layer, then you take your time in doing so, although you are filled with expectations that you will find goodness in yourselves, as you also hope that the next morning or your next life will bring good things for you – but when you then finally reach the centre of the core of your inner nature then you discover with dread that there is nothing in there but emptiness or rubbish because you could not put anything valuable into it since your consciousness has been left dormant and you have made your thoughts and feelings blunt, incapable and unconcerned through a belief in a god or tin god.
- 53) But it is only when this discovery has been made that you ask yourselves whether there might not be a different way leading to the effective truth rather than the belief in a god or tin god, so that you can nevertheless still break through from the centre of your inner nature to the real truth.
- 54) Unfortunately, you and the bulk of the world accept and follow the traditional way which is that of the religious belief in a god or tin god, because of which the true reality is not recognised.
- 55) If you, human beings of Earth, honestly fathom out the truthly cause of the chaos in yourselves, then you will recognise that this cause is the search for a false reality which has been promised to you by false prophets and false teachers as well as by priests and other servants of gods and servants of tin gods since time immemorial.
- 56) Therefore, you mechanically follow the irrational teachings which assure you a beneficial «spiritual» life, but you can never achieve this because you do not turn to the creational truth of all truth, but instead only ever to a religious belief in an invented god or tin god which are without energy or power.
- 57) Truly, you human beings of Earth, if you consider the highest peculiarity that you oppose any religious, sectarian, political or private tyranny and any dictatorship or any other power if it is directed against you yourselves and you become aware of it, whereas inwardly you accept the authority, tyranny and dictatorship of another if it is directed against one or more of you human beings or against an entire people; truly, your consciousness and your behaviour are also confused in this direction, because you are not capable of clear intellect, and also not of clear rationality.
- 58) It is also peculiar if you repudiate – and not intellectually but rather in reality – the so-called «spiritual» authority, and therefore also the religious belief, as well as the dogmas, rituals, ceremonies and other cult activities, so that you then suddenly stand alone amongst all the religious believers who regard you as ones who have got very badly out of the control of the good human nature and are outcasts, because of which you firstly find yourselves in conflict with the believers and secondly also with the priests and other higher worshippers of gods and tin gods, and further also with society itself.
- 59) If you distance yourselves from the religious belief then you are ones who have got very badly out of the control of the good human nature, outcasts or «godless ones» in the eyes of the society, and therefore human beings to whom no more esteem is shown, nevertheless, also this is no stumbling block for you to continue wallowing in the false religious belief rather than turning to the effective and real truth of all truth, to the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 60) However, you want to be esteemed human beings in the society, but through this you cannot find the way to the real truth of the creational laws and recommendations, and it is also impossible for you to come nearer to the endless and unmeasurable reality.
- 61) You cowardly accept the truth-unknowledge against the truthly truth of all truth of the Creation and of its laws and recommendations, in order to have a certain standing in the society and to profit from this standing in one or another kind and wise.
- 62) Truly, you are ruled by cowardice and you bow down in anxiety and fear of the harsh rule of religion, whatever it may be, and indeed only because you, in your pusillanimousness and chickenheartedness, are unable to bring forth the courage to be yourselves, to promote in yourselves your own thoughts of the



rationality and intellect in order to let the effective truth be granted to yourselves and to turn away from the untruth of the religious belief in a godhead or in a tin god.

- 63) But truly, you human beings of Earth, you are peculiar because if you have begun to turn away from the traditional way of the religious belief and therefore to negate all the false things, then you create a reaction out of this refusal of the god-related or tin god-bound religiosity, and this reaction is based on you acquiring another pattern of a god or tin god and falling prey to another religious or sectarian belief which holds you just as tightly with its greedy clutches as the belief that you previously had and from which you have turned away; therefore, you, human beings of Earth, simply turn from one religious belief to the next, without thereby reaching the way of the real truth of all truth, namely to the effective truth of the Creation and of its laws and recommendations.
- 64) If you turn away from a religious belief in a godhead or in a tin god or the like, no matter of what kind, because your intellect and your rationality tell you that it is good and right, then you nevertheless do not get any further and do not find the truthly truth if you make nothing out of the rejection of the belief, but simply turn to another belief.
- 65) However, if you reject the false, the religious belief in a god or tin god, in a human being who has elevated himself or herself into a god or god-representative, in saints, angels and demons, because you recognise that each religious or other belief is merely made out of a blunt consciousness, and if you understand the immaturity of the social and religious accords and rules of conduct and repudiate these on the basis of deep insight because you are continuously becoming freer in yourselves when you turn to the real truth, then on the one hand you will be free of the uncalmness in yourselves, whereas on the other hand you will bring forth uncalmness amongst your fellow human beings because you are no longer of their enslaving religious belief.
- 66) You human beings of Earth, however, who free yourselves from your religious belief in a god or tin god, in a human being who has raised himself or herself up to the representative of god, and from the belief in saints, angels, demons or also from the human idols of all kinds, and who finally become yourselves and also carry all the responsibility for yourselves, you will escape out of the greedy clutches of the traditional characterlessness and indecency which are taught to you by the society and by the religions, and which are characterlessly presented as honourableness.
- 67) And when you get this far then you will discover that you must no longer search for the effective truth of all truth, because searching is fundamentally wrong, since this is the equivalent to a hunt for something undeterminate which is never found because it is not known and also cannot be found.
- 68) Therefore it is necessary to learn, not to search, but rather to use rationality and intellect in order to recognise the truthly truth of all truth there, where it actually is, and no actual searching is required for this but only a perception of all things that go on, take place and move around you human beings of Earth, because the modes of functioning of the creational laws and recommendations and therefore the effective truth are to be recognised therein, which only require the intellect and rationality and the to-be-created will for it to be understood and followed.
- 69) The truthly truth can be perceived and recognised in the free nature all around, so, how it manifests itself as the effects of the creational laws and recommendations in all and everything, and therefore also in you human beings yourselves as well as in every plant and in every life form, and equally so in the elements of Earth and in the entire universe, in the stars, the planets, the meteors, the shooting stars and the comets and nebulae.
- 70) Truly, the effective truth that lies in the creational laws and recommendations as well as in the Creation itself can never be shown as such through priests, books, philosophers, servants of gods, redeemers, prophets, ideologues or other human beings, just as the questions about it cannot be either.
- 71) However, it is a fact that the mode of functioning of the truth and therefore also the modes of functioning of the creational laws and recommendations can be named, although this does not belong in the explanation-domain of those who place a god above themselves and pray to it, just as all those caught up in religion of any kind do, such as priests, servants of gods, philosophers, redeemers and the like who stay far away from the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and therefore far from the «Teaching of the Prophets» in which everything that is known with regard to the truthly truth and mode of functioning of the creational laws and recommendations is proclaimed.
- 72) And the «Teaching of the Prophets», the «Goblet of the Truth», only names the facts of the truth which run through the entire life and form the guidelines of the existence which you human beings of Earth shall follow so that you may lead a good and life-pleasing existence, valuing and esteeming it highly.
- 73) The teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life of the true prophets teaches you in accordance with the cognitions proceeding out of the creational laws and recommendations, all those things that you require for a true and fair as well as conscientious and responsible life-conduct, so that true love and harmony may exist in you yourselves as well as amongst your entire humankind, as well as truthly freedom and



all-embracing peace.

- 74) And if you follow the teaching, the «Goblet of the Truth», the «Teaching of the Prophets», and if you learn everything which it imparts you, then you shall not simply accept everything as given, but rather use it in order to fathom it out and to work it out in yourselves, so that you may find the real truth out of and in everything, and become knowing and wise in yourselves by understanding and following the truth that you have found in yourselves.
- 75) Consider also, you human beings of Earth, only what you have created in yourselves through hard working-out and truth-finding through the explanations and guidance of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and all that which you perceive in the free nature all around in all things and life forms and recognise as effects of the creational laws and recommendations, can you find in yourselves as effective-truth if you consciously and honestly strive to do so.
- 76) Therefore, it is a fact that no one can answer the question about the truthly truth for you yourselves, not even the true prophets, because these can only guide you in the explanations of the truth as well as the modes of functioning of the creational laws and recommendations, whereas you can only find the truth for this in yourselves if you think through everything neutrally in yourselves and find the result of the truth therein.
- 77) But consider, when you want to find the truth in yourselves, and this is the only way to the truthly truth, then you shall not be immature in yourselves and you must therefore know yourselves so that you can understand yourselves, which in turn must be obtained through self-cognition.
- 78) If, therefore, you turn to the «Teaching of the Prophets» then you do not need to search for any kind of «higher things» or for «redemption» or for any other thing based in irrational teachings, but solely and exclusively learn out of the teaching only those things which lead you to the self-cognition and to your own self and to all those characterly and virtuous values through which you can raise yourselves up to the being human in the real and true sense; and it is only once you have acquired certain values in this regard and have found your own self that you shall turn to those things of the teaching through which you make valuable perceptions and deeper cognitions and cognisances as well as win deeper knowledge and practical experience which you feel as living-experience and can use as wisdom.
- 79) And if you ask yourselves what your self is, then you must fathom your inner nature and its individuality in order to be able to observe that there is a great difference between this individuality, i.e. the character of your inner nature and you human beings as such, i.e. as individuals.
- 80) You human beings as individuals with your own will and your own decisions are more or less free, not bound to one place and you can be anywhere you like and love, such as in a place, in a country, or you can belong to a quite distinct society, culture and religion, can dedicate yourselves to your activity and use everything which is of material kind and in this wise determines your life as a human being; however, your individuality is bound as character in your nature as a local oneness, and gives expression of itself with its especialness, peculiarities as well as with the character, the virtues and with the personality, etc.
- 81) And your deeds as an individual, as a human being, are only partly related to the whole and broad life-area which not only includes the human being as an individual with his or her free choice of the dwelling, society, culture and religion or his or her mode of thinking, but also the individual which has inherent in itself the especialness, character, virtues and personality and, of course, also the human and the being human in the real and true sense; what arises out of this is that individual and individuality are two fundamentally different values which are often confounded with each other and wrongly explained by you human beings of Earth.
- 82) Therefore, in this connection, it is always necessary to take the whole into account, therefore it is not possible to speak of only one part, because in truth it is always a matter of the completeness of you human beings, namely the individual and the individuality which are decisive with regard to the being human in the real and true sense; and because only the completeness of individual and individuality is important, out of this it also follows that both parts are of equal importance and of equal value, therefore there is no smaller and larger part, and therefore it is wrong to teach that a smaller and a larger part arise with regard to the individuality and the individual, meaning that the larger cannot be found in the smaller and the smaller cannot be found in the larger, because truthly, both parts of the wholeness individual and individuality are of equal value, just as the one part draws benefit from the other; therefore it is necessary to remember always to talk about the whole and not about a part, and that the same values are found in both parts, but are simply of a different kind in their form, namely as material and intrinsic, i.e. as individual-based and individual.
- 83) As individual, you human beings of Earth are constrained creatures who bring misery on yourselves and are disappointed as well as still powerless with regard to the consciousness and of little significant importance, who satisfy yourselves with your false religious belief and your invented little gods and tin gods and images, and live according to your old confused and irrational traditions, whereas you could however live as true human beings if you built up your inner nature, your individuality, in a truthly wise according to the creational laws and recommendations and would transfer this to your entire life in yourselves and outside of yourselves;



in doing so, you would then also be true human beings in humaneness, in which you would participate in the well-being, in all affliction, in the misery and confusion of your entire earthly humankind.

- 84) But truly, you human beings of Earth, you have remained captives of yourselves and of your traditions for many thousands and even millions of years, traditions which you have learned and followed through lies and deceptions of your fellow human beings who invented gods and tin gods and more of the same with fantasy or with a confused consciousness, and you have accepted these gods and tin gods and have since then worshipped them and begged them for help, however, they can never give you anything because they are only imaginary and powerless figures of fantasy.
- 85) And false duties have been imposed upon you through the inventors of the fantasy-forms, god and tin god, and false prophets have given false teachings as well as false requirements of the supposed gods and tin gods the fulfilment of which has been imposed upon you as a duty, out of which however only terribleness arose, which came entirely upon your whole humankind in the form of greed and envy, jealousy, hatred, anxiety, fear and despair, aggression, pathological craving for revenge, lustfulnesses, pathological craving for retaliation, which has, through getting very badly out of the control of the good human nature, entirely turned into war, terror, pathological craving for might as well as religious fanaticism and into the religious belief-delusion from which there is no rescue.
- 86) Sometimes, however, you also feel joy, love and inclination in yourselves, but you are also doubtful in this and therefore an exceedingly peculiar mixture of love and hatred, of jealousy and inclination, of forbearance and unforbearance, of honesty and dishonesty as well as of kindheartedness and evil, also of pathological craving for revenge and reconciliation, of peaceableness and peacelessness and of acting with Gewalt and charity, etc.
- 87) Truly, as far as technology is concerned, you human beings of Earth have made great progress; from the club to the atom bomb and from the wheelless cart to space rockets, you have pushed ahead with your progress, but in your inner nature, in your individuality, you have not developed greatly as an individuum, as a human being, but have negatively changed yourselves even further, by means of which you have created the entire dishonest structure of the society throughout the world.
- 88) When you look at and consider the external social structure, then you see the result of your inner psychological structure as is given in your inner nature, i.e. in your individuality which you carry in you as an individuum, as a human being, as the expression of your attitude, because as an individuum you use the result of the entire practical experiences, of the entire knowledge and of all things in order to form your individual, i.e. natural behaviour, as you have done already since time immemorial, which is why you carry therewith the entire past in your inner nature, i.e. in your individuality.
- 89) You as human beings, as individua, are the expression which carries your entire humankind in it as individuality, as an inner nature, because it is in the inner nature, in the individuality, that everything has been formed since time immemorial, and namely the entire sorrowful and inadequate evolution-history, through the wrong use of the consciousness and of the thoughts and feelings, through which the inner nature, the individuality, has been impaired and deformed, and this is transferred to the outside as well, to you human beings as individua.
- 90) Pay attention to what is happening in yourselves, in your inner nature, i.e. in your individuality, as well as what you as a human being, individuum, are doing outwardly, and what is generally taking place in your outer world in which you live and which is a culture of competition without parallel, which only demands might, possessions and riches, pleasure, influence, position, rank and name as well as prestige and everything that stands somehow or other in material connection.
- 91) And look at and consider everything of which you are proud and which you vehemently fight for; look at and consider however also your relationships that you lead which are full of conflicts and jealousy, as well as full of hatred, ausgeartet passion and fanaticism, out of which brutality results as well as strife, terror, murder and manslaughter and war.
- 92) Truly, that is your life, human beings of Earth, as you have known it since time immemorial, because you do not understand the truth of the creational laws and recommendations and you are incapable of truly understanding and controlling the gigantic struggle of the life.
- 93) Truly, hatred and strife, jealousy, greed for might, belief and worshipping gods, brutality, murder and manslaughter, endless wars and other terror as well as torture, missing interhuman relationships, greed, vice and all kinds of pathological cravings are things which you undertake to an excessive extent, and this extensive domain of the evil and Ausartung is everything that you know; naturally, you are afraid of all this and you search for hidden possibilities to escape all these terrible things, but you do not succeed because you only turn to your material life and to all its things, and however not to the truthfully truth of all truth which is only to be found in the creational laws and recommendations, but which is unknown to you, however.
- 94) Therefore you are afraid of the unknown, of the life and of the death and of everything that lies behind the next morning and in the near and far future; but you are also afraid of what is known to you, which the present



existence brings you, and that is truly your life in which there is no confidence for you if you do not finally bethink yourselves in order to turn to the truthly truth of all truth as is taught to you through the creational laws and recommendations, explained through the true prophets in the book *«Goblet of the Truth»*, the *«Teaching of the Prophets»*, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.

- 95) Human beings of Earth, consider the truthly truth of all truth and learn it so that you recognise that all religions and all their terms of any kind, as well as all philosophies, ideologies and all forms of the religious belief in gods and tin gods as well as their like are nothing more than a cowardly flight from the true reality and therefore from that which is truthly and uncontroversible; and through the cowardly flight from the real truth and the effective reality, which are pre-given through the creational laws and recommendations, you have brought wars and all kinds of terribleness over your world and humankind.
- 96) You have created vast changes in your world and in your humankind since time immemorial and up into the present time, although the majority of all these upheavals have been and are also in the present time of an extremely negative and evil nature, and indeed through your hatred that you bear towards your fellow human beings because you do not like their nose, their religion or their strangeness or whatever else, through which you see yourselves incited to practice jealousy, take the first opportunity to wage wars and other terror, start reformations, revolutions and bloody demonstrations and riots.
- 97) And you create ideologies, religions, sects, laws, regulations and ordinances which are unworthy of you human beings and which unavoidably lead to confusion and wars, because they are laws, regulations and ordinances which take from you human beings the dignity, peace, freedom and harmony in every wise and only bring forth more and more terrible things amongst you instead of them being able to change you as individuals and as a whole society fundamentally to the better.
- 98) As human beings which you are, you live in a monstrous world that you have created with ugly laws, ordinances and regulations, etc. that are directed towards a society of the brutality, of the anxiety and fear, of the terror, of the acts of Gewalt and of the dishonest competition; and this monstrous world with you as humankind cannot come to rest and cannot become a world of love, peace and harmony as well as of true freedom for as long as you do not form everything amply to the good and according to the creational laws and recommendations, and indeed not only as an imagination and as a hope, but in truth and reality.
- 99) And only if you change yourselves in truth and reality to the good and better, and thereby your consciousness awakes to a new freshness, reforms itself and becomes pure, will it be possible for you to bring forth an entirely different and valuable world in which you then live in a true paradise and you feel well, and you are filled with love and are also surrounded by it, as also peace, freedom and harmony will prevail in and outside you.
- 100) However, this can only happen if every single one of you human beings of Earth as a single individuum becomes conscious of the important fact, and acts according to it, namely that you are yourselves as fully all around responsible as individuals for the entire status of your own inner nature, i.e. your individuality as well as for the evolution of your consciousness and with regard to your actions and efforts, as each individual of you is also fully and completely responsible for the status of the world in its entirety, irrespective of where you may live and to which social class, religion or sect, which people, which culture, which philosophy or ideology you belong to as individuals.
- 101) Be clearly conscious – even if you vehemently deny it and believe that you are not guilty – that every single one of you is responsible for each war and each act of terror and for each other act of Gewalt, indeed even if you do not advocate it; and you are guilty of it because you do not do anything against it and you do not oppose it in any reasonable and logical wise in gewaltsamer Gewaltlosigkeit; you are only innocent of the whole thing if you do whatever is possible for you to take measures against all the terrible things, the wars, the terror and the acts of Gewalt, whether through spoken words, through speeches and lectures or through the script, because if you do this then do it according to law and right within the frame of the creational laws and recommendations to which each war and other terror and all acts of Gewalt stand in contradiction.
- 102) Human beings of Earth, you are full of aggressivity and are not connected to humankind, but rather you are nationalistic and racialistic as well as full of selfishness, full of conceit, ideals and prejudices, and you have your titles and your riches, as well as your gods and tin gods and human idols and your belief in them, therefore you adore them, worship them and make entreaties to them, and all this separates you from one another.
- 103) Truly, you must clearly recognise, and indeed through intellect and rationality, that you are yourselves responsible for all the terrible things surrounding you and for the entire chaos in you and in your world, for all the affliction and for all the misery in yourselves as well as in the entire world; and you yourselves contribute to making everything even worse because you do not restrict your offspring, but rather continue to reproduce irresponsibly, through which all terrible things, the misery and the affliction as well as the gigantic catastrophes also continue to multiply in the world and in its nature, as do also the hatred, the jealousy, the wars, the terror, the acts of Gewalt and crimes, etc. amongst you.
- 104) Finally recognise, you human beings of Earth, that you yourselves have contributed to all the terrible things of



your world through your daily life, and are contributing further, because you are, as part of the monstrous earthly society, complicit in and responsible for everything, for the human dignitylessnesses, for the hatred, for the jealousy, for the death penalty, for the wars, acts of terror and crimes of all kinds, for all the misery and affliction, for all the brutality, acts of Gewalt and ugliness, for the greed, vices and pathological cravings, debauchery and all other Ausartungen; only when you finally recognise this fact and look round for the real truth of all truth, and find it in the creational laws and recommendations and follow it, only then will you finally act rightly and do everything for the best of yourselves and of your world.

- 105) However, it is not easy for you human beings to do the right thing in order to build up in yourselves, in your inner nature, a completely different individuality which raises you up in the consciousness and shows you things of the life which are of such high values that you never could have dreamed of; and if you create a new individuality in your inner nature, then also let it act outwardly, by means of which a completely different and new world builds up around you, as well as valuable interhuman relationships come about, and love, harmony, peace and freedom amongst all of you.
- 106) The doing in this wise is a very serious matter, but you will not find out by yourselves what you must do in order to achieve everything and to direct the whole into solid, better and good forms, and precisely out of this reason have human beings arisen amongst you who have worked themselves up to ones having knowledge, wise ones and to proclaimers, to prophets, by finding out and learning the causes and effects of the nature and of the creational laws and recommendations, in order to teach you about the knowledge won, so that you might recognise the truthly laws and recommendations of creational form and put them into practice in the life, so that it may go well with you.
- 107) The true prophets, the proclaimers of the truth, they are your true leaders, you human beings of Earth, because they know and understand the creational laws and recommendations better than you, however truly they can only teach and explain these to you because learning and acquiring them in yourselves through rationality and intellect is something that you alone must do, and in fact out of free will and without the urgings of the prophets; the true prophets, namely, may only teach you, but not urge you to accept their teaching, because this would be the equivalent of a coercion to the belief, and through a coercion to the belief you would learn nothing and not find the truth in yourselves, rather you would only become the pattern of a new belief, without finding the truthly truth of all truth in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations.
- 108) And there have been and still are many so-called spiritual leaders and false prophets in your world, of whom you have assumed and continue to assume that they understand the things of the truth better than you, but truthly they have said and continue to say this only because they have attempted and also continue to attempt to make you subserviently dependent on them and on their false teaching, and to press you into their false teaching as a pattern; and truly, this has not brought you very far even since time immemorial, and will also in the future not bring you further than that you erroneously pray and make entreaties, as you have up until now, to your gods and tin gods as well as to your human idols, from whom you will however never receive real help.
- 109) And there have been and still are many worldly-wise ones and academics since time immemorial whose wisdoms regarding spiritual and godly concerns have up to the present day not brought you human beings of Earth further, because their spirituality and godliness indeed does not correspond to the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, but is only based on inventions and fantasies which have been invented through the worldly-wise and academics.
- 110) The worldly-wise and academics as well as the spiritual leaders and false prophets have lied to you and alleged that all ways were directed to lead to the truth, irrespective of whether you are believers of a religion or sect or whether you belong to a philosophy or ideology, but this is complete nonsense, because the only way to the truth leads through the inner of you human beings yourselves, since it is only and exclusively there that you can find the effective truth as is pre-given through the Creation and its laws and recommendations; however, you cannot find the truth through lies and deception, nor through gods and tin gods, nor through religions, sects, philosophies and ideologies.
- 111) No way leads to the real truth of all truth, because the truth itself is the way and thus the way is also the culmination-point, namely the truth itself, and it is only out of this reason that the way of the truth is spoken of which in itself leads to the truth, and it is precisely in this that the vitality of the truth consists.
- 112) If you look at and consider something lifeless, then a way leads to it which you can follow because everything that has died makes no movement and remains in a particular place or location, in contrast to the way of the truth which is vital and in movement.
- 113) However, because the truth is something vital and in continuous movement, it is not bound to one place and neither is it bound to a restricted religious or other belief, as well as not to a gods- or tin gods-house.
- 114) Neither a spiritual leader, a religion, a holy man, an ideologue nor a priest, sect guru or a teacher can lead you to the continuously moving truth, because the truth is no material place such as a church, synagogue, chapel, mosque, lodge or temple, etc., because the effective, the truthly truth is solely in yourselves as well as in the



Creation and in its laws and recommendations.

- 115) And because the truth as way and culmination-point is vital and is continuously in motion in you yourselves, this means that the truth unstoppably extends and moves further in you, therefore you do not remain lying on a particular truth, rather it continues to expand more and more through your research, and as a result it grows in you and you become ever more knowing and wise, this in contrast to the religious belief which is a firmly defined and non-expandable, unprovable and refutable illusion which is poor both in terminology and argument, and is based on pretences of false facts.
- 116) Truly, you human beings of Earth, you do not live according to the love of the Creation, just as you do not create the true love in yourselves, and therefore you live your own life according to the pre-given of your own scheme. in which anxiety and fear of many things inhere, as however also anger and brutality, Gewaltsamkeit, violence and strife, hatred, jealousy, pathological craving for revenge, pathological craving for retaliation, coarseness, affliction, tribulation and despair, etc.
- 117) Already when you have recognised and understood this fact will you comprehend a tiny iota of the real truth in yourselves, but you can only recognise and understand this truth providing you know how to look at these things which belong to your life; and it is the true prophets who teach you human beings this mode of looking, through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life.
- 118) And truly, you can only look at the truth with the truth itself, not however with anxieties and fear, not with hopes and not with a religious belief, as well as not through a veil of lying words of false teachers and false prophets, and also not with philosophies and ideologies, because if you want to experience the real truth then you must not be dependent on anybody or anything, but only bestir yourselves according to your own will and interest in absolutely your own energy and power, and turn to the truth that you can only find in yourselves as well as in the creational laws and recommendations.
- 119) Therefore, consider that you shall only ever be yourselves and that there is no teacher, no leader, no guru, no master, no prophet and also no other authority through which you might find the truth, because only you can do this all alone in yourselves, because truly, in this case there is only you all alone who must work in yourselves and find the truth.
- 120) Even the true prophets cannot give you the truth or show you a way to the truth, because for yourselves you alone are capable of fathoming out the truth in yourselves and also finding it and living according to it, because: none of you can change another, because the one who must change can only do this from out of himself or herself and on his or her own.
- 121) And if you recognise this truth then you shall not fall into despair because of it, since nevertheless you stand in a relationship to your fellow human beings and to the world, therefore there is no reason for you to let either bitterness or cynicism grow in you.
- 122) Nevertheless, however, the truth demands that you look the facts in the eye, namely that you are yourselves responsible for all and everything with regard to the thoughts and feelings that you harbour, the actions that you commit and the deeds that you do.
- 123) Only you are responsible for the world and for yourselves, for everything that you think up and do, and you must become conscious of this in order to make disappear your self-pity through which you criticise your fellow human beings, insulting them, reproaching them, nagging them and tormenting them, because through that you believe to be covering up your self-pity.
- 124) Human beings of Earth, you must be yourselves in every wise and therefore you yourselves must also determine over yourselves, so also over your thoughts, feelings, actions and your efforts, so that you may not be dependent on anybody and be the true might over yourselves, free from gods and tin gods and their servants who subjugate, enslave and exploit you.
- 125) And it is truly the truth that you can, without any outward influence, without authorities and without coercion, as well as without anxiety or fear of punishment, build up in the core of your inner nature a new individuality, a new speciality with a renewal and positive expansion of your character and your personality, providing you consciously revolutionise your old characteristics and bring forth a psychological developmental change out of your own power.
- 126) And if you bring forth the developmental change in yourselves then you will no longer be ones who have got very badly out of the control of the good human nature, no longer full of anxiety, brutality, jealousy and fear, neither full of greed, vice and hatred of all kinds, neither full of violence, pathological craving for war, pathological craving for revenge, pathological craving for retaliation, crimes and quarrelsomeness, nor full of uncalmness, envy and desires, etc.
- 127) Truly, all these Ausartungen are not pre-given through the creational laws and recommendations, therefore they are also not expression-forms of your nature, but rather an evil machination of yourselves, through which you have also built up your worldwide rotten society in which you inevitably have to live and in which your daily existence takes place; and indeed for as long as you fail to turn to the real truth and therefore fail to



follow extensively the laws and recommendations of creational form; because everything will only change to the better if you bind yourselves as individuals and as society with the real truth and therefore with the nature and thus also with the creational laws and recommendations.

- 128) Understand, human beings of Earth, that the «Teaching of the Prophets», the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, is no ideology and no philosophy, neither is it a religious construction of confusing terms and irrational ideas; therefore, however, the teaching does not require a belief nor any praying and entreaties to gods and tin gods or to human beings who raise themselves up to tin gods.
- 129) Ideologies, philosophies and religions are belief-conditioned theories which, as exceedingly foolish guidances into the unreal, have nothing to do with the effective truth and with the effects of the creational laws and recommendations.
- 130) What is important in your life is, without doubt, not false religions, ideologies and philosophies, but rather that you consciously observe and perceive everything round and about you, and indeed everything that arises day-in and day-out and actually in yourselves, everything negative and positive, everything agreeable and disagreeable, as well as everything that happens to your fellow human beings and throughout the entire world.
- 131) And if you follow this guidance and you observe everything precisely and actually perceive everything and examine what goes on within you and outside you, then you can also understand it rationally and intellectually.
- 132) Rationality and intellect, however, do not fully encompass everything that your existence presents to you, rather they are only small parts of the whole, and you must put these together in order to finally have a oneness, a whole.
- 133) All things, therefore, which you comprehend are only small parts of the life, and indeed irrespective of how discerningly, venerably and traditionally these things of life may be put together as individual values or unvalues; it is you yourselves, however, who must put everything together into a whole, because it is only through this that you can reach the highest level of your understanding and your evolution, if you concern yourselves with the whole.
- 134) It is only when you recognise what is going on in yourselves as well as in your fellow human beings and in the entire world in detail that you can start to understand that the inner and outer process is fundamentally an equal one.
- 135) The inner and outer process of development represents an all-embracing movement, where the movement of your inner is reflected in the outer, and the outer is reflected in your inner.
- 136) And truly, you human beings of Earth, you only need to consciously make yourselves capable of looking at everything just as amply and consciously and perceiving it just as consciously, because that and how you look is the fundamental necessity to which you must give your attention.
- 137) Consider, if you know how you have to look at the things of the life and perceive them, then everything will become entirely clear and precise for you, and you will recognise that all that is required in order to look at and to perceive is merely your own motivation and merely your own will as well as your own initiative, however no ideology, no religion and no philosophy, as well as no teacher, priest, no gods and tin gods and of course no human idols and neither false nor true prophets, because only you alone through yourselves can determine over yourselves and over what you want to do or not do.
- 138) Truly, no one can say to you how you need to look and to perceive, therefore the true prophets do not say to you either how you shall look and perceive, but only that you shall look and perceive, because you are, as an individuum, as a human being, each of your own individuality, through which you alone can determine how, when and where you want to look at something and also how you want to perceive it.
- 139) And if you strive to look at and perceive all things as they are in reality, and indeed both in yourselves and also in the world around you, amongst your fellow human beings and throughout the entire world, then you can really see what corresponds to the reality and therefore also to the truth; but truly, this alone is not enough for you to be able to change yourselves effortlessly and spontaneously in your inner nature, in your individuality – and that is the actual problem, because it is also necessary for a complete change to take place in your inner nature.
- 140) Many amongst you do not wish to change themselves in their inner nature, and a change of the inner nature is particularly unattractive to those amongst you who are well provided for and secure to a certain extent in economic and social respects, and therefore who only have minor problems if indeed any at all; but there are also those amongst you who are captured by and dependent on your religion and who hold fast to your religious, ideological or philosophical imaginations, or who are ready simply to accept all things of the existence and your own self, and to live with them just as they happen to be or happen to impinge upon you in any quite distinct or altered kind and wise whatsoever.
- 141) However, all this is wrong and it is a life-attitude that does not correspond with the truth and reality, and



indeed not with the guidelines of the creational laws and recommendations either, which are not difficult to recognise and to fulfil, indeed even if they do appear to be too heavy and too power-destroying for you to recognise and to fulfil, because you are too weak towards yourselves and, what is more too cowardly to separate yourselves from the false of your individuality which gives you so much apparent joy and apparent wellbeing if you live according to your Ausartungen, your vices and pathological cravings, your hatred, your unfreedom, disharmony and the unpeace as well as your pathological craving for revenge and all other terrible things.

- 142) In all this doing and acting with regard to your Ausartungen, you human beings of Earth are blocked off towards the truth, because of which you also do not search for the truth and also cannot fathom it out, therefore it is pointless and nonsensical for you to complain about all the Ausartungen of the society, which are fundamentally given in yourselves and bring forth malicious effects which lead to further misforming of your inner nature, as a result of which you sink in yourselves and in the society ever more deeply into a negation of the truth and into new Ausartungen time and time again.
- 143) Truly, many amongst you create illusions for themselves and assume that they must undertake a fundamental developmental change in their inner nature, however with the aspect that they need to be helped with bringing about the developmental change and that they must be shown the way thereto; but truthly, such a way cannot be shown, because each process in yourselves for the developmental change of your own inner nature, i.e. of the individuality and attitudes, etc., is purely individual or personal and can only be fulfilled by those human beings amongst you who work on it themselves.
- 144) And those of you who search for help in order to be shown a way in the form of a method or a system for the developmental change of your own inner nature, those are not really seriously working on an effective developmental change, because everything is merely directed towards having others do everything in order to bring about the apparently desired developmental change, whereas there is no fundamental interest in a developmental change of the inner nature, but only an interest in having others use a method or a system which is intended to lead to the apparently wished for developmental change of your own individuality with only minor help from yourselves.
- 145) But truly, each way, each method or each system for the developmental change of the inner nature is purely individual, i.e. personal and cannot be transferred to another by you, therefore it would be exceedingly foolish to name a way, a method or a system; if this however were to be done, then you would only be following an imitation, i.e. a pattern, and thereby taking over the purely individual way, i.e. the method or the system of another and copying the entire thing into yourselves, through which you would unavoidably get yourselves into difficulties and hardships that are based in the thoughts, feelings, consciousness and psyche, namely through an adapting to an external individuality and through an approval of the same, which without doubt brings forth confusion in your own mental-block and leads to chaos in the psyche and consciousness.
- 146) This means, if you do such a thing, that you set up the authority of one of your fellow human beings in yourselves, through which enormous conflicts are brought forth between yourselves and the external authority, as a result of which you believe that you are obliged to do this or that which is told and dictated to you, although you are incapable of actually doing it, because you cannot exchange your inner nature with that of one of your fellow human beings, but must be yourselves and free in yourselves in every wise, therefore two inner natures cannot be existent in you either.
- 147) You human beings of Earth, you are individual natures who have your own thoughts and feelings and well as your own and therefore individual intentions and inclinations, hardships and needs as well as wishes which can in no kind and wise be integrated in an external method or an external system which you believe you must follow.
- 148) In all respects, an external authority stands in opposition to your own person and dignity, therefore the recognition of an external authority in yourselves is a contradiction to your own inner freedom and cannot be tolerated under any circumstances.
- 149) If you tolerate it nevertheless, then you are no longer yourselves, but rather you lead an existence of doubtfulness and therefore a life between the external method, i.e. the external system, i.e. an external ideology and the effective reality of your true life.
- 150) If you allow to let yourselves in for an attempt in such a wise that brings your own inner nature into consonance with the external authority, i.e. the external ideology, then you demolish your own self-consciousness and suppress your entirely own individuality.
- 151) The actual truth of your self is not anchored in the external authority, i.e. ideology, but solely and alone in you yourselves, and indeed in that which you effectively are.
- 152) Therefore, you shall consider that, if you fathom out yourselves, you do not direct yourselves according to others, not according to an external authority, i.e. not according to an external ideology, but only according to



yourselves and according to what you truthfully are and in all honesty want to be and also strive to be; however, if you do not follow this guidance then you will remain during the time of your life as human beings who live from the authority of others and are subserviently dependent on them in debasing submissiveness.

- 153) If you wish to change yourselves, human beings of Earth, and if in doing so you demand that you shall be told how you shall do this, then it may very well appear upright that you really want to do it, but that does not correspond to the truth, because truthfully you are being dishonest and do not want it, since you are calling for an external authority which is supposed to help you to achieve a new inner regulation of your inner nature, therefore you are hoping to attain a new individuality through it and through its method, i.e. its system, but this is truly not possible because only you yourselves can change yourselves fundamentally through your own motivation, initiative and power, therefore you must also go your own way.
- 154) An external authority is never able to change your inner nature, your individuality and create a new inner regulation in yourselves, but truly only yourselves; if, however, an external attempt is made nevertheless to impose a new regulation of your inner nature, i.e. your individuality, then an enormous chaos will inevitably arise in you, through which you are cast into dependency and confusion.
- 155) This fact, you human beings of Earth, is something to which you must respond with intellect and rationality, and recognise it as effective truth, so that you may understand that for your consciousness and for your inner nature no other authority than your own comes into consideration.
- 156) If you read and follow a book or other scripts, if you listen to a teacher, to your friends, parents, brothers and sisters, acquaintances, to the other partner in your partnership – whether man or woman – or to an authority or to the society, etc. then this is already an outward and external authority by which you will be captured and made dependent if you do not autonomously think through in yourselves what you have read and heard and if you cannot in yourselves develop it into a valuable factor of the truth that is independent from the outside; but if you do not do this then you will continue to live only according to a pattern and a pre-given formula, as you have done since time immemorial, through enslaving yourselves to an external authority and ideology.
- 157) But if you really want to change yourselves in your consciousness and in your inner nature, and therefore also acquire a new and sound individuality for yourselves thereby, then you must ask yourselves how you can change to the good and better and how you can create in yourselves a new authority that is your own, by means of which you then put an end for all time to any external as well as your own, old authority, so that you are then only yourselves.
- 158) In order to achieve this, however, you must change yourselves down to the roots of your inner nature and existence, as well as in your consciousness which you must direct in its function into the right lines of right thoughts, out of which right and good feelings arise accordingly, through which you not only form your own psyche but also influence your inner nature towards a new individuality in a good wise.
- 159) And if you act in this wise, then you will no longer be dependent on any external tradition through which an enormous dependency, indolence and subservience is imposed upon you, which has ruled you since time immemorial.
- 160) Therefore, always consider that you can never expect any help whatsoever from outside with regard to your inner developmental change, but that you can in every wise only help yourselves; what can be given to you from the outside through external authorities is no more and no less than a direction or teaching of what you actually have to do, that you simply must change yourselves to the better; however, the way, the method or the system is something that you must find in yourselves, because this is a purely individual and therefore personal concern, since truly each human being is an individual of their own which has their own individual ways, methods and systems in order to deal with both themselves and with the world around.
- 161) Therefore there is no god, no tin god, no teacher, no dogma, no method and no system, no coercion, no cleric, no false or true prophet and also no other human being or other external influence through which you could be shown an individual way to an inner developmental change in your inner nature and consciousness, because this individuality is only given in yourselves.
- 162) If you only want, you can reject any external authority and only accept your own and therefore truly only be yourselves, through which it arises that you no longer let yourselves be enmeshed in ideologies, philosophies and religions and also that you no longer go in fear of gods, tin gods or demons nor any of your fellow human beings, because if you finally recognise your own value, then you will not let yourselves be led any longer either through subservience, i.e. through submissiveness or treated as a second-class human being and even bullied, but rather you place yourselves in your value on the same level with your fellow human beings, without however raising yourselves up over them.
- 163) And when you are finally yourselves, then it will happen that you repudiate everything false that you as human beings have dragged around with yourselves for many generations, and truly when this happens then an ever greater energy will grow in you, out of which more and more power will unfold through which you will come to ever more, greater and more extensive life-capability as well as to greater vital courage which has inherent



in itself very much more intensity, drive and vitality than can be entirely lived out, therefore large reserves are always available which can no longer run out.

- 164) And once you have achieved this and brought it to ample effect in yourselves, then you have liberated yourselves from the heaviest burden of your life and have cast off from yourselves everything connected with external authorities as well as the heavy weight of your own old and unworthy authority which is now replaced through a new, powerful and energy-rich one.
- 165) Truly, the very realisation of a great developmental change to the good and better is already in you if you become conscious that you have cast off everything that is old, valueless and unsuitable, and through that have won very much more energy and power, by means of which there is no longer any fear in you whatsoever of committing errors, which you inevitably must commit, since it is only out of these that you can learn.
- 166) The very fact alone that you no longer have any fear of acting rightly or wrongly creates a lot of energy and power in you, and this alone already represents a developmental change in you.
- 167) Truly, you human beings of Earth, you require a huge amount of energy and power in order to lead your lives, but you waste a very great part of this power and energy through your anxieties and through your fear, however if you turn to the real truth and through this dissipate your anxieties and fear as well as all the terrible things in yourselves consciously through intellect and rationality, then you will create new energy and power through this which independently brings forth a radical inner upheaval and actual developmental change.
- 168) However, always be conscious that you are left up to yourselves in all these things and endeavours of the inner developmental change, because if you are serious about your inner developmental change as well as all the things that are connected with it, then truly in this process of the serious inner developmental change the status is given that you are actually alone with yourselves as human beings.
- 169) In the process of your inner developmental change you cannot expect help from any god or tin god or from any human being or from anything else, because apart from yourselves there is nothing that could carry out your inner change.
- 170) If, however, you consciously carry out your inner developmental change through your energy and power, then you will no longer expect help from outside, from anyone, from any god, tin god, angel, saint or demon or from the deceased, because in the conscious developmental change that you bring about in yourselves you are already free in yourselves and are able to see what your developmental change brings you in terms of that which is good, better and positive.
- 171) And consider, when you are free in yourselves that there is also great energy and power in you besides the fact that nothing else can be done wrong with regard to the developmental change of the inner nature; and once there is freedom in you then this has nothing to do with a defence, but rather with you being able to act rightly and freely henceforth according to your own discretion, precisely because you are free in yourselves and act out of the centre of your changed inner nature; and therefore you no longer have any anxiety and fear, but are henceforth capable of creating true love in yourselves and also living it out in yourselves to your fellow human beings, because when you have true love in you then you can do in the right and the good what you want.
- 172) And if you have created true love in yourselves, then out of this the process arises that you get to know yourselves and that you go in self-cognition in yourselves, which however in turn only happens through yourselves, but not through psychologists or psychiatrists and not either through any other analysts, through philosophers or those who arrogantly assume that they can be of assistance to you in the self-cognition, although they are not capable of this; therefore you truthly do not learn anything through them and you cannot learn anything about your self, but basically only about the one who wants to be helpful to you in the self-cognition.
- 173) Truly, what your fellow human beings such as psychologists and philosophers, etc. can teach you is not what you are in yourselves, in your inner nature, i.e. in your individuality, rather they can only teach you your characteristics, your peculiarities that proceed out of your inner nature, but not however the individuality, the specialness and uniqueness which go very far beyond the characteristics and are connected to the innermost part of the inner nature, which is of pure spiritual nature and belongs to the realm of the spirit-form in which the true love and the life are guided from out of the creational laws and recommendations.
- 174) Therefore, self-cognition is not the same as self-cognition, and individuality is not the same as individuality, because truthly both things must be separated in themselves, indeed on the one side in the material realm which is outwardly expressed in you human beings and that realm which only acts in the inner, so therefore it is necessary to speak of a material and outwardly directed self-cognition and individuality, and on the other side of an inner one which really only acts through the power of the spirit-form in the inner of the nature and must be laboriously fathomed out in order to let it have an effect in the exterior, material self-cognition and individuality, fragment by fragment, gradually over the course of the life, as a result of which your being human



in the real and true sense evolves over time.

- 175) It is only through inner self-cognition, which must be fathomed in the core of your inner nature, that you experience and learn what you actually are in the inner of your own self, which is connected with the spirit-realm, whereas that which is around the core corresponds to that part of the inner nature which is lived as individuality towards the outside and reflects the material character and the personality, out of which the behaviour and the actions and effort are also determined.
- 176) In the entire process, you must also look at and consider and bring forth a revolution of the consciousness, its thoughts as well as their feelings and the thereout resulting psyche-structure which may no longer be dependent on an external authority; however, this process involves great difficulties because what is important in the revolutionising of the consciousness, thoughts, feelings and the psyche, i.e. the entire mental-block is repudiating your own inner and demolished authority in which are anchored all your unimportant perceptions, cognitions, cognisances, your pseudo-knowledge, your practical experiences and the living of those experiences as well as all your views, ideas and ideals; truly, during your lifetime, you had things, happenings and experiences that have taught you something, but you have raised up all that which you have learned to a new authority in you by which you are ruled and which has just as great a destructive effect in you as an authority which is already thousands of years old.
- 177) Truly, if you want to understand yourselves, both in your innermost, spiritual individuality and in your outward, material individuality, then you require neither the authority that you have built up in yourselves during your lifetime nor that which is thousands of years old, because you are something vital which is in continuous movement and knows no rest; therefore you must not look at yourselves and attempt to fathom yourselves with the dead authority of your up-till-now life, rather you must look at yourselves with the newly created authority, because only through this is it possible for you really to understand everything that lies in the movement and the beauty of the whole.
- 178) You human beings of Earth, you must be free from any external authority and create your own free and good authority in yourselves, therefore you must also be free from your own old and inadequate authority which you have confusingly and erroneously built up in yourselves during your life; you have to make yourselves free and loosen yourselves from everything that was in your past with regard to your false individuality, because only in this wise do you manage that your mental-block, your consciousness, your thoughts and feelings as well as your psyche are full of energy and power at all times, are in youthfulness and nevertheless shining in wisdom as well as innocent and full of interest; truly, it is only in this status that you can be really attentive and heedful and you can really perceive, observe and recognise everything, and learn thereout.
- 179) Consider that you human beings of Earth primarily require a conscious and comprehensive consciousness so that you are capable of directly being aware of your inner and innermost life-process and can direct it in such a wise that you do not need to correct it continuously, so that you make progress and the whole is what it shall be, but not what it shall not be.
- 180) If you constantly have to correct your life-process, then you are imposing a censor which is nothing other than again a new authority which once again dictates new things to you which you follow and through which you are again and again wrongly guided.
- 181) If you really want to learn then you must start a long journey in yourselves through your entire nature, through its shell and inner and through its core, and also through your entire mental-block and consciousness-block, in which case the consciousness, thoughts and feelings are of just as much importance as are the character and personality; and for this journey you must be unweighted, without opinions and prejudices, as well as unburdened through thoughts and feelings and all the rubbish which has built up in you since time immemorial and has burdened you; forget everything that you yourselves have assumed and thought to know about yourselves, and attempt to recognise yourselves in the wise as if you had never seen yourselves before and never heard anything about yourselves previously, so that you approach yourselves in a totally neutral wise and fathom out what and who you truthly are.



Chapter 24

- 1) Human beings of Earth, when you listen to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life which is proclaimed to you in the «Goblet of the Truth» as the «Teaching of the Prophets» then your unknowledge about the effective truth falls and the truthly knowledge about the Creation and its all-embracing laws and recommendations becomes the term of the truth in you which brings you liberation from



all your hardship and from your misery, from all the unpeace, the wars, the disharmony, the hatred, the unfreedom and from all other terrible things through which you are enslaved.

- 2) But this only applies to those amongst you who look seriously for the truth in and outside yourselves by willingly enabling yourselves to do this and objectively analysing the objectiveness of the real truth.
- 3) If, however, you are religious, ideological or philosophical fanatics or reckless enthusiasts and are unable to liberate yourselves from this, then, during the course of your life, you will remain far from the truth which is given, on the one hand, in the creational laws and recommendations, whilst, on the other hand, it is formed in such a wise that you can only find it in yourselves by you fathoming it out in yourselves.
- 4) However, all those of you who are religious, ideological, philosophical fanatics or reckless enthusiasts, you live far from the truthly truth of the Creation-given, as a result of which you are damaging to the truth and deceive your fellow human beings to the untruth.
- 5) You, however, who have fallen prey to the untruth and the unknowledge, you are malicious ones and unobjective ones against the truth, however you shall find your assessment in the words of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life itself.
- 6) The 'Goblet of the Truth' touches only those amongst you as a message who still bear a spark of truth in yourselves as well as the longing to know the actual truth of the life and to be a true, real human being; but, you others who have committed and bound yourselves to the religion and the belief in a god, in a tin god, demons, human beings or an ideology or philosophy and are their captives and slaves, you, as ever in the past, turn away from the 'Teaching of the Prophets' because you are undiscerning and unteachable, and continue to vegetate away in your misery and in your hardship and want to have sorrow as your companion.
- 7) You, however, who are searching for the truth of all truth, the 'Goblet of the Truth' will be a light for you and a rod upon which you can support yourselves, and you will be brought directly out of your inner chaos and out of your confusion through the teaching, so that you may finally live truthly.
- 8) The 'Goblet of the Truth' does not bring you a new religion based on a god, tin god, demon, on a human being or devil, but rather the true 'Teaching of the Prophets' is for you a torch in your darkness of the unknowledge and untruth so that you find the right way in the life and also take the way of the truth in yourselves which is itself the truth and the culmination point.
- 9) And if you take the way of the truth in yourselves, then you enter into the truth itself which has the way inherent in itself, by means of which you lead yourselves to your longed-for heights.
- 10) Always consider, human beings of Earth, that it is only when you move yourselves that you can come forwards in terms of consciousness, however if you attempt to help yourselves with external means then you let external authorities penetrate into you, as a result of which you are no longer yourselves and you totter forwards as if on crutches and no longer know how to use your own limbs.
- 11) If, however, you move yourselves and solely in your consciousness and you do not use ready-made views of external means of help and you do not make use of such means either, then you are free and you can have free rein to do rightfully and to take the way of the truth.
- 12) Therefore, move yourselves in yourselves and acquire all the capabilities that you need for the learning and for the living.
- 13) Listen to the call of the truth in yourselves and do not await the effort of the fathoming out of the truth to be taken away from you from outside, because if you await it then you are slumbering senselessly away and you will not find the requisites in yourselves which you must use for the rise up to the truthly truth.
- 14) If you, however, use the help that is given to you through the creational laws and recommendations according to your own will, then you will overcome all hindrances which misguidingly want to cross your way, the way that you have to take in yourselves when fathoming out the truth.
- 15) Human beings of Earth, finally awake out of your lethargy and reach the truthly knowledge of the creational truth through your conscious endeavours.
- 16) Only if you find the real truth in yourselves and you turn to the laws and recommendations of the Creation and also follow them, will you find the way out of your misery, out of your hardship and out of all your terrible things into the reality of the truthly life.
- 17) Know that the right knowledge is only given in the real truth, and this becomes the all-embracing term of the wisdom.
- 18) And consider that alone the knowledge and the actual term about the truth could solve all your problems which have burdened you for thousands of years and threaten to lead you into the ultimate catastrophe.
- 19) However, be certain that finding the truthly truth of all truth in yourselves means that you must examine, fathom and recognise everything down to the last detail, ruthless against all untruth and all unknowledge, so that you stand in true vitality in the light of the truth of the all-embracing Creation.



Chapter 25

- 1) You whole humankind of Earth, you are since time immemorial searching for the truth, but in doing so you do not know what you are actually searching for so busily, because you do not know the real truth.
- 2) Your search for the truth goes through the world like a huge roaring and echoes on all ends of the earth, but you find not that which you are really searching for, as over and over again you become entangled in some religious, ideological or philosophical belief or other and pray to a god, tin god or human being, through which you move further and further away from the truth that exists only in the Creation and in its laws and recommendations and that you must fathom and recognise in yourselves, if you strive towards this uprightly in a neutral wise and thereby without any connection to a belief, god, tin god or human being.
- 3) You whole humankind of Earth, you are being guided into the unreal through false prophets and teachers with false teachings, to one god or to several, to tin gods and to human beings that you shall worship and beseech.
- 4) And you are flooded with a gigantic torrent of religious, esoteric, philosophical, ideological and sectarian books and writings, and also with radio and television programmes, and with websites in the internet, as well as with proselytisations of every other kind, to make you captured believers of a religion, sect, ideology or philosophy or to bind you yet more strictly to them, that you become not secessionists and that you turn not to the truthly truth of all truth.
- 5) Amongst all peoples, the schooled academics dig into old books and writings of all kinds, try to research them and ruminate thereon until their consciousness is exhausted and confused.
- 6) And there appear amongst your entire humankind of Earth ever more false prophets and teachers with false teachings, who lead you further into the unreal and far from the truth, as has happened since time immemorial; they call themselves prophets, leaders, masters and sublime ones, and also substitutes and representatives of a god or tin god, and drive you with false warnings, promises, hopes and predictions into anxiety and dread; and truly, they try everything to make you subservient to their belief, in which case a considerable number of them not only guide you into the unreal but also exploit and abuse you in terms of your goods and chattels, your riches, and more than a few of you also sexually.
- 7) And the new time brings with it that you humankind of Earth let yourselves be deceived by all sides of the false prophets and false teachings by all the irresponsible ones that attack you like a swarm of poisonous insects and suddenly, in the fever of their delusion for wellbeing, want to bring over you a new light of the belief and godly redemption.
- 8) As never before in all of time, new sects of all kinds are springing up like poisonous mushrooms out of your society and are rummaging through your mental-block, your consciousness and your thoughts and feelings as well as your psyche with their belief of wellbeing, and this truly in a kind and wise that is neither refreshing nor quickening, but that on the contrary causes terribleness in you, sears you through the fire of the deluded belief and suckles and takes from your last energy and power, and also from your weak rationality and your inadequate intellect that still have remained to you in your demolished gloominess of your present life, in a present in which through your irrationality and selfishness you strive to destroy the world, its nature as well as the life through your rampant overpopulation which out of sheer egoism you do not want to get under control.
- 9) Stirring in you in a religious-belief-based whispering and murmuring wise, is the hope of a growing expectation that help is approaching that will release you from all terrible things, which is why you are uncalm and full of expectation in your longing; you however let yourselves be talked into this false hope and this false expectation through false prophets, false teachers, gurus, masters, sublime ones and others that exploit you and guide you into the unreal, so that you become fanatical and incapable of recognising and realising even one iota of the real truth; so you vegetate away in irrational belief in godheads, tin gods, demons and human beings who raise themselves up above you religiously, ideologically or philosophically in order to abuse you in many wises and even to drive you to commit suicide en masse.
- 10) You whole humankind of Earth, it undulates and surges in you through your religious, sectarian, ideological and philosophical belief-forms, and truly there lies upon you in a gloomily brooding wise a stupefaction of fanatic belief and just as fanatic devotion and submissiveness, that you do everything, even murder human lives, to fight for your belief.
- 11) The whole scenario of your belief of any kind is pregnant from terribleness, out of which only evil and Ausartung can spring forth and be born.
- 12) Truly, you whole humankind of Earth, you live in a belief-based confusion filled with pusillanimousness and



ruin; and if you do not finally tear up powerfully the dark coating around your belief, which enwraps also you yourselves, then you will have a very evil future.

- 13) The dark coating around your belief is like a sticky and stringy, dirty and swampy mass that absorbs and chokes every free thought of light that comes to you before it can even begin to act to the smallest degree and become strong.
- 14) The swampy mass of your belief in gods, tin gods, demons as well as in angels and saints and in a devil chokes the truth in you and brings forth a weird silence there, because you have sunk into a belief-swamp and not even one healthy thought to the truth-finding can grow up in you, because an impulse for this is already nipped in the bud and decays and destroys everything before even one iota of a recognition of the truth can come about.
- 15) You however who are blatantly searching for the light of the real truth, all energy and power is no use to you if you do not get rid of and drain the swamp of the unknowledge and the untruth in yourselves, and if you think that through shouting and big words you will find the true light of the truth; your loud shouts and big words become fainter and fainter and go unheard as if in a desolate wasteland amongst all impostors, gurus, masters, godly ones, sublime ones, false prophets and worshippers and servants of the gods, tin gods, demons, angels, saints and of the evil, which you call the devil, as all of these whom you believe help you are leading you away from the real truth and into the unreal.
- 16) Truly, they do not feed you with the bread of the truth of all truth, with the creational laws and recommendations and with all the love, knowledge and wisdom contained therein, but rather they offer you stones of the unknowledge and the untruth as nourishment, so that you break your teeth thereon and lead a painful life.
- 17) All of them, those who deceive you to the untruth and to the unknowledge, they offer you countless books, writings and teachings that are full of falsehood and guidance into the unreal and that stupefy and tire out your human consciousness instead of it beginning to live.
- 18) And if you consider this truth, by finding it in yourselves, recognising it and working it out, then you will find in yourselves the proof of the unfruitfulness of all the false and irrational teachings that are ingratiatingly presented to you through all those irresponsible ones who raise themselves up above you as masters, gurus, teachers, sublime ones, godly ones, priests, representatives of gods and substitutes of gods or as self-raised glorifications and let themselves be adored and worshipped by you.
- 19) Consider that such ones ingratiating themselves with you are deceivers and slanderers of the truth of the Creation itself as well as of its laws and recommendations, and through their untruths, through their unknowledge and through their senselessnesses they tire out your consciousness, but this is truly never of rightness.
- 20) It is not cheating on the truth that stills the hunger of your consciousness for knowledge and wisdom, but rather the bread of the truth, as the truth alone refreshes and quickens you, and the light of the truth warms you and gives you life.
- 21) It is understandable if many of you human beings of Earth are almost faint-hearted when you see and experience how abominably the real truth is treated and that through your religions, ideologies and philosophies, as well as through the esoterism, the sectarianism and the so-called spiritual science walls are built up around the truth so that it is not open to you and you stumble in truth-unknowing confusion.
- 22) And everything that they offer you in terms of all the irrational, confusing, wrong and far-from-the-truth teachings, you cannot really understand, because they are written in strange expressions and words as well as in academic sentences, with which you give yourselves airs and boast if you can name them, but in reality you understand them every bit as little as those who write, teach and spread the whole drivel of the wrong teachings.
- 23) The true spiritual science consists however in the «teaching of the spirit», i.e. in the «spiritual teaching», and this is not complicated and is to be understood and comprehended by each of you human beings – provided of course that you bear intellect and rationality and are not captured in a confused belief.
- 24) You speak always of your imaginary god or tin gods, of your angels and saints as well as of your gurus, masters, sublime ones and self-appointed divinities etc., and assume that universities shall be established for these senselessnesses – if indeed in certain cases you have not already done so –, in order to be able to obtain the ability in yourselves to recognise and to comprehend the term god, tin god, angel or saint etc.; but truly, your pathological craving concerning this is merely connected with an irrational and confusing belief, as it is also to a great extent in your wrong ambition that is rooted in your wanting to shine before your fellow human beings and to be heard by your god or tin god, angel or saints, and to appear great before them.
- 25) And truly, you believers in a godhead, in a tin god or a demon, in angels and saints, in gurus, masters, sublime ones, emissaries of gods and self-appointed gods or representatives of gods, you are tumbling like drunkards through your life and from one belief-delusion to another, and in doing so you are one-sided, unfree and unsure



in yourselves, because you have been led astray from the simple way of the truth, on the one hand through the blame of all those who deceive you to the untruth and to belief, and on the other hand through your own guilt, because you only want to think about a belief rather than turn consciously to the truth, because you eschew the bearing of the responsibility that is connected with the real truth of all truth.

- 26) But cease to be faint-hearted ones through your belief, which leads you ever further from the creational truth and lets you find neither the true love and harmony nor the peace and freedom in yourselves and in your whole humankind.
- 27) Learn to be serious searchers for the truth that you can find only in the creational laws and recommendations as well as in yourselves on the way of the truth, which is itself the truth and the culmination-point; this way of the truth as truth itself, lies in each of you, you humankind of Earth.
- 28) But truly, be conscious that the way of the truth in you, which itself is the truth and the culmination-point, cannot be taken through academic learning and not through a religious, sectarian, ideological or philosophical belief.
- 29) Choose solely and exclusively the way of the truth in you, the way that is in itself the way, truth and culmination-point, because only the real truth is the great example on the true way of the light.
- 30) The truth itself is pure and simple, without cult-activities and rites, as well as without beseeching prayers to a god or tin god or human being, and by the truth you do not have to fight against erroneous assumptions and falsehoods, consequently you do not have to tread the way of the truth arduously through belief-rules and belief-dogmas as well as through cult-activities, rites, beseeching prayers and through submissiveness, etc.; if however you are taught otherwise through false teachers and false prophets etc., then these teachings are the greatest enemies of you human beings, because they are bare cheatings, lies and calumnies against the effective truth.
- 31) So back away from all the false teachings and false prophets and also from all the other preachers of falsehoods and teachers of the irrational truth-teachings who characterlessly misuse everything venerable in you and guide you far from all truth into the unreal, through which you fall into lovelessness, affliction and misery in yourselves, so also into hatred, unpeace, disharmony, unfreedom and the pathological craving for revenge, which leads to the fact that through wars, revolts and through torture and the death penalty you bring many deaths and destructions over your whole humankind.
- 32) Truly, you humankind of Earth, you are fully seized by all the evil, which you however do not want to be true and vehemently deny, because you yourselves are not even conscious of this fact, because you are captured in you by the irrational teachings of the false prophets and teachers, which as the work of human brains are patchworks of the evil and the untruth and remain such a patchwork, however deeply your belief therein may be anchored.
- 33) Consider that your belief in a godhead or in a tin god, in angels and saints, gurus, masters, sublime ones or representatives of gods etc. will never lead to the creational truth, to the Creation itself and its laws and recommendations, which are also given in the nature, in all life and in all existence.
- 34) You shall recognise the truthly truth in yourselves, as well as in the recommendations and the laws of the Creation, so you create knowledge thereout in yourselves and turn this knowledge into wisdom, since only through real knowledge and through its essence, the wisdom, can you fully understand the effective truth of all truth.
- 35) Through your truth-unknowledge, however, the comprehension-capability of your consciousness is narrowly restricted, because this is firmly bound to space and time, so it is already no longer capable of really realising the eternity and the endless assigned to the Creation, even if the terms can be expressed mathematically.
- 36) Truly, you humankind of Earth, your consciousness with its intellect and its rationality stands before the uncomprehensible energy and power of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, which streams through everything existing, whereas the energy and power of the Creation lives and works from out of itself.
- 37) And you human beings receive the energy and power of the Creation and its laws and recommendations at every moment of your lives as implicitness, without you making even a tiny iota of thoughts about it; and were you to do so, then despite your intellect you could still not realise what the creational energy and power in reality are.
- 38) Your consciousness and your thereout resulting rationality and your intellect offer only an inadequate activity, wherethrough naturally your consciousness-works are also subject to a restriction, which is the rationality, the intellect as well as the thoughts and feelings; and out of this very reason alone, your learning, you humankind of Earth, with regard to the effective recognition of the real truth of all truth, remains left to your intellect and your rationality alone, through which you must perceive and recognise the truth and take it into cognisance in order to work it out as knowledge, experience it and then live it, out of which only then the essence evolves, the wisdom, which is relatively complete truth; relative, because the real truth of all truth always and endlessly



leads to new perceptions, cognitions and cognisances, to expanded knowledge and the experience thereof, and to the living of what is experienced, and then to flow again into the essence, i.e. into the wisdom, and thus into the effective relative truth, which is again the cause for new things, i.e. new effects to continuously come forth out of it as wisdom, i.e. truth.

- 39) Your learning is – due to your school-knowledge and your hanging on to religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies, false teachings and teachers as well as false prophets and belief-forms – directed towards thinking about details, but not the whole of a thing, despite the fact that you as human beings all together carry that uncomprehensible whole in yourselves, through which you are fully capable of reaching the highest and most noble in yourselves through the learning of the real creational truth, which is possible for you through your intellect and through your rationality; rather than this, however, you show contempt for this creational gift, and instead of the truth, you follow your belief in a god or tin god, in angels, saints and demons, in a devil or in human beings who raise themselves above you and whom you idolise and worship.
- 40) Free yourselves from all this, for this is only an evil torture practised upon you not only by the false teachings and teachers and by the false prophets but also through you yourselves, because you are submissively dependent on the irrational teachings.
- 41) Consider that there are no great masters, gurus, sublime ones, emissaries of gods and the like, as well as no fantasised god, tin god or devil etc. who can command you against your own will, that you must follow the nonsense of their irrational teachings, because to you alone is given the power, the intellect, the rationality and the decisional Gewalt to determine over yourselves, as well as over what you want to do or not do, and whether you want to fall prey to a belief or to turn to the effective truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 42) If you humankind of Earth are yourselves and do not let yourselves be steered through religions, sects, ideologies, philosophies and their false teachings, then you will be able to build up in yourselves a solid volition to the good and to the real truth of all truth, so that you can give your thoughts and feelings as well as your deeds and your activity love and purity as well as harmony, peace and freedom; and if you can do that, then you have already found the way of the truth in yourselves, which is in itself the truth and the culmination-point.
- 43) And to do this, you need neither religions nor ideologies or philosophies, neither do you need their irrational, confusing and false teachings in books, writings, pictures and words; and thus you do not need to dedicate yourselves to hermitage or isolation or to asceticism in order to find the truth in yourselves, to realise it and then to live according to it, nor does this require a special consciousness-based effort, through which you could be overstrained; truthly it requires only your normal consciousness-power as well as your good and clear intellect and the equally good and clear rationality, motivation and a solid will to carry out everything and to bring it to the end.
- 44) And if you humankind of Earth act in this wise, then you will be healthy in your mental-block and in the consciousness-block, therefore in your consciousness itself as well as in your thoughts and feelings, in your psyche as well as in your personality and in your character.
- 45) Thus if you act wisely in this regard, you free yourselves from all the pressure of a morbid search and rumination concerning the truth-search, so you become human beings who do not succumb to the false of a religious, ideological or philosophical belief like an orchid that can wilt at the merest touch of a cool breeze.
- 46) You humankind of Earth, your consciousness is the foundation stone and the tool of all your thoughts and feelings as well as of your deeds and activities, but this consciousness is in its activity still inadequate, through which restrictions are naturally imposed on you, which you must open through your own intellect and through your rationality, so that you open the blockades in your consciousness and become more broad-sighted and also comprehend all those things that go beyond the material and stir in the realm of the spiritual and the consciousness-based, and belong in the realm of the creational laws and recommendations.
- 47) You humankind of Earth, wake up and look around in yourselves, so that you hear your own voice in yourselves which calls for the effective truth and for the fulfilment of the creational laws and recommendations; and only if you do this shall the way of the truth open itself in you, which has the truth and the culmination-point inherent in itself.
- 48) Be yourselves and pay no attention to the strife in the world, nor to the strife of the religions, ideologies and philosophies, nor to the false teachers with their false teachings, and also not to the false prophets and to your false, imaginary gods, tin gods, demons, angels and saints, and to all those that pass themselves off to you as truth-bringers, such as gurus, sect-leaders, masters, sublime ones and however else they all call themselves.
- 49) The only truthly truth-bringer are you yourselves, if you fathom and recognise the truthly truth in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations; and the true prophets, who bring you the *«Goblet of the Truth»*, the *«Teachings of the Prophets»*, i.e. the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, they tell you merely what you shall look at and what you shall do in order to find the truth in



yourselves and in the laws and recommendations of the Creation; the true prophets only teach you in the mode in the truth, so that you may find it in yourselves, just as they also only teach you in the causal connections of all things; however, they do not teach you to follow their words and their teaching submissively, but that you yourselves decide in yourselves for learning and fathom everything in yourselves, find the effective truth and follow it.

- 50) Therefore do not let yourselves be deceived by connecting yourselves to a religion, ideology or philosophy, rather be yourselves in every wise and search for the truthly truth only there, where it is actually to be found, namely in yourselves and in the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 51) Consider that there is no physical manifestation of a godly love, but only the true love, which proceeds from out of the Creation itself through the effects of the laws and recommendations which as fundamental substance is in your deepest, spiritual nature, through which you too are capable of the true love out of a fine-spiritual perception as well as the feeling-based love.
- 52) Do not attach yourselves to any confessions, ideologies or philosophies but rather create an own and healthy life-view, based on the truthly truth that you find in yourselves, so that you are free in your human consciousness, which may not be enslaved through religious, ideological or philosophical dogmas or through a godly spark invented by you human beings, which has no energy or power.
- 53) Dogmas and other compulsory tenets are and remain human inventions and are never words or the work of the Creation, but are the work of human beings in order to constrain your human sense and to press it into forms of the depravity, which however means a systematic degrading and distorting of the creational in you.
- 54) Truly you should recoil from dogmas and other compulsory tenets and irrational teachings, through which you can never experience the great reality of the creational truth, but through which your search for the truth becomes ever more hopeless, which drives you slowly but surely into the despair.
- 55) You humankind of Earth, finally wake up and become yourselves, bring forth in yourselves your own decisions and be therefore free in your thoughts and feelings, so that you shatter all dogmatic walls in you and pull down the bandage of the belief in gods, demons, angels, sublime ones, tin gods and human idols which makes you unseeing, so that you finally become seeing and can perceive the light of the truth in an unmutated wise.
- 56) And if you do this, you will rejoice in yourselves and swing your consciousness through the cognition of the truth into the heights, to find the true love in the Creation and in its completion that is the highest possible for you, which your intellect does not know, because of the captivity of your belief with regard to religions, ideologies, philosophies and their irrational teachings.
- 57) You must recognise, you humankind of Earth, that you, in form of your spirit-form in you, are a minute part of the all-embracing Creation, which is why you shall unify yourselves with it through your consciousness, namely by turning to the truth of all truth and as a result give enough consideration to your consciousness-evolution; free yourselves with your whole energy and power from your truth-unknowledgeness and give yourselves the gift of the truth-recognition and truth-following, through which you find your way out of the chaos and rise up to the higher in yourselves, which makes you joyful of your life, fills you with true love and creates peace, freedom and harmony in you and amongst your whole humankind.
- 58) But you humankind of Earth, you are still not ready to really turn to the truth, because if you are looked at and considered more closely, then you are still far away from extending your hand to the truth and therefore also to the creational laws and recommendations.
- 59) You are still very far from the creational truth, although many amongst you are searching particularly vigorously for the truth, but unfortunately you do this in a wrong wise, because truthly you are not searching for the truth itself, but rather for leaders and helpers; leaders and helpers, to whom you want to give belief regarding their false teachings and through which you feel yourselves as raised in your thoughts and feelings as also in regard to being able to subordinate yourselves suppliantly to a leader, guru, master, sublime one or godly one, etc., merely because you nourish the wrong opinion that you are already thoroughly prepared for recognising the supposed truth-bringer, hearing his or her words and understanding his or her teaching.
- 60) What you are nourishing and cherishing in this regard, however, are no more and no less than many splittings (different forms of opinions, views, meanings etc.), by which you are ruled in yourselves and which will never let you find the truth.
- 61) The 'Goblet of the Truth', the 'Teaching of the Prophets', i.e. the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life affect you in a peculiar wise, because it is anything but a teaching with religious, ideological or philosophical empty phrases, and because you are entangled and captured in such empty phrases and are submissively dependent on them, you create in yourselves a false picture of the real truth, and establish causes to bask in overbearingness and wrong self-evaluation and to go the wrong way that is based in a religious, ideological or philosophical belief.
- 62) Instead of a true deference towards the Creation, there has come about in you, you humankind of Earth, a



whimpering begging and beseeching to a god, demons, devil or tin gods, to angels, sublime ones or human idols; and thereby you have become Wesen who always only want to receive, but never ever want to contribute anything yourselves at any price, just as it is also not pleasing for you to bear the responsibility.

- 63) You pray and beseech, which you can do very well, but that it is demanded of you yourselves that you shall do something and do a lot of work for what you demand and on yourselves, you want to know nothing of this, because it is uncomfortable for you and would require you to think according to the truth.
- 64) Nonetheless, however, you have the audacity in the imperious belief in yourselves to be autonomous, independent and so full of power to be able to do and not do everything yourselves, as you want, and thus cultivate the delusion of being equal to the Creation.
- 65) Very many amongst you, you humankind of Earth, you merely await and claim and believe that it is not you who must bow to the creational laws and recommendations but that it is they that must bow to you; truly, wherever you look, you see only your doubtfulness, because on the one hand you live in an ausgeartet overbearingness against everything creational, and on the other hand you sink down in blatant submissiveness and cowardice before your invented gods, tin gods, angels and saints or before your human idols.
- 66) Truly, you are missing the right self-evaluation and modesty as well as the true love and the feelings for yourselves as well as for your fellow human beings, and if you nonetheless want to search for and find the truth in yourselves and around yourselves as well as in the creational laws and recommendations, then it is in the first place necessary that you descend from your artificial height that you have created for yourselves, because this is the first step you must take if you really and truly want to become a human being.
- 67) You are like a bloated pufferfish that senses danger and thus blows itself up, so likewise you blow yourselves up and boast with your religious, ideological or philosophical truth-unknowledge and its irrational teachings, because you fear the creational truth of all truth; but consider, how the pufferfish can in an unheedful moment find itself trapped between the fangs of its enemy and lose its life, so will it also go with you if you are cast into ruin through your belief; and if that happens, you will have no more time to lose to liberate yourselves from out of your hardship and out of your misery.
- 68) Do not therefore think that, with regard to the truth-finding, it can go on endlessly in this wise of the idleness, as it has been the case already for millennia, because sooner or later the time comes when you must turn to the true creational truth of all truth and connect yourselves with it.
- 69) Do not therefore wait for any leader or helper from whom you expect and indeed demand in a miserable wise that they shall show you and prepare a way up to the light of the truth, because truthly it is only you alone who must strive for the truth and strike and tread your own way.
- 70) You must yourselves make everything comprehensible in such a wise that you can understand and logically follow it by choosing the right way, so that you find both the truth and yourselves in your inner nature.
- 71) Therefore, search for and find the truth in your own intellect and in the rationality and let the false leaders and helpers be what they are, because it is not they who can bring you the truth, but you alone, because you alone must bear the efforts, even if you believe that these efforts would be taken away through the false teachers, leaders and helpers.
- 72) Only if you call yourselves to the truth can you find the right way and the truth of all truth in you and in the creational laws and recommendations, but this requires you to strive for it yourselves and not follow false teachers, leaders and helpers.
- 73) It is your task to find the real truth as such yourselves and to become knowing therein, not, however, to fall prey to a false conviction through false teachers and teachings as well as leaders and helpers.
- 74) You however, you who are many, you believe that you yourselves do not firstly need to strive to find the effective truth, because these efforts would be done for you by any teachers, leaders, helpers or prophets, truly, you are foolish and do not find the way of the truth in yourselves, which is itself the truth and the culmination-point, which is why you remain unknowing and suffer misery and hardship, are full of jealousy and hatred and indulge in pathological craving for revenge, in retaliation and wars, as well as in crime, calumny, lies and deception, and also in strife and destruction.
- 75) Truly, you yourselves must awaken, because all the false teachers, leaders, prophets and helpers with their false teachings cannot awaken you out of your sleep of the truth-unknowledgeness, and you must also go the way of the rightful, the responsibility and the conscientiousness alone, because only you alone can do all this for yourselves.
- 76) Consider the true word, that you as true human beings are still not so valuable, as you imagine and believe this, that you would be equal to the Creation, but if you want to be trustworthy, then you must turn to the creational laws and recommendations, learn out of them and fulfil them, because only thus can you become what you want to be.
- 77) You humankind of Earth, you search for the truth of the life, however, you are searching for something that you do not yet understand, because you are captured in the belief in godheads and tin gods and human idols



and assume that this is the truth, but the effective truth is not based on a belief but in truthly knowledge and the thereout resulting, unfallible wisdom and deep-reaching love.

- 78) And as you do not understand the truth, so you also do not understand the life and vegetate away in confusion, wherethrough, despite the progress you make in many areas, you remain far from the creational truth of all truth and no longer know what you actually want; but be certain that sooner or later you will and must experience in yourselves what really shall be.
- 79) You are a peculiar sort of human beings, because although you search for the truth that you do not yet understand, you criticise, insult and slander it, because you believe in godheads, tin gods and human idols – how can you as human beings think and act so irrationally, since, after all, you possess the capability of the intellect and the rationality?
- 80) You humankind of Earth, consider that you cannot keep on acting and living in this wise endlessly, because the truth and the life make no concessions, but rather demand their right in all things of the existence; but since you act contrary to this with all the irrationality available to you, you tread yourselves and in so doing you cause yourselves pain, misery and hardship, from which you can free yourselves only if you cast aside and reject everything which is contrary to the truth, and is therefore unrightful and of the unright, as well as of the irresponsibility and consciencelessness.
- 81) Those however amongst you, you humankind of Earth, who – thinking in intellect and rationality – are seriously searching for the real truth of all truth, for the truth of the life, the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, you are able to recognise that the best that the whole humankind needs lies precisely in the fair, responsible and conscientious, attentive, strict and heedful thoughts and feelings, because the whole humankind is enmeshed very deeply in its consciousness-indolence.
- 82) And just with this, that the intellectual understanding concerning the words of the truth demands right from the beginning a consciousness-based activity, so however also a striving and a serious volition, is the possibility given that already at the beginning of the consciousness-activity and thus the thought-activity, the chaff can easily be separated from the grain and therefore the truth can be understood; therein lies an autonomous activity, as laid down through the creational laws and as you human beings also fundamentally want it.
- 83) Those however amongst you, you humankind of Earth, who are that sort of human beings and think yourselves to be particularly active, you design a grotesque picture of teachers, leaders, helpers and prophets who are supposed to help you find the way of the truth and the truth itself; you are however extremely foolish, because you expect them to be really wise and knowing and consciousness-acrobats who can do miracles for you.
- 84) You however let yourselves be deceived even deeper into the untruth, because they know only the untruth and not the truth itself, and furthermore you presume that they are clairvoyants and clairsentients, telepaths and channelers, but truthly they understand nothing of this; and you also believe that they are emissaries of god or truth-knowers and great «spirits», what in reality they are however not.
- 85) And truly, if they were really capable of using the consciousness-powers and of controlling the pineal gland, in order to be able to be active in the realm of fine-fluidal swinging waves, even then they would not be able to rise above the ban of the material, since these things also stir only in the lower boundaries of the material and can lay no claim to the purely spiritual, consequently they are rather worthless for the purposes of finding the truth of all truth, since they are no more, no less than only aspects of the consciousness-capabilities that can be used, if the way thereto is found and taken.
- 86) You humankind of Earth, you cannot be helped towards a general rise up to the truth and to the consciousness-evolution by showing you things and effects of the consciousness-powers that you can see, hear or feel, because this has nothing to do with a real rise up to the truth and to the consciousness-evolution, as it also does not serve any purpose for your material progress; things and effects that are brought about out of the consciousness-powers are no more, no less than signs of the powers of the consciousness, nothing more than that, and are interesting only for entertainment, carrying out work or for obtaining information etc.; for the evolution of the consciousness and using its powers, as well as fathoming out and following the effective truth that you find in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations, does not require any demonstration of the things and effects of the consciousness-powers.
- 87) That you, however, wish for yourselves teachers, helpers, gurus, clerics as well as sublime ones and the like, who present you consciousness-powers as miraculous signs and proof of the rightness of their belief in a godhead, a tin god or demons, this is already founded in blatant ridiculousness, and even then, if you take their activities in this wise bitter seriously – if those worshipped and beseeched by you are even capable of bringing forth such signs of the consciousness-powers.
- 88) And you are of the irrational opinion that a true teacher and proclaimer of the truth is of godly nature, but this also corresponds to an irrational belief, such as the belief in a godhead, because a true proclaimer and teacher of the truth is a human being out of your midst and is as integrated into all the heights and depths of the life



as you yourselves, so therefore also into illness, health, accident as well as fortune and unfortune; so they are not spared from these things, even if you think wrongly that such things cannot happen to a truthfully teacher and proclaimer because he or she is under god's protection; truly, you do not consider that every godhead is an insubstantiality invented through you human beings yourselves and is completely without energy and power, whereas true proclaimers and teachers are simple human beings and thus integrated into the course of fortune and unfortune and illness and health of the life; and since true prophets and teachers are in flesh, blood and consciousness human beings and therefore people of your kind, it is erroneous to assume that they were raised above unfortune and illness or even above departing out of the life, because fundamentally everything existent is integrated into these things and into the becoming and passing; if however you think that this does not meet the fact, then you make yourselves a wrong opinion which sinks into complete ridiculousness.

- 89) Consider, it is quite true that you humankind of Earth shall help yourselves, which also refers to illness and unfortune, so you can bring under control illnesses and pains that simply belong in one wise or another to the material body, depending on how the bodily state of health is formed, but you cannot one-sidedly through the Gewalt of the consciousness-powers make the body permanently insensible to internal and external influences, as this is also by no means possible by an outstanding *«great spirit»*; truly, the body can one-sidedly be made temporarily insensible, e.g. through hypnosis and meditation, but anyone who is able to do this is nonetheless no outstanding great one, because the whole doing is merely based on the control of one's own consciousness-powers, not however on the use of any godly powers, which do not exist.
- 90) If however you believe in godly miraculous powers, which are purely illusory, if some amongst you can show signs through their consciousness-powers that you understand neither as to their source nor to their effects and in the final effect itself, and therefore believe that these are godly miraculous powers that bring forth everything, then you are human beings who stand there with shining eyes and open mouth, wishing you could do the same.
- 91) Therefore there are many amongst you who are in the present time still miracle-believers as well as *«spirit- and god-searchers»*, and who cling to the untruth of a religious, demonic, ideological or philosophical belief, through which however you realise no gain of the truth, but wander about in a dark vault of the truth-unknowledge, which you yourselves have created.
- 92) Truly, in your unknowledge about the truth you are like consciousness-based clowns who are drunk from the belief and balance dangerously on a high-strung tightrope, in danger of falling at any time, but you do not recognise to where your doing will finally lead you.
- 93) If you look at and consider your search for the true of the truth, then you will experience that you do not know where you are actually going and what you want to strive for; and you are living in the delusion that you cannot live alone but rather only under the protection of a god, tin god or idolised human being, a leader, helper, master, guru or sublime one and god-equivalent, etc., who must be great enough that through his or her consciousness, which you wrongly call *«spirit»*, he or she can rule his or her body and his or her life to such an extent that he or she no longer knows any illness or hardship, as has been handed down to you slanderously since time immemorial through stories of lies about true prophets.
- 94) And consider, only the spirit itself cannot be afflicted by illness, unfortune and hardship of any kind, because it alone is of purest creational nature, whereas the body has a pure material substantialness, and thus is directly connected with everything material, so therefore also with illness, unfortune and every hardship, as it is on the other hand also with health, fortune etc.
- 95) But the spirit or the spirit-form needs the human consciousness for its own evolution, therefore also the body, wherethrough the consciousness and the body are connected with the spirit-form; if however the body becomes weak or suppressed through any powers, then the consciousness can no longer evolve completely, because it will concentrate itself only on a specific direction, wherethrough everything else is neglected, and therefore no general consciousness-based evolution will occur, but only a purposeful and one-sided one; this will however lead to the swinging waves of the consciousness becoming too lifeless to bring the entire scope of its full power into the entire materialness of the body, thus the latter begins to suffer here and there.
- 96) Therefore, if you want to suppress an illness or minimise or resolve an existing one, then you must put a great pressure on your body in a consciousness-based wise, by concentrating solely on the illness or the afflicted area, through which the illness or the pain resolves, in which case you however leave the rest of the body completely out of your attention, which can in turn be befallen by illness or pain; this is the same effect as when you have toothache which you push away in yourselves through fear when you go to the dentist.
- 97) The fact is that such states of arousal are often brought about through you, you humankind of Earth, and can be repeated several times without danger, but not permanently, otherwise serious harm will occur and endless sufferings will be the result.



- 98) If however false teachers, false prophets, gurus, masters, godly ones, sublime ones or other idolised human beings advise you to do so nevertheless, then they infringe against the natural creational laws and recommendations, because consider, you shall treat your body as a valuable treasure that has been entrusted to you and keep it safe as such, so as to bring about a healthy harmony between it and your consciousness as well as with your spirit; you shall therefore not harm your body and also not rob it of the life through suicide or commissioned murder.
- 99) If you suppress or maltreat your body, then you do the same with your consciousness, as a result an evolution and a rise up to the truth is not possible anymore, because this gives rise only to a drastic hindrance that prevents any fulfilment of the task of your life; even the materialness of the body itself is affected, because the full power of the consciousness goes thereby lost in terms of its activity in the whole physical body, because the consciousness-power, which must harmonise with the material body, is enslaved.
- 100) If however you are irrationally taught in this through false leaders, prophets, helpers, gurus, teachers or masters etc., then these are less than you yourselves, because they misteach you and cheat you with false knowledge, because they do not know the tasks and the evolution-necessity as well as the function of your consciousness, whereas you dedicate yourselves to being taught the truth honestly in all things, so you are therefore truth-searchers, who are however deceived with irrational teachings through vermins of your consciousness who falsely call themselves truth-knowers.
- 101) If however you do not follow the real truth, then you must painfully recognise again and again your own foolishness and gain bitter experiences that you live through with anguish; thus you shall dedicate yourselves neither to religious, esoteric, ideological nor to philosophical or occult belief-forms, but solely and exclusively to the creational truth of all truth, that you find only in yourselves as well as in the nature and in the laws and recommendations of the Creation; if however you dedicate yourselves to the false teachers and the false prophets and the like, who spread false teachings, then you shall continue to hunger for the truth, because all the truth-unknowners give you only the stones of the unknowledge for nourishment, however not the bread of the truth.
- 102) Thus, you humankind of Earth, do not let yourselves be made irrational through false teachings of false prophets and teachers, not through masters, gurus or the like, as well as not through religions, ideologies and philosophies etc., because all of them are only dedicated to the irrationality, and worship gods and tin gods, as a result of which they turn away from the truth of the Creation and from its laws and recommendations, through which the becoming and passing of the life and of all things are determined.
- 103) Search not for the personified evil, not for a devil and not for an antichrist etc., because that which is the evil and the devilish exists in yourselves, therefore you must search for and fight against them in yourselves, and not search for them outside yourselves or in an imaginary hell, which is truthly nothing other than your state in yourselves, which you create through your thoughts and feelings and out of which you commit evil deeds and bring forth miserable activities.
- 104) Consider, being only a little awake is enough for you to recognise the falsehood of the godly teachings that the bearers and representatives of the earthly religions, ideologies and philosophies talk you into believing, who are only directed towards their earthly might and its expansion.
- 105) They thereby very clearly bring forth that they are the servants of their human intellect, which is directed solely towards school, religious, ideological and philosophical knowledge, and stands hindering and hostile towards everything which stands in connection with the actual truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations and lies outside of their extremely inadequate knowledge.
- 106) Through the religious, ideological and philosophical irrational teachings, you humankind of Earth, the truth of all truth remains outside of your earthly intellect-based knowledge, as does the truth of the spiritual and of the consciousness-based.
- 107) And it is actually your intellect and your rationality that you have brought into a malicious form of unintellect and irrationality through your belief in a godhead or a tin god, because through your belief you have wrongly learnt to consider something as true whose existence you cannot prove neither externally nor in yourselves, and thus your irrationality and your unintellect are the real hindrance for your not finding the effective truth either in yourselves or in the creational laws and recommendations, and indeed, because you are addicted and in submissive bondage to your belief as well as to the unintellect and irrationality.
- 108) You have in this kind become in yourselves opponents of the truth and thereby also opponents of the Creation and the creational spirit-form in you, which is why you turn away from the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit and the teaching of the life, which has been brought to you since time immemorial through the true prophets as the *«Teaching of the Prophets»* and the *«Goblet of the Truth»*.
- 109) You build as highest and topmost on your intellect and your rationality, but to truly use both of them is something you do not understand and cannot do, because you are captured through your belief in a godhead, tin god or idolised human beings and are so helpless that you – because you do not know



yourselves – cannot build up out of your own cognition the power for your own liberation, therefore you need a truthfully guidance as to what it looks like in your inner nature, what you are doing wrong and what you must do in order to become yourselves, in order to win cognitions according to your own personality and in order to create love, peace and harmony in your own inner nature; but you must make use of and do everything yourselves, since this can be done neither by a true prophet nor by those who, as false prophets, teachers, gurus and masters etc., swarm around you like poisonous insects that sting you and want to bring you death and ruin.

- 110) Truly, it is so that the bearers and representatives and all the fanatics of all religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies, of the esoteric and of the whole occultism fear that they may lose their influence amongst you, you humankind of Earth, through the clarification of the truthfully truth of all truth, as it is given through the Creation in its laws and recommendations.
- 111) This is the main reason for all calumnies against the truth, whereas the following reason is to be found in the belief of the bearers and representatives of the false religions, ideologies and philosophies.
- 112) They however do not know the reality of the real truth, namely that no god or creator is the origin of all things and all existence, but the Creation itself, which has let everything come to be through its idea, from out of which it has also created its creational laws and recommendations, out of which all effects imaginable arise through cause and effect, wherethrough nothing comes about through haphazard, i.e. through chance but only through the foreordination and determination, hence everything all around has its regulation and there is no chaos.
- 113) There are only a few amongst you, you humankind of Earth, who know the reality and the truth about the Creation and about its activating laws and recommendations, as well as the sense of the life that is given in you in the evolution of the consciousness and of the spirit as spirit-form; and since you are only a few, it becomes balefully apparent that you others, you unknowers, are slaves of yourselves and of your religious, sectarian, ideological or philosophical belief and are only fighting amongst people of your kind for influence and might.
- 114) And if you await clear evidence of the reality of the real truth, then you can find it only in yourselves as well as in the creational laws and recommendations, because you will not find such evidence in the belief in a godhead, but only opposing things against the truth and its deep reality.
- 115) True and honest words against the truth do not exist, but rather only ones that are false, full of lies and calumnious, and those who use them fight openly against the truth and raise the evil up as worthy of worship; and all are driven to this, all whose intellect and rationality are insane, and whose power for the recovery becomes constantly more inadequate.
- 116) In the rationality and intellect of the truth-unknowers, who believe in a god or tin god or in human idols etc., the calumny concerning the truth sprawls like a poisonous growth as a tool of evil, which has become to you, you humankind of Earth, of all dangers the most dangerous.
- 117) Truly, your human intellect and your rationality have, through an incongruously rapid advancement with regard to the religious, ideological and philosophical belief, become factors of the fanaticism and of you no longer being able to distinguish truth and untruth, love and hatred as well as knowledge and belief, and reality and unreality from each other, and consequently are no longer able to separate them.
- 118) Therefore you can no longer realise that behind everything there is the evil that you live out and that you have created in yourselves through your own free will, and now have the greatest arduousness to recognise it, fight against it and resolve it.
- 119) Consider, only then, if you finally fight the evil in yourselves, if you turn to the truth, will it be possible for you to become righteous, responsible, conscientious and full of love, peace, freedom and harmony in a fully conscious wise, so that one day – sooner or later – you can raise your head in deference towards the life, your fellow human beings and everything around you and stand here as true human beings.
- 120) You humankind of Earth, do not belong to the groupings of those truth-deniers who raise themselves up in the fanaticism to the terrorism through the hostile fight against the effective truth and the creational laws and recommendations in the name of their religious, ideological or philosophical belief, and murder people of your kind for the sake of their belief, wherethrough they become the personified evil and the scourge of the true love, of the peace, of the freedom and of the harmony, the values of which you have been longing for since time immemorial.
- 121) If however you want to experience the values of the love, of the peace, of the freedom and of the harmony in yourselves, then you must wake up out of your leaden sleep of the truth-unknowledgeness, you humankind of Earth, and lay down the heavy burden of the irresponsibility, the consciencelessness and the unright that you bear and that weighs on you thousand millions of human beings like heavy stones.
- 122) Cast off your burden, because it is not worth bearing, not even for a fraction of a nanosecond, and moreover it presses you down so deeply that you lose your self-esteem.



- 123) But also clear out the empty chaff from your thoughts that you have gathered through belief-forms regarding a god, tin god or an idolised human being and that flutter away and disperse themselves everywhere if it is struck by even one breath of the truth.
- 124) Truly, as truth-unknowners, as unknowners with regard to the Creation and its laws and recommendations, you have wasted the time, the energy and power of your up-till-now life for effectively nothing valuable but only for senselessnesses and terribleness, which you have suggestively and forcefully brought about through religions, ideologies and philosophies, namely for wars, revolts, death penalties, hatred, jealousy as well as for murder and manslaughter, terror, unfreedom and unpeace, together with crime, whoring, strife, revenge and retribution, lying, deception and calumny, etc.
- 125) But it is time that you finally liberate yourselves from all these evil terrible things, that you break the chains of all evil that hold you down and keep you away from all that which is of the good and truthfully.
- 126) If however you remain captured in your thoughts and feelings through your belief in religions, ideologies or philosophies and thus in a godhead, tin god or idolised human being, then you will continue to suffer in blatant untruth, irresponsibility, unrighteousness and consciencelessness.
- 127) And if you continue to persist in the unright and in the untruth, then you bind yourselves always anew with that which you learn wrongly through belief-dogmas and other false tenets, because with the new learning or in the holding fast to belief-based concerns you force yourselves ever deeper into strange forms that fix themselves as strange authorities in you and rule you.
- 128) These strange forms, which others have thought up and think up for you and that you willingly take on, they all include you in strange persuasions, i.e. convictions and make you into slaves of false and strange goods of thoughts, which as a strange authority takes over the might in your thoughts and feelings as well as in your attitude; truthfully, through the keeping of strange forms, i.e. authorities, you merely make that your own what others have thought up, invented and bent into form in themselves and which they throw to you so that you pick it up and without thinking believe in it, without searching for the truth in your inner nature through using your intellect and your rationality, because you eschew the arduousness thereto and would rather believe and bear no responsibility.
- 129) It is quite right that you, you humankind of Earth, are as individuals not all alike and that a great differentiatedness is given from the one human being to the other, where the one thing is not for everyone, and it is such that the one thing is of use to one human being, but brings difficulties to another; therefore, also, the learning of the effective truth differs in the form of the approach, so everyone must find their own way therefor in order to go the way of the truth in themselves, which is itself the truth and the culmination-point; therefore everyone must find their own way to the way of the truth, in order to fathom the truth on it, and to win thereout the relatively highest possible cognition and understanding.
- 130) The requisite for the finding of the way to the way of the truth is different from the one human being to the other, as are the capabilities that must be acquired, directed and used thereto, so that it can be upbuilt upon them.
- 131) Whoever cannot achieve their requisite that is necessary to find the way to reach the way of the truth, which is itself the truth and the culmination-point, they also cannot recognise themselves and remain strangers in themselves; and with regard to what might be learnt, they always remain standing beside it and cannot use it, because it cannot become living in them, therefore any inner and understandable gain is impossible, and only a vegetating away is possible, however a progress is impossible, since they do not really and seriously strive after the light of the truth.
- 132) Therefore watch out, you humankind of Earth, if you really and honestly want to search for the truth given through the Creation and through its laws and recommendations and which you can find therein and in yourselves, because you must know that the way of the truth is in you alone and it is also the truth itself, therefore it is only you as individuals who can discover it and walk on it; and only then, if you follow the way of the truth and also experience and live it with all the developmental changes, will you have fully comprehended it, and will learn to understand the truthfully truth of all truth, which is free of any belief of any kind and is pure knowledge and wisdom.
- 133) Also while learning the real truth, joy and affliction are permanent companions, but you humankind of Earth, you shall not let yourselves be saddened through the affliction and shall not fall into over-courage through the joy, because you shall use joy and affliction to shake up and encourage yourselves to really awaken in your consciousness as well as in your thoughts and feelings.
- 134) And if you do so, you will be freed from all daily nothingnesses, and thus you feel in the joy and also in the affliction as well as in the wellbeing and in the pain, the welldoing connection with the energy and power of the Creation and all its love, which streams through everything living, also you, you humankind of Earth.
- 135) See the truth: Everything existent of all existence is true life, because nothing is integrated into the lifelessness, but rather into constant developmental change in the becoming and passing and re-becoming, therefore,



good for you, you amongst you human beings, who realise the profound moments of the connection with the love of the all-embracing Creation, can hold onto it and are able to swing yourselves upwards on it.

- 136) But you are only able to do this if you are yourselves and create everything in your own inner nature on your own, and do not hold onto a godhead, tin god, idolised human being, and neither onto any religious, ideological or philosophical and rigid belief-forms, but rather solely and exclusively onto the truthfully truth of all truth, as it is laid down through the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 137) Therefore, you humankind of Earth, you must strive and evolve as individuals in yourselves, from out of your own consciousness as well as out of the thoughts and feelings, in order to come to the truth and to the fine-spiritual perceiving of the love of the Creation, so there can be true love and harmony as well as freedom and peace in you, in order to then also carry forth these high values, so that you, you humankind of Earth, may profit from them and so that everything may turn to the best wellbeing amongst you all.
- 138) You, who strive after the truth, heed yourselves and not the mockers, who are still not open to the truth and the truth-life and stand like ones who are ill in their consciousness or like drunken ones in front of all the great miracles of the works of the Creation, which offer so much, but are not seen and not understood by them, because they are seeing blind ones, who grope their way helplessly through the life and push aside everything splendid of the Creation, because they do not realise it in its reality.
- 139) And you, who strive after the truth, be not confused and do not sleep while learning, so that you really recognise the truth and not claim that only that which you see with your eyes is real, and that there is no life where you cannot perceive any movement with your eyes; truly, this is not the truth, because even when, with the dying of your body, you cease to be yourselves, the life still continues through the spirit-form that disappears into its realm of the other world in order to be reborn at its time, in a new body and with a new consciousness and a new personality.
- 140) Do not therefore be blind with seeing eyes and do not deny the living as the opposite merely because there are many things you cannot see, that are hidden from your seeing, and that nevertheless exist in full aliveness.
- 141) Truly, there are many things you do not yet know, because your abilities and senses are restricted, so you also do not know and do not understand that not only with space and time are there many things connected, which you have to learn through your consciousness, but also with regard to your spirit, i.e. the spirit-form, which as a minute part of the Creation animates the human consciousness, the mental-block and the consciousness-block as well as the body and cannot be perceived with the material senses, the eyes, the ears or through the sense of touch, not through the feelings, not through the smelling or tasting, but solely and exclusively through the fine-spiritual perceiving, which stems out of the spirit realm itself and comes via the subconsciousness into the material realm of the psyche and consciousness.
- 142) It is a fact however that not everything that rises above space and time can be perceived through your human, material senses, because all things beyond the space and beyond the time are integrated into more fine-fluidal levels and forms, which in turn can be perceived only through factors, which are laid out for this, such as the spiritual Gemüt, which is capable of the fine-spiritual perception; you humankind of Earth, however, you have not yet found any logical intellectual evidence for this, because through your religious, ideological or philosophical belief you are captured in irrational teachings that lie far from all truth of the true spiritual life, whose fundamental existence lies in the Creation, in its love as well as in its laws and recommendations; and all this lies beyond the earthly or material scaling of space and time, which, however, needs a further way of the fathoming of the truth for this to be recognised and understood.
- 143) Truth is, you humankind of Earth, that you do not even really see that with your eyes what can be specified in space and time, not even that which is in a single drop of water, so you can only see the life in it if you use a strong microscope, through which you see millions of living creatures that struggle with each other for their existence.
- 144) Truly, there are living creatures in the water, in the air, in the earth as well as in and around all plants, and in your food, that you cannot see with your eyes, only through equipment that magnifies them hundreds, thousands and millions of times, and it is the tiniest living creatures that possess the energy and power and the capability to keep your human body alive or to destroy it, although they are so tiny that you cannot perceive them with your eyes.
- 145) So you shall not be audacious and dare to claim that you cannot see and fathom anything new and as yet unknown, because of all the manifold things that exist purely in your materially recognisable configuration of space and time, you do not yet know even as much of them as a minute speck of dust of a weight, so you can look and look both in your time and in all future times, and still find no end in the observing and considering, perceiving and fathoming.
- 146) So in the expanses of the universe you will also find new worlds, fly to them and open them up for yourselves, as you will also come into contact with foreign people from foreign worlds, and connect yourselves with them – you shall think this over.



- 147) You humankind of Earth, you have a great outlook onto the future and of the ongoing further development, but you have no outlook onto its end, as you have no outlook into the world of the purely spiritual and of the death, which is why the true prophets teach you about it, so that you search for the truth about it in yourselves and can find it, so that you become knowing, wise and therein full of the truth, and direct your lives according to the creational laws and recommendations.
- 148) You however amongst you who do not search for the truth, you live in selfishness and imperiousness and set yourselves as self-raised godly judges over your fellow human beings, in which case you become unhuman through your belief in a godhead, a tin god or idolised human beings, and you become irrational and fall into a blind-raging fanaticism and cowardly murder masses of human beings who believe otherwise through assassinations; and you others who also raise yourselves up as judges over life and death, because you are lustful for murder and greedy for riches, you animate your fellow human beings to commit suicide and take joy in their dying and possessions, once you have murderously given them the deadly poison, and truly you thereby make yourselves guilty of the murder.
- 149) And truly, you humankind of Earth, you only make yourselves thoughts and feelings about your material life, as a result of which you fully leave the death and the realm of the other world out of your attention, because on the one hand you are cowardly afraid of it and eschew it, and on the other hand you are too presumptuous to think of it.
- 150) You do not know what the death is, nor what the realm of the other world is, hence you also cannot understand the two and cannot know that after every dying there is a new living existence of a new personality, and therefore the running circle of the life always continues; and this process from the birth, of the life and dying and of the death, i.e. of the death-life is taught to you and explained through the «Teaching of the Prophets», so that you may become knowing and wise and thus become bearing of the truth.
- 151) The realm of the other world is a spirit-energetical sphere that lies on another side of all your material recognition-capabilities, i.e. all of your material senses and all imaginations, but is nevertheless existent and connected with the material world, however, both spheres are differently dimensioned and nevertheless cannot be separated from each other.
- 152) There is thus no cleft between these two levels, rather a stepless going over, so both build a oneness, as does everything in the entire Creation.
- 153) The spiritual-creational energy and power of the Creation streams through both the realm of the material world of this world and the realm of the other world, so in both dimensions, i.e. levels everything is being pulsed through with the same life-stream and is connected with one another.
- 154) Nonetheless, it is wrong to assume that both levels would be integrated into the same laws, since in this regard there is a difference given between the realm of the material and the realm of the spiritual; the material realm can fall ill through all kinds of inequity and come to harm, whereas the purely spiritual realm, to which the realm of the other world also belongs, is taboo with regard to all inequity and harm.
- 155) Only the material realm of the existence, i.e. life can be befallen in a harming wise, not however the spirit-realm, and therefore also not the spirit, i.e. the spirit-form, because it cannot be attacked from out of the material realm and cannot be influenced negatively.
- 156) It must be understood that the spirit, i.e. the spirit-form of you human beings is not the factor out of which ideas and thoughts result, contrary to how the religious, psychological and philosophical irrational teachings explain, because ideas and thoughts come solely out of the energy and power of the consciousness, therefore there is no «spiritual property» for ideas and thoughts, but only a «consciousness-property».
- 157) Therefore, out of this it follows, you humankind of Earth, that it is not your spirit, i.e. not your spirit-form that can fall ill, but solely and exclusively your consciousness, so there is no spirit-illness, but only a consciousness-illness.
- 158) Your material body is also susceptible to illness, in contradiction to the spirit-body, as the spirit-form, i.e. the spirit in you is also called as the most minute part of the Creation itself, i.e. its spirit energy.
- 159) And since only your consciousness can fall ill, it can also fall ill to unknowledge and truth-unknowledgeness, whereas, however, the illness of unknowledge and of truth-unknowledgeness is healable, namely through a learning of the truth and the knowledge; other consciousness-illnesses however can be unhealable during the time of an actual life, such as constantly acute insanity or other constantly acute lunacy; other consciousness-illnesses however can be healable through appropriate medicines etc.
- 160) Consider however the realm of this world and the realm of the other world, you humankind of Earth, that both are a oneness in themselves however together also form an unseparable whole, because in the whole realm of the Creation every particle is a oneness in itself, however united with its opposite particle again a completed oneness, and indeed given in such a wise that one particle has a negative and the other particle a positive energy and power.
- 161) Thus in the whole realm of the Creation there is no separation, only a union, so on the one hand everything



is in itself alone for itself autonomously a oneness, whereas everything unified together again results autonomously in a whole; the term separation is thus solely an invention of you human beings to split things off from each other, whereas you, however, also split all creational things into two parts that in truth belong together, such as the life and the death and the realm of this world and the realm of the other world; and you do this because you separate off that which you cannot see with your eyes and otherwise cannot perceive with your material senses, and you assume yourselves to be the main point and the epi-centre in your material surroundings.

- 162) If you look at and consider yourselves and your possibilities, you humankind of Earth, then you may realise that your activity-circle and your perception-possibilities are very much greater than you generally assume and bring to use.
- 163) Truly, with your concept and behaviour of the separation you are living in great erroneous assumption, and through this you become curtailed with *Gewaltsamkeit* through yourselves and become as hindered in your progress as in your development, i.e. the evolution of your consciousness, as well as with regard to the truth-knowledge.
- 164) The lack of the truth-knowledge leads you into the temptation of indulging in imaginations and in unbridled fantasies and in creating monster-like pictures of the untruth with regards to all things that you cannot see, perceive, recognise and understand; therefore it is not surprising that you indulge in a religious, ideological or philosophical belief, that you believe in gods and tin gods, demons and idolised human beings and are far from all sense of the truthly truth and reality and put on an unknowing smile concerning the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, that is proclaimed and taught to you through the true prophets; you ridicule and slander the real truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations and fall into the morbid worship of your godhead, your tin god or your idolised human beings, in which case you enslave yourselves to them and get very badly out of the control of the good human nature to the point of fanaticism, in which you then massacre, murder and rob your fellow human beings for the sake of their different belief, their knowledge or their being of another kind, which you then full of mockery equate with godly love, punishment and fairness.
- 165) Truly, because of your belief in gods, tin gods and idolised human beings of all kinds you cannot even be astonished at your own wrong doing, which is characterised by anxiety, shy fear and horror, because you already make these grow in you through the in any case wrong religious, ideological or philosophical education that has been wrongly taught to you through the parents or others with educational authority or that you teach yourselves.
- 166) And truly, uncountable ones amongst you, you humankind of Earth, you have not grown up or do not grow up, because your consciousness has remained stuck or remains stuck in the puberty through the wrong education you have received, while your body grows older and takes on the forms of the adulthood.
- 167) And since puberty is the factor of pre-adulthood, however is often not used by you human beings to become really adult with regard to an adult-individuality, some of the pubescent behaviour carries into the whole life and no longer changes, or only changes somewhat when specific learning circumstances arise, and indeed amongst both the male and the female sex.
- 168) Puberty is the actual 'Rambo time' (time of brutality), particularly of the male human being, although the female sex is also not excluded from this, and what is not learnt in this time with regard to a positive development of the individuality, i.e. the inner nature is generally not learnt afterwards either, as there is also a continuation in the life concerning anything bad and negative that has not been cast aside.
- 169) Thus, the self-education in the stage of the puberty is of utmost importance, since that which must be learnt in this time and through which the individuality, i.e. the inner nature must be formed determines the further life until the old age, and out of this reason it is very difficult for you, you humankind of Earth, to still change to the good and the better, before you have left the time of the puberty, which can stretch from the age of 10 to 17 or even 19; and since the puberty is connected both to the physical development and to the consciousness-development, the individuality is also included therein, and is formed until the end of the puberty, which means that during the puberty-time the most important forms of the individuality, i.e. of the inner nature are formed and this process accompanies great circumstances of tension, as a result physiological and hormonal changes to the body and consciousness are brought about, which is why the puberty is also a phase of social, thought-feeling-based as well as psychical unequalisedness.
- 170) As a rule, the behaviour in the puberty is characterised by strong excitement as well as by feeling-ambivalence, i.e. feeling-doubtfulness, i.e. being torn in the feelings, i.e. relationship-contradictoriness and feeling-overboarding, connected with a protesting behaviour against the adults and fellow human beings in general, through which orientation-difficulties in the social domain etc. come about.
- 171) And if some or all of the negative factors of the puberty are not mastered, worked upon and not brought under control through a healthy social and life-based attitude by the end of the puberty-time, and thus influenced the main form of the individuality, i.e. the inner nature, then the human being remains totally or



partially stuck in his or her puberty and carries forward everything into the whole coming life.

- 172) The puberty serves you, you humankind of Earth, through the effects of the creational laws and recommendations, to evolve to true human beings and become grown up, so that you may live rightfully, in responsibility, righteousness and conscientiousness and that you let nothing evil rise up in you; if however you do not follow the guidance of the laws and recommendations that are creational, and if you do not use the time and the possibilities of the puberty, then you will live all your life totally or partly in that state, and indeed with all or some of the puberty-attributes, which is why you will fall prey to all terrible things, the murdering, the hatred and jealousy, the acting with Gewalt, the unpeace and stinginess, the unfreedom, war, disharmony, the pathological craving for revenge and the pathological craving for retaliation, the avarice as well as everything else that is of the evil.
- 173) Be therefore already concerned in your time of the puberty to become true human beings, because after that time it will be so arduous and onerous for you to do so, that you can accomplish it only with great exceptions, therefore the rule is such that you will remain in all the Ausartungen and live them out throughout your life as you have brought them up in your puberty.
- 174) Consider, if you do not fully come out of your puberty, it will last totally or partially during your whole life, so you will not really become an adult, because adulthood does not mean that you become an adult when your body has grown out of the youth-age, rather you are adults only then, when you have mastered your puberty and have proceeded out of it to become a true human being; if however that is not the case, then you will also, during your life after the time of youth, be more or less, in small or big parts, captives of your puberty factors.
- 175) Indeed, the puberty-influences are, in the normal case, worked upon amply, so no factors thereof are carried forward into the life, which however does not mean that many of you, you humankind of Earth, are not able to work out certain parts of the puberty-problems and thus take parts of them over into the life and have to bear them throughout their lifetime, such as aggression, acting with Gewalt, hatred, disharmony, jealousy, feelinglessness, being torn in the feelings, pathological craving for revenge, pathological craving for strife etc., which does not rarely lead to murder and manslaughter and even to deeds of war; therefore these are to a large extent factors that must be brought under control in the puberty, which is, however, due to a lack of correct education through parents or others with educational authority as well as through the wrong self-education amongst many of you, you humankind of Earth, not given in great measure.
- 176) Your self-education has not ended with the end of the puberty-time, because even afterwards it is given that you human beings must work on yourselves throughout your lifetime, in order to become ever truer in being human in the real and true sense; but these factors of learning are not puberty-moments carried over into the life, but rather normal life-based learning functions, through which possibilities are given to influence the individuality, i.e. the inner nature and to form it further to the good and better.
- 177) Throw away everything that is terrible already in your puberty so that you do not torment yourselves with it throughout your life and do not bring terribleness upon yourselves and upon your fellow human beings.
- 178) You humankind of Earth, bring down the pubertal barriers that you have raised up in you as an erroneous assumption and have taken over into the life, because only if you bring down these barriers, even though this is immensely difficult, will your life have stability and your whole humankind will have the chance that true love and freedom as well as harmony and peace will come amongst you.
- 179) Your previous wrong attitude towards the life and the duties thereof has created in you a completely wrong basis on which you strive fully in vain, despite great plans and deeds, to find the real truth of all truth in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations, which you could build up in yourselves as all-embracing knowledge and great wisdom.
- 180) If you strive for the effective truth, as you can find it in yourselves and in the laws and recommendations of the Creation, then you come across things that free you from your fickleness and your doubts and compulsions, and shatter your whole construct of the irresponsibility, unrighteousness and consciencelessness, so that you also lose your pusillanimity and give up your resentment.
- 181) If you, you humankind of Earth, however do not follow this guidance, then every one of you will have to bear the disadvantage all alone, as a result, there will be no advancement for you, neither with regard to a progress in the individuality, i.e. in the formation of the inner nature, nor with regard to the consciousness-evolution.
- 182) If you leave the guidance of the progress and the development out of your attention, then you will stand still in useless stagnation, or you will even retreat and fall back into old things and vices etc. that you had arduously mastered and brought behind you.
- 183) And if you do not follow the guidance, then you lengthen your way that you must arduously go for the sake of your general progress and your consciousness-evolution.
- 184) But if you find the way of the truth in you, which is itself the truth and the culmination-point, then you will bring together knowledge upon knowledge and build it up according to the principle of "constant dripping



fills the glass", thus you will become ever more knowing and wiser in the truth and will begin to live it.

- 185) And if you have finally comprehended the truth in its entirety as it truthly is, then you will tread on the right way of the life and will get ever closer to the actual culmination-point which is given in the evolution of your consciousness.
- 186) And truly, if you reach this culmination point and strive for the ongoing consciousness-evolution, then the rise up to it will make you great joy and will bring you satisfaction.
- 187) In the rising-up in the consciousness-evolution you can then feel and understand the interaction between all things, how they pulse with the warmth of the life through the whole, through the oneness which is given through the creational and which thus connects everything with each other in an interacting wise, because everything is driven and held in its existence, life and activity by the creational energy and power; and if you comprehend and understand this, then the shining light of the truth will ignite in you, through which you will fill your life with love and strive unstoppably after the being human in the real and true sense, after peace, freedom and harmony for yourselves and for your whole humankind.
- 188) You however, you humankind of Earth, you must do a lot in order to become true human beings, because many of you live merely in comfort and indolence, which are, together with other things, causes of your mockery against the real truth, because you eschew the efforts to push over the false that you have so far gathered in terms of what you have thought, felt and learnt, consequently you are not able to build up anything new, truthly, valuable and realistic in yourselves.
- 189) Truly, you who go along in this wise, you are not able to regulate your accustomed and wrong leading of life in order to bring about a new, healthy and right mode of life, for it is extremely uncomfortable for you to wring the necessary effort from yourselves for this.
- 190) Those however amongst you, you humankind of Earth, who are more knowing and wiser than the truth-unknowers, do not let the unknowers regarding the truth and therefore also not the irresponsible ones and the conscienceless ones deprave and do not quarrel with them, but helpfully offer them your knowledge and your wisdom, and teach them the truthly truth.
- 191) Do not leave those in the truth-unknowledge who search for the truth and have predominantly come so far to no longer dedicate themselves to the passing pleasures and to no longer be like animals, which do not think consciously but merely fill their stomachs with nourishment and live according to their impulses.
- 192) If they ask you about the real truth and about the creational laws and recommendations as well as about the Creation itself, then teach them and give them the cognition for which they ask; and consider, what you pass on in knowledge and wisdom will in turn interactingly increase your knowledge and your wisdom.
- 193) In the whole realm of the Creation, in the universe and in everything that exists therein, the eternal law of cause and effect works, and included in this is also the giving and taking, i.e. the presentation and acceptance of enduring values.
- 194) This law reaches very deeply and weaves through the whole Creation itself and also as its bequest everything that has come into existence through it.
- 195) The giving and taking, presentation and acceptance shall also be a bequest for you, you humankind of Earth, and indeed to your fellow human beings, to whom you shall selflessly give and help in all things where there is hardship; thus you shall also pass on your knowledge and your wisdom of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit and the teaching of the life to your next ones and your fellow human beings, if they ask for it; you shall however also bring forward understanding for the misery and the hardship as well as for the inabilities of your next ones and fellow human beings, so that you helpfully turn to them in the right wise, for which you will in turn receive thanks.
- 196) And if you act seriously in this wise, then you will also receive help back, namely in that new energy and thereout power will grow in you, because you will feel well and be full of joy and satisfaction.
- 197) And truly, already a single true and honest thought and thereout resulting feelings that are of the same kind, with the wish to do good, tear down in you that invisible wall which you have created in yourselves and which, as a hindrance, has made you forget all kindheartedness and all giving.
- 198) Consider, even if you indulge in the stinginess and deny the truth, which you fear consciously or unconsciously, you are nevertheless closely and unseparably connected with the truth and with the law of giving and taking.
- 199) Try to set your thoughts and feelings to the giving and taking, the presenting and accepting, and indeed also with regard to your thoughts and feelings, because they are the messengers you send out and that return to you again like a boomerang, both in the good and in the evil.
- 200) Consider always that your thoughts and the thereout resulting feelings are swinging-wave-based energies with great power, that form themselves in the consciousness and become forms that strike your fellow human beings and bring forth distinct effects in them; these energy-rich and powerful swinging waves however also store themselves as fluidal-powers in your personal things, in your skeleton and in places where you live etc., thus they outlast your life on Earth and your body and continue to bring forth effects long after you.



- 201) And consider, you humankind of Earth, also your true love contains great swinging-wave-based energies and powers, therefore you shall be concerned about letting the love in you become ever greater and letting it grow in your fellow human beings, so that all will be involved in it and are peaceful, harmonious and free amongst one another.
- 202) Consider, love is the true way of the truth and of the life, and if you do deeds of the love, then these will follow you, so love will therefore also be given to you in return.
- 203) Even thought-creations are works that catch up to you again, namely depending on how they are formed in the negative or positive, so they build light or dark swinging waves in you which you must get through in order to get into your consciousness-world; no help and also no protection can be offered to you from outside in this, since you live in self-determination and therefore only you alone can help yourselves; so the first step and every step thereafter must come from you yourselves, and you yourselves determine whether the first step and every step thereafter will be easy or heavy, because this lies in your thought- and feeling-world, through which you determine the volition in the negative or positive, so the heaven or the hell lies in you yourselves, depending on how you decide in the good or evil.
- 204) You yourselves can decide all things, over whatever you want to assess, but for this, no god, no tin god as well as no idolised human being is responsible except you yourselves, so you alone must bear the consequences of your thoughts and feelings as well as of your volition without imposing any requirements thereto.
- 205) You humankind of Earth, you alone create everything through your own thoughts, the feelings and the thereout resulting deeds, which is why you alone must also bear the consequences thereout; do not therefore foment unpeace, unfreedom and disharmony and do not create hatred and war, but keep your thoughts and feelings pure in true love, so that you spread peace, freedom and harmony and give righteousness, fairness and conscientiousness enough consideration.
- 206) Be at all times watchful in your thoughts, feelings and in your deeds and do not forget that every thought created and sent out by you, and also every feeling, whether negative or positive, attracts everything on its way out which is of the same kind, and they furthermore adhere to the consciousness of many of your fellow human beings if they get into them, if the latter are, perhaps only for a second, unattentive, forget themselves and have no control over themselves, the consequence of which is that the thoughts and feelings become ever stronger; and if such hovering-around thoughts and feelings are given the opportunity through unattentiveness etc. to get into the consciousness, then the corresponding goods of thoughts spread around, whether negative or positive, and thus also the thereout resulting feelings, ever more amongst people of your kind, where in accordance with your unequalled and unneutral goods of thoughts, the ungood, the evil and the negative prevail.
- 207) And consider what responsibility you bear with your thoughts and feelings, both with regard to yourselves and with regard to your fellow human beings, because your goods of thoughts and goods of feelings bring forth effects not merely in yourselves but also externally amongst your fellow human beings, which manifest themselves in acts and deeds, and indeed, as a rule, in a negative, bad, ungood and evil form, because your thoughts and feelings are to a large extent of such a constitution; and if your thoughts and feelings take effect on any of your fellow human beings and if they put your negative, evil, bad and ungood goods of thoughts and goods of feelings into action, then you bear the responsibility for this.
- 208) And truly, you humankind of Earth have to consider that in you as a whole, as well as an individual human being, your responsibility is triggered simply by your nourishing the ungood, negative, evil and bad thoughts and feelings, because namely each thought and each feeling sent out by you retains a permanent connection with you, without your being aware and conscious of it; the thoughts and feelings that you send out charge themselves on their way out with new energy and power and return thus strengthened to you like a boomerang, wherethrough you will be burdened or delighted anew with them, depending on whether your sent-out thoughts and feelings are of a negative, evil, ungood and bad or of a positive, good, excellent and kind nature.
- 209) You form your own thought- and feeling-world and send this out, wherewith you also create the possibility that they can get into the consciousness of those of your fellow human beings, who are unattentive or who nourish similar thought- and feeling-forms; thus you can also be befallen by the thoughts and feelings of your fellow human beings, just as they can be through your own goods of thoughts and goods of feelings, therefore also in this relation an interaction comes about once again, as in everything that is existent.
- 210) Thus, the teaching out of the creational laws and recommendations is that you shall not squander the energy and power of your thoughts and feelings but use them rightfully by guiding, nourishing and cherishing them in a good, positive, right, excellent kind and wise, and that you defend yourselves consciously against intruding strange thoughts and feelings by making your own thoughts and feelings to a sharp defence; create in this wise out of your own thoughts and feelings a protection against everything which is of the ungood, the evil, the negative, the bad and the ausgeartet that breaks in upon you from outside, so that you do not



take it on but rather remain free of it and you in yourselves always fight only for the good and heal wounds in the whole realm of everything Creation-given.

- 211) If you want to act in accordance with the truth and move forwards in terms of the evolution of your consciousness, then you must arrange your thoughts and feelings to this in a controlling wise, which means however that you must lay down many false views and shake many rigid pillars that carry the false and erroneous teachings that have made you since time immemorial to believers in godheads and gods and in idolised human beings as well as in religions, ideologies and philosophies.
- 212) Since time immemorial there have been false and irrational teachings, false terms and words, which you, you humankind of Earth, have received in a mistaught wise and which you comprehend wrongly and which do not let you find the true way of the truth, which you must search for in yourselves as way of the truth, which is itself the truth and the culmination-point.
- 213) On the way of the searching in yourselves you must return to the true way of the truth from which you have turned away and have not found again or have never found since time immemorial.
- 214) Let the light of the real truth light up in you and get into the darkness of your truth-unknowledge, so that you bring down the construct of the untruth in you that you have built since time immemorial and during your actual life, so that you may finally get to work and turn to the reality and to the truth of all truth.
- 215) Make sure, if you search for the truth and learn it, that you do not suffer anew from a standstill, that you do not fall into new stagnation, but take the time as an example, which does not end but goes unstoppably forward, which you shall do as well when searching for, fathoming, understanding and living the effective truth, as it is given in the creational laws and recommendations and that you can find both therein and in yourselves, if you make an effort.
- 216) Truly, you humankind of Earth, the time passes, and indeed without you being able to do anything against it, and in the passing of the time all things change in your material world and in the universe as well as in yourselves, in your body and consciousness, in your inner nature, in the character, knowledge and the personality, as well as in the interests etc.; thus you see the times changingly pass you by, as you also realise every developmental change in yourselves, if only you pay attention to it, which you as a rule do not do, because truly there are only a few amongst you who do not make the pictures of the changes a habit but instead observe and perceive everything precisely and lay a firm ground out of this upon which you can build up everything further, to which you dedicate yourselves with interest, motivation and strong will, so that you research, fathom and direct yourselves according to what you learn and experience as real truth.
- 217) But those amongst you, you humankind of Earth, who are believers in godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings and who move only arduously through your life and do not research in full interest and volition for the truth, in order to fathom it, to experience it and to live it, it does not take long until you are confronted with hindrances that stand in contradiction with each other, so your will and interest break down, and everything doesn't fit together anymore; thus you lose yourselves in yourselves and create many gaps in the researching and fathoming that in spite of all your rumination you cannot close.
- 218) And if you have created gaps in your researching and fathoming, then you assume, if the logic no longer offers you any indication, because your rationality and your intellect are over-strained, that only a belief as a substitute can help you further, which results in you falling prey to false ideologies, philosophies or religions.
- 219) Consider the real truth of the Creation, as it is given through its laws and recommendations, it alone is reality, whereas every belief is wrong, irrespective of the form in which it is practised; so you shall not believe in any wise, also not with regard to things that you cannot understand, rather you must in all things search to understand, so that you find the real truth in everything over which you make thoughts and feelings, so also with regard to the effective truth and reality, wherein you can no longer be erring if you have found it and recognised it; therefore you must learn to search, fathom and understand, because otherwise you tear open the gigantic gate to the Hell of the endless irrationalities, and with these irrationalities you fall prey to the belief in godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings, as you therewith also deny the truth and the life and degrade them down to the evil.
- 220) Not comprehending, i.e. not understanding something and thus taking refuge in a belief instead of searching for the effective truth and fathoming it, means indolence and cowardice as well as thought- and feeling-laziness; this however does not drive the evolution of the consciousness upwards, but rather hinders or suppresses it; thus, you humankind of Earth, raise your eyes, search for, research, fathom and test the real truth according to your natural instinct that is given in you by nature, so that you become truthly knowing therein and do not turn to a belief of any kind, which you can never prove as rightness, because each belief is based on a fiction which can never provide a proof-power.
- 221) The time is given through the Creation, the universal consciousness, and it also lives in the time, as you humankind of Earth, because as an idea of the Primal-Creation it found a beginning in the big bang and has an end, when it reaches its age of 311 million-million, 40 thousand-million (311,040,000,000,000) years by



earthly time calculation and then forms itself to the Primal-Creation through its process of developmental change; how erroneous it is, therefore, to assume that the time stands still, when the Creation itself is integrated into the time, which it itself has created.

- 222) Therefore, basic thoughts with regard to the time cannot be confronted with hindrances, therefore it is also possible for you, you humankind of Earth, to think further than only just for the moment, because as the time runs, so do your thoughts and feelings and they can move forwards through the stream of the time and even spread forwards; if however the time stood still, there would be no movement and everything would stagnate, which is however not the case, because in the whole Creation, in the universal consciousness, in the universe and in everything created by it and existing, everything is in an unstoppable, flowing movement.
- 223) You humankind of Earth, you do not hurry towards the time but rather you go together with the time and thus also with the becoming and passing which is connected with the time; therefore you storm ahead with the time created through the Creation, which is not eternal but restricted through the time-determined BEING of the Creation itself, and in the passing of this time you live your life and search for the real truth of all truth.
- 224) The time does not stand still and does not remain the same, because it has been going since the primal beginning of the Creation and all its myriad-fold creations, thus since time immemorial, yesterday, today, tomorrow, in thousands of years and in all future until the end of the time, when the Creation together with all its creations contracts and lies itself in slumber in order to appear in the new awakening as Primal-Creation.
- 225) You humankind of Earth, you appeared at some point in the time and were created through the activity of the creational laws and recommendations, and to you it is given to gain out of the womb of the Creation, wherethrough you can learn and evolve in the consciousness; and thus you can create true love, knowledge and wisdom in yourselves, as well as peace, freedom and harmony, in order to spread all this outwards amongst your whole humankind.
- 226) And truly, since the beginning of all things of the Creation, everything remains stored in the collections of the time, in the storage-banks, whatever it may be, because all and everything, even the smallest speck of dust of a weight from every one of you human beings, is saved therein, so that not even a single iota ever goes lost.
- 227) And thus, you humankind of Earth, as you yourselves developmentally change in your current life and in all your many new personalities, which you were since time immemorial in always new births, so also the Creation itself changes developmentally, by creating in itself ever more love, knowledge and wisdom; this happens by it learning through your spirit-form which gives life to you and evolves itself spiritually by integrating into itself everything that you create in terms of love, knowledge and wisdom, and then your spirit-form will one day unite with the Creation itself, long after it no longer requires a human body, but evolves further only as a pure-spirit-form; then the Creation takes in from it everything that your spirit-form has learnt through your love, your knowledge and your wisdom over many reincarnations; through that which the Creation integrates into itself, it evolves itself spiritually, just like you as human beings do with regard to your consciousness.
- 228) You humankind of Earth, you do not always remain the same ones, whether you are now young or already in the old age, because you developmentally change in your inner nature, in your individuality, in the Wesen, as well as in your consciousness and on and in your body, because everything is included into the developmental change and it cannot be circumvented; even your spirit-form and the Creation itself are included in the change through the evolution and the enrichment of love, knowledge and wisdom and therefore are not permanently in their condition; thus the truth, the knowledge and the wisdom are also included into the developmental change, and indeed in the wise that they become ever more deep-grounding and more deep-reaching, the deeper you get into them, because through your searching, researching and fathoming you continuously gain further cognitions and cognisances.
- 229) You have since time immemorial been searching for the truth, but you constantly ask yourselves what the truth really is, because that which you today assume to be the truth, you will already tomorrow recognise it again as an erroneous assumption, but only because you have not really found the truth, but only a partial truth or something that you have assumed as belief, i.e. as fiction and which has no proof-power; recognise: truth is not belief, but truth is certainty in recognition of the reality.
- 230) Therefore you must strive to find the real truth, which does not leave open any doubt and is not subject to any erroneous assumptions, but you have to consider though that even in erroneous assumptions there may be truth-grains to discover that can lead to the effective truth.
- 231) Truth is, that all cognitions and revelations permanently change their forms in this wise, in that an achieved truth always brings with it further factors that must be researched and fathomed and logically lead to new cognitions, through which the truth deepeningly widens itself and continuously becomes increasingly relatively absolutely fully developed.
- 232) Therefore your life continues with the constant searching, researching and fathoming, in which case you ripen through the whole developmental change and change of the learning and the winning of cognitions,



knowledge, practical experiences and their living and become steadily wiser.

- 233) The truth in and of itself remains always the same in its core, does not change and is eternal, but it varies for you human beings in its depth in the wise that it is divided into uncountable steps, i.e. levels that must be climbed up one after the other; this can be compared to school classes, so the first class, i.e. step, i.e. level is the lowest, then following an exam the next class must be climbed up, then the next one and then the next one after that, until the highest class, which in the consciousness-evolution corresponds to the relative absolute full-development.
- 234) The truthfully truth of all truth, the creational truth of the laws and recommendations thus always remains the same in the depth of its core, does not change and is not subject to any developmental change, but to reach this core you, you humankind of Earth, must begin at the lowest level of the truth-cognition and slowly work yourselves deeper and deeper into the truth, layer by layer, step by step, level by level, through which your truth-cognition will steadily widen and become more and more compact, and you will constantly become more truth-knowing.
- 235) Since the creational truth of all truth is eternal and is relatively absolutely fully developed in its core as well as in and of itself, so it is, you humankind of Earth, in your earthly sense not comprehensible in its full deepness, therefore it can also never be pure and final for you, but only relatively absolutely fully developed according to what you are able to create in terms of effective truth according to your intellect and rationality.
- 236) In order that you can recognise and understand more of truth, it is necessary that you become more consciousness-based, i.e. that you use your consciousness more amply in an evolutive kind and wise, by being free of evil, negative, ungood and ausgeartet thoughts and feelings, so you yourselves become the truth and live in the truth, so you are in yourselves permanently irradiated by the light of the truth.
- 237) To learn the truthfully truth, which you alone can find in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations, you do not need to arduously learn a science, and you also do not need to fear erroneous assumptions, because if you recognise the real truth, then the answer to every question becomes obvious to you in the truth itself; yes, you gain very much more thereby, because the questions and the answers of the truth continuously widen and begin to comprise everything, because you comprehend more and more with your consciousness and live in the truth itself.
- 238) And understand, you humankind of Earth, the truth of all truth is of creational nature and given through the creational laws and recommendations; and in this form the real truth is the active basic significance of the effective knowledge, which is far from any doubt and any unprovable fiction, i.e. a belief; real truth is the concordance of the actual and contradictionless, uncontrovertible knowledge about the reality which in each form excludes any belief-based, i.e. fictive imagination; the criterion of the truth is the realisation of the truthful being, in which no theoretical values inhere, but solely and exclusively the reality, in which no belief, i.e. no unprovable fiction finds any place.
- 239) You humankind of Earth, burst all your bonds of the truth-unknowledgeness that hold you down, and become finally free in your consciousness, so that you may search consciously for the truth and strive for it; and if you are confronted with hindrances, then face them with joy, because they mean for you that you are on the right way and are treading the way of the truth in yourselves which is itself the truth and the culmination-point and on which you will find new energy and power.
- 240) Look at and consider all hindrances on the way of the truth as proof-stones, out of which you can learn and resolve your errors, so new cognitions and benefits grow out of them through which you are in turn able to master any hindrances that arise with ever greater ease.
- 241) Hindrances on the way of the truth are pushed in front of you so that you learn to master them and thereout win knowledge and wisdom and strengthen your requisite for the rise up to the real truth; there may also be hindrances that arise as the result of a guilt and that you must resolve through the truth-recognition in order to free yourselves from it; both forms of the hindrances bring you forwards, therefore you may not avoid them.
- 242) Be rational and do not speak of tests and strokes of fate that strike you in the life, because these serve your general progress and your consciousness-evolution; nothing happens without reason, so you must also accept fight and affliction if you want to achieve progress and evolution, since this gives you the opportunity to resolve errors and to extinguish transgressions of all kinds; and truly none of you, you humankind of Earth, can be released from even a minute speck of dust of a weight of errors and transgressions, therefore you must work up everything and direct it into the lines of the rightness and of the truth; consider that the running circle of the becoming and passing is anchored in the creational laws and is absolutely unmovable, so also is the becoming and passing of the errors and the transgressions that you commit and that are revealed to you through the learning, so that you can resolve and extinguish them and light up the darkness in you; and if this were not given so through the creational laws and recommendations, then the smallest deviation therefrom would bring all life to extinguishment and destroy the entire universe including everything existent.
- 243) Truly, those amongst you, you humankind of Earth, you who have very much to clear up from your life, be it



from today or out of the past, you shall not be faint-hearted, just as you also must not be horrified by the redemption of your guilt, because if you truthfully turn to the truth and are willing to resolve your errors and transgressions, then you can consolingly and joyfully begin with freeing yourselves from the bad, evil, negative, irresponsible, conscienceless, unrighteous and unfair in all things, so that you can therein without worries and without a bad conscience in honesty turn to that which is rightful, good and righteous, conscientious, responsible as well as positive and fair, so you have a good conscience.

- 244) Consider at all times that you can always create an equalisation through your energy and its power and through the honest will and motivated volition, through which other and positive thought-forms and out of them other and better feelings come to life in your consciousness, which as strong weapons make you capable of fighting victoriously against everything dark in you and of freeing yourselves from the burden and heaviness of the truth-unknowledge.
- 245) The energy and power of your thoughts and feelings as well as of your will and volition is for many of you an unexpected might that attracts all energies and powers of the same kind, like a magnet; and these attracted energies and powers grow ever-stronger and unite in turn with similar or equally directed consciousness-based mights that act backwards and return to the point of origin and thus in turn strike the sender of the thoughts and feelings; and thus you, who are senders and receivers, will be raised up to the good and the wellbeing, or you will be cast down and sink ever deeper in your own mud and dirt, depending on how you as originators of the whole determine and bring about everything.
- 246) Thus it is given that your thoughts and feelings swing out and strike your fellow human beings, as well as that you are also struck by the thoughts and feelings of your fellow human beings, so therefore an interaction is given, as in all things of everything existing in the whole realm of the Creation-universe.
- 247) And if you know this constant interaction that is absolutely certain to occur, that is given through all ways in the entire Creation-realm and that with absolute certainty unstopably triggers and unfolds itself again and again, then you can also use it and love it consciously and without fear; and if you comprehend this, then you can use your knowledge to impart many things through your thoughts and feelings to your fellow human beings that you cannot do through your words alone; and truly it is then also possible for you to be able to co-live the thoughts and feelings of your fellow human beings with them, because it is possible for you to perceive and logically follow their thought- and feeling-world, which has nothing to do with telepathy, however, but is a factor of empathy, i.e. of the ability for deep feelings for the others.
- 248) Through the empathy, the invisible thought- and feeling-world of your fellow human beings comes to life for you, step-by-step, and you receive their efficacy with such clarity that it dissolves every doubt in you, thus you can without making an error, take in and assess with absolute certainty the inner nature of thoughts and feelings of your next ones and fellow human beings.
- 249) You however, you humankind of Earth, you must first of all arduously learn these things, because you have refrained from doing so since time immemorial and have gone wrong ways of the life; you must also learn to receive consciously the strong energetical waves of the restless activity of the creational laws and recommendations that have an effect on you from out of the existence of the Creation; and if you pay only a little attention to it in a halfway conscious wise, then you will realise that the creational energies and their powers are very strong streams which effect in you very much of the positive, the good and the best as well as vitality and healing from all the unrighteous, inequitable, irresponsible and conscienceless as well as from truth-unknowledge, if you only use them consciously and willingly.
- 250) Truly, you are able through your thoughts and feelings and through your firm will to use the creational energy- and power-streams consciously, if you really want to; but you shall use the neutral creational energies and powers only for good and positive purposes, not however for evil and negative ones, so that you bring prosperousness to yourselves and to your humankind of Earth and not lead them into depravity; you shall with the creational and your own consciousness-based and physical energies and powers do works of the good and the best, for the relative absolute fulfilment of your consciousness-evolution; you shall not however light a blazing fire of the depravity that perverts your true inner nature into hatred, jealousy and war, into envy and stinginess as well as into unpeace, unfreedom, disharmony, crime and into all possible terrible things, as you have done entirely since time immemorial, wherethrough you have brought death, depravity and destruction upon your humankind and world and also still today call forth everything within the same frame.
- 251) If you do kindle a blazing fire, then it shall be a fire of the knowledge, of the wisdom and of the truth in yourselves, a fire of the joy and of the love, of the fairness, responsibility, of the conscientiousness and righteousness, through which there will finally be true peace and also true freedom, harmony and equality in you and amongst you all, you humankind of Earth.
- 252) And to achieve all these high values, it only requires the energy and power of your volition, through which you yourselves are the master of your life and hold the determination of your foreordination in your hands; truly, your own energy and power of your consciousness, of your thoughts and feelings and of your own volition



brings you into the highest heights, to the progress and to the consciousness-evolution, to the true love, to the inner and outer peace as well as to the freedom and harmony; therefore you create your reward and your punishment yourselves with inexorable certainty, depending on what thoughts and feelings you always nourish and what you complete with your works and deeds.

- 253) Be conscious that this knowledge leads you to the real truth and does not weaken your life, but rather strengthens it and builds it up.
- 254) The cognisance about the creational laws and recommendations and their modes of functioning can be used by you at any time, through which the life and all things of the existence, and the entirety of the creational appear far more sublime to you than before – if you have ever perceived this sublimity at all, in which edifying greatness is given.
- 255) And if you recognise the great sublimity of the Creation, its laws and recommendations and their truth of all truth, then you, you humankind of Earth, can no longer want any evil, because you then reach for the true love, the best support that exists for you ever; the miraculous Creation itself with all its created creations, its works, everything existent, is the love itself, and you shall follow suit, you humankind of Earth, and you shall also love your next ones, your fellow human beings and your whole humankind, in order to also bring the truth to all of them, so that they also may find the true love, the peace, the freedom and the harmony in themselves and in turn pass them on outwardly.
- 256) If you search for cognition and for the effective truth, then do not entangle yourselves in confused thoughts and feelings, as well as not in the irrational teachings of the garden of the irrational belief, in which the rotten fruit of the gods, tin gods and idolised human beings invented through people of your kind pollute everything.
- 257) Do not let yourselves be deceived through priests of belief and the like, who worship godheads and tin gods, as you shall also not fall prey to the deception with regard to idolised human beings.
- 258) Do not let yourselves be made irrational through the god-worshippers and do not assume that through an eternal law an atonement-coercion lies upon you that you cannot push from you nor transfer to someone else, because truthfully there is no such atonement-coercion through an original sin or the like, because all such things only correspond to a senseless invention of people of your kind, you humankind of Earth.
- 259) Truth is, that there is no coercion for atonement, because everything that you load onto yourselves, you hold against yourselves, therefore you also in yourselves must stand up for it and give account for it, and indeed for all your thoughts and feelings and for your words; you are accountable only to yourselves for the thoughts and feelings you nourish and cherish and the false and evil words you speak or write; but you can also be accountable externally, if you do wrong deeds and works that bring disadvantage to others in any wise, through which you stand in their debt and you will be called to account by them or by the jurisdiction; however, you must never make atonement to a godhead or a tin god, because all of them are only fantasiful inventions through people of your kind, in which no energy and power is inherent and which in their insubstantiality and nonexistence are not able to even change the colour of a single hair on your head.
- 260) What you therefore bring upon yourselves in terms of thoughts and feelings, vices, addictions, stinginess and envy, passions, bad character, unvirtues, lovelessness, jealousy and strife, inequity, irresponsibility, as well as unrighteousness, respectlessness, decencilessness and consciencelessness etc., no-one can solve, resolve and lead into the right lines except you yourselves; if it were otherwise, then the real truth of all truth would be merely an insignificance, and thus the whole Creation, the universal consciousness and universe, would collapse in itself, yes, the whole could not even have arisen and therefore could not have become existent.
- 261) As you yourselves are responsible for all and everything, you must free yourselves from all senseless belief-teachings, forget every imaginary godly coercion for atonement and set yourselves a culmination-point in the truthfully truth, so that you, you humankind of Earth, strive only for this culmination-point and cast away and dissolve every belief.
- 262) If mere words are your truth, this avails you nothing, not even if you can recite long words and phrases word-for-word out of the memory and thus assume that you can therewith teach yourselves and your fellow human beings; truly all this doing avails you nothing if you have not found the real truth and do not act according to it, if you do not direct and arrange your thoughts and feelings and your whole earthly existence according to the effective truth; but if you do this, then it must be an implicitness for you, that has practically passed over into your flesh and blood and that cannot be separated from you any more; and only if this is so, will you be able to gain out of the eternal truth the values of the consciousness-evolution, of the true love, the peace, the freedom and harmony, and indeed in the wise how everything is given through the message of the truth that you bear in yourselves and how it is realised through the creational recommendations and laws.
- 263) You shall recognise yourselves by your own values, by your thoughts and feelings, by your deeds, by your activities and by everything you do, to which your words and speeches that you make in the daily life of your earthly existence also belong; thus also your thoughts and feelings belong to your doing, which in their



effects must not be underestimated, so you cannot think that thoughts and feelings are 'duty free', and in this regard you think that you cannot be brought to account for them, because they take place on a level that is unreachable through material hands and courts; but therein you delude yourselves in the wise, because you will be called to account for them sooner or later in yourselves.

- 264) If you, you humankind of Earth, nourish thoughts and feelings in an unconsiderate wise, then you unconsiderately indulge in a dangerous game and in an unconsiderate delusion, that you can come forth out of it untouched, but you are tremendously wrong in this, because your thoughts and feelings belong to your inner coarse-substantialness, therefore they also carry out their effects in yourselves, to which you must bow, and indeed whether you want to or not; this means however that the consequences of your own thoughts and feelings sooner or later demand accountability from you, therefore you must stand up for them in your own inner nature, because only therethrough can the consciousness raise itself up with regard to its evolution.
- 265) Search for the truth in your thoughts and let them also jointly swing in your feelings in such a wise that only everything noble awakens in you, so you do not sink into confusing lownesses and you do not imagine that no-one can perceive your thoughts and feelings.
- 266) Thoughts, feelings, words and external actions are equal to all coarse-substantialness of your consciousness and your body, but the thoughts and feelings have an effect into the levels of the fine coarse-substantial, the words and speeches on the other hand in a middle coarse-substantial-realm, whereas the external deeds belong in the densest and coarsest coarse-substantial-level.
- 267) The three forms of the coarse-substance-levels of the thoughts and feelings as well as of the words, speeches and the deeds are closely connected with each other, therefore also their effects are intermeshing and have an incisive and determining effect on the developmental change of your life, which you, however, firstly are not capable of appraising and realising.
- 268) Truth is, that each conscious or unconscious thought and each thereout resulting feeling continue to be automatically active in their kind once they are created; in their middle coarse-substantialness they can strengthen themselves and thus become even more powerful forms than they were at their creation, and in this strengthening they can continue to effect until coarse-substantial deeds result out of them, without you, you humankind of Earth, being able to realise immediately that these are a result of your strengthened thoughts and feelings.
- 269) If you comprehend everything and become knowing in it, then you will be astonished about this in your thoughts and feelings because you will recognise the unconsiderateness and carelessness in your thought- and feeling-world, as well as the fact what might the thoughts and feelings have and what all in the good or evil can be negatively wrought or positively brought forth with them.
- 270) Through your thoughts and feelings alone, you humankind of Earth, you are involved in many good and bad actions of your fellow human beings without being conscious of it, because you do not strive for the cognition of the things and not for their truth, but go forth irresponsibly and unconcernedly in the life.
- 271) Consider, you, as humankind of Earth, are a we-form and as such are connected more or less with one another through your thoughts and feelings as well as through your subconsciousness, and as you nourish and cherish negative or positive thoughts and feelings, so they strengthen themselves once you call them forth, and in this strengthening they can strike any of your fellow human beings, through which they awake something resting in them that they bring to the coarse effect, although they had never previously thought about bringing it out and realising it; therefore you comprehensively bear the responsibility for your thoughts and feelings also for your fellow human beings, at least for those who are influenced through your mental and feeling-based impulsations and thereout carry out corresponding deeds or call forth thoughts and feelings in themselves of the same kind.
- 272) So many of your fellow human beings very often have thoughts and feelings in them or carry out actions that in their origin lead back to you yourselves and that through the strengthening take effect in the others and call forth the corresponding reactions, which they then themselves reject and condemn, although they, like you, are also jointly responsible for them in accordance with the creational laws and recommendations, because they nonetheless act from out of themselves with the foreign thoughts and feelings that are striking them; and thus you can have thoughts and feelings for any things in you that you would never carry out into deeds etc., however, your fellow human being who has been struck by your thoughts and feelings, and who is not able to work them out and bring them under control, does carry them out.
- 273) Consider such processes and search for the truth with regard to the effects of the thoughts and feelings, so that you learn to understand rightly and keep the hearth of your thoughts and feelings free and do not wreak terribleness, but rather create true love in you, as well as peace, freedom and harmony, and therefore high values that you shall carry forth through the swinging waves of your thought- and feeling-world to your fellow human beings and to the entire earthly humankind, so that war, hatred, jealousy, strife, inequity, disharmony,



irresponsibility and consciencelessness come to an end as well as the unpeace, unfreedom, torture, the death penalty and all other terrible things with which you humankind of Earth are burdened.

- 274) You must therefore clean yourselves and become stable and strong in a good and positive wise in your thoughts and feelings, because only therethrough will the many crimes and unrighteousnesses as well as Ausartungen of all kinds happen less and decrease more and more, of which many amongst you are heavily co-guilty without you knowing it, because you do not care about it and also do not know the truth.
- 275) Consider, the swinging waves of your thoughts and feelings always impinge there, where they come upon equalities, therefore upon thoughts and feelings of the same or similar kind, in which case distance is of no significance, since the swinging waves are so fast that they hurry around the world in a fraction of a second and strike your fellow human beings at the farthest parts of Earth and bring about new effects in them.
- 276) So it is given that negative or positive thoughts and feelings from you individuals, you humankind of Earth, can bring about good or evil in all the world, by striking individual people of your kind, small or large groups or even whole peoples who are aligned to your thoughts and feelings; thus they can then forcibly trigger deeds and actions that are completely different in their forms to your mental and feeling-based impulsations, and yet nonetheless find their origin therein.
- 277) Since your thoughts and feelings swing out into the world and somewhere strike any of your fellow human beings, so you carry co-responsibility for their actions, and indeed both in the negative and in the positive; it can also be that when carrying out deeds and actions, abominable things happen which you yourselves had never thought of, the origin of their coming about, however, still leads back to your own thoughts and feelings; truthly you are in constant connection with all your fellow human beings and their deeds and actions, whereas you yourselves are also struck by the returning effects of the thoughts, feelings, deeds and actions, which burden your consciousness and through which a building up of going in a circle results.
- 278) Due to the fact that amongst you, you humankind of Earth, a building up of going in a circle of your thoughts and feelings as well as your deeds and actions exists as a permanent connection, you must not only developmentally change towards the truth of all truth and follow the creational laws and recommendations as individuals but as a whole humankind.
- 279) As individuals you can only be efficacious on a small scale and encourage people of your kind to the rationality so that they turn to the effective creational truth and to the following of the laws and recommendations, but in order to really let true love grow in the whole humankind, as well as peace, freedom and harmony, righteousness, fairness and responsibility as well as conscientiousness and a clear following of the creational laws and recommendations, it is necessary that every single one amongst you, you humankind of Earth, gives ample consideration to the real truth and to all the high creational values and to the following of the laws and recommendations.
- 280) And truly, you, you humankind of Earth, can also contribute strongly as individuals to the love, peace, freedom and harmony and to the happiness of all humankind, even if you can be efficacious only on a small scale, because you can be glad and have pure and joyful thoughts for good deeds that others do and that unfold both near and far through their own as well as your good, healthy and positive thoughts and feelings, whose swinging waves they receive from you and which they evaluate to the good and positive; and from this, of which you shall be certain, streams everything equally and prosperously back to you again, even if you do not know it and if you do not consciously perceive it.
- 281) So you, you humankind of Earth, are entirely connected with each other, and as a developmental change to the good, to true love, freedom and harmony as well as to the peace amongst all of you shall be called forth and emerge, it is necessary that you altogether connect yourselves together in these high values through your thoughts and feelings, build them up in yourselves and jointly nourish and cherish them, since only through that can everything become truth and reality; so listen to those individuals amongst you who strive for it and do rightfully, and heed the «Teaching of the Prophets», the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit and the teaching of the life, which is given through the «Goblet of the Truth», so that you finally comprehend and follow the creational laws and recommendations and lead a life in delight and truth.
- 282) You must finally perceive and acknowledge the unmovable strength of character and of all virtues of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, because solely in their effects is everything given that leads to the truthly knowledge and the real truth, which gives you also wisdom and lets you become true human beings, so you become worthy of consciously receiving the great goodness, which the Creation gives you through your life and therewith also gives everything which is intended for your human consciousness. (In the "strength of character and of all virtues", everything is included: All high values such as love, peace, freedom harmony, positive-negative-equalisedness and all virtues.)
- 283) And if you use everything rightfully that the Creation with its laws and recommendations has given you, then you will thankfully and in joy change everything in such a wise to the good and best, that you can pass it on to your fellow human beings and to all those created creations, which are capable of a good and positive



developmental change through you human beings.

- 284) Do not remain cut off from all that which the Creation has given you for your life in the good and positive, also the energy and power of your consciousness, so that you use this in the sense of the evolution and do not suffer a decline in it; do not let yourselves sink deeper than you have already sunk, but strive for the real truth of all truth and fall away from your god-belief and from your belief in tin gods and idolised human beings, so that you go towards better times and a high-swinging humanhood.
- 285) Heed the truth as it is given to you in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations, and as it is also taught to you through the «Teaching of the Prophets», so that you find the vitality of the real truth and also experience it in yourselves.
- 286) Finding the truth is hard for you human beings of Earth, but it becomes continuously easier for you the more you get into it and win cognitions, knowledge as well as wisdom and thereout fulfilments, which make miracle over miracle of the creational goodness and beauty just as recognisable in you as they also make great miracles visible and accessible in the outer.
- 287) Be careful on the way to the truth, because if you go unattentively and do not heed and overcome all hindrances and dangers that result out of the unrightness of your thoughts and feelings, then the might of that starts to unfold which constrains you into very distinct forms of specific purposes that are based on your own wishes, which fulfil themselves and shall thereby leave aside the truth; and truly this might and danger can devour you, so you go down in it, if you tread the way of the truth unattentively – because consider, your old goods of thoughts and your old feelings try again and again to break through to hinder the learning and fathoming as well as the following of the truth, because the time-immemorial belief-factors are of immense strength and do not want to be pushed away or dissolved.
- 288) When searching for and fathoming the truth, guard yourselves against crampfully directing your thoughts and feelings in a fighting wise against the untruth of the time-immemorial and against the untruth of the religious, ideological and philosophical belief; fighting against the untruth does not mean to go in quarrelsomeness against it, rather taking up a defensive position in accordance with the gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit, so as to put everything untruthly and thus everything belief-based in its proper place; if however you do not act in this wise, then you force yourselves again into distinct lines and further your unfreedom as well as the unpeace and disharmony in yourselves, through which your striving becomes a ridiculous imposture and coercion and shows no lasting value, because truthly nothing is learnt and the great effect of a permanence never comes; fight-based strivings mean Gewalt and coercion, and such bring no advantage, but only great disadvantage, therefore you must refrain from them and turn to the free unfolding of the truth, and indeed in the wise, that you willingly and without aggression against the untruth extend your hand to the real truth and bring everything untruthly to a standstill by only accepting the truthly and the truth itself, if you have found it; only thus can you fight against the untruth without quarrelsomeness in gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit and win against it, so you go forth with the truth as victors in true greatness.
- 289) Think of the word of the truth that true greatness is uncomplicated and uncomplicatedness is true greatness, as well as uncomplicatedness is true simplicity and modesty, which you must nourish and cherish in your thoughts and feelings, so that you do not go overboard therein in one wise or another, through which you can no longer control them.
- 290) Consider that you cannot bring your thoughts and feelings into a real purity with a thought-volition alone, because the volition thereto must come forth and rise up simply and unrestrictedly out of your inner nature, and it cannot be put into words, because words can only very restrictedly let the whole arise in a term.
- 291) The all-embracing natural instinct to the good and to the best must come out of the core of your inner nature itself, so that that which gets mightfully into your thoughts and feelings and also enwraps them can arise, so that the natural instinct of the volition proceeds from out of it and takes that form which is that right thing which you need.
- 292) And know, that it is quite difficult to give enough consideration to the natural instinct of your inner nature, but it is not as very difficult as you think, if you let modesty and simplicity prevail over you, and if you do not bring your rational and intellectual conceit and your overly boastful ability and your imagined power into play.
- 293) Let yourselves be free of your megalomaniacal thoughts and feelings as well as of the imagination that you would be greater than the Creation and absolute rulers of the life; let the core of your inner nature and its natural instinct for good, the best and higher break forth; let the noble and good in you be free, so you can create in yourselves a new foundation of your thought- and feeling-world that correspond to the capabilities of your consciousness; and if you act accordingly, then you can quietly leave what emerges out of it to the work of rationality and intellect as well as to the realisation in every right form, because in this wise nothing unright can form itself out of it.
- 294) Cast far from you all that which tortures you in your thoughts and feelings and trust thereby the intellect and the rationality; make the consciousness free, which will itself rightly open the way of the life and the way to



the real truth and to the creational laws and recommendations, if you do not restrain yourselves against this and obstruct everything through an irrational brickwork of any belief in godheads, tin gods, religions, ideologies, philosophies and idolised human beings.

- 295) To become free in your consciousness means that you shall let the consciousness in you go its evolutive way, because it is determined by nature and through the creational laws and recommendations, to go towards the height of the relative absolute full-development; you however, you humankind of Earth, are holding it back from this, because through wrong thought- and feeling-based as well as deed-based machinations you work against it and as a result put it in chains, through which it can no longer freely unfold itself.
- 296) Cleanse your thoughts and feelings, because they are the most important factors of your evolution and leading of life, and through them you must create a new humankind which comprehensively follows the creational laws and recommendations, and leads its life according to their truth, so that there will finally be true love amongst you human beings of Earth, so you can, in yourselves as individuals as well as groups and peoples, live in real freedom and harmony as well as in truthly peace.
- 297) And you must begin with your thoughts and feelings, so that you bring them under control, to the rationality and righteousness as well as to the fulfilment of the responsibility and to the conscientiousness and to the rightful in all things; this is the first task you have to master and which makes you slowly but surely to what you shall be, namely true human beings in dignity and humaneness.
- 298) You shall be a shining example for yourselves and for all your fellow human beings that strives ever further for truth and love.
- 299) And you shall be thankful for your life, and indeed through the whole kind of your existence as well as through the following of the Creation-given laws and recommendations, so that it may go well with you; and if you fulfil this duty, then you need no other guidance.
- 300) If you fulfil the duties of the life in this wise, as they are pre-given through the laws and recommendations of the Creation in the wise that you can carry them out and fulfil them according to your own intellect and your own rationality and according to your own choosing, then you will receive all helps of the existence, which await in creational laws and recommendations, so that you make them useful for you and thereby go upwards in your consciousness-evolution.



Chapter 26

- 1) With only a few exceptions, you human beings of Earth have fallen prey to a boundless and fateful erroneous assumption, because you assume that your belief in godheads and tin gods as well as in idolised human beings is the truth of all truth, and that the truth is dependent on you according to whether you believe in it or not.
- 2) Know, however, that the truth does not need to run after you and impose itself upon you, because truthly the necessity lies with you for you to search for the truth and for you betake yourselves to the truth so that you may understand it and become knowing about it.
- 3) However, because you do not find the truth alone, because you are guided into the unreal through your belief in gods, tin gods, idolised human being as well as through religions, ideologies and philosophies, proclaimers of the truth have, on their own initiative, sent themselves out to you in order to teach and admonish you, so that you refrain from all of your belief and you turn solely to the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, in which you are just as much able to find the truth as in yourselves.
- 4) However, in spite of the proclaimers of the truth teaching you through the 'Teaching of the Prophets' and bringing you the 'Goblet of the Truth', you laugh at them and expose them to ridicule.
- 5) You disregard the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and you drag it down into the realm of your unintellect and your irrationality, and through your thoughts and feelings you create a devaluation of the truth itself, as well as of the Creation and of its laws and recommendations, which is, however, an characterlessness beyond compare.
- 6) Truly, your wrong thoughts and feelings and your equally wrong understanding wreak not only great harm in yourselves but also in your fellow human beings and indeed amongst all of you, you human beings of Earth.
- 7) It is particularly through the attitude of your priests and theologians, preachers and sect leaders as well as ideologues and philosophers that you are held away from the real truth and coerced to the belief in their irrational teachings, because they falsely present you the illusion that the religious, sectarian, ideological or philosophical belief is the real truth of all truth; through that, they are wanting to proselytise you to their own



belief and to win you over to this through conviction.

- 8) However, all of this does not contribute to you finding the effective truth which is given alone through the Creation and its laws and recommendations, in fact quite the opposite it leads you away from the truth and from the Creation and immoderately increases in you the already pronounced conceit and delusion of your own importance, through which you are put into the delusion that you should have to be asked to do good and to become truthly human beings in humaneness; this is an overbearingness beyond compare from you, because you yourselves must strive without being requested to do good, to become true human beings in humaneness and to behave also as such towards all the created creations and everything else that exists.
- 9) However, truly, with your belief and with your peculiar attitude, you are in the bulk of the humankind still far from the being human in the real and true sense and far from the humaneness, because in your belief in godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings you are as examples exceedingly deterring ones.
- 10) Numbering in the thousand millions, you feel yourselves great and strong and you live in an overbearing satisfaction with regard to the fact that you are believers in gods, tin gods or human beings and you beseechingly offer wretchedly submissive prayers to them, through which you present yourselves the illusion to have an elevated state of your consciousness as well as of your thoughts and feelings, whereas however you are doing unright, evil, unrighteous, irresponsible, criminal, unfair and conscienceless things, and you are indulging in hatred and jealousy, pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation as well as in strife, war, torture, lies, cheating, calumny, theft and whatever else there is that is of the terribleness, of the Ausartung and of the depravity; in so doing, you truly do not realise that in your belief you are doing things which can never be reconciled with the true love and with the truth of all truth and therefore also not with the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 11) It is in the consciousness-based elevated state brought about through the belief and in all the evil that you do as a result that you feel in yourselves a satisfaction which you for your obedience erroneously interpret as thanks to your god, tin god or idolised human being, thereby imagining a connection with it or him; and not rarely do you thereby imagine in yourselves also a feeling of happiness and feeling of joy when, in your belief-delusion, you sink into a submissive trembling.
- 12) Human beings of Earth, you are manifold throngs of believers of different religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies as well as of all kinds of political orientations which are wrong beyond compare and are far from the effective truth and rightness.
- 13) Through your belief-edifices, you live blindly in a false, imaginary reality, and in your self-created delusion, you believe that you live in love and happiness.
- 14) Very many amongst you, you human beings of Earth, with regard to your belief and its exercise, are bigots, fanatics and other zealots, hypocrites, boasters and deceivers as well as slanderers, haughty fools, swaggerers and megalomaniacs, which you entirely also carry over into your inner and outer life, thereby creating hatred and jealousy, unpeace, unfreedom, torture, war, death penalty, disharmony, criminality and all evil, terrible things and Ausartungen in the world.
- 15) You harbour false thanks in your thoughts and feelings, and in your irrational belief you indulge in giving thanks to your god or tin god in imperiousness for not being like the others, through which you want to make yourselves better than you are, whereby you raise yourselves up megalomaniacally over your fellow human beings, despite the fact that you are no more and no better than them, namely fallible human beings who must first strive for the truth and must understand it in order to become true, responsible, conscientious and righteous human beings through the following of the truth.
- 16) In many cases, you do not speak what you think, rather you lie to your fellow human beings, hypocritically feigning love and inclination, although you find them unsympathetic and despise them, and the many amongst you who do this, you are cowardly against the truth, because you do not dare to pronounce it and you fear that your prestige might suffer setbacks and material loss if you speak the truth.
- 17) And when you lie or thank your god or tin god, then you are thereby creating thoughts for yourselves through which uplifting feelings arise, whereas in fact in your deeper inner, in your inner nature, nothing else but a gaping void prevails.
- 18) Your feeling-based elevated state is, as a rule, nothing more than a wanted reaction of your thoughts in order to create a gratification for yourselves.
- 19) And those amongst you who bow down in submissiveness before your god or tin god or before an idolised human being, kneeling down or casting yourselves into the dust before it or him, you are in reality very far from having esteem for yourselves and for the real truth.
- 20) In your submissiveness, you will never find yourselves nor the truth, because your inner self and the truth do not demand submissiveness, but rather esteem, courage, dignity and venerability.
- 21) You do not achieve a true inner condition of the real truth, of the true love, freedom and harmony, peace and upright delightedness through submissiveness, and indeed not even if you believe that you will already certainly



have them.

- 22) Liberate yourselves from each form of the submissiveness, from the being doggish and from the dignityless subjugation, and see that you do not lose yourselves in your imperiousness, in the megalomania and haughtiness, which you wrongly believe to be esteem, courage and dignity.
- 23) All of those amongst you who are without any religious, sectarian, ideological, political or philosophical belief and are without submissiveness, you will find it very much easier to search for the truthly truth and to study it carefully than those who have fallen prey to any belief whatsoever; truly, many amongst you have however fallen prey to the conceited submissiveness, through which you do not see the reality and therefore doggish-submissively ask your invented god, tin god or idolised human being for help, although you must help yourselves in every wise.
- 24) You cannot stand before a god, tin god or idolised human being in order for it or him to reward you for your beseeching, doggish-submissive requests, prayers and sanctimonious words, because they are powerless and only hazy forms of your delusion.
- 25) Your beseeching requests and prayers are only cowardly demands, because in your belief you cannot bring forth the esteem, courage and dignity to help yourselves in every respect and wise; however, this corresponds to a hypocrisy, since through your beseeching requests and prayers to a god, tin god, to saints, angels or an idolised human being you are chickenheartedly concealing your own incapability.
- 26) And as you conceal your own incapability, you also deny the truth in the same form, the truth that is given through the Creation in its laws and recommendations; and through your lying and rejection of the truth, everything is whirling wildly around in your thoughts and feelings like empty chaff that is devoid of the valuable grain.
- 27) Your own incapability is built up on a wrong, silent and submissive expectation with regard to something better, that shall be given to you by your godhead, your tin god or idolised human being, your saint or angel, and this expectation is in reality nothing other than a selfish, brazen and hypocritical demanding arising from out of your cowardice; and it is chickenheartedness, even if everything is expressed in such beautiful and beseeching words, which prove that you yourselves are not great and powerful enough to liberate yourselves from the believing and connect yourselves with the effective truth, in order to help yourselves out of it.
- 28) And those amongst you human beings of Earth who are hypocrites, the reward therefor will be certain, but quite different than you think, because due to the fact that you satiate yourselves with your hypocrisy, disadvantage will be given to you in your consciousness-evolution, and indeed in the same measure as the unvalue that you yourselves create.
- 29) Your well-feeling in your hypocrisy, however, also passes from you if you are shunned through your fellow human beings for your wrong-doing, so your thoughts and feelings cause you certain pains and your conscience stirs in a disagreeable wise.
- 30) Each of your hypocritical demands is an overbearingness beyond compare which you can never vindicate if you in truth guide your life according to the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 31) You shall not ask and not beseech, but rather give enough consideration to the truth by mobilising in yourselves your energies and their powers and help yourselves according to the best of your ability in all conceivable things of the consciousness-evolution, which is exceedingly extensive and has very many things inherent in it.
- 32) You shall only request external, material help in modesty from your fellow human beings, because only in this wise can you expect help, whereas with regard to your evolutive consciousness-concerns as well as your inner nature, your individuality, your character and your personality, you can help yourselves only alone, because only you alone are able to change and evolve yourselves in these things.
- 33) Even the true prophets who come to you are unable to change you, because you can really only do this alone for yourselves, hence they only bring you the teaching of what you shall do in order to call forth a developmental change to the good and best in yourselves; and the proclaimers of the truth do not entreat you and do not demand anything from you either, because they merely bring the message of the truth in a neutral wise and warn so that you yourselves may work on yourselves in order to give enough consideration to the truth of the life and to guide your existence in love, fairness, in peace, freedom, conscientiousness, harmony, righteousness and responsibility.
- 34) The proclaimers of the truth, the true prophets, they only give you explanations with regard to the truth and sign-postings for your life-conduct, in return for which they are not thinking about enticing rewards for themselves; and as they themselves do not demand any reward for their teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life that they bring, therefore they do not either promise you any enticing rewards if you turn to the real truth and to the true life according to the creational laws and recommendations; you must give yourselves any reward for your endeavours through building up in yourselves a general mental as well as feeling-based and thereout psychical and consciousness-based wellbeing, in true love, freedom and harmony as well as in inner peace – therefore go forth and act accordingly, you human beings of Earth.



- 35) With your demanding, you are always standing before yourselves, when you enticingly beseech, entreat and pray, as you also stand only before yourselves with your complaints and sorrows, because you must also arrange, reconcile and master these things with yourselves and in yourselves; truly, there is in fact no god or tin god as well as also no idolised or other human being who can take away your complaints and sorrows and master them for you, because you can at all times only in yourselves and alone master and overcome everything.
- 36) Truly, when those amongst you, human beings of Earth, you who in your belief in a godhead, a tin god, idolised or other human being continue to place demands in hypocrisy, instead of carefully studying the truth and guiding your lives accordingly, then – in your badness and in your vacillation – you remain lying in the gloom of your truth-unknowledgeness, and you cannot dedicate yourselves to the upwards striving to the true life and being human in the real and true sense; truthly, in this wise you are continuously exposed to the attacks out of the darkness of the truth-unknowledge, through which you cannot come to realise your erroneous assumption of your belief in a godhead, a tin god, saints, angels or an idolised human being, and you cannot free yourselves from the false religions, ideologies and philosophies.



Chapter 27

- 1) Save yourselves from your outrages, human beings of Earth, and use the time that is given to you for your current life so that you may learn the truth and follow the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 2) You are looking for the truth of the Creation, but you give yourselves up to a belief in godheads and tin gods as well as in human beings whom you glorify.
- 3) Beware of any belief which you assume to be the truth in your intellectual conceit, because each belief drives you into the arms of the truth-unknowing darkness, which triumphantly hooks its claws into your consciousness and confuses you to such an extent that your thoughts and feelings vegetate away in continuous religious, ideological or philosophical erroneous assumption.
- 4) Wake up and look into the light of the truth so that you may tremble enormously in your intellect and in your rationality, which through your belief have fallen into narrowness, through which you cannot recognise the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 5) Your narrowness of intellect and rationality does not concern itself with the effective truth of the Creation, but rather, on the one hand, with your belief-forms of the religious, ideological and philosophical erroneous assumption and, on the other hand, with the entire earthly passingness of those things which you regard as material values.
- 6) Truly, you swarm around the material things of your existence as if they were a golden jewel in order to take delight in them; but you are also like an insect because you swarm around your material things like moths swarm around the light of the fire; and just as moths precipitate unwantedly into the fire and burn, so it is with you with your consciousness, the thoughts, feelings and the psyche which are harmed through exposure to Ausartungen and remain far from all truthly truth.
- 7) You consciously shatter the truth in yourselves in disappointment and rage due to your arduous life through your belief in religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies, because you disregard the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life which is given to you through the 'Goblet of the Truth', through the 'Teaching of the Prophets' and through which you can find the rise up to the light of the creational truth if you refrain from your belief-conceit in a godhead, a tin god or human beings whom you raise up into idols, masters, sublime ones and god-equivalents.
- 8) And it is through your belief in godheads and tin gods invented through people of your kind and in human beings whom you raise up into idols and god-equivalents, that you shatter the true love and create a delusive apparent love in you which you rapidly change into hatred and jealousy as well as into wrong fairness and which you use in order to go forth in your pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation, in order to torture, to kill and to wage war against all those whom you look at and consider as enemies; and in doing so you have the audacity to lie that the love and fairness of your fabricated godhead or your tin god demand punishment, revenge, punitive retribution and war to be meted out upon your enemies.
- 9) Your shattering of the truth, the love and the fairness is the living symbol of your far-from-the-truth Ausartung, by which the bulk of your humankind is befallen.
- 10) You bulk of the human beings of Earth, you do not care about the cognisance and knowledge of the effective



truth, because in your far-from-the-truth, unconsiderate doing of your hubris, you reject everything that complies with the truth and the creationally true life, in order to beseech, beg and pray to self-appointed gods in doggish submissiveness, as well as dancing around tin gods that you have formed yourselves, thus bringing fulfilment to your own wrong and unfair wishes.

- 11) Again and again, however, you run into your own repercussion and create retribution for yourselves through war and hatred because you recklessly repudiate the love and the truth and act in every respect against the creational laws and recommendations, because truthly you are embittered through your misguided belief and the false teachings of the untruth of your fabricated godheads and tin gods as well as those human beings whom you raise up as idols and god-equivalents; you believe the lies of their irrational teachings which speak of godly love and fairness but which, in the same breath, demand revenge and retribution and war against all your enemies, so that you punish, torture and murder them, and thus the question arises, where therein is still true love and fairness.
- 12) In your malicious and ausgeartet doing of your ongoing outrage with regard to hatred, jealousy, strife, murder and manslaughter, war, terror, crime as well as lying, cheating, calumny, hypocrisy and theft in all conceivable forms, you only create complaints, affliction, misery, sorrow and destruction all around without you finding time for reflection or listening to a request for grace and true help; and if you do provide help and grant grace then you do not do it in true love, modesty and kindheartedness, but only for your own sakes so that you may assuage your guilty consciences; and truly there are very many amongst you who act in this wise without having any true thoughts and feelings, but rather only those of the selfishness and Ausartung.
- 13) Truly, many amongst you human beings of Earth who let yourselves be incited through your desires, you find no time to turn to the true love and the creational truth and all the beauties of the Creation which it has given to you through the nature and the life; truly, you prefer to break the skull of your next one in hatred, jealousy, in strife and in pathological craving for revenge, provide murderous assisted dying and wage bloody wars because the evil gives you joy and satisfies your murderous lust-feelings.
- 14) You who are the abominable fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth, in your primitive overbearingness you think yourselves to be wise, naming yourselves god-fearing, kind, loving, fair, responsible, conscientious and righteous, but truthly none of this corresponds to one minute iota of the truth, because you are entirely obsessed by the opposite and you lead your existence in Ausartung and licentiousness; and that you disclose your vast dumbness with your false assertions, shows that you neither know nor understand the truthly truth, because you do not want to accept it, through which you are not capable of creating true love in yourselves either.
- 15) You who are the fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth, you are the evil ones and the bad ones amongst you human beings of Earth, because you are the ones who wage wars and wreak tremendous destruction, who convey human beings murderously into the death through assisted dying, who murder innocent ones through terror-acts, who harbour hatred, make jealousy and strife into part of your everyday lives, commit lying and cheating and all kinds of crime, theft and other terrible things; you have become troublesome vermin on Earth which knows nothing else than obstinacy, malevolence, pathological craving and licentiousness as well as characterlessness and virtuelessness in the most terrible Ausartung.
- 16) Truly, you fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth, you are the complete ignominy of the humankind and you disregard the norms of the humankind and of the life, through which you also drag those who are innocent in the things of the fallibility into the dirt and bring them into disrepute, just as you in your heinousness have fallen prey to the ostracism, the unhonour, the ignominy and indecency; you vilify the light of the truth because in your characteral and human depravity, you persistently dig in the gloom of the evil, looking for spitefulness, guile, envy, anger and rage against your next ones and against all righteous ones, fair ones, conscientious ones and responsible ones because they do rightfully, and they rebuke you according to right and law; you as fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth, you have long since lost the sight that would allow you to freely search for the truth of all truth in the laws and recommendations of the Creation in order to direct yourselves upwards thereon, because you have become too cowardly to search for, to recognise and to bear the light of the truth.
- 17) You fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth who ridicule the conscientious ones, upright ones and righteous ones, the responsible ones and fair ones amongst you, you mark yourselves through your doing and behaviour, which also makes you tumble backwards blindly as soon as the light of the truth shines out anywhere; then you sink without hope of rescue into the opening of a dark abyss, as a result of which you are totally unable to find the way of the truth in yourselves, the way that is itself the truth and the culmination-point; and because you go into the unreal in this wise, you make yourselves into depraved ones who are sucked up by the abyss of the evil when you precipitate into it.
- 18) You are seized in an unescapable clutch of the evil out of which you cannot free yourselves without the help of the truth; and help can only be offered to you through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit,



the teaching of the life which is brought to you through the true proclaimers of the truth as «Teaching of the Prophets», as «Goblet of the Truth», through the explanations included therein of what you shall do and what you shall refrain from doing, and what you must go about and master in yourselves alone through your own power and your own will.

- 19) Make an effort to strive for the light and the teaching of the truth and to find the way to the cognition in you; you must liberate yourselves from your overbearingness and from your desire to hunt for cheap fripperies of the evil instead of the real truth which is equivalent to dear gold.
- 20) Do not continue to sink into the ruin-bringing horror which you have given yourselves in your hard-necked greed for unfairness and evil, for unrighteousness, consciencelessness, irresponsibility as well as for war and destruction, murder and everything that is terrible.
- 21) But truly, you are little human beings, who zealously strive in your ridiculous pattern-knowledge, the pseudo-knowledge of the school-knowledge, the religions, sects, ideologies, the politology and the sciences as well as the philosophies, and push everything far into the foreground and therewith boast yourselves and want to shine, but what is all that compared to the effective truth of all truth as is given through the Creation and its laws and recommendations, through which everything existent has come about; and you cannot obfuscate all of this in spite of your lies and malicious remarks, in spite of your calumnies and negation of the truth, because as little human beings you are too tiny to disrupt the machinery and the uncontrovertible existence of the Creation as well as its truth and laws and recommendations.
- 22) You can only disturb yourselves alone, in your existence, in your life-conduct, in your evolution of the consciousness and in all things that make you to a real human, and you disturb yourselves to such an extent that you are confused and you cannot save yourselves without the guidance of the explanations with regard to the truth through the «Teaching of the Prophets», because you yourselves have no idea of the truthly truth of all things.
- 23) Truly, through the traditional irrational teachings of a religious, ideological and philosophical fashion, you have fallen prey to various shrub-knights of the consciousness, false prophets, priest, gurus, masters, sublime ones, godly ones and other worshippers of gods and tin gods who even today attack you like robbers along the way and lead you into every evil erroneous assumption; they prowl around the outer right path which leads to the truth in yourselves, namely the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and the explanations of the true prophets; and they do this in order to continue to bind you in the belief in a godhead, a tin god or an idolised human being and to hold you further in the erroneous assumption of the false teachings so that you do not become yourselves, do not bear the responsibility yourselves for all and everything in your life, so that you remain addicted in doggish submissiveness to your god, tin god or idolised human being.
- 24) They pretend to you in lies that they are treading the way of the truth, but what they really offer you are only great gestures and hackneyed words, mentally dumbing down and dependent-making cult activities and rituals which they proudly and with prejudice present as godly traditions and wishes, the actual nonsense of which they, however, themselves do not understand and attempt to cloak with silly excuses; truly, they are merely threshing empty straw and are spreading chaff with no grain, because they cannot find any actual grains in the entirety of their religious, ideological and philosophical nonsense which is devoid of any intellect, any rationality and any explanation-possibility, as well as the understanding.
- 25) And if you look at and consider everything then you recognise that this type of narrowness is met everywhere in all religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies, where their preachers, priests, superiors, representatives and believers insist with obtuse persistency on pathologically silly words, phrases, teachings and false, uncomprehensible explanations, on the one hand because they themselves have contributed nothing to the invention of the whole nonsense and, on the other hand, because in truth they themselves do not understand the entire higher rubbish.
- 26) There are millions and millions, indeed thousand-millions amongst you human beings of Earth who imagine that you alone have the true belief and the one and only right god, tin god or idolised human being.
- 27) And full of doggish submissiveness, you who belong to the believers warn your fellow human beings everywhere in the haughtiness of your belief as well as in your imperiousness, where something goes beyond your intellect as well as beyond your rationality and therefore beyond your comprehension of the things, because in erroneous belief your intellect and your intelligence are suppressed with Gewalt and enslaved through a religious, ideological or philosophical belief that never ever has even the slightest proof-power.
- 28) Truly, you fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth who wallow in the truth-unknowledgeness and in all vices and pathological cravings as well as in all terrible things and all evil, you are the worst amongst the earthly humankind because it is truly you amongst all who are debauched and depraved because, in your knowledge-obdurateness, no upright and in true love no real kindheartedness as well as no thoughts and feelings in righteousness, fairness and responsibility as well as none that are characterised by



conscientiousness come up in you; because truly you neither understand nor want that these high values shall arise in you and that you shall live according to them.

- 29) But if it does not happen that you become knowing of the truth and recognise and comprehend your fallibility, then it is of no use to you if you fall into horror, complaints and entreaties when terribleness happens to you through your misbehaviour; if the terribleness of your fallibility strikes you, then you did not want it to be otherwise and you have missed the time when you could have developmentally changed the whole of your fallibility and you could have turned to the truth and followed it.
- 30) And consider, you fallible ones, that when the self-caused terribleness strikes you then no one will bemoan you, because for every human being each moment that is wasted even on one thought of your terribleness is a loss, you who want to know everything better although you know nothing.
- 31) And if you do not, in your hardneckedness, come out of the truth-unknowledgeness and your truth-denial as well as truth-calumny, then you will remain blind in this and you will miss your true life just as much as your consciousness-evolution.
- 32) You fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth who assert and suggest your belief in your fabricated godheads and tin gods as well as idolised human beings with the slimily heinous words of your mendacious assertions, you only have an imagined truth-recognition, because in reality you do not have a speck of dust of a weight of an idea what the truth actually is.
- 33) And you fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth, you who are in great throngs and who regularly or sporadically undertake your services to gods and tin gods or pay homage in submissiveness to those human beings whom you raise up to idols and god-equivalents or to saints, you are only doing this out of your belief, out of anxiety or fear of punishment, out of invented, imaginary necessity, out of usefulness and convention or simply because it is tradition and custom; and there are some amongst you who merely do everything out of naïve caution, because you think that you cannot after all know what the whole can finally be good for, therefore taking precautions might be better than suffering harm, all according to the principle of "prevention is better than cure".
- 34) And those amongst you who are like pitiful researchers who fail their serious and real sense of research, you are rummaging around in things that are contrary to any intellect and any rationality and consequently will not lead to any result or to any end; you believe you are searching for the truth and you get yourselves entangled in a thicket out of which you can no longer raise yourselves up, therefore you continue to rummage around in it senselessly, arduously and untiringly, because you believe that you can find in it a way to the truth and therefore to the Creation and to its laws and recommendations; and if you find nothing then you excuse yourselves to yourselves by saying that everything is too heavy and too difficult as well as too arduous; however, your excusing does not help you because you are not willing to take upon yourselves that which is heavy, arduous and difficult, therefore you only practise meaningless gambling with everything.
- 35) And that great part amongst you human beings of Earth, those of you who apparently do not find the time to look into yourselves and find the truth of all truth in yourselves, the truth of the Creation and of its laws and recommendations, you are verily plagued created creations because you believe that it is arduous enough to dedicate yourselves to the daily work and to the necessities of the material life and all the things beyond that as well as to the fulfilment of the needs and wishes that you have; in doing so, however, you disregard the search for the effective truth of all truth as well as the evolution of your consciousness.
- 36) Truly, and as you chase after your material things, you do not notice that your requirements and wishes increase continuously as you fulfil them, because you always demand more and are not satisfied with what you have; and your unsatisfaction does not know any end, because you strive for more and more and are thus never able to come to rest, through which you also find no time to turn to the search for the creational truth, to which you do not use even one thought and not one feeling, therefore you cannot awaken yourselves out of your wrong mode of life either.
- 37) You are caught in your wrong mode of life, in your wrong thoughts and feelings as well as in your sense for material goods, for possessions and riches, for pathological craving and vice as well as for pleasure and doubtful joys, whilst at the same time forgetting the high culmination-point with regard to your consciousness-evolution as well as the search for the truth in you and in the creational laws and recommendations; therefore you let yourselves be incited through your earthly existence through your own requirements and wishes as well as through your desires, vices, ill joys and pathological cravings, etc., as well as through your religious, ideological or philosophical belief, as a slave to your earthly requirements, wishes and desires.
- 38) In the doing of this slavish bearing, you become fatigued and need diversion, rest and distraction as well as recuperation, as a result of which you do not have any time remaining to work with your mental-block and consciousness-block, resulting in a fading of your consciousness, of your thoughts and feelings, of the psyche, of the character, of the personality and of the virtues, which is also the cause of the failure to deal with the life and death, so that not even a slight touch of an impulsation can arise for what will come when the life reaches its end; only very few amongst you will perhaps once for a moment become somewhat thoughtful,



but you do not let yourselves be more deeply struck by it, let alone be awakened by it, rather you push everything away in fear and shyness and reject it from yourselves quickly and gruffly due to lack of the necessary time for consideration.

- 39) Many amongst you who have perhaps once briefly thought about the death, you expect that others shall draw the conclusions out of life and death for you, because in fear and shyness you do not dare to deal with it and even quarrel and grumble with your fate and indict it because through chickenheartedness you do not find the possibility in yourselves to direct your thoughts and feelings onto it.
- 40) And you, those of you who are so and act so, each word of the explanation is lost upon you for as long as you do not become courageous and do not want to recognise the truth and do not want it to be true; therefore it is simply up to you alone to change everything in yourselves and to escape from your chickenheartedness so that you may become courageous and turn in your thoughts and feelings to the life and death in order to therethrough gain an all-embracing understanding and the necessary knowledge through which you can liberate yourselves from your fear and shyness.
- 41) You human beings of Earth, liberate yourselves from merely dedicating yourselves to the earthly, material necessity, which in many cases is only based on imaginations and which increases continuously with its successes, through which you continuously demand more imaginary necessities and thereby increase your material wishes endlessly.
- 42) Truly, you have never satisfied anything else than your material wishes and never seriously searched for the real truth, although, paradoxically, you have demanded the effective truth since time immemorial, which, with the exception of a few, you cannot find because you are only chasing after the material and the fulfilment of your earthly wishes.
- 43) Since time immemorial you have created hindrances of all kinds against the real truth which reveals itself as certainty in recognition of the reality and which you can only find in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations.
- 44) You only indulge yourselves in all material things which you regard as a necessity for your existence, at the same time recklessly pushing away everything that might lead you to the truth, which many of you only find when you fall into great affliction or when the dying comes to you; turn away from the way of the exclusively material and do not let the truth and the evolution of your consciousness be a minor matter for when you have enough time, a minor matter which you believe that you have sufficient time to make yourselves conscious of and to learn about; truly, every second of the learning is of the utmost importance, because each moment of the not-learning, no matter how short, is lost life and lost consciousness-evolution.
- 45) You, however, you human beings of Earth, if it does come about that you once again have a recognisable opportunity to deal with the life, the death, the truth of all truth and with your consciousness-evolution, then there arise in you immediately diverse extra-wishes which you want to have fulfilled, but which are truthfully nothing other than pretexts and excuses with regard to you still requiring more time to turn to the truth and to the learning, in order first to accomplish this and that, in which case you fib that you will then be happy to turn to the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life; but truly this is merely a conscious lie.
- 46) With only exceedingly few exceptions, it is possible to find the seriousness by you human beings of Earth which essentially belongs to the necessities of the searching and learning of the real truth which is pre-given in the laws and recommendations for all things of the life and all existence; and truly, you are still far away from this seriousness, because you make yourselves into depraved ones and you do not search for the way of the real truth in yourselves, which is in itself the truth and the culmination-point.
- 47) If you many fallible ones amongst you human beings of Earth look at and consider yourselves in honesty, those of you who do not have the seriousness to the searching and fathoming of the truth, then you will recognise that you are like rotten fruits who are continuously spreading the rot about yourselves; truly it is a sorrowful picture that unfortunately corresponds to the truth and reality.
- 48) You disdain the seriousness of the searching and fathoming of the truth, because your belief in religions, ideology, philosophies as well as in godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings makes you so crumbly that you constantly kneel down in the dust before them in doggish submissiveness and chickenheartedness; think yourselves into your submissiveness and chickenheartedness which, paradoxically, makes you once again overbearing towards your fellow human beings and all that which is creational, such that you assume to be better than them whereas in the next instant you are complaining, entreating, begging and beseeching your godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings once again in anxiety, fear and cowardice, for them to stand by you and help you.
- 49) Truly, the heavy load of the truth-unknowledgeness and all consequences thereout, which you impose on yourselves, threatens to crush you more and more; and you entreat, pray to, beseech and beg your godheads, tin gods and human beings whom you raise up as idols for them to turn your torments from you and to



clear them up, whereas you do not spend any thought or any feeling to bringing forth an improvement in yourselves and to turning to the real truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations.

- 50) With all your wishes, you are merely of the wrong sense, to direct in your striving everything only towards earthly, material things, whilst no honest thought and no corresponding feeling of an honest wish to endeavour a voluntary change comes about in you.
- 51) A voluntary wanting to recognise as well as a courageous admission and termination of your wrong life-conduct, of your demolished individuality and all of the evil and false, the errors, the erroneous assumptions and characterlessnesses which rule and impair your life, do not come to your mind.
- 52) And if you find yourselves in great affliction, then you cry for the truth and whine and beseech, however only in cowardly angst and in the hope that help will be granted to you through the truth and that your torment will be brought to an end; however, this help will not be granted to you unless you turn your strivings honestly to the truth and lead your life according to it; you however reject your own longing for help from yourselves like venomous vermin because you deny the truth and do not recognise that you alone can help yourselves if you find the truthly truth in yourselves through the way of the truth, which is itself the truth and the culmination-point.
- 53) If, however, help would be granted to you through the truth without you accepting it and leading your life according to it, then after your beseeching and whining you would immediately fall back to your old mode of life and into your old errors and continue to deny the truth, thereby poisoning yourselves.
- 54) Truly, it is only if you search for the effective truth, find it, accept it and lead your life according to its laws and recommendations, that you will find the energy and power to finally bestir yourselves and to integrate yourselves into a constant improvement; to do this however, you must turn fully and completely to the truth of all truth which is solely to be found as certainty in recognition of the reality and which you must search for, find, recognise and fathom in yourselves as well as in the creational laws and recommendations.
- 55) In order to find the real truth, you human beings of Earth must cast aside your submissiveness to your imaginary godheads and tin gods as well as to those human beings whom you raise up as idols; therefore, you must also cast off your obdurateness towards the real truth and uprightly strive to consider the word of the truth of the true prophets and to use their teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life in order to developmentally change yourselves and to exclusively form your existence according to the creational laws and recommendations.
- 56) An understanding of the «Teaching of the Prophets», which is entirely given in the book entitled «Goblet of the Truth», will, however, only be possible for you if you throw away from yourselves and destroy all the unmeasurable rubbish in your human consciousness which you have collected in your boastfulness towards the effective creational truth as well as in your imagined understanding and your rationality which has swollen into ridiculousness.
- 57) And if you really want to turn to the real truth, to learn and follow it, then you must start from the very beginning and be like the children – without conceit, megalomania and imperiousness, but instead free and open in order to learn everything in a neutral wise and to process it in you in order to become knowing and wise out of it in truth-bearingness.
- 58) Consider, if you are searching for the truth, then you must behave neutrally because it is impossible to carry with you all the errors and erroneous assumptions as well as the belief-forms regarding godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings, since you must begin completely anew from the ground up and drop and forget all submissiveness and belief-driven simplemindedness, because it is only in this wise that you grow upwards to the truth and become stronger in it.
- 59) If the truth were to help you simply because you need its help, but you did not want to strive for it, then you would ask for its help simply when in danger and affliction, after which you would however forget it very quickly once your anxiety and your dread have disappeared again; if you did not have to strive arduously yourselves for the truth and help, then, after the help had been provided, you would – as scrupulously as before – use your unintellect and your irrationality in a criticising wise against the truth, instead of considering it.
- 60) Such doing is an absolute waste of time for your short life-period, through which you also endanger your future because you do not awaken the creational in you through the effective truth, but quite the contrary, you only create hatred and war as well as unfairness, jealousy and murder and manslaughter in yourselves and in the entire world, and get very badly out of the control of the good human nature into torture, terror, crime, pathological craving for revenge and pathological craving for retaliation, through which unaccountability, unfairness, rightlessness, consciencelessness and irresponsibility constantly gain the upper hand in you, as well as your pathological craving for uncontrolled offspring which gets very badly out of the control of the good human nature into ever wilder overpopulation, thereby destroying the climate of the planet and through which enormous quantities of life of all kinds are killed and also eradicated.



- 61) Truly, you human beings of Earth, it now lies alone with you to decide whether you will continue to hurry towards misery, affliction, all conceivable terrible things and possibly your own downfall and the destruction of your world, or whether you will bethink yourselves and turn to the truth and to the creational laws and recommendations in order to follow them and to save yourselves as well as your world and its nature; consider, you alone are responsible for the overpopulation and for all affliction and all misery as well as for the destruction of the climate and the entire terribleness of any kind and form that runs through the entire world and humankind; all this is merely because you do not strive for the effective truth, you do not look for it and therefore you do not find it and you cannot live according to it or according to the true laws and recommendations of the Creation, because in your thoughts you hang onto irrational belief-forms and false rules, laws and recommendations of your false and invented godheads and tin gods and you follow their demands that are fabricated through you human beings for punishment and war against those whom you regard as your enemies.
- 62) You only have the choice to liberate yourselves out of your self-created entanglements and to follow the truth of the Creation as well as its laws and recommendations – or to go under.
- 63) The choice for all things of your existence is left to you, however consider that, whatever you decide, the consequences of your decision will determine your actions, indeed in the right and in the good as well as in the wrong and in the bad, because the causes that you create will give rise to the corresponding effects.
- 64) Only if you create the right causes will the effects also be right and valuable, out of which true love and harmony as well as peace and freedom will develop for you individuals and for your entire humankind, through which all evil, each war and terror as well as all other terrible things will be nipped in the bud.
- 65) The right causes for the right effects are things which you can however only create, if you go in conformity with the truth of all truth which you must experience and live in yourselves as certainty in recognition of the reality.



Chapter 28

- 1) How often do you human beings of Earth make yourselves wrong pictures of words, because you do not understand them in their actual term and value, as is the case, for example, with the word truth which you push into the abyss of your belief in a god, a tin god or a human being whom you high-stylize to an idol. (high-stylize = to make someone/something appear to be more important or better than he/she/it in reality is, or to make someone/something appear to be something that he/she/it in reality is not).
- 2) You search for the truth in a religious, ideological or philosophical belief and do not understand the falseness of the belief which has nothing whatsoever to do with the truth which alone is given in the certainty in recognition of the reality.
- 3) If you search for the truth without imposing any requirements, then you will find it only in the certainty in recognition of the reality, because only what corresponds to the reality is truth, but never a belief of any fashion, because it is in every wise always unreal, unsubstantial and unprovable, in contrariety to the effective truth which is based on provable reality.
- 4) But you human beings of Earth, you live in complete confusion, far from the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, hanging onto false belief-forms in your thoughts, wherethrough you glorify invented godheads, tin gods and human beings as idols.
- 5) And you understand neither pictures of the term spiritual, nor the spirituality, nor the picture of the term spirit-form, so you do not know that these pictures and terms are not identical with your consciousness, the evolution of which you should be consciously integrated into, which you however do not understand; nor do you understand that you bring forth your ideas as well as your thoughts and the thereout resulting feelings through the consciousness and not through the spirit, i.e. the spirit-form that animates you; your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form that animates you is of purely creational-energetical nature and is only given to you to animate your consciousness and your body, whereas your material consciousness alone is that factor out of which you create your ideas and thoughts etc., which on the contrary is not possible for your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form; the spirit in you only integrates into itself the essence of the knowledge, i.e. the wisdom created out of your consciousness and evolves with it, whereas the consciousness evolves automatically through its activity of the researching and learning.
- 6) But you do not understand these things and live in complete confusion because of the false teachings of the religions, ideologies and philosophies, and this confusion shows itself in everything that you bring about



through your consciousness in terms of your ideas and thoughts and the feelings resulting out of them, as however also in all your activity and deeds.

- 7) In your confusion, you want to make the real truth to your helpful slave which shall only serve for the benefit of you small-knowing human beings of Earth, and bring you rescue when in hardship, although you have no idea what the truth really is and that it only exists in the certainty in recognition of the reality, but not in any belief as you assume in your evil erroneous assumption.
- 8) And the rescue which shall be brought to you through the truth, you make yourselves a wrong picture of this, which is why you expect requirementless help from it and in so doing you exclude everything that belongs to the truth, such as the absolute reality and everything that is included therein such as the fairness, the true love, the peace, the freedom and harmony, the righteousness, responsibility, conscientiousness and what is fair.
- 9) Search in the words and terms for the true pictures, i.e. the true contents and think for once about yourselves thoroughly, and illuminate and fathom your thoughts and feelings clearly and factually without self-glossing over in order to get to the true bottom of them and to recognise and understand them; and if you do that, then you will have to realise that your entire thought- and feeling-world has never been based on anything else other than demanding wish-fulfilments as well as help and rescue which you expect from your fabricated godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings.
- 10) Of course, you do not call your demands on your godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings for help, rescue and wishes by its true name, namely doggish-submissive and beseeching begging, as this corresponds to the kind of your miseducated and misdriven inner nature, instead you describe your wrong volition and subservient begging as prayers and devotion in belief.
- 11) You put on a small cloak of the mendaciousness and at the same time of the submissive servitude, in so doing you deny yourselves and also fall into hypocrisy, so that nothing good and sincere results out of this, because everything that you practise in your whole doing, even during your self-humiliating prayers and beggings to your godhead, your tin god or your idolised human being, is full of dishonesty and full of terrible things.
- 12) And all of you amongst you human beings of Earth who go forth full of unfairness, truth-unknowledgeness, therefor however full of belief in religions, ideologies or philosophies, be finally true and honest towards yourselves, and indeed so deep-reachingly that you tremble at the recognition of what you have done throughout your life that was wrong and against truth and because of that have led a life of the ignominy.
- 13) All those amongst you who are overbearing, self-willed and unsatisfied in your belief, you are also hypocritical and superficial, and if affliction and hardship strike you, you wallow in self-pity and hope for the help from others, whereas you yourselves are without any real feelings for others when others are struck by affliction and hardship, because you think in the frame of your own skin being the closest to you and that the others shall help themselves.
- 14) Those amongst you human beings of Earth who are overbearing, self-willed and unsatisfied, you should ask yourselves what kind of human beings you are in the presence of the all-mightiness, sublimity and harmony of the Creation which activates and directs for you so that you have everything that you need for life and that you can use as you like, which you however, in your overbearingness and boastfulness, entirely take and use as an implicitness and without gratitude.
- 15) You live in an unbelievably megalomaniacal conceitedness and believe that you could create peace, freedom and harmony amongst your humankind with the enforcement of your illogical and, with regard to the life, strange laws and ordinances that are made through your illogical kind of thinking; but your laws and ordinances are not in consonance with the creational laws and recommendations and therefore bring, instead of love, regulation, peace, freedom and harmony, only coercion, unfreedom, hatred, unpeace and disharmony.
- 16) You do not try to obtain your volition for love, peace, freedom and harmony through the truth of the creational laws and recommendations, not through intellect and rationality, and not through true discernment and logic, but instead through a wrong volition in irresponsible cleverness and pathological-dumb mode of thinking; through this you look to gain advantages for yourselves with regard to positions, estimation, titles, goods and chattels and riches and to achieve this you do everything and do not realise that in doing so you bring only disadvantage to yourselves as well as to your next one and fellow human being and even to your whole humankind.
- 17) Everything weighs on you like a heavy burden which you carry due to your own guilt and which you cannot put down, as it also cannot be solved and abrogated through the law of the interaction because of your wrong doing, unless you turn to the real truth and through it are able to free yourselves therefrom by changing yourselves in your volition, and indeed to the good, the best and the right.
- 18) Only if you change to the good, best and right and direct yourselves at this in upright volition, will you be saved from a fall into even deeper abysses than the ones into which you have already fallen; only through your honest volition and endeavour can you tear away the impeding hindrances in you which have already for so long and so far unstoppably been crushing down upon you with all evil, and which have been letting you persist in



consciousness-indolence and conceitedness, wherethrough you have up to now been persisting in the reflecting on the evil which is far away from the truth and far from all the creational laws and recommendations.

- 19) Put an end to your knowledge-darkness and let the evil, the unright, the unfairness and unrighteousness as well as the consciencelessness and irresponsibility break down in you, and let the true love, harmony, freedom as well as the peace become truth in you and in your whole humankind so that you learn to live the true life in order to end your wars, your hatred and your jealousy as well as your crimes and all the other terrible things.
- 20) Let all the terrible things on your world and in you break down and swing the word of the true love and the real truth in you and amongst all human beings upwards, so that it becomes victorious and resounds through the whole world and that all can hear it, learn out of it and live according to it.
- 21) Consider however the requirement, that everyone amongst you human beings of Earth must make his or her own efforts to recognise the truth and follow it, because only then, when every single one of you changes developmentally, can everything spread over the whole humankind and make it into a truthful oneness from out of which all the terrible things – through which you have been living, since time immemorial, in wars and hatred, in jealousy, unpeace, unfreedom, crime, terror as well as in disharmony and many other terrible things – are jointly fought against and resolved..
- 22) Do not doubtingly let the possibility pass you by to change everything to the good, the best and right by following the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, that is to say the 'Teaching of the Prophets', the 'Goblet of the Truth'.
- 23) However, if you do not bring forward the energy and power and the intellect and the rationality in yourselves to follow the teaching, then everything that you undertake for the love, freedom and harmony as well as for the peace will be to no avail to you, because you will continue to do the wrong things and bring upon your world and yourselves war, hatred, terror, overpopulation and every conceivable terrible thing, because, due to your unintellect and your irrationality, you will never be in the situation of understanding that moment through which you can find the way to the truthly progress as well as to the true love and love for the next one, to the freedom, harmony and to the peace.
- 24) Truly, your rescue lies in the following of the truth in accordance with the creational laws and recommendations, therefore you must accept the word of the truth and the truth itself in order to free yourselves from the bonds of the evil which hold you down in misconception and falsification of the real truth.
- 25) Since time immemorial, you have been poisoned through false teachings of false prophets and endangered through wrong explanations of the truth which you have made in falsifications into religions, ideologies and philosophies and into belief-cults of godheads, tin gods, and idolised human beings; in doing so, however, you have also disfigured up to the point of unrecognisability all freshness, all energy and power as well as all clarity of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life and enwrapped them with lies and with damage-bringing calumnies while creating wrong and religious, ideological and philosophical belief-forms and cults out of them, through which you have fallen into a consciousness-indolence, wherethrough you continue to run further and further into depravity until you find the real truth and hence the creational laws and recommendations and follow these.
- 26) So beware of the depravity-bringing false irrational teachings of the religions, ideologies and philosophies, because through them, you will be led only into a seducing slumber of the untruth, deception and the guidance into the unreal, which ultimately turns into the deep sleep of the depravity out of which you will no longer be able to awaken during the time of your life.
- 27) Consider that no true love lies in what the religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies teach you with regard to the indulgence and all-forgiving goodness of the invented godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings; instead the whole thing is falseness and a deluding drug for you which only forces the alertness of your consciousness into tiredness and weakens it, so that in the end it wanes and forces upon you a belief out of which you can hardly free yourselves in good time once you have been befallen by it.
- 28) Only your sharp rationality and your clear intellect can get through the tiredness of the delusion and open the way to the real truth as well as to the true love which leads you to your inner way of the truth which is itself the truth and the culmination-point.
- 29) Pure rationality and clear intellect know no extenuations, no lies and no calumnies, just as they also know no excuse for pretences, such as are practised through the religious, ideological and philosophical belief; and for this reason, you human beings of Earth, you who are only too fond of pretending something to yourselves or let something be pretended to you through a belief, you are ruthless against yourselves and in reality hurt yourselves very heavily there, where in you the intellect and the rationality to the truth-finding are not functioning correctly.
- 30) The weakness in which you are caught through your religious, ideological, sectarian or philosophical belief brings great disadvantage to you as individuals and to the whole humankind, because in this weakness you



assume that one day you will be judged through something higher, through a god or a tin god in some kind of fairness, which has already for a long time become strange to you through yourselves, because you have, as a result of your belief, moved away from the truth; and therefore you have lost the truth that not a godhead, a tin god or an idolised human being can give you fairness, but only you yourselves.

- 31) Only the strength of the character and of all the virtues through the Creation and its laws and recommendations is unchangeable, and this strength of the character and of all the virtues you cannot find by an imaginary god, tin god or a human being that you raise to an idol, but only in yourselves by turning to the real truth of all truth and following it in the wise as is pre-given through the creational laws and recommendations; and this true strength of the character and of all the virtues of creational kind is independent of any human opinion; and it is free of favour and partiality, of might, malice, revenge, hatred and retribution.
- 32) If you do not use all your energy and power to free yourselves from the old and false and from your belief in a godhead, a tin god or an idolised human being, then you will not be able to learn to understand the true fairness which is as present in the core of your inner nature as is the true love and the truthly truth; and if you do not recognise in the core of your inner nature the true love, truth and fairness, then you will also not be able to become new in your self, because only if you stand with the whole truth in the life and consciously strive for the evolution of your consciousness does the help arise from out of yourselves that you need to lead your life in accordance with the creational laws and recommendations as well as in true love, freedom, harmony and in peace.
- 33) Truly, every single one amongst you, you human beings of Earth, must help himself or herself through the recognition and following of the truth, which alone shows you the true way of the life that you have to go; and only on this way do you find the true existence which will not be given to you, if you do not tread this way.
- 34) Human beings of Earth, you must become strong in the fight of the gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit for the truthly truth, because you must lead this fight yourselves, each one of you for himself or herself alone – or you will go under.
- 35) Finally wake up and stand up in the fight of the gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit against all evil and all darkness in you, because only through doing that do you create the necessary energy and power in your inner to find and follow the real truth, as it is given through the creational laws and recommendations; but if you are weaklings, and you continue to cling to your belief in godheads, tin gods, angels, saints and idolised human beings, then the true life will be lost to you as well as all the energy and power it possesses.
- 36) If you are weaklings and dependent on belief-forms, then you will not be able to find the effective truth, and those few things that you may perhaps find from it, you will not know how to use rightly; and furthermore, it will be taken away again from you through your belief to which you are devoted in anxiety and fear and because you are too cowardly to free yourselves from it; as a result you use your energy and power for your belief-driven zeal in an incorrect wise through which the ancient word comes true that belief is a drug from which the human being can hardly free himself or herself once he or she has fallen for it.
- 37) Truly, instead of building temples in order therein to wrongly pray to fabricated gods and tin gods and to spread false teachings of false teachers, you should build places of the truth in which only the real truth of all truth is taught, the truth of the Creation, its laws and recommendations and their effects; and instead of belief-events and prayer-events, you should do events and festivities during which the truth about the Creation and its laws and recommendations and the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, the 'Goblet of the Truth' is taught, so that you human beings of Earth will become, as whole humankind, knowing and wise in the effective truth and that you follow the creational laws and recommendations in full responsibility-consciousness; and truly, while learning the truth and during events and festivities in favour of the truth and its learning, you can be full of joy and happiness and fulfil every conceivable responsibility.
- 38) Bearing the responsibility is always the first thing you have to do, but the by far largest number amongst you human beings of Earth, you push off the bearing and exercising of the responsibility onto your imaginary godheads, tin gods, angels, saints and to idolised human beings as well as onto your next ones or other fellow human beings, because on the one hand you see the responsibility as a burden with which you do not want to encumber yourselves and, on the other hand, because the bearing of the responsibility is, out of cowardice, too much for you, or because you think that you are not responsible yourselves.
- 39) But, the pushing off of the responsibility, no matter in what kind and wise it is done, corresponds to a self-degradation as well as to a cowardly submissiveness towards those who shall bear the responsibility; on the other hand, the pushing off of the responsibility is also a well-calculated consideration in the respect that without bearing and exercising one's own responsibility the life can be lived all the more joyfully, merrily and scruplelessly.
- 40) So those of you amongst you human beings of Earth who want to satisfy all your desires and wishes, you think



that you can obtain everything without the bearing of your own responsibility, as well as that you can behave negatively towards your next ones and fellow human beings in an irresponsible wise.

- 41) If need be, your human laws and ordinances can be circumvented and conflicts avoided, so many clever ones amongst you can, in the name of the laws and ordinances, successfully commit criminal deeds and other law-breaches etc., which do not stand up to moral examination, but nevertheless bear big names and titles and enjoy the reputation of an especially able and successful human being.
- 42) Thus many amongst you human beings of Earth are unrighteous ones who, despite your poor discernment, are able to live comfortably in accordance with your own views and your irresponsibility, and in your consciencelessness no uneasy conscience pesters you and also no unrest is shown that your doing is not right and that you should do differently from what corresponds to your wishes and your behaviour.
- 43) The truth is that the reality of the life is inexorable, therefore your wishes in this respect cannot bring about any deviation from the reality, because the creational laws and recommendations remain brazenly existent, so that what you sow will as a rule be what you harvest; and this fact says more than you can conceive, because the whole corresponds exactly to the process of the interaction as it is given through the creational laws and recommendations.
- 44) The interaction is so precise that out of a cause a distinct effect is determinable in advance, and the effect always contains more than the cause initially carried in itself, just as from a single sowed corn a multiple in the form of an ear arises; therefore, you human beings of Earth, you will be struck in manifold forms by this again as effect of that which you create and send out as cause in your thoughts and feelings, and indeed according to the kind of your volition in a negative or positive wise.
- 45) Be conscious that in a consciousness-based wise and through your thoughts and feelings as well as through your deeds and your activity you bear the responsibility for everything, and this responsibility does not first begin when carrying out the action but already when the idea comes up and at the decision through the thoughts and feelings through which ultimately everything is transformed into the serious volition.
- 46) Consider, there is no splitting between the idea and its carrying out, if the idea is indeed realised, because everything belongs together and is a unity.
- 47) Everything always goes together, never just side by side, because the immenseness of the effects of the creational laws and recommendations, which are invisible to you human beings of Earth, intertwine like a perfect and never failing machinery, even with regard to your ideas, thoughts, feelings, deeds and your activity in every respect.
- 48) And the laws and recommendations of the Creation, of the Universal Consciousness, are universally equal and so they also carry the whole in you and weave through every fibre of your body and your nerve cords and hold everything together, and everything is in mutual interaction and therefore functions perfectly.
- 49) Everything functions therefore according to the effects of the creational laws and recommendations which go through everything and without which no causes and no effects can occur; hence, if false teachings speak of heaven and hell and of god and devil, then this is fundamentally wrong, just as it is also wrong to talk of good and evil powers, because all energies and powers are neutral in their kind, so also the negative and the positive which only bring forth a distinct effect, when they are brought together; heaven and hell are not places but rather conditions in yourselves which you create yourselves through ideas, thoughts and feelings in your psyche, as are likewise the good and the evil which you also willingly put into action out of your ideas, thoughts, feelings and through your own decisions; therefore also your energies and powers are neutral in you human beings of Earth, in consequence you yourselves turn them into good or evil, and indeed through your ideas, thoughts and feelings as well as through your decisions and your volition; fundamentally, the negative and the positive are in themselves each a complete oneness, just as they result in a complete oneness when united in a right wise, but in a wrong union they create terribleness, as for example if you create evil out of your energies and powers through wrong ideas, thoughts and feelings as well as through a wrong volition.
- 50) There is only one negative that is complete in itself and one positive that is complete in itself, and through the uniting of both poles a complete oneness comes out once more and this oneness is Creation-given through the laws and recommendations as creational energy and power which constantly undulates through all the creational and is unseparably connected with the Creation and all its created creations and with everything that has come into existence through it.
- 51) The creational energy and the power resulting out of it can be found everywhere, in every drop of water, in the air, in the rocks and the stones, in every plant and in every life-form, so there is nothing in which the energy and its power does not exist.
- 52) And just as everything is flooded through by the creational energy and power, so also you human beings of Earth are continuously streamed through by it, as swinging waves out of the spirit-energy of the Creation, through which the life ignites in you and nourishes it.
- 53) Through your special constitution of your consciously working consciousness, you take in the instreaming



neutral-positive-equalised creational energy and its power and pass it on through your ideas and thoughts as well as through the thereout resulting feelings, out of which then, according to your decisions and your volition, the activity arises, your actions and deeds; and depending on the kind of your ideas, thoughts and the therewith connected feelings as well as the thereout resulting decisions and the volition you automatically use the neutral-positive-equalised energy and its power out of your consciousness in a negative or positive, i.e. in an evil or good wise, therefore you use the energy and its power according to your own sense, and you yourselves fully decide what you in absolute self-responsibility want to do in the negative or positive, i.e. in the evil or good; this however is your greatest responsibility which you must bear with your own free will as human beings.

- 54) Those amongst you human beings of Earth who often crampingly search for the right way of the life, you shall not make it so hard for yourselves; instead look, in all uncomplicatedness, simply upon the creational energy and its power which flows through you and animates you and how you use it to create your ideas, thoughts and feelings which you form according to your own will and decision in the good or evil, for which you alone carry the responsibility; and if you look upon the animating creational energy and its powers, then you will find therein everything you have to know without great effort.
- 55) And if you look at the Creation-given energy and its power, then be conscious that it is only up to your thoughts and the thereout resulting feelings as well as up to your decision and will whether you want to bring forth good or evil through this immense and in itself neutral-positive-equalised energy and power; truly, it is through your decision that the good or evil is given to you only, depending on what furthering or ruin-bringing thoughts and feelings you form in yourselves and bring into effect.
- 56) Do not strain yourselves in order to cramp yourselves in belief-forms, belief-exercises and belief-cults of religious, ideological, philosophical, esoteric and other occult directions as well as through all possible and impossible physical exercises and consciousness-strains, because that brings you no true evolutive consciousness-improvement but only apparent successes of meaningless irrational teachings.
- 57) Give up all belief-forms of any kind, because they are only useless and time-consuming senselessnesses which time and again become a distressful torment and self-flagellation which bring absolutely no gain for you with regard to your consciousness-evolution and with regard to the recognition and responsible following of the creational laws and recommendations.
- 58) Your representatives, priests and other false teachers, false prophets and their students as well as the religionists, ideologues and philosophers, the sectarians, masters, sublime ones, godly ones and idolised human beings etc. who preach to you the untruth with regard to all the godheads and tin gods, all of which are fabricated imaginations, they are all modern sanctimonious ones in apparent bigotry, and indeed even then, if they present the senselessnesses of their false religious, ideological or philosophical teachings in a deep belief, which can never be proven as truth because each belief is based on pure speculations and shows absolutely no concreteness of the reality.
- 59) Do not let yourselves be guided into the unreal through the false teachings which are irresponsibly preached by false prophets, by servants of gods and servants of tin gods, but instead let yourselves go forth in pure joy of the recognition that you can, through your simple and good-wanting thoughts and feelings, direct and use effortlessly the neutral-positive-equalised, unique and immense energy and power given to you through the Creation to the best and to the good in the ample bearing of the responsibility; and according to your responsibility as well as your thoughts, feelings, your will and your decision, the energy and its power has an effect, so you only have to responsibly use and direct it in the right wise to the best and the good.
- 60) The use of the creational energy and power in you – through which you can use your consciousness and create ideas, thoughts and thereout feelings – happens in uncomplicatedness and simplicity, and for this, no religious, ideological or philosophical learning is required, so neither does it require a belief in a godhead, a tin god or an idolised human being nor in any esoteric and other occult nonsense; and truly to use the creational energy and power in you, you do not have to be able to read and write, but you only need your clear intellect and rationality to recognise the truth and, out of it, to use the Creation-given energy and power through which you are capable of having thoughts and feelings.
- 61) And truly, the creational energy and the power included therein is given to each of you human beings of Earth in equal measure and indeed without exception, thus no difference exists therein, because a difference is only given with regard to the level of the consciousness-evolution as well as concerning the degree of intellect and the rationality out of which also the fulfilment of the responsibility results.
- 62) The fulfilment of the responsibility is also connected with the perceiving of the reality of the creational laws and recommendations and their mode of functioning, wherein the perceiving of all things is also anchored, which does not happen through the consciousness directly but rather through the unconscious which comes before the consciousness and which is not identical with the subconsciousness; therefore each perception occurs through the unconscious-form which comes before the consciousness, through which immediately



unconscious thoughts and thereout conscious feelings are triggered, after which, with a delay of 25-30 hundredth of a second, the consciousness and conscious thoughts themselves are included in the perception.

- 63) Just as you can also perceive the things of the reality, you are, if you are heedful and attentive enough, able to perceive the creational energy and its power in you through which you can, via your consciousness as well as your thoughts and feelings, achieve tremendous effects and direct the energy and power, and indeed in the good or evil, depending on how you willingly form and use everything in responsibility or irresponsibility.
- 64) If you use the creational energy and power that has been given you for the good and best in full responsibility, then you can be joyous over it and have a good self-feeling, whereas if you squander it uselessly or use it for the evil, then tremble, because through the interaction that is pre-given in the creational laws you cannot escape the disadvantage which you create for yourselves through the ungood; the power of the interaction always strikes you, both in the good when you use it rightfully, and in the evil when you misuse it, and truly you cannot hide from this.
- 65) Therefore the good is just as brought forth in you through the pure neutral-positive-equalised creational energy and power as is the evil, and indeed depending on how you form them and bring them into effect according to your own choosing and will.
- 66) You are free in the use of the creational energy and its power, so you can form and bring it into effect according to your own choosing and will, but this also includes the responsibility which you have to bear and from which you can never escape; consequently, you shall use everything in the good and positive, so that you can bear the full responsibility for your ideas, thoughts, feelings and deeds as well as for all your activity in every respect; also you are recommended to nourish and cherish your thought-world and your thereout resulting feelings in love and let peace, freedom and harmony prevail in you in order to also carry forth everything to your next ones, your fellow human beings and your whole humankind.
- 67) Also you amongst you human beings of Earth who live far from the effective truth and who are truth-unknowners, unfair ones, conscienceless ones, unrighteous ones, and irresponsible ones and who ignore the creational laws and recommendations, you can rejoice, because the same creational energy and power is given you as is given the fair ones, the righteous ones, the responsible ones and the conscientious ones who are strong in their truth-knowledge and who, contrary to you, follow the Creation-given laws and recommendations.
- 68) You only need to use the creational energy and power in you, refrain from making everything heavy for yourselves and not forget that everything creational streams through you too and that you are capable of giving everything a distinct direction according to your own volition and will, thus in the good and in the evil, in joy and sorrow, in love and hatred as well as devastating or upbuilding.
- 69) But consider, there is only this one Creation-energy and -power, which you cannot only use and bring into activity, but also strengthen and widen through your consciousness as well as through your thoughts and feelings; apart from it there is nothing comparable, so therefore also no god-power which could cause any things in you, because each godhead is a fabulated imagination in insubstantiality and hence not capable of any energy or power.
- 70) And the Creation-energy with its power alone bears in itself the secret that sooner or later the precious and valuable always prevails, that the darkness must give way to the light, the evil to the good, the hatred to the love, the unknowledge to the knowledge, the unwisdom to the wisdom, and the disharmony, the unpeace and the unfreedom to the harmony, the peace and the freedom.
- 71) But to ensure that all the high values of the love, the freedom and harmony, of the peace, knowledge and wisdom will not be long in coming, you human beings of Earth, you shall make a conscious effort and use the pure, neutral-positive-equalised Creation-energy and power in your consciousness to the noble, good and valuable, and build up the truth, its knowledge and its wisdom in yourselves.
- 72) Let the primal Creation-energy and its power be pure and unfold it in you, make it stronger and develop your consciousness-evolution out of it, as it is pre-given through the sense of the life.
- 73) And do not let your Creation-given consciousness-energy and its power fall into a weakening through wrong ideas, thoughts and feelings of a dullness and something impure, because you must use and direct the creational energy and power in such a wise that it is always striking and decisive.
- 74) Truly, if you only have a little heedfulness and attentiveness for your thoughts and feelings, then you will recognise and perceive for yourselves what is the good and what is the evil, and indeed without having to speak it out or ruminate over it; recognising the good and the evil in yourselves in heedfulness and attentiveness is the right way of the cognition, not however a dull rumination, because this brings no cognitions but only confusion and waste of energy and power; rumination works like stringy morass, like a swamp which pulls everything into itself and paralyses and suffocates everything.
- 75) Be vigilant in your endeavours and connected to the gladness so that you gain real cognitions; if, however, you give yourselves over to the rumination, then you will get confused in all sorts of things which you will never



be able to fathom, and this will make you depressed and sad.

- 76) You cannot change things that happened in the past nor can you make them good again, you can at the most give satisfaction for them such as by offering apologies or by making amends in whatever form, because once something has happened, it is no longer subject to any change.
- 77) You can leave all things of the past behind you and take the way to the height of the truth and the reality and to the bearing of the responsibility at every moment, if you do not shrink back in cowardice from the truth and reality.
- 78) Begin to think of the pure truth and to bear your responsibility for your existence and for everything that you nourish and cherish in terms of ideas, thoughts and feelings, that you act and do and handle; when you have dirty and terrible ideas, thoughts and feelings, clean them and build thereout good things and the best, because you are enabled to do this through the creational energy and power that is acting in you, so you can give everything a distinct direction through the kind of your will and your decisions through which you can reach the noblest and highest, if you make an honest effort.
- 79) You human beings of Earth in general, through your own ideas, thoughts and feelings as well as through your decisions and the free will you determine the love and hatred, the harmony and disharmony, the fairness and unfairness, the peace and war, the freedom and unfreedom as well as the fortune and misfortune; therefore raise your head and your forehead to the truthly truth and to the creational laws and recommendations so that you become knowing and wise therein, so you no longer call for a self-created terrible thing and none can befall you anymore as a result of your own doing.
- 80) Consider, through your free decision and your free will you can achieve anything you want, both in the good and in the evil, therefore always act in fairness according to the sense of the truth, because everything will always happen to you in a wise that corresponds to your own will, your thoughts and feelings and your responsibility-form, which you then call destiny.
- 81) And if you talk about what happens to you, then you presume to claim that what happens to you is rightful or unrightful, even though you yourselves determine what befalls you and what does not and thus you speak of a deserved or undeserved destiny, of reward and punishment, as you learn through your wrong human laws and through your religions and ideologies.
- 82) And when you speak of the destiny, then you mean that which befalls you through your own efforts, both in the fortune and misfortune, in the good and evil, although you presume to push off everything onto a god, tin god, human being or a karma, and you do this only so that you yourselves do not have to bear the responsibility.
- 83) You also do not make thoughts about what the destiny actually means so that you could understand that the destiny is the outcoming effects of your own energies and powers of your thoughts and feelings or the effects which proceed onto you through distinct causes of other human beings, through nature or through happenings and situations as well as through the universal connections, so therefore the law of cause and effect has its outcoming effect, in which the law of the interaction also takes effect.
- 84) The two laws of cause and effect and interaction have been given in the Creation since the primal beginning, therefore the big and enduring and indissoluble becoming and passing is connected therewith through the principles of the Creation.
- 85) What becomes will also pass again, and in this process the becoming is the cause and the passing the effect, whilst on the one hand with regard to the interaction a changeability, i.e. a change between this world and the other world comes about; on the other hand, the interaction is given in your current material life in such a wise that through your thoughts, feelings, actions, deeds and through all of your activity, corresponding reactions, consequences and effects arise.
- 86) The law of the interaction as well as the law of cause and effect and the law of becoming and passing animate the immense creational system of the universe, hold it together in constant motion in the process of the 311,040,000,000,000 (311 million-million, 040 thousand million) years of the enduring existence of the Creation during which there is a constant becoming and passing and again a new becoming.
- 87) And just as the law of the interaction functions in the large, so it is also efficacious in you human beings of Earth, namely according to the principle: What you sow through your thoughts, feelings, actions and deeds as well as through all your activity, you will also reap; this is truly the activity and life in the entire Creation as it is untouchably and unmovably woven into the creational laws and recommendations in an ongoing outcoming effect, and these laws and recommendations in their all-embracing immenseness include everything conceivable and unconceivable for you and regulate even the tiniest speck of dust of a weight.
- 88) If you are heedful, vigilant and attentive, then you can experience everything in yourselves, if you only want to; therefore begin by the observing and perceiving of yourselves, but also by the environment that is visible for you.
- 89) Consider, what you call laws of the nature are the laws of the Creation as they are given through its laws in



which are also included the recommendations and which are given to you as counsels for the fulfilment of the laws, because just as the laws include uncontroversible distinctnesses with regard to their effects, so the recommendations are based on counsels which are to be used to follow the laws and to fulfil them in their evolutive and life-affirming effects.

- 90) And the creational laws are not laid out for punishment but rather in such a wise that the following or not-following of them brings distinct positive or negative, i.e. good or bad effects which you determine yourselves willingly in logic through your thoughts and feelings, all your activity and your deeds and through your actions; therefore you yourselves bring about what is rightful and what is unrightful and what you consciously create therewith that is good or suggestively and forcefully bring about that is evil.
- 91) The creational laws and recommendations are constantly in permanent action, and consequently they act timelessly and bring whatever you voluntarily, self-willedly and willingly create in the evil or good; and consider, the only effects resulting from these laws are that which you create yourselves, because it goes according to the principle that if good is sown, good can be reaped again, but if a weed is sown, only a weed can arise out of it.
- 92) Fundamentally, it is such with you human beings of Earth that you neither think about these things of the truth nor about yourselves, and as you do not think about the law-based happenings of the nature, nor about the laws and recommendations of the Creation, you never waste a thought on what, who and how you are; in consequence, these three questions also remain strange to you: „What is the human being“; „Who is the human being?“; „How is the human being?“
- 93) What is the human being? Fundamentally, the human being is individually a Wesen which has come out of an idea of the Creation and through its laws, as a consciously self-thinking Wesen with an evolution-capable consciousness as well as with an own free will and own free decision-making power for the purpose of the consciousness-evolution, which is the sense of the life; in this regard, it is also important as a human Wesen to create in oneself the true being human and the real humaneness in order to be human in the real and true sense which is expressed through fundamentally learning and following the creational laws and recommendations, wherethrough the fulfilment of the being human and the humaneness occurs; in this sense, the whole thing means that the Creation-given duties of the laws and recommendations are followed and fulfilled in the best possible framework, that also true love as well as inner harmony, freedom and peace are created in an equalised wise and are also carried to the outside and that all factors of what is evil, unfair, irresponsible and unrighteous are fundamentally avoided.
- 94) Who is the human being? Fundamentally, the human being is primarily an individuum, a single individual nature with a consciousness-block which forms the individuum and in which also the mental-block is integrated, that is the consciousness, the thoughts, feelings and the psyche; what else is given in the consciousness-block is the character, the personality, the subconsciousness, the ego, and the memory out of which altogether the Who of the human being results, thus who he or she is through all the capabilities and factors of his or her consciousness-block; the human being is in itself, through the consciousness-block and as a material individuum, an undivisible, a whole, just as he or she is an undivisible, a whole, together with the spirit, i.e. spirit-form that animates him or her, and that says, as soon as the life extinguishes and thus the spirit-form escapes out of the body and into its realm of the other world, the consciousness-block also escapes from the body and goes into the realm of the other world that is belonging to it; thus, the primary individuum, i.e. the consciousness-block dissolves, because as such it can only exist as long as the body actually lives and is inhabited by the spirit-form; so, when the life extinguishes, then only the lifeless, empty material shell without consciousness-block, i.e. individuum remains; although the human being as a material Wesen with a consciousness-block is in himself or herself an undivisible whole, the human being is however not like that towards the outside, because he or she jointly lives and coexists secondarily through partaking of and participation in other things, so for example as a human being of his or her times, as a carrier of world historical ideas, as a child of the parents, as a husband and father, as a friend, employer or employee etc; through this he or she proves to himself or herself and to the outside world who he or she is by showing the factors and capabilities of his or her consciousness-block, i.e. his or her individuum in the outer world.
- 95) How is the human being? Fundamentally the human being is what he or she is in the core of his or her inner nature, i.e. what corresponds to his or her individuality that is based on the core of his or her inner nature which, however, as a rule strongly deviates from the individuality which he or she shows to the outside world; the core of the human individuality, i.e. the core of the human inner nature is of creational nature which strivingly pushes towards an evolution of the inner nature occurring through a consciousness-evolution, but as a rule the Creation-given striving and natural instinct is ignored, and consequently the human being creates in himself or herself an own and outer kind of the inner nature, i.e. individuality which, so to say as the chaff of the inner nature, surrounds its core; for this reason, he or she cannot really be how he or she is at the bottom of his or her inner nature, i.e. his or her creational individuality, because he or she decides himself



or herself, at his or her own free choosing and will, how he or she wants to be, in which case he or she expresses this how-to-be through his or her self-created outer individuality.

- 96) Truly, you human beings of Earth, you do not think about these things at all or not in great detail, but instead you let your immensely erring philosophers think for you who do not recognise the truth of the things but make themselves mere imaginations without comprehending the reality; and because you, like them, do not attempt to fathom the real truth of the things, you will thus also not become conscious of the great laws of the creational might which pulsate therein.
- 97) It is an implicitness for you not to think about the actual things of the truth and hence also not about the creational laws and recommendations and their effects, and as a result you are faced with mysteries which need not be mysteries for you.
- 98) Consider, all laws and recommendations of the Creation have an effect on all things with absolute certainty and strength, not only on everything down to the coarsest and greatest and up to the finest and most tender, but also in all realms of the fine-fluidalness and high-fine-fluidalness.
- 99) Even in each single happening and in all motions in all expanses of the universe as well as in all levels of the substantial, semi-substantial, the fine-fluidal and high-fine-fluidal and the pure spiritual, the creational laws and recommendations act in an absolutely unchangeable wise, so therefore also in the most tender developments of your thoughts and feelings which must be assigned to the semi-substantialness.
- 100) Do not assume, then, that elsewhere in the uncomprehensible expanses of the universe it would be different than on your Earth or amongst and in yourselves, because in the whole being that is both visible and invisible for you everything is given equally; thus every species brings forth its species and every kind its kind, irrespective of what the form is made out of, be it material life forms or thoughts and feelings.
- 101) The process of fertilisation, germination, growing and becoming is continuous and it goes through everything equally and doesn't differentiate, so also no gap comes up, and the process doesn't stop in front of any part of the Creation, because the effects of the timeless process carry themselves through everything like an untearable band which cannot be broken off nor taken off.
- 102) Even if you human beings of Earth for the most part isolate yourselves from the recognising and understanding of the universal processes through your intellect- and rationality-based restriction and through your deceptive imagination and imperiousness, the laws of the nature and hence also the entire creational laws and recommendations do not cease to exist, because despite your negation they continue to act in an unchangeable, calm and constant kind and wise and determine through their interaction the destiny of the universe and of all that which is included therein, so therefore also your outer destiny, upon which you have no influence.
- 103) The destiny which arises through the interaction also requires that everything that you sow must be reaped again by you there, where you bring the cause to an outcoming effect or effect.
- 104) Truly, you always have the free decision and the free determination at the beginning of each matter, as well as the free will to decide whereto and in which direction you want to direct everything through your thoughts, feelings, actions and deeds and through your activity; but you do not think at all or only vaguely about this, which is why you cannot realise and understand the effects, i.e. the destiny out of the causes which you create yourselves; and out of your ununderstanding regarding this you assume then that the destiny that strikes you is either earned or unearned and furthermore brought onto you through your fellow human beings or through a higher might, because you refuse to understand that you yourselves are the former of your own destiny which you bring about yourselves and which has nothing to do with the destiny that acts from the outside and which is the result out of foreordinations over which you have no might.
- 105) The destiny which you determine yourselves through your thoughts and feelings, through your activity and your actions and deeds is based on consequences, i.e. effects which you yourselves create through distinct causes and which you then have to bear as your destiny, both in the good as in the evil.
- 106) Nevertheless, there are however a large number amongst you human beings of Earth who claim in your dumb unintellect and in your irrationality that the human being has no free will, if he or she is after all subject to his or her destiny; thereby it is not considered in any wise that it is precisely the free will of the human being through which each one determines his or her destiny himself or herself, namely through the law of the interaction.
- 107) Each outcoming effect which falls back upon you human beings of Earth as destiny is based at the beginning in the cause of your thoughts and feelings as well as in your activity and in your actions and deeds which you conceive in advance in free decision and realise in free will; however, the foolishness of the claim that you do not have a free will is based in the purpose of the self-stupefaction and self-excuse as well as in the fact of the resentment and grumbling thereover, that you have to integrate yourselves into the law of the interaction and therefore also have to bear the responsibility for your destiny yourselves, whether you want to or not; nevertheless, though, you have your own free will in this regard too, and as a consequence you yourselves can



determine your thoughts and feelings, your activity and your actions and deeds in their kind, so therefore also the outcoming effects and effects arising out of them, and indeed both in the good as in the evil.

- 108) Each destiny and each interaction is thus preceded by your own free and willing decision, and this means that with each first decision and volition you create something each time which manifests itself to you as interaction and destiny; therefore, you will, sooner or later, have to live in what you today determinatively create through your thoughts and feelings, through your activity and through your deeds and actions and out of which you will inevitably have to bear the consequences when you are struck by it, that is by the destiny.
- 109) However, when the consequences, i.e. the destiny resulting out of your thoughts, feelings, decisions, deeds, actions and your activity, will strike you is fundamentally different for each consequence, so it can be immediately or only in a few hours, days, weeks or months or perhaps even in years or decades, but it will certainly be in your present actual life, because nothing can be carried into the fine-fluidal world of the other world nor into a new life on Earth, as is erroneously mistaught through various of your religious, ideological and philosophical irrational teachings, as for example through the far-from-the-truth irrational Karma-teaching.
- 110) If the thoughts, feelings, deeds, actions and the activity are subject to changes, this can, of course, lead to changes in the effects, i.e. in the destiny and in the interactions; thus when evil and negative things and factors of the thoughts and feelings as well as of the activity, actions and deeds are changed to the good and positive and henceforth led and lived in this wise, then also new effects, i.e. a new destiny and new interactions form themselves out of these new causes, as is given through the creational laws and recommendations in fairness; through a change to the good, better, best and positive, the interaction changes developmentally in the same wise, through which the old is replaced and extinguished through the new, as the creational law of the fairness determines it, that only that happens which corresponds to the present reality.
- 111) The laws and recommendations of the Creation are, in their mode of functioning, bound to cause and effect, and consequently the effect changes according to a new cause, which means that an effect resulting from an old cause can change to the good or bad, if a new and corresponding cause is created; but this says that, for example, out of an evil and negative cause, logically a correspondingly evil and negative effect can be stopped and changed to a good and positive effect, if the corresponding cause is changed to the good or positive as this comes about with the destiny and the interactions and which has both a direct and indirect effect on you human beings of Earth; so however also on prophecies which serve as warnings for effects proceeding out of distinct bad, evil and negative causes, which however can be changed to the better and best through the creating of new, good and positive causes.
- 112) Fundamentally, you human beings of Earth are bound to your own works, to your thoughts and feelings, to your activity, your deeds and actions, and indeed both with regard to yourselves and concerning your next ones and fellow human beings, for or against whom you direct everything.
- 113) If you take a decision to do evil or terrible things to yourselves, your next ones or your fellow human beings, be it in thoughts, feelings, works or words, you therewith set something into the world which develops itself further in the same and wanted wise, is active and has an effect, and indeed irrespective of whether the whole is visible or invisible and hence fine-fluidal or coarse-substantial.
- 114) How the effect of your evil and terrible thoughts and feelings forms itself on yourselves, your next ones or the fellow human beings, lies entirely in the psychical and consciousness-based condition of yourselves, your next ones or the fellow human beings which determines whether the attack can bring harm or not.
- 115) The psychical and consciousness-based condition of yourselves, your next ones and the fellow human beings is always decisive, so therefore nobody is defencelessly exposed to any attacks, and you can defend yourselves, both against yourselves and against external attacks, just as your next ones and fellow human beings can defend themselves against attacks from you and others.
- 116) Consider, as creator of your decisions and your volition and hence of the cause set in motion therethrough, you remain under all circumstances connected with it, so everything again and again comes back to you as destiny and as interaction and strikes you, and indeed irrespective of whether this happens after a short or first after a long time and whether the cause is good or evil.
- 117) The law of the interaction and hence also your destiny, you human beings of Earth, is triggered by attracting again various same-kinds through the motion of a creation, such as thoughts, feelings, deeds and actions as well as an activity of any kind, just as these same-kinds are themselves also attracted by such, and this results in a symbiotic connection out of which an immense power-source comes about; the whole accumulates to a great energy with great power which acts as a sender and sends back everything to the former.
- 118) Through the accumulation of the energy and power which leads back to the thought-feeling-based cause, an ever greater compaction forms, and it is through this that a coarse-substantial factor, i.e. the destiny ultimately results which the creator of the corresponding thoughts and feelings must experience, live and work out himself or herself; that is the actual developmental process of your so feared and misunderstood destiny



which arises as an effect out of a self-created cause.

- 119) Recognise therefore, that your self-created destiny is always and down to the finest and smallest nuance fair and corresponds to the effects of the creational laws, because through the attraction and accumulation of your own thoughts and feelings, your deeds, actions and your activity you attract the same kind again, and it falls back onto you, and indeed exactly as you have created and wanted it as cause, only strengthened; it does not matter whether the whole thing is directed at yourselves, your next ones or the fellow human beings in general, because the process is always the same.
- 120) Truly, only the kind of your conscious or unconscious volition, for which you yourselves decide, is determinative for the interaction and hence also for your destiny, because all the innumerable fine-fluidal and semi-material swinging waves with which you are connected let everything that you send out through your thoughts and feelings stream back onto you, irrespective of whatever you want and what you create with your volition as causes.
- 121) The interactions which you create through your wanted causes also have an effect on your outer nature, i.e. on your outer individuality, which you equally primarily create yourselves and which is far from the creational individuality, which is located in the core of your inner nature; and just as you form your individuality and out of this also your character through your thoughts and feelings and your attitude etc., so the interactions of your thoughts and feelings also have an effect on it, and consequently also your character is influenced and continually formed therethrough.
- 122) Apart from all the many factors which carry out everything necessary out of and in you, many things of the gigantic power-source of the universe are also acting in you, but actually there is nothing amongst you human beings of Earth with regards to your self-created destiny for which you do not first give the cause thereto yourselves.
- 123) Truly, it is you yourselves who through your thoughts and feelings as well as through your general and specific activity, deeds and doing bring about everything which you have to bear.
- 124) What you sow, that you will reap, and indeed in every respect, be it in the good or in the evil; therefore you cannot refer to your invented godheads and tin gods or to your next ones, fellow human beings or to your imaginary angels, saints and idolised human beings with regard to the responsibility, because this lies by you alone for all things, for everything that your destiny brings you, as also for everything whatsoever that happens in the world in terms of war and peace, love and hatred, fairness and unfairness, freedom and unfreedom, harmony and disharmony as well as in terms of good and everything evil.
- 125) It is completely irresponsible, reckless, conscienceless and duty-neglecting of you human beings of Earth to push the responsibility for your doing, deeds and activity and for everything that you create in you as ideas, thoughts, feelings and decisions through your own will as destiny onto an angel, saint, idolised human being, your next ones or any fellow human being or to shove it off onto a fabulated god or tin god and then to wonder in incomprehensibility why he or she allows the fate to befall you.
- 126) It is irresponsible to think in this wise and to assume that it is right, and if you do such things nevertheless, then you prove to yourselves that you are not willing to give enough consideration to the truth, nor to recognise it in all its entire range, because in imperiousness you want to bathe yourselves in innocence and bear no responsibility in any wise for your incorrect and haphazard deeds.
- 127) And since you are not willing to bear the responsibility for your doing, activity and deeds nor for your ideas, thoughts and feelings, you reach out for all little and big things to put them into action directly according to your irresponsible reflecting and striving, through which you wreak terribleness through all disastrous things of the world by indulging in hatred and jealousy, strife and murder and manslaughter, creating unpeace, unfreedom, disharmony and wars all over the world, and bringing therewith depravity and destruction over the whole humankind and your planet; and through all this you not only determine your own destiny but also that of your next ones, your fellow human beings, the whole humankind and Earth.
- 128) Already as individuals you create heavy destinies and great sorrows and problems which you carry into the world, and creating therewith hardship, misery and war as well as other terrible things, and indeed in complete forgottenness of your ample responsibility which you have to bear yourselves for all and everything and which also determines your destiny and that of the humankind in the good or evil, depending on whether you fulfil it or not; consider that you are your own destiny, because depending on whether you create good or evil in your thoughts and feelings, you will also be such in your self-created part of your inner nature.
- 129) From the beginning, the Creation created its all-embracing laws and recommendations through which you human beings of Earth automatically make use of their unbribable effects, so everything fulfils itself without any doubt down to the last fibre of the laws and recommendations when you trigger them, in which case a preferential treatment is as impossible as is a disadvantageous one and consequently only fairness, but never an unfairness is possible.
- 130) Truly, the creational laws and recommendations and their effects do not have to care about you human beings



of Earth, rather, you must care about them, because the all-embracing work of the Creation with regard to its laws and recommendations is in its kind not dependent on you, but you are dependent on it.

- 131) The main error you human beings of Earth make is that you see only your material existence and that you assess everything only according to this; and included in this error is also your conceit of seeing yourselves as a uniqueness and centre of all life forms, even though you are not; in addition to you, there exists in the expanses of the universe many other civilisations of various kinds who are of equally great importance in the machinery of all created creations who found their existence through the creational laws and recommendations, so you cannot megalomaniacally assume to be the centre of all life forms.
- 132) And a further error you many amongst you make is that you assume that as a personality you would only have a unique life, because truthly after the dying, the life continues in a new existence on Earth but contrary to the irrational teaching of the person-bound reincarnation; truthly the personality extinguishes after the dying and developmentally changes itself in the fine-fluidal realm of the other world of the overall consciousness-block into a neutral energy out of which a new and unburdened consciousness with an equally new personality is created which is then born anew, together with the spirit-form of the human being which, after the dying of the material body, also goes into its fine-fluidal realm of the other world and from out of there reincarnates again and, contrary to the personality, is alone capable of being reborn; so you shall be conscious that you have already often lived a material-current life as always new personalities, just as you will continue again and again, as always new personalities, to pass through new lives; and that will happen so often and for such a long time until your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form has developed so highly through your evolution of your consciousness that it no longer needs a material body and consciousness anymore and thus goes as a higher form into a higher level.
- 133) It follows that with the new birth of the new personality a completely new life begins, and consequently the new human being at his or her actual becoming, i.e. the actual birth on the 21st day of the pregnancy, i.e. after the conception, is completely unburdened and hence innocent; the reason for this is because out of the earlier life of the preceding personality – as well as of all other preceding personalities before that – nothing disadvantageous is put into the new personality, and it is therefore completely unburdened at its becoming; the fact that the real birth of the human being occurs on the 21st day after the conception is because the spirit-form is, together with the new consciousness and the new personality, born into the embryo and gives life to it; as is well known, the actual worldly, i.e. material birth into the existence of the world normally occurs only after completion of the pregnancy.
- 134) Through this process alone it is guaranteed that every newborn human being is unburdened by his or her thoughts, feelings, actions, deeds, and his or her activities out of his or her previous life and those before that, just as the creational laws determine that every new life form to be born, and thus also the human being, shall be of pure and unburdened consciousness; therefore it is given – contrary to many irrational teachings of false prophets, religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies – that all happenings may only be related to the earthly existence, therefore the fairness of the creational laws determines that all returning effects, i.e. interactions as well as other causes and effects and hence also the destiny falls completely onto the time span of the life on Earth; and accordingly, both atonement processes in the fine-fluidal realm of the other world and in a religiously explained heaven or in a hell are as senseless as the wrong karma-teaching which states that the consequences of the preceding life would have to be borne in the coming life.
- 135) So turn away from the irrational teachings and erroneous assumptions of your religions, ideologies and philosophies and try to find the true logic in the truth which you can experience and fathom through the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life to which you shall turn in free will and without coercion, so that you may find your true life.
- 136) If you follow the effective truth, then you follow therewith also the creational laws and recommendations, so you do not have to worry unnecessarily about your volition, because alone through you turning to the truth and recognising it, does the will rise high in you, in accordance with the laws of the Creation, to the connection with the truth.
- 137) And with the will rising in you to the connection with the truth, you set a boundary for uncontrolled interactions which strike you as hard destiny, because through your volition of the turning to the truth you destroy all the terrible returning effects and create new ones which are good and positive and which bring you joy and gladness, through which you create true love and harmony in yourselves and find inner peace and inner freedom.
- 138) And if you understand how to willingly form your destiny through good interactions, then you will therewith create an immensely strong power-source in you, out of which will proceed a constant accumulation, i.e. strengthening of your good energies and powers, wherethrough the good and best will become more and more firm in you; this will then also lead to everything emanating out of you into the environment as fine-fluidal swinging waves where it will be taken in by your fellow human beings who then sooner or later slowly but



surely form themselves according to them, thereby creating, just like you, a protective shield of the good around them which gives protection against the truth-unknowledgeness; if then old returning effects through fellow human beings still occur, then these can easily be mastered and cleared up through intellect and rationality and a corresponding logic, through which even enmities come to an end and you go forth as a true-human being who lives in love, peace, freedom and harmony both with himself or herself and equally with all his or her fellow human beings.

- 139) You shall not simply live according to your present terms of a religious, ideological or philosophical fashion and direct your thoughts and feelings as well as your reflecting and striving according to them, but instead you shall in reality be a truth-human being, because only then will you form a valuable connecting link with regard to the entire consciousness-evolution of your whole humankind.
- 140) Your own consciousness is, through your subconsciousness, collectively connected with your fellow human beings of your whole humankind and unites you, so it is possible for you to experience and to overlook many things or to simultaneously live the same in a certain small number, to have the same thoughts, to do the same or to invent the same.
- 141) Thereto, you not only have the subconsciousness for your utilisation, but as a truth-human being also your intellect and your rationality, through which you are able to guide and hence direct everything.
- 142) Rationality and intellect are high semi-material values through which you direct your earthly existence, and through which you recognise the truth and reality and thus can become a truth-human being, if you strive for this.
- 143) Intellect and rationality are therefore, for the truth-human being, the driving power out of his or her consciousness which in turn receives its life-energy out of the spirit-form through which the material body primarily awakens to the life.
- 144) Your intellect and your rationality are first and foremost bound to the material space-time-definition, however they are also able to comprehend things of the fine-fluidalness and hence rise themselves above earthly space- and time-definitions into the high-fine-fluidal spacelessness and timelessness, and indeed through the energies and powers of the consciousness which are able to move outward via the pineal gland and manifest themselves; it is therefore an irrational teaching to claim that intellect and rationality could never move timelessly outside of the material space and the time.
- 145) And just as intellect and rationality can stir fine-fluidally in the realm outside of the material space-time-configuration through the energy and power of the consciousness via the pineal gland, so also stir the fine-spiritual perceptions – which are not identical with the feelings – in the fine-fluid-realm outside of the material space- time-definition, because they are, as explained, of a fine-fluidal kind and arise out of the Gemüt of the fine-fluidal spirit-form-realm which is steplessly bordered off from the high-fine-fluid-realm of the spirit-form itself.
- 146) Equipped in this form in an energetical and powerful intellect-, rationality- and consciousness-based wise, you human beings of Earth are deeply connected with the fine-fluidal and the high-fine-fluidal, and the fine-fluidal lies in that realm which is still connected with the semi-fine-fluidal, i.e. the semi-material such as the thoughts and feelings, whereas the pure fine-fluidal already belongs to the outer realm of the spirit-energy-conditioned, and the high-fine-fluidal belongs to the direct realm of the pure creational energy which, as spirit, i.e. spirit-form in you, animates your consciousness, i.e. the entire consciousness-block and the therein included mental-block.
- 147) Through the energy and power of the consciousness and the connection with the pineal gland you are, in the midst of your earthly-material existence, consciously or unconsciously as the case may be, in sensibility with the energy and power of your spirit-form which, however, is only possible for you human beings, whereas the worlds of the animals and other creatures and everything that crawls and flies is excluded therefrom; to enable you to consciously perceive the connection with the creational energy of your spirit-form it requires that you, as truth-human beings, follow the creational laws and recommendations and in the knowledge of the truth use all your attentiveness and heedfulness on this; and truly only you Wesen of the human kind are capable thereto.
- 148) You alone as Wesen of the human kind are able to make a connection in a conscious wise between the fine-fluidal, the high-fine-fluidal and the material-coarse-substantial, wherethrough you are able to realise the pure life of the fine-fluidal and spiritual and make a harmonious interaction between this and your deep coarse-substantial-material.
- 149) Human beings of Earth, your majority however does not fulfil the creational task of the consciousness-evolution, because you separate the two worlds of the fine-fluidal and the coarse-substantial, instead of firmly uniting them and consciously stirring in both of them.
- 150) Through your self-acquired characteristic of concentrating solely on the material you human beings of Earth have effectively made yourselves to masters of your coarse-substantial world, and as a result of your doing, handling and acting, the material world has also become dependent on you; but you use this dependence of your world to torment it in every imaginable wise, for example through chemistry, irresponsible exploitation of



the resources, through overpopulation and the immense resultant problems which can no longer be solved, such as the destruction of the climate, mass migrations, water and food scarcity, hatred, war, torture and the destruction of the environment and nature, the eradication of many animal, bird and fish species etc.; for better or for worse, your world has become dependent on you and perforce suffers in its own kind and wise under your terror and through the destructions which you cause upon it and to it.

- 151) It is you alone who can raise your Earth again, if you stop with all your terror and with your destructions, and if you get your overpopulation under control, out of which all evil terrible things and problems proceed; but consider that your way will be very long to restoring on your planet the state which for you is a true life-source.
- 152) Instead of honouring and taking care of your earthly home, you have brought terribleness over it, and you have done that not least because you have suppressed in yourselves everything that is necessary for your coarse-substantial and your fine-fluidal world so that interactions can flow; equally, just as the oxygen-enriched blood is incessantly pumped through the heart and your arteries to ensure that the body remains fresh and healthy, so it is with the interaction between your coarse-substantial and fine-fluidal world; if the flow is cut, however, then illness and confusion will ensue which will ultimately end in a catastrophe.
- 153) And you human beings of Earth, you have indeed failed badly in this respect, because you have not only used your intellect and your rationality as necessary tools, but you have submitted yourselves only in material sense to your intellect and rationality and set both as ruler over yourselves; but in doing so you have left out of your attention and forgotten everything that is connected with the world of the fine-fluidal which has the consequence that you can only comprehend the coarse-substantial, not however the fine-fluidal, and therefore you are completely dependent on the coarse-substantial and material; so you have made yourselves the slaves of your own tool, the slaves of your intellect and your rationality, and as a result you have become human beings of pure intellect and rationality and proudly call yourselves materialists, but only with the disadvantage that your intellect and rationality show immense deficiency symptoms with regard to the logic and hence do not show any great value; there are very many amongst you who, even if you carry high titles, in your intellect and in your rationality you are still in the beginnings of your development and are currently climbing the first step of the real life-schooling.
- 154) Those amongst you who have entirely submitted to the intellect and the rationality, which in your case, however, severely lack in logic, you have so bitten into the material, i.e. chained yourselves to everything coarse-substantial, that you can no longer perceive, understand and comprehend anything beyond the earthly space- and time-definition, because you have entirely submitted yourselves to your illogical pure coarse-substantial-material reflecting and striving; but in doing so you have put yourselves in your own chains and curtail and encapsulate the horizon of your comprehension-capability to such a degree with your restricted and narrowed as well as illogical intellect and your rationality of the same kind that true intellect, true rationality and true logic have become as strange and unknown to you as the alphabet is to a cow.
- 155) You have separated the connection between the fine-fluidal and coarse-substantial so strongly that a dense wall has built up between them, and as a result, you have also lost, with regard to the fine-spiritual-based perception, the life-source, the purely creational which is far raised above space and time and stands high above the fine-fluidal; for this reason, it is not possible for you all who are materialists amongst you human beings of Earth, to recognise the effective truth nor therefore the core of your inner nature which is formed through a creational fact.
- 156) Truly, if you want to turn to the real truth and win cognition with regard to the creational laws and recommendations, then you must let your intellect and your rationality grow up and learn to use them in logic; so you must liberate yourselves from the pure intellect and the pure rationality of the nothing but coarse-substantial and voluntarily get rid of the self-forged chains of your coarse-substantial slavery.
- 157) You amongst you human beings of Earth who live apart from the effective truth and far from the following of the creational laws and recommendations, you live in purely materialistic, earth-bound, and low-standing thoughts and feelings, and you are very inadequate in your intellect and in your rationality; your thoughts, feelings and endeavours are only characterised by pathological craving for earnings and profit, by hatred, revenge, retaliation and war, by torture, lies, cheating, robbery and suppression as well as sensual lust, defamation, greed, pathological craving and vices etc. through which you inexorably bring about interactions of the same kind; through that you form everything worse and worse and drive yourselves to do more and more terrible things which will ultimately break in over you as gruesome destruction and elimination.
- 158) And in your delusion you even trade with the death through assisted suicide and in doing so you enrich yourselves on the riches of the self-murderer, and you make yourselves into murderers and are excited about and take delight in the dying of those who end their lives in sheer cowardice.
- 159) But your delusion also drives you to beget offspring in an uncontrolled wise and to increasingly push the world which is already overpopulated with human beings into an overpopulation disaster, out of which ever more immense problems emerge, and indeed besides the destruction of the nature and the climate also the



thereout resulting natural catastrophes, pollution of air, water and soil, worldwide terrorism, wars, murder and other crimes, torture, epidemics, deficiency of water and famines, criminality, energy shortages, physical and psychical Gewalt, immorality, coldness and unconcernedness of you human beings towards one another, deterioration of the interhuman relationships, diseases, unweather of all kinds, earthquakes and volcano eruptions, weakening and ever more drastic life-uncapability of you human beings, ever more lax and insufficient handling of the penal laws and the protection of the lives of human beings, animals and all other creatures of the air, the water and the earth.

- 160) Truly, you have already created a world-judgement in the form of immense catastrophes which break in over you and which you already can no longer evade; you are in the midst of a self-created tremendous storm which is brewing over you and which now pours out terribleness and destruction over you, and if you continue to potter about as before, then the elimination is going to break in over you without hope of rescue; therefore you shall bethink yourselves and search for the way of the truth in order to walk upon it and to follow the creational laws and recommendations, because only by doing so can you still prevent the worst.
- 161) You human beings of Earth in general, you do not see yourselves as connecting link between the fine-fluidal and the coarse-substantial, therefore you do not know how to use the animating, refreshing and furthering energies and powers of both worlds; you separate yourselves into two worlds but you only pay attention to the coarse-substantial one and chain yourselves to it, whereas you withdraw yourselves from your connection to the fine-fluidal which you should necessarily use in order to find and lead, through the interaction between the fine-fluidal and the coarse-substantial, a valuefuf equalisation and a true life according to the creational laws and recommendations.
- 162) But you are weak and without energy and power in your volition for the true life, for the truth, fairness, the strength of the character and the righteousness, which is why you lazily wallow in the purely material and through your unintellect and through your habitual irrationality you do not realise that you are heading towards a tremendous crisis which will shake you with immense shivering fits and burn you.
- 163) Consider, everything that you do falls back onto you, because this lies in the natural happening itself, as it is given through the creational laws; thus all your thoughts and feelings take, through the energy and power that animates them, and as soon as they arise, a form that corresponds to their content and they swing out from you and attract again things of the same kind; you however remain connected with your thoughts and feelings in fine-fluidalness in a swinging-wave-based wise, thus everything sent out attracts, through the interaction, things of the same kind and comes back to you again; therefore your own thoughts and feelings pulsate through you fine-fluidally just as this happens to those who receive your corresponding mental and feeling-based impulsations and who respond to them in the fashion that they return back to you.
- 164) Your thoughts and feelings that awaken to the life and the reality in the fine-fluidal, attract, after going out from you as swinging waves, things of the same kind and swing back to the starting point, i.e. to the origin, because you are incessantly in connection with them; thus, you are struck again by your own thoughts and feelings as well as by those of your fellow human beings who are equally directed with regard to their thoughts and feelings; therefore, the returning thoughts and feelings discharge themselves in you, and indeed without you being able to consciously perceive it; through this, further thoughts and feelings of the same kind are triggered in you, out of which again the effect of the boomerang-like recoil-power results which leads to the fact that you chain yourselves more and more in the same thought- and feeling-world and remain its slave; therefore it is of urgency that you bring your thoughts and feelings under control and onto the way of the truth by turning away from the evil, bad and the purely negative and instead turning to the good, best and the positive-equalised.
- 165) Consider you are always being struck by the outcoming effects of your own thoughts and feelings whose constant creator and nurturer you are, and indeed both in the form of the good, the best and positive and in the form of the evil, bad and negative.
- 166) And consider further, in order that the damaging back-falling Gewalt of the interaction through the thoughts and feelings does not reach out to more and more people and does not continue to grasp things of the same kind of the fellow human beings, and wreak more and more terribleness, you must therefore free yourselves from the purely material, i.e. coarse-substantial and come to a consensus with the fine-fluidal as well as with the truth and with the creational laws and recommendations.
- 167) All of you, you human beings of Earth, you must learn to fulfil all that which you shall do in the existence of your life and hence also in the realm of the Creation, so that you are a connecting link between the material, the fine-fluidal and the spiritual of the Creation-energy, so you can enjoy in fullness out of the material and out of the fine-fluidal as well as out of the spiritual energy and power of the Creation.
- 168) Clean yourselves in your thoughts and feelings so that you let yourselves be guided though the creational truth and through the Creation-given laws and recommendations which are well above all material things; to do that you only need to pull your intellect and your rationality out of the darkness of your unlogic and your



unknowledge and build them up logically; and if you learn to do that, then you will be able to gather experiences, live them and use them as a tool in order to fulfil your life in the coarse-substantial existence in logic, intellect and rationality, and through this you will also constantly further, cleanse and raise the entire coarse-substantial Creation, and out of this, true love, harmony, freedom and peace will grow step by step, both in yourselves and in the whole humankind.

- 169) And if you do accordingly, then through every interaction something powerful, good and positive will also logically flow back again, especially true love and freedom, harmony and peace, by which ultimately your whole humankind will be befallen and live therein, through which a new, equal, peaceful and harmonious world will finally arise.
- 170) You shall become true human beings in correct fulfilment of all your actions, your entire activity and deeds as well as your thoughts, feelings, wishes, efforts and requirements, so that you are noble human beings and can honour yourselves as greatest work of the Creation.
- 171) As greatest work of the Creation you however eschew pronouncing the words Creation and truth, even though these two terms should be closer to you than anything else.
- 172) The fact that you do not dare to pronounce the words does not lie in the honour in dignity for them, but rather that you are stricken by confusion and angst, because on the one hand you are bound in a belief to a god, tin god or idolised human being and fear their punishment, and on the other hand, because already as children you were not taught the truth, neither through your parents nor through other educators, neither through teachers nor through others whose duty it would have been to teach you in the truth and in the creational laws and recommendations.
- 173) Nobody has given you clear information, if you have ever searched for the effective truth of all truth, and so your thirst for truth was not satisfied, and as a result it remained fundamentally and in all things a mystery to you, which you have in the end simply put up with without fathoming it any further; under these circumstances, your searching for the effective truth of all truth, the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, cannot happen intimately and as trustingly as you should be able to do.
- 174) But somehow or other you shall and must come closer to the truth of all truth, sooner or later, and so it is also foolish of you to assume that it could be unright to concern yourselves extensively with the truth, with the Creation and with the creational laws and recommendations and in the process to free yourselves from the belief in your god, tin god or idolised human being; so do not assume that it is not rightful to turn to the truth and to cast off your belief in your god, tin god or idolised human being; and do not let yourselves be misled in this respect through your convenience and your indolence, nor through those who claim that your freeing yourselves from your belief in a godhead, an idolised human being or a tin god is evil outrage, because, on the contrary, an outrage against the truth is given through a religious, sectarian, ideological or philosophical belief.
- 175) Consider, if you search for the truthly truth, then it requires that you search for an approach to the whole Creation, which means that you must turn to the creational laws and recommendations and that you must realise them and follow them.
- 176) When approaching the whole Creation, uprightness and modesty are asked for, not however doggish submissiveness, because to show this to the truth and the Creation is a boundless overbearingness and an abasement beyond compare against them, because the truth and the Creation do not require your humble worship and submissiveness, slavish mentality, crawling servility and serving the will of others, but rather esteem and dignity, both for them and for yourselves.
- 177) Your esteem and dignity concerning the truth and the whole Creation as well as yourselves is not laid out so that truth and Creation must approach you, because it is you yourselves who, through your intellect and your rationality in recognition of the reality, must approach them, recognise them and follow their laws and recommendations.
- 178) But truly, amongst the majority of you human beings of Earth there is only convenience and hypocritical religious, ideological and philosophical belief, wrapped in the villainous cloak of the submissiveness and dignitylessness towards yourselves and with regard to the truth, the laws and recommendations of the Creation, the entire creation all around and especially the Creation as Universal Consciousness.
- 179) But you amongst you, you who no longer want to sleep in truth-unknowledgeness and in non-following of the creational laws and recommendations, you who search, in honesty, esteem and dignity, for the truth of all truth and strive for fulfilment of the creational laws and recommendations, take in the tidings of the teaching of the prophets, the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life as it is given to you in the «Goblet of the Truth», so that you comprehend the right thing.
- 180) Be certain: There is only one Creation as all-embracing energy and power which gives life to everything in existence and to all created creations, namely the Universal Consciousness which as the whole Creation also includes itself and everything created through it; and there is no god, no tin god and no idolised human being who would, even in a speck of dust of a weight, be equal to the Creation, because all godheads and tin gods



are only insubstantialities fabricated by you human beings and are without any energy and power, just like the human beings who you raise to idols of godly equivalence.

- 181) Through your wrong doing in your belief in godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings you close off the heaven and the paradise which strive in you, in form of your psyche and your consciousness-state, for revelation, which you, however, maliciously suppress in yourselves through your consciousness-based and psychical state of the hell; you no longer let yourselves be guided through the effective truth of all truth and hence not through the creational laws and recommendations and therefore not through the reality; you have, in a self-chosen wise, raised your earthly intellect and your rationality to the unlogic and have submitted yourselves to it and to the truth-unknowledgeness, and thus you have become the tool of your own inadequacy, irrationality and your unintellect and have moved further and further away from the truth and from the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 182) In doing so you have, as individuals and as whole humankind, carried out a separation between the truth, the creational and the material, through which you are mainly connected only to the earthly which is absolutely bound only to the material and its space and time; but that is something that the creational laws and recommendations do not include as such, but rather it is your own, purely human work, and this is why you are unable to understand the truth and the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 183) The longer you wait to find and follow the effective truth of all truth, the greater the cleft will be between the reality and unreality as well as between the truth about the knowledge and the untruth about the knowledge, as a result of which you increasingly chain yourselves to the material.
- 184) You are nothing more than earthbound intellectual and rational human beings who call yourselves materialists with pride because you do not see the chains with which you have shackled yourselves to the purely earthly and its space and time, through which you have narrowed the horizon of your own intellect and rationality to such an extent that you no longer recognise the logic and truth of the reality and also cannot understand them.
- 185) And if you ask how you can find the truth and reality out of this, then the answer is that this is impossible for you, if you do not bestir yourselves and if the help does not come from yourselves, because it is you yourselves who must take pity on you and enable you to reveal the truth of all truth and the reality to your low intellect and your equally low rationality, so that you can also comprehend and follow the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 186) And you shall not ridicule those amongst you who strive for the truth and reality, because you yourselves are narrow in your intellect and in your rationality and are unable to extend your materialistic horizon through healthy and valuable thoughts and feelings to an extent that you can find the truth and reality in yourselves and proclaim and comprehend them.
- 187) All the efforts of the true prophets and their teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life are of no benefit, if you do not let their knowledge and wisdom get through to you, because even the basic thoughts of all truth-strivings have become purely materialistic in you.
- 188) And if the true prophets come with the 'Goblet of the Truth' as intermediaries between you truth-straying human beings and the truth of the creational laws and recommendations, then you shall think about the 'Teaching of the Prophets' and build up energy and power in you, so that the truth of the teaching gets into you and you comprehend and follow it.
- 189) You are still only a few amongst you, you who, as ones stricken by the materialism, demand for the effective truth of all truth and search for it and you who are overbearingly insulted as opponents of the god-belief by the believers of the religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies, instead of them recognising the righteousness, strength of the character and the fairness as well as the responsibility and the conscientiousness in your efforts.
- 190) But do not let yourselves be made uncertain in your search for the truth which you find only in yourselves and in the creational laws and recommendations which act through all things and everything existent of the whole Creation, with which you too are closely connected with everything through the creational love.
- 191) The brazen laws and recommendations of the Creation in all its creations, i.e. in all its manifestations, in all created creations, and indeed in everything existent, run through, as all-embracing swinging waves, the whole universe and everything that exists therein; and resulting out of these law- and recommendation-based swinging waves are also the interactions through which you yourselves form and determine your destiny; it follows from this that you cannot set yourselves against the creational laws and recommendations without having to bear the consequences in accordance with cause and effect which you determine yourselves through your acting, even if you do not know or refuse to understand this.
- 192) The interaction out of your thoughts and feelings as well as out of your activity and deeds is inexorable and unmovable, so therefore everything always comes back to you, be it good or evil.
- 193) And just as the interaction that strikes you is created by and starts from yourselves, so the truth and its effect starts from the Creation, namely through its laws and recommendations in which everything existent of each



kind is integrated; consider that cause and effect always belong together, they are one in themselves alone and one in connectedness, therefore each part can carry out autonomous deeds, but in co-operation as connection in the whole they result in a oneness.

- 194) In front of the Creation all is one, a oneness, woven through with its spiritual energy and power, however comprehensive in the wise that everything is autonomous and also creates its own energy and power in itself, just as each thing in this wise also determines and forms everything itself, but nonetheless is connected with the Creation itself, with its energy and power and with the whole universe and everything that exists therein.
- 195) So regardless of what it is, it is always an autonomous oneness, just as the negative and positive are in themselves each an autonomous oneness, but in union they again form a oneness, i.e. a whole, like for example, the electricity with plus and minus, i.e. positive and negative, each of which in itself is an autonomous energy and power and a oneness, in union however again form a whole, a oneness, so for example through the combination light is generated or motors are driven etc; this however means that there is no two-foldness, i.e. no duality and no three-foldness, i.e. trinity, but in each case always only a oneness, a whole.
- 196) And because you humankind who have gone astray do not understand these things with regard to the creational laws and recommendations, which act in all and each thing in the same wise, true intermediaries are given to you, true proclaimers of the truth, so that you may learn and free yourselves from the chains of the truth-unknowledgeness in order to follow the truth of all truth and the reality of all reality.
- 197) The true prophets come in order to make the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life comprehensible to you, so that you learn thereout and lead a life in accordance with the laws and recommendations of the Creation and fulfil the consciousness-evolution as life-sense.
- 198) But it is not clear to many amongst you human beings of Earth what the truth of all truth is, nor is it clear to you what the Creation and the reality are; for the majority amongst you, truth, Creation and reality are confusing terms which you equate with your belief in a god, tin god or a human being raised to a godly idol.
- 199) But know: Truth, Creation and reality are themselves practising love, fairness, harmony, peace and freedom, because these values are based in and carried in the unmovable and unbriable laws and recommendations of the Creation itself and pulse through the entire universe.
- 200) The love in particular is the fundamental factor of all being of the whole Creation, as everything is created out of the Creation itself, out of the Universal Consciousness; and so, just as through the Creation everything is bound in love, so should it also be amongst you human beings of Earth, namely that you embrace everything in love, your next ones, all your fellow human beings and the whole humankind, the nature and its plant-world, the planet, the animals, all creatures and everything that crawls and flies; but you only embrace yourselves in your ausgeartet, selfish self-love, whereas you bring only apparent love to your next ones, your fellow human beings as well as your humankind.
- 201) You band together in apparent love for the friendship, do not even know the true parent- and sibling-love anymore, nor the love for the next ones but only the doubtful imperiousness-love, immodesty-love, the stinginess-love and pathological egoism-love as well as the obsession-love for riches, for money, for self-benefit and worldly pleasures.
- 202) And you many amongst you who enter into purposeful marital bonds, you do not even know the true bond-love, but only a purposeful love which is based in winning financial riches or idol-like estimation, so without true love you enter in doubtfulness into a marital bond, and, according to whim and pathological need, you break it again, through which neither a permanence nor true love can come about.
- 203) Just as you only have an apparent love to the truth, so you only feel an apparent love to your life whose high value you disregard and which you constantly drive to the edge of the death through all sorts of extreme and irresponsible forms of the activity and deeds.
- 204) All around, the love is for very many of you, those who only cultivate it as illusion, lies and deception, only directed towards profit, riches, estimation, self-presentation, advantages, harm, spitefulness, hostility and maliciousness, which is why you feign love in characterlessness, whereas there is truthly only hatred, greed, schadenfreude, pathological craving for revenge and urge for retaliation as well as rapacity, pathological craving for profit and exploitation in you.
- 205) Just as you have made your invented gods, tin gods and idolised human beings to religions, ideologies and philosophies and to a belief, so you have done the same with the love, because for you it is nothing more than a belief and a religion which, just like the supposed love, you also bend and maltreat for your own purpose depending on your requirements and attitude.
- 206) Truly, you have completely wrongly understood the love and have, through a wide variety of falsifications and distortions, made it into a term of belief and religion, although you know not at all what real love is, because you make it dependent on material things and you exchange it on a whim like dirty shirts.



- 207) What you call love is everything but love, because true love is the deepest spiritual-fine-sensitive-feeling-based connectedness, and love is the absolute certainty of oneself living together and coexisting with everything in everything, thus, in all that exists; in fauna and flora, in the fellow human being, in every material and spiritual life form irrespective of its kind, and in the existence of the entire universe and much more (laws and recommendations).
- 208) But you amongst you human beings of Earth who have the love as belief and religion, if one goes to the true bottom of your so-called real love, then nothing remains in the end but desires, comfort, imagination, vanity, longing for riches and estimation, avarice as well as sexual drives etc.
- 209) Truthful love is not only thought- and feeling-conditioned but raised through spiritual fine-sensitive feelings out of the Gemüt of the spirit-realm, and this form of the true love is not simply directed towards what you like, what is pleasant for you and what brings you joy and a comfortable feeling, but rather it directs itself only according to what joins together with deepest connectedness and certainty of the co-existence in harmony.
- 210) True love is also true joy and all-embracing happiness in togetherness in the thoughts, feelings and in the psyche, in which every servility, submissiveness and hypocrisy is excluded; if it is said through the true prophets "Love your enemies", then this means that you shall cultivate a deep connectedness in certainty of the co-existence, and indeed irrespective of whether your real or apparent enemy openly perceives this or not.
- 211) Beware of disciplining your real or apparent enemies in order to move them to the cognition, but instead let them know that you are not hostile-minded to them and that as human beings you feel deeply connected with them and that you bear neither hatred nor revenge-thoughts against them; this alone is love and the cultivation of the fairness to the next one and fellow human being, because consider, that true love cannot be separated from fairness, because both belong together, each as its own oneness, and together they again build a oneness.
- 212) Fairness and the being-fair in love require, however, that you do not show inappropriate indulgence to a hostile-minded one so that his or her misbehaviour is not increased and that he or she does not go further down the slanting track, because truly it is your duty to point out the misbehaviour in love, intellect and rationality as well as in a peaceful wise in order to not, contrary to the love, bring guilt and hatred upon yourselves.
- 213) The love of many of you human beings of Earth, those who have made it into the belief and into the religion, ideology or philosophy, you also form it through your unspoken wishes into unworthiness and inertness, and in doing so you deny and defame it in its truthliness, and indeed in the same wise as you do this with the true truth-bringers, the prophets, the proclaimers and defame them by accusing them of being weak and indulgent, because they do not preach hatred, war, terror, revenge and retaliation, but teach you of the true love, harmony and freedom and real peace.
- 214) The sadness which often befalls the true prophets has nothing to do with weakness and indulgence and is an implicitness for the proclaimers with regard to their high mission and the humankind they are confronted with, with which they must come to terms against all defamatory and life-threatening attacks of the antagonists who have fallen pray to hatred.
- 215) But you, those you who do not search for the belief of love nor for the religion of love but for the true love out of spiritual-fine-sensitive feelings, you must liberate yourselves from all dogmatic restrictions and in strict consequence and without any illogical indulgence and weakness turn to the creational laws and recommendations and follow them, because it is alone by fulfilling them that you are able to find and build up the true love in you; be always conscious that true love is no coercion, but must be created and become reality from out of your own free will.
- 216) Your free will is something special, but in order to be able to explain it, a number of external things must be considered which more or less have an influence on it; in addition, the free will is something about which there is contention even among academics.
- 217) Your free will absolutely includes your free decision- and determination-possibility which is built up upon the responsibility of the laws with regard to fairness.
- 218) Even if you ask where the free will is in your case, because you believe in godly or tin-godly guidance, predetermination, providence and in the influences of the stars, in godly or tin godly punishment or in a karma and believe that you, whether you want it or not, are guided or pushed through the life through the powers of a god, tin god or a human being raised to a godly idol, this free will is nevertheless given to you, even if you do not want to understand this.
- 219) You fall seriously upon everything with fervour which talks about the free will, recognising rightly that it is precisely here that an explanation is required, because the whole of your free will is not understood through the religious, ideological and philosophical belief and is also denied through the irrational assumptions and irrational teachings of the neo-neurology.
- 220) But as long as you do not have the truth of the explanation with regard to your free will, you are not able to properly adjust to following the creational laws and recommendations and to assert yourselves in the whole



all-embracing Creation as that which you really are, namely human beings with a free will.

- 221) If you, however, do not find the right attitude in the realm of the whole all-embracing Creation and to the Creation, i.e. the Universal Consciousness itself, then you remain far from everything existent that it has created and errantly wander about therein without finding the true direction of the life; this is a state in which you find no destination-consciousness, because you do not unfold your free will, and as a result let yourselves be pushed, formed, directed, planed and errantly wander about through the life through your fellow human beings.
- 222) Your great deficiency with regard to your own free will is that you do not know and do not even have the faintest idea where in you it is actually located and how it works; this fact alone shows that you have interrupted the connection to your free will and that you have most widely lost it and that therefore you no longer know where and how you can find it.
- 223) Truly, you have closed the gate to the cognition and to the understanding of your free will through your purely materialistic good of thoughts and good of feelings, so you undecidedly turn around in a circle and continuously wear yourselves out when you search for the truth and for your free will.
- 224) Only when you change your thoughts and feelings and you uprightly strive after the effective truth and also want to find it through your free will, will fresh energy and power come about in you in order to open your closedness; but be certain that even if you scour away your closedness with great power, the way to the truth will still be long and you will have to continue searching steadily.
- 225) You must learn to find the way of the truth in yourselves which is the truth and the culmination-point itself, and so you must learn to go the way and to tread it with a steady and unswerving step, otherwise it can happen that you indeed see the way, but stagger and stumble along it and keep falling again and again, because you are slightly impaired and make missteps, and as a result you can neither find the real truth nor your free will.
- 226) You many amongst you who are simple, hardworking and normal-common Earth-humans without any academic titles, ranks and names and believers with regard to a godhead, a tin god, angel, saint or idolised human being, but also you amongst you who do have high titles, ranks and names, for example as scientist or neurologists etc., you show incomprehension towards the real presence, i.e. the true existence of your free will in a hard-headed wise, and this in total non-understanding of what the free will really is.
- 227) Truly, the simple explanation for the free will is already given in the expression itself, but because you are complicated in your rationality and in your intellect, you also see the explanation in complicatedness, and the reason for this is that you are not able to perceive the really simple precisely because it is so simple, and therefore you look for the free will – of which you cannot make neither a picture nor an idea – in the wrong place.
- 228) You human beings of Earth who make yourselves thoughts about your free will, you live in imaginations which are in any case always wrong, because imaginations correspond always to illusions, and illusions are nothing but wish-pictures, imaginations, castles in the air, worthless things, and self-deception and they have nothing to do with the truth and reality; the only things that can be right are effective reference-points, terms, pictures and ideas which correspond to the reality but never to imaginations.
- 229) But because you do make yourselves imaginations which are always wrong and bring disappointments, you also try to explain your own free will through an erroneous imagination that is based therein, that a Gewalt-based construction of your brain forces your space and time bound intellect and the rationality to push the thoughts and feelings in any distinct direction and to determine them; this, however, is a heavy-weighting confoundedness and in no wise corresponds to your free will, but rather is a self-thought-up wrong machination of your not-understood will which is bound to your inadequate intellect and to the inadequate rationality.
- 230) This grave confoundedness creates great erroneous assumptions and builds up a wall against the truth which makes a recognising and realising of the same impossible for you; and that you therefore, also find gaps and contradictions while searching for your free will and are not able to bring logicalness, i.e. logic into the whole, that surprises you tremendously and closes off your intellect and the rationality.
- 231) Your free will is truthfully exceedingly drastically connected with the fine-fluidal world of the nature of your individuality which you are capable of forming yourselves and upon which your will puts its stamp.
- 232) Your free will stands in direct connection with your consciousness and therewith also with your thoughts and feelings and consequently also with your brain as well as with the fine-fluidal realm.
- 233) Were you not to always grant the suzerainty, i.e. the higher ruling only to your material intellect and to the therewith connected rationality in an unrestricted wise, but were also to use the core of your true inner nature which is connected with your own fine-fluidal side, then you would be able to recognise your free will and control it consciously.
- 234) And were you to use and control your free will consciously, then you would recognise the fine-fluidal of the core of your inner nature as your real ego and thus fundamentally determine everything yourselves in complete freedom and in a fully conscious wise and absolutely free of any influences, and this self-determination alone



is the crucial factor of your free will.

- 235) And if you use your self-determination i.e. your free will, then you will not live in that bound will which, to execute all material purposes, is bound to the earthly space and time and which is determined through your life-mode, life-circumstances, the norms of the society, through requirements, wishes, desires and orders of the fellow human beings as well as through laws and ordinances etc.
- 236) The bound will is that which is not self-created but which affects you through external, material influences and suppresses your own free will and does not let it come to fruition, and this is why you then assume that you do not have your own free will.
- 237) But if you live with it by only following your bound will, then you do not consciously determine your destiny in the wise that it solely and exclusively comes from you and is formed by you, but instead you determine it by acquiring external influences and bending to the bound will that is having an effect on you and bringing about in this kind and wise your destiny yourselves.
- 238) Of course, this explanation does not lead to a true comprehension concerning your free will as human beings, because in order to really understand it, it is necessary to know what the free will is fundamentally based on, and the reason for that is anchored in the creational laws and recommendations which are laid out solely on the determination of effects in accordance with the causal law of cause and effect.
- 239) These laws and recommendations which are formed in fairness are not determining in what you as human beings shall do or refrain from doing through them, as a result of which you would be without free will and determiningly controlled through them, because to the contrary they do not determine any of your thoughts, feelings, deeds and actions, but instead let you determine and decide over them in every respect yourselves, and hence in accordance with your own free will.
- 240) What is pre-given through the laws and recommendations of the Creation are only the effects, namely that certain causes bring about certain effects; thus, it is only laid down through the laws and recommendations that certain thoughts, feelings, actions, deeds and modes of functioning as cause, bring about with absolute certainty effects corresponding to the cause, in which case you as human beings, however, are free according to your own will to form the cause in the right or wrong, i.e. negative or positive wise and hence to bring about a right or wrong, i.e. a positive or negative, i.e. good or bad effect.
- 241) As a vague example, you can use your self-created laws and ordinances etc. which are given to you in the wise that you can follow them or act contrary to them according to your own choosing, i.e. according to your own free decision and according to your free will; this means that your laws and ordinances etc. are so formed that you can follow them or disregard them, and they are also based on cause and effect; if you follow them, you create therewith good, positive causes, out of which the effect of the impunity comes and a life-conduct based on the law-following results, one that is rightful, irreproachable, righteous, fairness-formed and responsible and therefore of a good and positive nature; if, on the contrary, you disregard and break your laws and ordinances, then that results in the effect of the punishability and a life-conduct of the unright, irresponsibility, unfairness and unrighteousness which corresponds to an ungood and negative form; and whether your thoughts, feelings, deeds, actions and your activity shall be good and positive or bad and negative is something you yourselves decide according to your own choosing and in the full possession of your free will, because also with regard to the following or non-following of your civil and criminal laws, recommendations and ordinances you are not forced to keep to them and follow them, just as is the case with the creational laws and recommendations; you just have to bear the effects that arise out of your self-determined causes, i.e. thoughts, feelings, actions and deeds, be it in relation to the creational or your human laws and recommendations, i.e. ordinances.
- 242) With regard to both the creational laws and recommendations as well as your human laws and ordinances you are free in deciding whether you want to follow them or disregard them, in which case you are also conscious – at least with regard to your earthly-human laws and ordinances etc. – that the cause of a breach of the law or ordinance will entail the effect of you being called to account.
- 243) You can decide yourselves, according to your own free will, whether or not you want to keep to the laws and recommendations of the Creation or your earthly-human laws and ordinances, because you are not compelled through them to act in the one or other wise, thus you decide yourselves what good or bad causes you want to choose and create and what laudable or evil effects you want to call forth, and you do this entirely according to your own free will through which you determine yourselves your integration into the good or bad.
- 244) As a rule, you are not able to recognise in what wise the very often many-sided entanglement of your thoughts, feelings, actions, deeds and your activity cover the effects of your free will, because you only live in accordance with your superficiality and do not really perceive what fundamentally happens in you, and as a result you cannot analyse your own free will, nor do you recognise, let alone understand it, which is why you wrongly assume that you do not willingly control everything yourselves but instead would be controlled through



cosmic or godly laws.

- 245) In order to understand the whole of your free will, you must go back to the fine-fluidal shell of your free consciousness and to the core of your inner nature which form the outer edge of the substantialness into which the energy and power of the spiritual sinks in an impulse-based wise, transferred through your spirit-form as well as through the creational laws and recommendations; and this is what you shall be striving for to perceive, because then you will realise that you are not at all what you imagine yourselves to be.
- 246) Truly, you human beings of Earth do not have the absolute right to the glory of the life, because the right solely consists in you earning it through the evolution of your consciousness by creating in you and around you true love, harmony, freedom and peace as well as knowledge and wisdom and leading your life rightfully in fairness, conscientiousness, righteousness and responsibility; and this also says that the whole of that which you assume in your incorrectly understood or conceived sense, namely that you are from the ground up true human beings, is entirely wrong, because you are true human beings only when you have developed into them.
- 247) Fundamentally, you are only sown into the life as human-seed and as this seed you carry everything in you in order to personally consciously develop yourselves into a true human being, but the prerequisite is given that you yourselves create and cultivate the thereto required capabilities and possibilities in you, bring them to a high-form and not let them wither again.
- 248) Truly, this process of the self-development happens in accordance with your completely free will and in connection with the creation of the capabilities and possibilities, and the entire process is tremendously big, immense and completely natural in every step of the happening; and for this you are given the creational-spiritual energy and power through which you can, according to your own free will, choose a logical or illogical developmental process, so you decide yourselves whether you want to follow the logical, creational laws and recommendations or not and thus want to bring down fortune or unfortune on you; but consider, also the logic is not absolutely fully developed, rather only in a relative kind and wise, and indeed because there is always only relatively absolute full-development, because each development entails another development, each result another result, and indeed entirely in accordance with the law of the causality, that a cause brings forth a distinct effect which in turn is the cause for a further effect etc.
- 249) You human beings of Earth, as human-seed, each of you carries in himself or herself a Creation-given spirit-form which animates you and your entire consciousness-block with creational-spiritual energy and power and through which you are capable of taking in the cosmic-electromagnetic life energy; and through the same energy and power you are also enabled to create all necessary capabilities and possibilities in you, and each one of them carries in it a promise whose fulfilment will absolutely occur, if you form everything thereto through your will, i.e. if you bring your self-created capabilities and possibilities to the realisation.
- 250) Learn that the high-fine-fluidal of the Creation gets into the inner nature of your fine-fluidal as energy and power, and from this, your own fine-fluidal, it undulates into your consciousness and your body, through which you as material human life form also carry creational-spiritual energy and power in you; and through the high-fine-fluidal of the Creation, which gets into your fine-fluidal and out of this into your consciousness and into your body, you live and evolve in your consciousness, if you learn in a conscious or unconscious wise.
- 251) The seed of your consciousness-evolution germinates and grows only slowly, and indeed in accordance with your conscious efforts which you must specially create through your free will; but if you do not develop the necessary capabilities and possibilities consciously and willingly, then your efforts will deteriorate and peter out somewhere without them bringing any success and being able to realise themselves.
- 252) But if you consciously willingly strive for everything necessary, then the capabilities and possibilities arise in you which you accurately sort and weed out that which is of no value, so you split off the chaff from the good corn.
- 253) On the whole, this is the way of the developmental process in which your free will is recognisable, but in order to recognise it, the actual developmental process of you human beings of Earth must be followed a bit more deeply, because the fact is that you can, in accordance with your wishes, requirements and desires, change the course of your thoughts and feelings simply according to your free choosing, i.e. your free will, and give it a new direction, if something doesn't please you anymore; but through this you also ripen more and more, because slowly your differentiation-ability and also your discernment grow which ultimately leads to the fact that you become more conscious and more secure and follow a distinct direction; and the choice of the direction, the way, the swinging waves which you are willing to follow will not then remain without a deeper effect in yourselves, and thereby it is only logical that the direction that you choose, the way that you go, and the swinging waves in which you pulsate in your free will, create an interaction which influences you.
- 254) The pure creational energy and power which you take in through your fine-fluidal-realm in your consciousness and in the entire consciousness-block is pure and noble in itself, and you shall also use the consciousness in this kind and wise according to your free will and not let it wither through the bound, worldly-material will.



- 255) If you mainly follow your own noble swinging waves, your own good- or best-formed ideas, thoughts, feelings, determinations and decisions, then you therethrough form your free will logically in the right form of the positive, good and valueful which finds expression in you yourselves just as you also carry it forth outwards through your words, actions, deeds and your activity in general.
- 256) If you mainly decide through your ideas, thoughts, feelings, determinations and decisions for the ignoble swinging waves, then these, over time, influence your free will in such a wise that the negative, bad, and evil kind adheres to it, through which also your individuality becomes formed in the same wise, and you direct your actions, deeds and all your activity thereupon; the reason for this is that the solely negative, bad and evil overgrows everything, as a result of which no awakening and blossoming to the effective truth can occur.
- 257) If you form your free will to the purely evil, negative, bad, unrighteous, irresponsible, to the consciencelessness and to the unfair, then you bury and suppress in you the creationally formed core of your inner nature while you form its outer nature through your free will into a bad individuality, through which you become a terrible administrator of your creational good which you carry in the core of your inner nature as creational-spiritual form, energy and power.
- 258) The core of your inner nature is formed through the creational nature, i.e. its energy and power, with which you shall live in conformity and therethrough form the outer shell to the best through your own efforts and according to your own free will, because this outer shell of the core of your inner nature is given to you as fundamentally neutral, so that you yourselves can form it as individuality; however, if you carry out this forming process in a wrong wise, by willingly preferring only the evil, bad and negative, then firstly your will forms itself out of your own, free decision and determination, and secondly out of this results an individuality which is equivalent to this free will.
- 259) The energy and power of the will which is given you from birth onwards is fundamentally neutral and as such lies dormant, therefore it can be worked on and so to speak be programmed like a computer; but this means that you yourselves determine the form of your will, that is whether it shall be really free in accordance with your desire or whether you enslave it and leave it to the outer boundedness, through which it withers and you are enslaved by the bound will which is dictated upon you.
- 260) This means that you can build up your own free will and therethrough regulate, decide and determine all things of your life yourselves, or you can let your material environment and your fellow human beings forcefully impose their will, the bound one, upon you, because truly you yourselves decide how your will shall be formed, and indeed in the negative, bad, evil as well as in the positive, good, best and valueful.
- 261) It follows that you can form and raise your will in full and ample freedom for yourselves, just as you can direct it also into the boundedness and unfreedom of the sinking into the purely substantial, i.e. material and let it wither.
- 262) Therefore it is possible for you to form your swinging waves freely in accordance with your ideas, thoughts, feelings, decisions and determinations, whether you create your own positive, good or negative and bad free will, or whether you want to let a bound, unfree will be forcefully imposed upon you from the outside.
- 263) If you choose the negative, bad, evil side of the free will, then you will constantly be exposed to the same kind of temptations and besmirch yourselves therewith if you follow them; in this wise, a consciousness-based restlessness stirs in you which expresses itself through thoughts and feelings and therefore through the psyche; indeed also the external effects result in the same wise through the purely negative, bad and evil and no longer give any room for the noble, because the latter is overgrown, as is the free will which in its negative or positive form is dependent on your own decisions and determinations, ideas, thoughts and feelings and formed through them.
- 264) And know, you human beings of Earth, each guilt that strikes you and each destiny that is connected with you is of a purely substantial nature, because such is only given within the material creation, i.e. the created creations which have come out of the idea of the Creation Universal Consciousness; therefore only as human beings can you load guilt and destiny onto you, whereas your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form, which is of creational nature and is only a minuscule part in you, cannot be befallen thereby; so nothing of guilt and destiny can pass over to your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form as pure creational energy and power, and also nothing of guilt and destiny can connect to it in any wise; therefore only you can – in accordance with your free will – load guilt onto you and bring about a distinct own destiny, in which case you can however also liberate yourselves from your guilt again and developmentally change your destiny in accordance with your own free will; this fact does not overturn anything but confirms only the truth which is given through the creational laws and recommendations; but this truth contradicts the religious belief and the religiously given irrational teachings in which the great truth of all truth can no longer be recognised as it has been given to you earthly humankind through the true prophets, through the 'Teaching of the Prophets', the 'Goblet of the Truth' which is the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit and the teaching of the life.
- 265) The more conscious you human beings of Earth become and progress in your evolution, the more the outer



shell of your creationally determined inner nature takes on its form, as a result of which your individuality forms itself in accordance with the core of your inner nature, just as your free will develops according to your therewith growing individuality, through which your free will and your individuality jointly work together in the same form.

- 266) But if you do not let the shell of your inner nature develop in accordance with the creational kind of the core of your inner nature and you do not strive for the noble and for the characteristic nature of the core, then your individuality and your will accordingly form themselves in a negative, bad or evil wise, because in the same wise that you strive for the noble or ignoble, so will the effect be, noble or ignoble.
- 267) From the very beginning onwards the free will is given you, and therefore you can make it, through your own decisions and determinations, negative, bad, evil or positive, good and noble, so you can also form it to the full freedom or boundedness.
- 268) In any case, it is always up to you whether you let your free will exist as such and use it consciously, intellectually and rationally in a logical wise or whether you make it bound, i.e. unfree and burdened with external influences, so that it is so much disadvantaged that it no longer corresponds to a free will in any wise.
- 269) In the Creation, in the Universal Consciousness, and in all its created creations and in everything existent that it has created, one wheel of the happening interlocks into the other; in strict logicalness one thing is the consequence of another thing and at the same time controllingly turns everything that is connected with it, through which no irregularity can occur; the whole is like a gigantic giant-wheelwork, in which from all sides the cogs of the wheels precisely and sharply interlock and incessantly move everything further and drive it forwards to the development; and you human beings of Earth, you stand with the decision- and determination-power given to you through your free will in the middle of this immense machinery, equipped with an unmeasurable might which is given you and with which you are able to direct the big wheelwork of your own life and destiny in any direction that you choose, that is to your own prosperity or adversity, to your fortune or unfortune, to the negative, bad, evil, terrible or to the positive, good, depending on how you form and use your free will.
- 270) And truly, whatever you do in this respect you only do for yourselves, because you alone lead yourselves upwards or downwards, because for every cause and effect your free will is always the decisive factor, depending on how you form it through your own attitude, decision and determination.
- 271) Just as the whole wheelwork of the machinery of the Creation does not consist of rigid material but of living forms, created creations and natures, so your own wheelwork of your inner nature and your entire consciousness-block is full of vitality and creates the immense effect of your existence.
- 272) And your marvellous own wheelwork of your inner nature and your consciousness-block is directed towards helping you human beings of Earth and bringing you forward in your evolution, consciously and through your own will, and indeed as long as you do not squander the might given to you in an intellect- and rationality-less childish wise, use it wrongly and throw it into the wheelwork of your own machinery as something defective and thus hold back or even destroy everything.
- 273) Therefore it is recommended to you to finally integrate yourselves into the creational laws and recommendations, so that you finally become what you shall be, namely real and true human beings.
- 274) To integrate oneself into the creational laws and recommendations in reality means nothing more than understanding their effects and acting through one's own decision and determination in free will; but this in turn means that you help yourselves, in which case this helping is based in your own decision to determine everything yourselves, to rule over everything and thus to make the own will free, namely to the free will, exactly as it has to be; and that again is a crucial point, because if you follow this guidance, you will change everything for you, because you change inwardly first.
- 275) Truly, you are thousands of millions of Earth-humans, and as a huge mass you actually want a better and good life, but as majority of your humankind, you let yourselves be deceived and guided into the unreal through false teachings of the religions, ideologies and philosophies, far from any creational law- and recommendation-based truth; thus it is only natural that you do not know the Creation-given laws and recommendations and that you cannot follow them, through which you disturb the wheelwork of the happenings around you and your own destiny and shatter many things that are good and valuable, before they can even arise.
- 276) And if you do not rightfully search, trembling and anxious, for the way of the truth in you which is itself the truth and the culmination-point, then you hesitate and fall back into your belief in your god, tin god or idolised human being, through which you again bethink yourselves of the praying, begging and beseeching to them and submissively pay homage to them, but because you have already got involved with the truth to a certain degree, you no longer find a way back to the earlier kind of your belief and waver between the world of the creational truth and the world of the religious, sectarian, ideological or philosophical lie and guidance into the unreal, so you definitively do not find the truth which could bring you help.



- 277) If you then recognise your failure, you fall into despair and go quickly enraged over to the swearing and to the alleging accusation that there is neither any truthfully truth and no effects of the creational laws and recommendations, nor, above all, any Creation, if it lets such things happen; but in your rage you forget that it is not the Creation and not its laws and recommendations that are responsible for you, but only you all alone with your own free will through which you determine and bring about all and everything that befalls you in terms of happenings and the destiny.
- 278) And because you do not recognise, in all the things of your thoughts and feelings as well as in your general effects and in all your actions and deeds, your own responsibility and the own free will through which you conduct, decide, determine, form, create and call into the life everything yourselves, so you also do not find the iron strength of the character and of all virtues in everything as is given through the creational laws and recommendations; nor do you recognise the might of your own decision- and determination-capability and therewith of your free will through which you can change everything to the good and best and to the valuable and most valuable; truly, this has been said to you again and again since time immemorial through all true prophets, but you do not want to listen and to act correctly.
- 279) You do not want to listen and act, but with childish defiance you demand fairness and forgiveness, even though you do not know who shall give them to you; and if you assume that the Creation Universal Consciousness shall give you fairness and forgiveness and you then intend to accept it in its greatness and truth, then you are on an evil irrational way, because truly, you alone are responsible for the fairness and forgiveness, because in your life you yourselves must give them to you, since you alone are responsible for all and everything for which you need fairness and forgiveness.
- 280) Consider: How and what should the Creation do for you according to your imaginations, you who demand fairness and forgiveness from it, given the fact that not the Creation is responsible for your thoughts and feelings, for all your activity as well as your actions and deeds, but you alone?; truly, you mock the Creation, the Universal Consciousness, with your belief in a god, tin god, angel, devil, saint or human being raised to a godly or other idol, and nevertheless you have the audacity to demand fairness and forgiveness from it – what a characterlessness and degradation.
- 281) Most amongst you human beings of Earth, you who are fools, in your always newly self-wanted blindness, imperiousness, boastfulness and deafness you run into your ruin which, through your wrong and self-righteous behaviour, you create in blind zeal to your own suffering.
- 282) You increasingly and obstinately strive towards the wanting-to-know-everything-better, and you let yourselves sink deeper and deeper into the deep, dark and bottomless abyss of the truth-unknowledge.
- 283) Know and consider: Only by searching for the real truth in yourselves and also finding the way of the truth in yourselves, which is the truth and the culmination-point itself, can you come to your senses; therefore, the darkness of the truth-unknowledge itself shall be the beginning of the teaching for you through which you find the truth; consider that it can be that you perhaps find the way to the real truth of all truth too late, if there is not enough time for you to save you from an evil happening or destiny; let yourselves finally recognise the truth in yourselves, so that you may also find the real truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, so that you recognise it, experience and live it and can tear yourselves loose from the darkness of your truth-unknowledge and rise upwards to the light of the truth; truly, it is high time for you to make yourselves free from your belief in a god, tin god, saint, angel, idolised human being as well as from your belief in religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies and finally turn seriously, consciously, unrestrictedly and neutrally to the effective truth of all truth and work with it and make it to your knowledge and to your wisdom.
- 284) The wisdom is not as you human beings of Earth in large numbers and as self-appointed wise ones show it, even though you are by no means wise; wisdom only arises once you have, from out of your own, inner cognition, made an effective fact your own, and therefore have made it to the living, uncoerced, incontrovertible and irrefutable inner knowledge, out of which the essence proceeds as wisdom.
- 285) Thus wisdom comes from out of yourselves not however out of supposed words of a god, tin god, or human being raised to a godly idol, nor does it come through priests, angels or saints etc.
- 286) True wisdom is an attestation of your own free will through which, if you consciously willingly strive for it, you can consciously live the becoming, the being and the passing and therewith also the truth and in this wise can also perceive your thoughts, feelings and spiritual fine-sensitive feelings, through which your activity will in every respect turn into a joyful truth-affirmation.
- 287) And if in you human beings of Earth the effective wisdom truthfully develops as essence out of the true knowledge, then you become quiet and do not talk much about it, because you have become a personality of wisdom, in the silent trust in your truthfully knowledge and your equally true wisdom which can also be called truth-trust with which you are in a solid and secure connection with the creational laws and recommendations as well as with the energy of the BEING of the Creation Universal Consciousness.



- 288) And if true wisdom has grown up in you, you do not float about in illusions and fantasies, just as you also do not get into entrancement, do not fall into any belief and do not fall into uncontrolled passions as well as fanaticism; going forth in true wisdom also means that you do not only live for the material, but also for the spiritual as well as for the evolution of your consciousness; so you fulfil, once you have created true wisdom, your whole earthly work at all times with fresh courage and healthy senses; and once you have created true wisdom in you, use it as a weapon when you are attacked; use your clear intellect and your clear rationality in fairness, responsibility, dignity and righteousness.
- 289) And even if you have awoken in true wisdom, you shall not be silent and indulgent if an unright is done to you and you incur disadvantage therethrough, because if you remain silent, you support and strengthen the evil therewith.
- 290) If your wisdom is great and you recognise that the unright which is being done to you is to your benefit and advantage, then you shall remain silent and let the unright happen, so that the benefit and advantage to you arises out of it.
- 291) You many amongst you human beings of Earth who pretend to be knowing and wise with regard to the effective real truth of all truth, you are not firm in the knowledge and in the truth, because despite of your acceptance of the existence of the real truth, you fear the smile of the doubters and the god- and tin god-believers.
- 292) You who pretend to be knowing and wise but are not firm with regard to the real truth, you only simulate everything in order to shine with it, but truthly the deep-reaching knowledge and the real wisdom are embarrassing and uncomfortable for you.
- 293) You are pseudo-knowing ones and pseudo-wise ones, and you go about quietly and with a meaningless facial expression in order to skip over every conversation which brings up the true knowledge, the truth and the wisdom; or else you become embarrassed because you do not know anything concerning the real truth, hence you keep making concessions according to the behaviour of the doubters, believers and enquirers and tell them what they want to hear; but this is not knowledge and not wisdom but only falseness, hypocrisy and conscious denial of the reality of the truth, because fundamentally you believe in an invented god, tin god or idolised human being, of whom you cannot, in anxiety and fear, let go and to whom you secretly pray, beseech and beg and expect from them everything good and the best for you.
- 294) If you are halfway educated in the truth-knowledge and you nevertheless have wrong consideration for the truth-doubters and the god- and tin god-believers, then you cannot excuse this by saying that their case of the belief is too holy and too serious to them for you to give them an understanding of the real truth and explain it to them or that you do not want to be the butt of their derision.
- 295) If you act like that, then that has nothing to do with modesty but only with effective cowardice; the basic rule of the truth must always be that you shall always come out with it and show your knowledge and that you stand up for the real truth.
- 296) You must face every human being without fear, and indeed in dignity and in the consciousness of how this is the due of the truth.
- 297) Only then, if you openly and honestly stick to the real truth, will the doubters and believers be coerced to moderate themselves and to stop making you the butt of their mockery through which they betray their own insecurity.
- 298) Therefore you shall not be fearful when you turn to the truth, follow it, talk about it and give explanations; so be it that you do not show any fearful behaviour when you have become truthly in the true knowledge and you have ripened in wisdom, because consider that once fearfulness has been born, it keeps nourishing itself from out of itself and becomes ever more evil and immense.
- 299) And truly, you are very many amongst you human beings of Earth who cheat yourselves, because you confound the term <truth> with the word <belief> and have therewith given an entirely different meaning to the truth than what the truth really requires.
- 300) Truly, the effective truth must be alive, and it is alive, and if you want to realise and comprehend it, you must make it to the certainty and therewith to the reality, action and activity in yourselves.
- 301) And once the truth has become the certainty, reality, action and activity in you, it will pervade everything, your thoughts and feelings, your spiritual fine-sensitive feelings and emotions as well as all your activity, actions and deeds.
- 302) The real truth of all truth must, from out of your inner, become visible in everything that belongs to you; and it must be unobtrusively perceptible and visible in you as well as become an implicitness.
- 303) And you must not hold the truth in front of you as a dummy nor as a shield, because the naturally radiating of your truth created in you must swing outwards and let everything become feelable and recognisable externally.
- 304) Put simply, the true inner truth of all truth is an energy and power which, radiating from your consciousness,



interweaves your whole body and your blood and which makes the truth itself and your life to an implicitness for you, through which nothing artificial and enforced can take over the rule in you anymore but only the real, actual life.

- 305) Recognise yourselves still as believers, you who claim not to lead an artificial and enforced life, because truthfully with this it is not as you claim, just as it is also not as you say, that you absolutely believe in a continued life after the dying, but you do not know what that continued life is like; even if you direct your thoughts and feelings upon it, you do not see it in a truthfully kind and wise, but merely through your religious, sectarian, ideological or philosophical belief.
- 306) And if you should ever have the opportunity to obtain a proof of your continued life after the dying and after the death which goes beyond your material observation- and perception-possibilities, you would be frightened and shaken about the truth; because truly, your continued life after the dying and the death is not in the same personality, but in a completely new one which has nothing in common with the present actual one; only your spirit-form remains the same because it alone is, as creational energy, integrated into the reincarnation, i.e. the rebirth, whereas your personality ceases to be in a becoming of neutral spiritual energy out of which a new personality is built up which will then be born.
- 307) In the bottom of your truth-unknowledge, you have no certainty with regard to the otherworldly life in the death-life nor in the new life of the new actual personality when it is born into the new life.
- 308) If you had the certainty of the true facts of the life, dying, death and the rebirth, then everything would seem so natural to you as it really is, and this certainty would also be the proof of your continued life which continuously occurs in another and new personality that is no longer identical with that of the former life; and if you have this certainty, then you will no longer be frightened and in no wise shaken over the truth of these things of your continued life.
- 309) Apart from these things of the rebirth, the life, the dying and the death, there are very many and even innumerable processes in the life and death as well as in everything existent of the Creation and in its laws and recommendations which you do not know nor comprehend and which show with startling clarity how frighteningly unknowing you are with regard to the real truth of all truth and with regard to the Creation, its laws and recommendations as well as its effects; truly, the knowledge about all these things is no more living in you than the wisdom as essence of all knowledge and the truth in itself.
- 310) Something that you human beings of Earth know without exception is the procreation, the birth, the life, the dying and the death; each one of you lives in this certainty, but this is one of the few facts about which there is no unknowledge at all in you and about which no strife can be kindled amongst you – except if you have fallen prey to a religious, sectarian, ideological or philosophical delusion and believe that you were immortal as material human beings.
- 311) If you, as material human beings, do not live in an immortality-delusion, then you must expect from childhood onwards that you will have to die sooner or later, but as a rule you ward off the thoughts and feelings thereon and push them away.
- 312) And there are many amongst you who have a shyness to discuss the theme life, dying and death, just as there are many amongst you who react very violently and indignantly if the subject comes up in your presence or you are confronted with it directly.
- 313) And you amongst you who are carefully concerned about not entering a cemetery and who shun every funeral, you try to efface your impressions, thoughts and feelings concerning the death as quickly as you can whenever you are somehow, through foreordination or unavoidability, confronted with the Grim Reaper.
- 314) In you there is always a secret angst that all of a sudden you could be struck by the death, and at the same time an undefined fear prevents you from spending serious thoughts and feelings in order to face the unalterable fact in full consciousness, namely that your current life is limited and that you will sooner or later inevitably die and go into the death-life which, through religious, ideological and philosophical irrational teachings, is so wrongly explained to you that you can understand nothing at all of it, let alone get closer to the truth even by a speck of dust of a weight.
- 315) In your life, you human beings of Earth, there is hardly any other happening which you make worse than the death, about which you push aside every thought and every feeling.
- 316) But apart from the death, there is also the preceding dying which you do not dare think about and push away everything related to it; but also with regard to the procreation and the birth you make no or hardly any thoughts and feelings, because you normally simply procreate thoughtlessly and take birth as implicitness, even though either is a significant process in which a very great responsibility is laid and which requires a great conscientiousness.
- 317) It is terrifying to see that you occupy yourselves so little with the fundamental beginning and the unavoidable end of your earthly existence, and if you do at some time occupy yourselves with it in an attack of must-do,



then only in anxiety or fear and with creeps; and this while you thoroughly occupy yourselves with other and insignificant and irrelevant processes and things, such as with your pathological craving for pleasure, the material joys, wishes, passions and desires etc. to which you attach an extremely great importance.

- 318) You research and ruminate over various kinds of unnecessary things, over your riches, your self-elevation above your next ones and fellow human beings as well as over countless useless things and excessive apparent joys of your life, but not over what would bring you clarification with regard to the fundamental beginning and the unavoidable end of your earthly existence.
- 319) Procreation, birth, life, dying, death and rebirth of the spirit-form, together with a continually new personality, are very closely connected to each other, because one thing is the consequence of the other, but you do not take the whole thing seriously, instead you irresponsibly live only for the day; out of this, you create in you pathological cravings, vices, hatred and unpeace as well as unfreedom and disharmony in order to live out everything externally and to let it pervert into bloody and destructive wars, as you learn this through the senseless and irrational teachings in your belief in a god, tin god or idolised human being, and live from day to day in pure egoism and imperiousness, and irresponsibly procreate offspring beyond all measure and therethrough bring about immense catastrophes.
- 320) Already for the procreation of offspring you do not attribute the appropriate seriousness and responsibility, so you do everything only for the sake of the sexual pleasure, as a result only in rare cases are intellect and rationality, responsibility and some degree of human dignity to be found thereby.
- 321) And truly, when you many amongst you human beings of Earth look at yourselves, you who live out in this wise and do not carry out the procreation-act in full responsibility in every wise, but only for the sake of your lack of intelligence, sexual greed and unconcernedness, then you delight in putting yourselves on a par with apes, namely the bonobos and chimpanzees, which only lie with each other for the sake of the pure sexual lust, and they do this in a harmlessness to which you, in your irresponsible acting, do not come close; as a result of this, you all amongst you who act in this kind and wise, you put yourselves below the ape creatures which act in accordance with the low development level that they hold.
- 322) And you amongst you human beings of Earth who are not able or because of your free will are not wanting to integrate yourselves as human individual into your appropriate level of the higher consciousness-based development, which is above that of the apes; you have sunk deeply and continue to go down further, so you must not be surprised that it is always getting worse and worse and more catastrophic with your whole humankind and with all your various relationships, and indeed also with the interpersonal ones, and that you, in your being human in the real and true sense, precipitate steeper and steeper and faster and faster into the abyss of the depravity.
- 323) Look at the customs of your bond-bindings, when you espouse each other, be it between man and woman, woman and woman or man and man, because everything is directed only towards seeing the bond merely as a matter without any responsibility and obligation, which, moreover, can be dissolved at any time according to your desire and mood, if the one partner has had enough of the other, if money- or other problems arise or if the two spouses grow apart or if there is a marital breakdown; the fact that children are procreated or adopted in such bonds, who in the whole process are the main victims and as a result often become human beings who are asocial or forlorn in themselves, that does not worry you amongst you human beings of Earth who belong to those unfair, irresponsible, conscienceless and non-righteous ones who go forth in this kind and wise in a bond of marriage.
- 324) You amongst you who belong to those who carry out bond-bindings, your marriage-bindings and the celebrations connected with them are not rightful, but only matchmaking-orgies without any responsibility and conscientiousness, without dignity and esteem with regard to a righteous connectedness.
- 325) But there are also those amongst you human beings of Earth who, in your seriously created nature, shudder in disgust at these unambiguous machinations, which is why you would like to turn away from them, but you are rarely successful in doing that, because you are oppressed in your free will through the coercion of the society, the friends and all those involved.
- 326) And you young and elderly human beings who do not allow disgust to arise in your thoughts, feelings as well as in your dignity and in your feeling of honour when you are confronted with such celebrations, customs and traditions and therefore, out of your own responsibility, conscientiousness and righteousness as well as virtuousness, opt not to stay away from such doing, activity, organising and contributing, you put yourselves on the same level with those for whom the act of entering into the bond is only a matchmaking orgy, and as a result you can no longer be taken into consideration when it comes to evaluating what is right and righteous.
- 327) You who are in this wise fallible and hostile of the truthly life-conduct in accordance with the creational laws and recommendations, everything has developed in you in such a wise that you live as if in a poisoned delirious state through which you cheat yourselves about the fact what life and death really are; and the reason for this



is that you do not want to be confronted with it through your thoughts and feelings, whereas the creeps and shyness play just as an important role as cowardice and the fact that already as children you had – because of the irresponsibility of your parents – not been instructed and taught with the thematic of the dying, the death as well as the procreation, the birth and the life, just as this irresponsible omission of the clarification already goes back to their parents and grandparents and the ancestors, to far into the past.

- 328) You human beings of Earth, you have built up your life upon unconsidered foundations, so all your customs, vices, Ausartungen and traditions have long become fixed and permanent terriblenesses from which you can only break away with great difficulties and as a rule only through evil disadvantage that strikes you.
- 329) And in the confusion and in the chaos of your terriblenesses, you can no longer understand that you cheat yourselves about your dying and death by crampfully trying not to think about it.
- 330) And if you recognise yourselves as those amongst human beings of Earth who were not procreated willingly and not consciously but haphazardly, then your pushing away of all serious thoughts and feelings with regard to your dying and death stands in a very close connection with the unconcernedness and moral low-state which was given at your procreation; and resulting out of this in many cases is that you as haphazard and undetermined procreation-fruit go like a shadow through your earthly life, as unright of a careless and undignified deed, because you were not procreated on the basis of a conscious and deliberate decision.
- 331) And if you do not recognise this truth and therefore can find neither the right way nor rest in your life, then you will in the end artificially and crampfully cling to a self-deception by seeing yourselves as a wanted fruit of a procreation, and therewith refusing the responsibility for your existence and hence are of the wrong opinion that your responsibility for your life lies with those who procreated you; but that is not the case at all, because once you are in this life, even if you did not contribute to the procreation, you nevertheless have to take the full responsibility for your life, for your thoughts and feelings as well as for all your activity and for your actions and deeds; but that means, even if your parents do not teach you this, that you yourselves are responsible for what you do with regard to your life, how you form and lead it, whereupon and how you direct your thoughts and feelings and what your attitude is towards the procreation, birth and the life as well as the dying, death and the rebirth of the spirit-form and the birth of each new personality.
- 332) And do not let your thoughts and feelings roam to this, that with the death everything is totally and definitively over, because with that you only evince that you keep your consciousness in inferiority and that you cowardly duck your responsibility towards the life and the death, whilst you also assume that you are not much better or worse than your fellow human beings.
- 333) If you nourish your thoughts and feelings in this wise, then you live in suspicious imaginations which, however, do not change a speck of dust of the weight of the fact that sooner or later you will be caught up to by the dying and the death, and that this can happen each day, each hour and each minute; and consider, when you are born and live into the life, the dying and the death are already coming closer and closer, and you do not know when your time of the life according to your right-based life-conduct will be expired in accordance with the effects of the creational principles.
- 334) Bethink yourselves of the true life and the truth of the creational laws and recommendations, so that you are not chickenhearted ones, and so you do not try to deny away in rigidity all responsibility for your own life and also the continued life after the dying as well as the rebirth of the spirit-form and the new birth of the new personality, through which in you, when your dying comes closer, great and angstful questions begin which prove that all of a sudden you become confused in what you erroneously believed in all your life.
- 335) But if you only come to intellect and rationality while you are dying, then you have missed the actual life and in cowardice missed the bearing of the life-responsibility, because you do not derive any benefit for your passed life anymore, if, shortly before the major step out of the earthly life into the death-life, you suddenly recognise the fact of the continued life of your spirit-form as well as its rebirth in a new life together with the birth of a new personality in a new consciousness-block.
- 336) Neither anxiety, fear, cowardice nor defiance allow a redemption or reduction of the interaction of all thoughts, feelings as well as all activity and all actions and deeds, because an insight and the recognition cannot be gained through a switching off and reducing of the interactions, but solely and exclusively through the searching and finding of the effective truth which you must fathom in yourselves, and indeed by finding the way of the truth in you which is both the truth and the culmination-point in one.
- 337) And you are many amongst you whose intellect-based discernment – so often used by you in your life – plays, out of fear, a vicious game on you in the last hours while you are dying, namely in that you suddenly, in accustomed precaution, want to become quickly intellectually and rationally diligent when you realise that the release from your coarse-substantial body is continuously reaching a higher degree; but truly, that will not bring you any gain, because you cannot, in the short time of the dying, catch up on and finish off that which you have neglected throughout your life, so what you will die with as harvest is what you have sown during your life through your thoughts and feelings, your activity and through your actions and deeds.



- 338) So if you do come to your senses during the dying, then you will not change the least therewith nor bring about any change and betterment, because it is not possible for you in the process of dying to finish off everything that you have neglected in the course of your entire life through the process of the perception, cognition, cognisance, knowledge, experience, living of the experience, and wisdom.
- 339) It is sad for you who tumble away in your earthly existence in reckless self-deception as if in a delirious state, and as a result you live in anxiety and fear and cause yourselves a bad destiny.
- 340) Lucky are however you others who do not waste your earthly existence, even though perhaps you only come out of your anxiety and fear and out of your determinations with regard to bad strokes of fate late in life and only slowly find the way to the truth and the consciousness-based evolution.
- 341) Your serious searching for the truth is a staff and a support for you, so that you can therewith make the conscious step in your evolution and towards the finding of the truth without anxiousness, trembling and fear, and without stumbling.
- 342) The time of the serious searching for the truth and the thought-feeling-based careful study of the life and death as well as of the procreation, the birth and the rebirth of the spirit-form and the birth of the new personality, all this you determine yourselves; but if you go this way in free volition, then this is an absolute progress for you which will bring you good things, make you happy and make all heavy things surprisingly easy for you, because your good volition will be so much more powerful than you have ever had as a presentiment; and if you go the way of the truth with regard to your thought-feeling-based careful study of the life and death, and of the procreation, the dying, the rebirth of the spirit-form and the birth of the new consciousness with the new personality, then the purely material will disappear as the most important aspect in your existence and grants an equalisedness between the spiritual, consciousness-based and material.
- 343) If you strive for the effective truth and for your consciousness-evolution, you may often ask yourselves with regard to the pure earthly matters, whether you shall free yourselves from your material goods or whether you shall simply pay no more attention to them, but truly that would be foolish, because you are material life forms and therefore you also need the material goods.
- 344) You shall only not cling onto your earthly goods and not let yourselves be oppressed through them, because you cannot tread the way of the fathoming of the truth through servitude; so in the searching for the truth it is not recommended to you to give or throw away your earthly goods so that you shall live in poverty.
- 345) Truly, you shall happily and freely appreciate and rejoice whatever material goods are accessible to you, provided that you acquire them honestly and that you do not let yourselves be enslaved through them, so that you do not omit striving for the real truth of all truth because of such a servitude, so despite your material richness and all possessions of your earthly goods you live in a fulfilling wise in the creational laws and recommendations.
- 346) That you shall not cling onto material goods only means that you shall not let yourselves get carried away to assume that the grabbing together of material possessions is the highest and most important purpose of your earthly existence, so therefore you do not predominantly direct your thoughts and feelings upon them and do not fall into possession-greed.
- 347) But if you do fall prey to the possession-greed with regard to material values of any kind, then this attitude will keep you away from the higher culmination-point of the truth-search and from the fathoming and following of the creational laws and recommendations, wherethrough you will go about in great erroneous assumption with regard to the fulfilling of the life-sense.
- 348) If you fall prey to the material, the earthly goods and possessions, then you will no longer find the time to search for and find the truth of all truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations, just as is the case if you have fallen prey to a religious, ideological or philosophical belief and therewith a devotion to a god, tin god or idolised human being.
- 349) Falling prey to material possessions and clinging thereon means being attached with all fibres of your life as well as your thoughts, feelings, wishes and your hopes and desires only to the sole purpose of the acquisition and possession thereof, and to worry about them; and this irrespective of whether this attachment is for the sake of the possession and the goods themselves or for the sake of the avariciousness and the pleasure which is made possible through the amassing of money and goods; but no matter what causes and purposes lead to the greed with regard to goods and riches, in the end, the result remains always the same.
- 350) With the greed for possession and riches, for money, goods and chattels you bind and cling yourselves onto the purely material, wherethrough you lose the sight for what is ahead and above, for the effective truth and therewith for everything creational and for the Creation-given laws and recommendations.
- 351) Your wrong understanding however, that material possession and earthly goods do not belong to the assiduousness for the truth of all truth and not to the higher-striving of the consciousness-evolution, has, through the belief in a god, tin god or idolised human being, created the senseless attitude in the majority of you Earth-humans that all endeavours, if they are taken seriously, with regard to the search for the effective



truth must have nothing to do with material possession and earthly goods; but you are not conscious that you equate the effective truth with your wrong belief in a god, tin god or idolised human being, nor are you conscious of the fact that you as entire Earth-humankind have brought upon yourselves great disadvantage in your consciousness-development, as also with regard to your humaneness, your behaviour concerning the love for the next one, the love in general as well as the being fair, the conscientiousness, fairness and righteousness and the bearing of the responsibility in all things.

- 352) In your wrong religious, ideological or philosophical belief you devalue your consciousness-based, therefore the highest gifts that can be given to you in your life; through your belief in an invented god, tin god or idolised human being you have indeed won a strange attitude with regard to your consciousness-based endeavours, because you confound these with religious and sectarian submissiveness and beggary, in which case you are doggishly dependent on sacrifices and donations which you offer to your god, tin god or a human being raised to a divinity hoping to get help and enlightenment in exchange; therefore you have the same attitude as beggars who in a beseeching-submissive wise debase themselves in front of you in order to get a beggar's penny, and as a result they are as unable to create respect for themselves as are you, you who act just like them, only towards your god, tin god or idolised human being; the respect which you ought to give yourselves and which would also be due to you, if you perceived and recognised yourselves as lord and master of yourselves and behaved accordingly, that respect you give, in doggish humility, to your fabricated god or tin god or else to a human being that you have raised up as a divinity.
- 353) All your wrong endeavours bear from the beginning a seed of the destruction in them, which can grow more and more, to the point that you cannot put yourselves on your own feet, but instead remain dependent on your religious, ideological or philosophical belief, on your belief in a fabricated god, tin god or a human being that you idolise.
- 354) And precisely for the sake of the effective truth and your consciousness-evolution as well as the following of the creational laws and recommendations you must protect yourselves against any belief, and it must be clear to you that you are not allowed to disdain the earthly goods because they are essential for your existence, and therefore you shall not listen to the wrong and irrational speeches of those who go about in their religious, ideological or philosophical delusion and claim, contrary to all truth, that the consciousness-evolution could not be brought into agreement with material goods; but that you thereby, with regard to the consciousness-evolution, talk of an evolution of the spiritual, because you do not know the truth and do not know that as human beings you are, through your perceptions, cognitions, cognisance, the knowledge, the experience and the living of it as well as the thereout resulting essence, the wisdom, integrated through the creational laws directly into the evolution of your consciousness and only indirectly into the spiritual, that is uncomprehensible to you; therefore, you must first search for and find the truth of all truth, and indeed in the wise that you search for the way of the truth in yourselves, fathom it and follow it, because only in this wise will you find the real truth which is itself the way and the culmination-point.
- 355) In your coarse-substantial world, the material must serve you as a shield so that you can avert like with like, that is, you avert the material with the material in the wise that you do not let yourselves be deluded by the material, so that your material possessions, your riches, goods and chattels do not become excessive and the burden to you of this, that you become dominated by them and you thus lose the way of the truth in you through which you find the true love, freedom, harmony and peace in you.
- 356) Consider that you shall also not let yourselves be pushed into an unhealthy state of the truth-refusal and truth-denial through your materialistic fellow human beings, if they present you their material possessions and riches and want to bribe you therewith; be conscious that if you are ones who are striving upwards in terms of the evolution of your consciousness and searching for the truth, then your scrupleless opponents will bring forward their strongest weapon in order to delude you, namely their material riches and possessions as well as their goods and chattels; and if you are ones who are striving upwards with regard to the effective truth of all truth, then it would be evil carelessness, if you let yourselves be deluded by your opponents who are hostile-minded towards the truth through their material goods and values, because that could prove to be a major disadvantage for you.
- 357) But you truthful searchers for the real truth and for the effects of the creational laws and recommendations, do not disdain the earthly goods, if you acquire them, use them in right measure and do not let yourselves be deluded in avarice through them, so that you do not become their slaves, are always free and make good use of them so that you are able to fathom the truth and follow it and thus give enough consideration to the Creation-given laws and recommendations.
- 358) But do not be beggars with regard to material richness and possession either, because as human beings you shall not wear a beggar's clothes and debase yourselves, but neither shall you set a crown of possession and richness upon your head in order to be ostentatious with them and to raise above others and to let them believe in miracles, if you give them a little bit of your riches, out of whatever reasons.



- 359) However, there are no miracles in the conventional sense, because the term miracle only clarifies something that you do not understand, namely a process about which you fall into ununderstanding, i.e. into astonishment.
- 360) For you, a miracle is something that you do not consider possible and also do not understand that it can become reality nevertheless; but you merely consider it impossible, because by occurring and becoming reality it proves that that which is ununderstandable and astonishing to you nevertheless is and becomes reality.
- 361) In accordance with your religious belief-imagination, a miracle is something which truthly does not exist, namely that something is, as a happening, brought to the manifestation and reality by a god, tin god or human being raised to a divinity, something which contradicts all laws of nature and is related back by you to supernatural, godly, tin godly human beings or those raised to the status of a divinity.
- 362) You think a miracle is something that happens outside of the laws of nature and thus something which stands against all laws of nature and wherein you illusively see something which is supposed to be of godly or tin godly origin or originated by an idolised human being; the reason for this is that for you, because of your religious and sectarian belief, a miracle can only be something which shall only be possible for a god, tin god or idolised human being who therethrough is apparently showing you a special grace and who for the carrying out of the miracle is making use of his or her omnipotence – thus you believe in your religious and sectarian godliness, through which you give the effective truth no chance to get through in you.
- 363) You human beings of Earth are poor in your intellect and in your rationality, because you erroneously imagine by the all-mightiness – which is a characteristic only of the Creation as Universal Consciousness itself but not of any fabulated god, tin god or idolised human being – the possibility of arbitrariness and hence a miracle as an act of arbitrariness, because you do not consider how much you therewith minimise the creational laws and recommendations and their effects, because if they acted in a wise of the arbitrariness, then they would no longer be in accordance with the Creation-given laws and recommendations.
- 364) Primarily, there is an absolute, relative full-development in the creational activity which shows no errors and no gaps and is therewith integrated into strictest logic, i.e. an absolute logicalness down into the last iota, although the logic can, in its truthly form, be continuously further developed and never stands still.
- 365) Therefore, according to the relatively absolutely fully-developed logic, a so-called miracle in logicalness must have an outcoming effect as a distinct happening, and indeed, depending on the cause and the thereout resulting developmental process, right up to the effect which is seen as a miracle, but in logicalness is merely the ultimate effect out of the cause.
- 366) If you look at what you call miracles, then you realise that, according to your understanding, a miracle takes a longer time to happen, whereas the development-process however happens in the usual time frame, namely with incredible speed, just as is the case with the course and speed of the thoughts and feelings.
- 367) Miracles come about through you yourselves, be it through an energy and its power that you yourselves have created in you, or by means of another kind and wise; and because it occurs through an unusually quick happening which manifests itself through your hopes and wishes or begging and beseeching, so you are astonished, find it wonderful and simply call it a miracle.
- 368) And if you create a miracle, then you create it through your own energy and power which you in any kind and wise concentratedly bring to use, and thereby it is also possible that the occurring miracle goes beyond your present consciousness-evolution, and the reason for this is that you have unconsciously created and mobilised energies and powers in you, over which you have no control in your normal consciousness-state.
- 369) But the entire process never takes place outside the existing laws of nature nor does it in any wise set itself against them; if something did happen outside the laws of nature or set itself against them – which is absolutely impossible – then everything creational would in that moment lose itself in itself and reduce itself to absurdity, because the whole would become an act of the arbitrariness; therefore, the case is exactly the opposite of what you believers in fabulated gods and tin gods as well as human beings raised to the status of divinities wrongly assume.
- 370) Know that everything that is devoid of the strict logic, i.e. the logicalness cannot be brought in connection with the activity of the Creation Universal Consciousness nor with the laws and recommendations of the Creation as well as with their effects.
- 371) And also know that every miracle is an absolutely normal and natural process, which, however, comes about in high speed and solely through concentrated energy and power; miracles can sometimes also take longer before they occur, because fundamentally, their kind is always of importance; but miracles correspond in each case always to a natural developmental process of cause and effect, because never ever can something unnatural happen, as this is in each case absolutely impossible; the laws of nature cannot be bent or falsified, because they are based in the Creation-given laws and recommendations which are at all times unchangeable through the Creation Universal Consciousness, contrary to your human sense and human view.
- 372) To your human sense and your human view are also connected your earthly jurisdictions, but you must not expect that these are equivalent with the strength of the character and of all virtues of the Creation Universal



Consciousness nor with the Creation-given laws and recommendations to which your earthly courts and their laws do not even get close; exactly the opposite is the case, because between your understanding of the fairness and of the creational fairness (i.e. the Creation's strength of the character and of all virtues) there is generally in the true sense of the word a scandalous and shaking difference.

- 373) This bottomless difference can be explained by your intellect that is restricted by space and time and your poor rationality, in whose narrowness you are not able to perceive and recognise the actual unright in order to separate it from the true right; but the actual right you cannot recognise because it is for you, on account of your restricted and atrophied perception-capability, only seldom recognisable and comprehensible in its outer form and truliness; fundamentally, according to your sense, the right lies only in your inner, i.e. in you yourselves, because you bend it in accordance with your requirements to suit a present situation; this in addition to the fact that you decide everything on the basis of the legal norms of your society and that you are in bondage to the rigid law-paragraphs and the school-knowledge.
- 374) What is sad about your behaviour of the personal and social fairness and the thereout resulting laws as well as your jurisdictions and many decisions and punishments resulting thereout, is that they directly counteract the creational laws.
- 375) And if these counter-actions are spoken of, then not those are meant, which happened in the sad times of the Middle Ages in the form of tormentful tortures and so-called burnings of the witches through your delusional belief, the Inquisition and your jurisdictions as well as the delusion of your imperious religious fanatics and various other crimes; nor shall there be talk of the other methods of torturing, murdering and waring, the blame for which goes to practically all religions which, in the name of their fabulated god, tin god or a human being raised to the status of a divinity, committed all these tremendous crimes, and this was done as supposed well-pleasing favour for their god, tin god or idolised human being who were then made responsible for these actions.
- 376) Altogether, your past has brought tremendous atrocities and misuse in this respect, which must not be forgotten, nor must they be high-stylised in any kind and wise, such as through remembrance-festivities and such nonsense which only lead to the fact that those incapable of using their intellect and rationality take up the old and act in the same wise as their ancestors.
- 377) What has to be done is that the atrocities and misuse be warningly assessed in a rational wise, that particularly those committing the crimes at that time did so in the delusion of their religious, ideological or philosophical belief and erroneously assumed that they were in the right on account of the irrational teachings of a religious, philosophical, ideological or political kind that had an effect on them, so they acted in their delusional belief.
- 378) Many things have changed amongst you human beings of Earth since then, but you still zealously believe in your religions, ideologies, politics and philosophies and hence in your gods, tin gods and idolised human beings; but truly, you still do many things wrong in your administration of justice, and therefore your farther descendants will look back on you and your legislations with shudder and horror, just as you look back on the Middle Ages and the old times before when the insanity of the religious horror ruled and human sacrifices were still offered in the belief that this had thrilled the gods and tin gods.
- 379) How you look back on these old times today, which according to your present cognitions and terms were bearing in them blatant misery and boundless unright as well as unbelievable unhumaneness, is how your descendants will one day look back on the past, if they think about your time, your actions which are far from the creational laws, your unintellect and your irrationality, your contempt for humankind, the destruction of the nature, the eradication of many plants, fishes, birds, animals and other creatures and the destruction of the climate.
- 380) Since those old times, you have made great progress only in the outer forms, in the technology, in the medicine and in your material achievements, whereas in your consciousness-development you continue to lag behind immensely, because truthly, the deeply incisive all-mightiness of your personal irresponsible turning-away from the creational laws and recommendations in your existence is still the same.
- 381) Truly, since time immemorial you have neither changed as human beings yourselves nor have you brought about changes in your actions and activity, nor in the nurturing of your thoughts and feelings, because you still believe in your gods, tin god and idolised human beings and still are attached to your wrong religions, ideologies and philosophies; and as yet you have created real love and freedom, harmony and true peace neither in yourselves nor amongst you all of the whole humankind, and instead you still practise hatred against each other, be it because of the belief, the money, the partner or the race, and so you continue to go through life in jealousy, resentment and avarice and as ever you conduct strife and wage wars, commit torture, murder and manslaughter and indulge in all vices, pathological cravings and crimes.
- 382) Truly, you have not changed and the few who did you insult and persecute them with your lies and slander, because as your inner life is still the same with regard to your individuality, so the interactions are still the same as well, and consequently the creational in the core of your inner nature cannot come to fruition.
- 383) If you human beings of Earth as entire earthly humanity were all of a sudden seeing and knowing, then one



single tremendous scream of the horror and despair would resound through the world, and a tremendous dread would lay over all your peoples; and if that happened, then there would not be one amongst you who could raise his or her hand against his or her next one in reproach, because the cognition would consciously come to each one amongst you in one wise or another that the same guilt burdens him or her that also the other has to bear.

- 384) And the cognition that each one in some wise carries the same guilt would lead to the certainty that no one amongst you human beings of Earth has the right to come up against your next one or other fellow human being with reproach, thoughts of revenge and retaliation or with hatred, because every single one of you – no matter how good and blameless you think you are – up until now erringly assesses only according to outer appearances, and in so doing you ignore the true life as well as the creational laws and recommendations which you should observe and follow.
- 385) Truly, there are many amongst you who would end up in despair in yourselves at the first cognition, if it came into you without preparation, and you many others amongst you who have during the course of your life never thought about these important things, you would be befallen by excessive bitterness, because you have neglected the whole during your life.
- 386) Everything should be an impulse for you to the calm consideration, in order to further the development of your own true discernment, which rejects any dependence on strange and wrong views and only accepts what you create yourselves in logic, intellect and rationality through your own thoughts and feelings as well as through your speaking, acting and activity and what you can logically follow in you as effective truth.
- 387) You must never forget that you alone have to take responsibility for all and everything, irrespective of whatever thoughts and feelings you create in you and what you bring forth through your actions, deeds and through your activity; and this full responsibility you also carry if everything which you bring into effect in any kind and wise was the result of you taking it over from others in an unquestioning wise.
- 388) But good for you, you human beings of Earth, if in your doing, actions and activity as well as in your thoughts and feelings you reach a height that allows you to meet every assessment in an examining wise in order to act according to your own choosing in any wise you like.
- 389) And if you are so far that you can act and be active in full responsibility of your own choosing in any kind and wise, then you do not make yourselves guilty of all the unright and unrightful, as many amongst you do, because there is only an acting out of thoughtlessness, calumny, prejudice and a lust for sensation etc., and this leads into realms in which only affliction, hardship, and pain as well as sorrow, anxiety and fear rule, which do not have to be experienced on your own body and in your own consciousness in an actual-acute wise.
- 390) However, if you act against the truth and all the forms of the appearance-possibilities of the life, then you let yourselves be kept from many really good things of the existence and hence neglect to do a lot for yourselves and your fellow human beings, because you irresponsibly gamble with everything valuable which your life has to offer you.
- 391) Already in the times of old, you human beings of Earth gambled with all your well-being and spread endless hatred, jealousy, war, crime, destruction and ruin, namely with regard to your entire humankind in general and against your true prophets in particular; you have maltreated, tortured and murdered millions of your own kind and still do the same today, but the real reasons for all this are known only to the few screaming and irresponsible criminals who you tolerate as authorities and rulers and who, through the death penalty and through wars and other terror bring terribleness upon you and the world; but thereto also belong those out of your own rows who as instigators of a people call, in manifold religious, sectarian, ideological, philosophical and political form, for murder, manslaughter, terror and destruction, and so it is also those amongst you who terrorise their families and at any time out of insignificant reasons take the first opportunity to have a quarrel with the next ones and with neighbours and let themselves be driven by jealousy, hatred, revenge and retribution.
- 392) And you as mass of humankind of Earth, you let yourselves be seduced by the irresponsible shouters, terrorists, instigators of a people, murderous rulers and criminals of all kinds and be put into blind fanaticism, in which you howl with the wolves and sow death and ruin amongst your fellow human beings and amongst entire peoples, and indeed without thinking even in a speck of dust of a weight about what it is you are actually doing, and this is why you also cannot differentiate between right and unright.
- 393) In your wrong doing you also insult and slander your true prophets, the proclaimers of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, the «Teaching of the Prophets», the «Goblet of the Truth», without ever actually coming together with the proclaimers, and hence you do not know them; truly, you who insult and slander the true proclaimers and their teaching, you are lost ones with regard to the truth and the life.
- 394) No less lost with regard to the truth and the life are also you amongst you human beings of Earth who, due to wrong views of your fellow human beings, turn away from the real truth and do not want to hear the words



of the teaching of the truth and who do not make the effort of an factual proof, through which you finally could recognise the true and great value of the teaching of the truth.

- 395) Through all your doing, activity, behaviour and actions which are erroneous and hostile to the life and the evolution of your consciousness you have time and again called forth immense tragedies and brought death, misery, hardship, destruction and ruin over your humankind.
- 396) And you have persecuted, cursed and slandered those who have brought you the real truth, through which you could have led your life rightfully, namely your true prophets who since time immemorial have come to you and brought you the teaching through which you could have learned about the creational laws and recommendations in order to follow them and to form your existence for your own pleasure.
- 397) Your doing, activity and actions have, since time immemorial, been so grotesque that with dazzling clarity they show your narrowness of intellect and rationality which has not changed to the better since, but still continues to exist and still puts you as entire terrestrial humankind into a state of anxiety and horror.
- 398) Up until today you have not progressed any further innerly in the realm of the inner nature built up by you yourselves as individuality as well as in your consciousness-evolution with regard to the effective truth of all truth, the knowledge and the wisdom, because truly you have only created an outer change through your discoveries and inventions, but with regard to the evolution of your consciousness you lag behind and continue to indulge in the evil and malicious temptations of your religions, your sectarianism, your politics, ideologies and philosophies through which you are kept away from the effective truth and you do not recognise the creational laws and recommendations, in fact you do not even search for them.
- 399) Truly, you only have outer successes to mention, for example with regard to your technology, medicine and other achievements, but this outer state of progress is no more than a conceit through which you try to cover up your own narrowness of intellect and rationality, but this conceit in itself is already a pronounced characteristic of the narrowness.
- 400) And for almost four thousand years, in which your great religions, sects, ideologies and philosophies and your catastrophic forms of politics have arisen, the basis of your Ausartungen of all kinds and the turning away from the real truth of all truth and hence from the Creation Universal Consciousness and its laws and recommendations has become increasingly dreadful.
- 401) And all your turning away from the Creation, its laws and recommendations and hence also from the effective truth has had such a decisive and devastating effect on your views that you have created a cluelessness with regard to the real truth and the effective reality, become entangled in it and therewith suggestively and forcefully brought about your own disaster.
- 402) Through wrong views which you often believed to be good, you have incurred evil effects in terms of interactions, which have brought you tremendous harm, because you acted against the creational laws and recommendations, which has, however, up to the present day not become clear to you.
- 403) The number of those of you acting and behaving in this wise has been huge since time immemorial, and in your presumptuousness and vanity as well as wrong pride you have brought over your world tormentful horror, terribleness, destruction, death and ruin, and you do not know that the true life and the real truth and reality of all creational existence is completely different from what you think and imagine.
- 404) So you must act before it is too late and before you bring even more guilt upon yourselves, for which you will have to atone in processes lasting for decades, centuries, even millennia, if through your wrong doing, actions and activity, you create more and more hatred, jealousy, strife, terror, war, unfreedom, disharmony, unpeace and vices as well as pathological cravings, and therefore you will have to struggle to even be able to still live on your world which, through your constantly growing overpopulation and its effects, you destroy to such an extent that in the end your earth can no longer recover from it.
- 405) Truly, your way to the cognition is long and heavy, but if you have achieved the cognition, then the way you must go to create in yourselves the developmental change to the good, better and best is even much longer and heavier.
- 406) The way is long and heavy, and if you neglect the favourable opportunity and in your unknowledge wantedly or unwantedly continue to load great guilt upon yourselves, then a bad end cannot be avoided; and during your doing, activity and actions, always consider that if you do them in the unright, an excuse will have no weight, because the life itself does not accept any excuse for whatever unrightful and wrong things you do, because the life only knows the law of the causality, the cause and effect, as it is pre-given through the creational laws and recommendations.
- 407) Those of you human beings of Earth who feel the urge, in the course of the interactions cause and effect, to recognise and to understand the effects given through the creational laws and recommendations, must see them in the difference to the earthly views and make the effort to take an example out of your own existence for comparison and to examine where right an unright really are given.
- 408) And if this comprehensive examination is made and passed, then you will be able to unfold your own intellect-



and rationality-capability more vividly and strongly in order to ultimately cast off everything with regard to learned prejudices of inadequate views and attitudes.

- 409) If this happens, then an understanding of fairness will therethrough be created in you which can rely on itself and through which you, in your recognising of all interactions, recognise and accept the creational laws and recommendations which then can widen and be active in you.
- 410) If you observe and consider yourselves with regard to the interactions, then you recognise that cause and effect also arise in you in a wise that corresponds to your attitude and that guides you when you refer it to the past or future.
- 411) You amongst you human beings of Earth who live in the past with your attitude, you comprehend something only then, when it has already happened; and resulting out of this is that you can neither really enjoy nor get angry about what happened, nor can you logically follow and understand the whole severity of the whole case.
- 412) Only afterwards, after a longer time, when everything is already over, do you begin to make thoughts and feelings about it and to talk about it, and to either worry about the past happening or to enthuse over it.
- 413) Therefore, you only talk of what lies in the past, feel good therein or regret it, but in doing so you completely overlook the new and present things that again come about; because only when everything has already become old and moved into the past do you begin to have thoughts and feelings about the past happening and to value it.
- 414) And you amongst you human beings of Earth who with your attitude live in the near or far future, you only ever hope and wish for things that the future shall bring you, but in doing so you forget that the present of your everyday life has a lot to offer you; at the same time you also forget to make efforts in such a wise that you could let your wishes for the near and far future actually become reality.
- 415) Truly, many of you belong to the majority of your humankind who fritter away your life and lead no real and truthful life on Earth, nor do those amongst you who believe to live in the present but have a completely wrong understanding of it.
- 416) And those of you who wrongly understand the present, you spur yourselves every moment to recklessly encourage yourselves to the life and to live it to the fullest and enjoy it in an ausgeartet wise; and truly, there are many of you of this kind who thus tumble through your life in an affirming, jubilant and senseless wise.
- 417) It is right that you live your life in every minute and second to the fullest in an absolute wise, but not only in the outer and material realm but also in your inner, in accordance with the true creational core of your inner nature which you have covered over with the rubbish, the chaff of your self-created individuality.
- 418) Each second, minute and hour of the present must become a real and truthful experiencing in your life, and indeed in the affliction as well as in the joy, in the fortune and in the misfortune.
- 419) With all your senses, thoughts and feelings you must be open and alert to that which you know as the present; although the present is only short and only covers a short moment, you also have the present as your everyday life in which you live, are active and act.
- 420) Only if you go towards the present of the moment and of the everyday life with openness and alertness, do you have an advantage from your earthly existence, an advantage that you create for yourselves.
- 421) Neither in the thoughts and feelings which are related to the past nor in your dreams of the future can you find a real and truthful living-experience, because this is solely limited to the immediate present; and only the experiencing of the immediate present through living it is so full of energy and strong that it forms the consciousness which integrates the advantage of the living-experience into the actual life and furthers the consciousness-based evolution.
- 422) If you do not co-live the present, then you also cannot ripen in yourselves, because the ripening depends on your practical experience and the living of the same, which is preceded by the perception, recognition and cognisance as well as the knowledge, out of which altogether the essence, the wisdom, results.
- 423) If during your life you do not experience the present through living it in your inner nature yourselves, then you are empty in yourselves and neglect the time, because you are not awake and because you do not make your life your own.
- 424) Your currently actual life on Earth is only one of many steps in the development that you go through in the always returning existence of your spirit-form and in the course of your always new personalities, and truly you cannot skip these steps, but you must climb one after the other.
- 425) And if you do not stand strong and firm on the current step of your development in the life, then you will have great strain to climb up to the next step, because you will need the preceding step as a firm foundation.
- 426) These steps correspond to your consciousness-based development-state, and according to how this state is given, it will be possible for you to develop yourselves further and to climb up the next step.
- 427) If you make a conscious effort to climb up the steps of your upward-striving development during your existence one by one, then it will become clear to you that you can only reach the next step, if you have correctly fulfilled the development on the preceding step.



- 428) Only through the full, absolute fulfilment of a development-step is it possible to climb up to the next higher one; but if you do not fulfil it through the perception, the cognition, the cognisance, the knowledge, the practical experience and its living, the taking-in, comprehending and experiencing it through living it in the present, then you cannot get the essence of the whole, i.e. the wisdom, which builds the state of the higher development reached.
- 429) If you do not fulfil this developmental process through the real experiencing of the present through living it, namely in the realm of the material as well as in your inner and in the fine-fluidal, then nothing can contribute to the ripeness in you, so you are, from your present development-step, not able to recognise and step on the next one; only with the equipment of the true experiencing of the present through living it in all domains of your existence, in your inner, in the fine-fluidal and material, do you create the energy and power to perceive your next development-step and also to climb up to it.
- 430) In this wise it goes on and on through your entire actual life and it went on like this in all your previous lives as always new personalities, and it will also be so in your new lives as new personalities, once you have left your present existence.
- 431) Truly, you need only look after your high fulfilments of your consciousness-evolution and hence pay due attention to your individual development-steps which, for the purpose of your evolution, you must build and use yourselves in order to reach your fulfilment.
- 432) The evolution-steps, which you must create for yourselves and use for your climb up, must not be worked out cursorily, otherwise they easily break down as you try to climb up to the next step; however, you can react to the danger of the breaking down while climbing up to the next step, namely through the natural happening of this, that each higher development-step can only be reached by fully developing the step of the present.
- 433) If you therefore do not want to stand still on one development-step for half of your life and do not want to keep falling back again and again, then you must make great efforts to always perceive the whole of the present in the material, in your inner and in the fine-fluidal, to comprehend everything rightly, to experience and live it and to build it up to the wisdom, so that you gain thereout evolutive, consciousness-based benefit.
- 434) And if you act accordingly, then you will also not lack in earthly gains, because you make use of the advantage that you expect nothing else from space and time and from your fellow human beings than what they can really give you; and that is the reason why you will never be disappointed and why you are able to live in love, peace, freedom and harmony with yourselves as well as with your fellow human beings and the whole environment.
- 435) But if you live not in the reality of the present, but instead with your thoughts and feelings in the past or in your dreams of the future, then your expectations will easily fall out of the frame of what is real and rational, because they reach beyond the reality of the present and hence create in you a disharmony from which you will then suffer, and indeed both in yourselves and in your nearer and wider surrounding area.
- 436) You shall certainly think of that which lies in the past, but you shall not make it to celebrations and to constant memories, rather you shall only use it to learn thereout and to make everything better.
- 437) Equally, you can also dream of the future, however you shall not wallow therein in unfulfillable wishes nor in detrimental fantasies and illusions, so that you find a true incentive, through your future-dreamings, to live consciously in the present and to dedicate yourselves to the upward-swinging of your consciousness-evolution.
- 438) The upward-swinging, i.e. the climb up to your consciousness-evolution does not have any distinct rule, so no specific way can be directed in this respect; a directed way would be like a template in which there would be nothing living, and consequently nothing living could arise out of it that is absolutely necessary for the upward-swinging, because only that which is living can again create something living.
- 439) If you want to climb up to the consciousness-evolution, then you can only do that on your own individual way which is formed for you alone, and therefore a directed way would be the individual way of someone else and would only be an outer, weak crutch for you, on which you could not walk rightly and autonomously, because it serves neither for the perceiving, nor for the seeing and the recognising, but rather only for the handicapped movement.
- 440) Therefore you must search for your own way and see it clearly and precisely before you so that you do not go forward upon it blindly.
- 441) But if you take on a suggested way which you do not find yourselves, then you will go forward on it limpingly and blindly, because you will simply follow a new dogma which had been talked into you, instead of you giving the necessary guidelines to yourselves through which you tread your own way to truth, knowledge and wisdom and therewith to the consciousness-evolution.
- 442) And consider, if you want to get into the realm of your consciousness and therethrough give enough consideration to its evolution, then you must naturally search for, find and go to the way thereto yourselves, because it cannot be shown to you by anyone and it also does not come to you on its own.
- 443) Your consciousness is in the lowness of your coarse substantialness the highest factor of your possible



development, therefore you must do everything in this coarse-substantialness in order to get the best possible height of your consciousness-evolution; therefore you must wander through the coarse-substantial in order to reach your fulfilment.

- 444) So that you do not go astray on your way to the consciousness-evolution, it is necessary that you precisely research and know the way you have to tread and to wander through; however you must not only know the way itself, but also let everything become conscious to you, what can come across you on the way, which dangers can threaten you and which help you can find.
- 445) And since the whole way lies only in you yourselves, in your own consciousness and in the thereout resulting thoughts and their feelings, you must find and recognise it alone, if you want to come to the fulfilment.
- 446) Truly, there is no human being who could describe to you your individual way that is necessary for your rise up to your consciousness-evolution, so there is nobody who could make your own way to the highest form of your development clearly visible and recognisable to you except you yourselves.
- 447) The way to that height, which lies in the realm of your consciousness as temple of your highest possible development, is the way to your well-being, to your true love, harmony and freedom as well as to the true peace in yourselves, and that alone is the reality.
- 448) Since time immemorial, the message of the true prophets has shown you, through the 'Goblet of the Truth', the 'Teaching of the Prophets', the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, the right way to the upward-swinging with regard to your consciousness-evolution, but the teaching was always wrongly interpreted by you through your human, overbearing wanting-to-be-clever; you have falsified the teaching beyond recognition and made out of it religions, ideologies and philosophies as well as a signpost which has led you to the belief in godheads, tin gods and idolised human beings, and through this you have misleadingly turned yourselves to the greatest erroneous assumption which you could have made since your existence and which has prevented you from treading the way of the effective truth consciously and willingly and from giving enough consideration to the creational laws and recommendations and the consciousness-evolution.
- 449) It is now finally time for you to consciously decide for the effective truth and for the height of the consciousness-evolution in which you can swing upwards and irrevocably find your way out of the lowness of your truth-unknowledge, and indeed without possibility of you falling back again into your old habits at some later time.
- 450) Therefore, the message of the truth is brought to you once again, so that you turn your wrongly positioned signpost in the right direction and are earnest searchers, so that you find, recognise and follow the way of the truth in yourselves which is both the way of the truth itself and the fulfilment.
- 451) Good for you therefore, if you are open in your senses and you consciously direct your thoughts and feelings accordingly, because if you do this, then you will learn about the truth of all truth as well as the creational laws and recommendations which, for your consciousness, serve as rungs for the upward-swinging in order to consciously enter the realm of your consciousness-evolution.
- 452) In your consciousness and in your thereout resulting thoughts and their feelings alone you find everything you need to create your capabilities through which you can climb up into the heights of your consciousness-evolution.
- 453) It is first your true life, which you must live, that gives you the dynamic and the freedom for the development of the necessary capabilities which are necessary for the climbing up into the heights of the consciousness-evolution and through which you can free yourselves from the yoke of your fixed religious, ideological and philosophical dogmas which make you into will-less slaves of your belief in a god, tin god or human being whom you raise to the status of a divinity, wherethrough you suppress yourselves and hinder the rise up to the high evolution of the consciousness and exterminate every possibility of the consciousness-development.
- 454) If you are human beings who know the truth and the creational laws and recommendations in their mode of functioning, then you also understand therein the great Creation-idea; and if you adapt the right attitude, then only the truth of all truth serves you – which alone proceeds from out of the Creation Universal Consciousness – and hence also the way of the truth to the rise up to the consciousness-evolution, because you fulfil the Creation-given laws and recommendations and therefore live rightly.
- 455) And if you follow the Creation-idea and thus the truth of all truth, then you do not squirm remorsefully, kneelingly, prayingly, beggingly, submissively, sanctimoniously, hypocritically and beseechingly before your god, tin god or idolised human being, because if you live in accordance with the Creation-idea and the Creation-given laws and recommendations, then you live practising it in a fresh, joyful and pure activity; therefore you do not beg whiningly and beseechingly for the effective truth of all truth, rather you go through life seeingly and joyfully, and you recognise reality and live in consideration and fulfilment of the creational laws and recommendations and therefore in responsible fullness with regard to the consciousness-evolution.
- 456) And if you live in this wise, then your life will look entirely different from how you have so far seen and lived



it, namely in accordance with the truth, law-fulfilling and well disposed towards the recommendations, much freer and more beautiful with which you stand in the midst of the Creation Universal Consciousness as corresponds to the Creation-idea.

- 457) Finally and really accept the truth as it is given to you through the «Teaching of the Prophets», through the «Goblet of the Truth»; and do not take everything as a picture and imagination but as true reality and implicitness and in place of the hazy schemes of your belief in your gods, tin gods, angels, saints and human beings whom you deify and put on an equal footing with your fabulated gods and tin gods.
- 458) Therefore learn to recognise the truth and to follow it, because only through doing so do you learn about the love of the Creation Universal Consciousness as well as the thereout resulting laws and recommendations which you shall follow, because only therein is the way in yourselves given, the way that leads to the height of your consciousness-evolution which is anchored in the primeval law of the Creation as constant motion.
- 459) If you look around, you human beings of Earth, you can see and recognise how you shall really live, because if you go around with open senses, then it is not difficult for you to recognise the primeval laws of the continuing motion of the Creation Universal Consciousness and all its creations, creatures and everything existent; and if you make an effort to pay attention to everything around you in a right wise, then you reveal multifarious secrets which are hidden in the creational laws and recommendations and hence also in the Creation-idea.
- 460) Know that in the Creation Universal Consciousness the motion is a fundamental law in which is included everything that has ever been conceived and created by it.
- 461) The motion is therefore the fundamental and primeval law of the Creation Universal Consciousness and all its creations, i.e. created creations and everything existent, so hence this law is also valid for you human beings of Earth, but you have ignored the law of the right motion and use it wrongly.
- 462) Already when the Creation had created its idea, the primeval law of the motion was created in it, through which, since the very beginning, everything was formed and continues to be formed, because the unceasing motion is the becoming as well as the preservation and the passing as well as the re-becoming of all things and everything happening in the entire realm of the Creation Universal Consciousness.
- 463) This means that also you human beings of Earth cannot, in the midst of the all-life-giving motion, be observed and considered as an exception amongst all the creations, i.e. created creations, creatures and everything existent created by the Creation Universal Consciousness, because you cannot stand still in the Creation-given and incessantly continuing motion, and you cannot go your own ways without you taking harm for yourselves.
- 464) There are very many amongst you who only relax and lead a comfortable life and who regard comfortableness and idleness as the crowning moment of your life, especially in your older years when you particularly ought to be striving for the life-wisdom in order to pass it on to the younger generation.
- 465) But what you achieve with the comfortableness and with the idleness is pure poison for the evolution of your consciousness, namely the beginning of the end of your consciousness-evolution which you shall create consciously.
- 466) If you rightly open your eyes and your senses for your life, for your evolution and for your surrounding area, then you recognise thereby a great deal, perceive a lot of things and gain cognitions, cognisance and knowledge, out of which practical experience and the living of the same and ultimately wisdom results, through which you advance the evolution of your consciousness; and if you are alert and attentive, then you recognise in everything a distinct reason and a Creation-given law in all happenings.
- 467) If you really only sit and rest in your life and only want to rest from all your activity until the end of your life, then you push away the rhythmic law of the always valid motion as it is given in all things through the Creation Universal Consciousness.
- 468) And through your comfortableness and idleness with regard to the evolution of the consciousness, you push yourselves away from the rhythmic motions of the Creation, just like an overripe fruit falling from the tree; and the reason is that all the swinging and motion around you is much stronger than the motion in yourselves, which ought to conform to the outer swinging waves, i.e. motions.
- 469) And you all amongst you human beings of Earth who act in this wrong wise, you fall ill and tire out because your own swinging waves, your own motions and your conscious awakensness cannot keep pace with the ruling motion of the Creation Universal Consciousness; truly, you can only stay fresh, joyful and healthy, if you integrate yourselves into and adjust yourselves to the rhythm of the creational-universal motion.
- 470) The term «interruption» alone means stagnation, i.e. standstill and lets intuit the great law of the Creation-given motion, in which the becoming and passing and the re-becoming are included.
- 471) Motion is upbuilding and preservation, i.e. creating and preserving as well as further development right up to a distinct destination.
- 472) But those amongst you all who literally want to sit and rest in your life, you have no destination in front of you



and you yourselves set the end in your volition, wherethrough you withdraw yourselves from the creation-swinging, i.e. the Creation-determined motion and are no longer capable of any consciousness-evolution, and this in spite of the fact that the evolution of the consciousness has no end; you, however, hinder the natural motion of this evolution and ignore the enduring development which as motion is given in the law of the Creation-idea, but you cannot do this without suffering harm, because the ignoring leads to the stagnation which hits you with blatant truth-unknowledgeness.

- 473) And as an allegory to show that those amongst you lead a life in true joy and in the well-being who live in accordance with the truth and the creational laws and recommendations, the following is said: Those amongst you all who constantly have to labour hard for your earthly living with your hands, you are usually healthier and live to be older than those amongst you all who are, from their youth on, pamperingly protected and nursed in a careful kind; and those amongst you all who were brought up in prosperity and do everything possible for your body, your psyche and your nerves to make sure that you can live comfortably without disturbance and strain, it is you who are more quickly exposed to the outer signs of the oncoming old age than those who are not endowed with earthly goods and who must fulfil their existence in the sweat of their face.
- 474) Those amongst you who lead a work-rich life in which there is no unnecessary exaggeration and no frantic pathological craving for the amassing of material treasures as well as no self-emphasising, you have a good life; but those amongst you who make yourselves the slaves of such pathological craving, you suffer from constant disturbance and therefore act completely disharmonious in the creational motion, i.e. swinging wave; therefore there is also here a golden middle-way for each of you, so you can live in the swinging wave of the Creation on Earth rightly and for yourselves in a content and favourable wise; and consider thereby, what you do, you shall do it totally and amply, and leave nothing to be desired, because the greatest terribleness against a harmonious fulfilment of the life is a one-sidedness.
- 475) Consider, a work-rich life without the fulfilment of the consciousness-evolution is of no advantage to you, because your earthly body may well swing with the motion of the Creation, however your consciousness lies dormant, stands still and stagnates in terms of the evolution.
- 476) But if your consciousness does not move forward in an evolving wise – and indeed in harmony with the swinging-waves of the Creation, i.e. with the Creation-determined motion which pulses through everything – then no preservation and hardening of your body takes place through your labour, but instead it ages quickly, wears down and becomes exhausted; because the truth is that your material body must be in harmony with your consciousness-evolution.
- 477) If your material body lacks the energy and power of your consciousness because the latter stagnates, then this standstill holds back the blossoming of the body and hinders it from keeping healthy, because the body, without the consciousness-evolution, uses itself up in its own swinging waves, i.e. motions, wilts and decays; therefore it can no longer renew itself, because it lacks the power-source, the motions, i.e. swinging waves of the evolution of the consciousness; therefore it is useless, if you move only physically, but leave the evolutionary motion of your consciousness out of your attention.
- 478) It is useless, if you do no work and make no effort concerning your consciousness-evolution, and indeed also then, if, to exercise your body, you regularly undergo fitness trainings and go for walks and do all sorts of other things to keep your body in shape, because truly, it ages quickly nevertheless and decays, if it does not live in the same swinging wave, i.e. motion with the evolving consciousness.
- 479) The consciousness-motion, i.e. the swinging wave of the consciousness is determined through the conscious effort of the learning and the thereout resulting development, i.e. evolution, which is reached through the achievement of a destination consisting of distinct factors and which moves the consciousness, because energy and power are transferred to the body and the body transfers again its energy and power as well as perseverance to the consciousness.
- 480) The fulfilment of the consciousness must not be searched for in the material, but rather in its evolution, from which also the spirit-form gains evolutionary benefit, and this benefit carries itself into the Creation universal consciousness and is in turn beneficial for its evolution; this however is a fulfilment of the consciousness-evolution which is far beyond all earthly matters and which is carried far beyond your earthly existence.
- 481) The fulfilment of your consciousness, the evolution, must live in you, and be dynamic in you, because otherwise it has nothing in common with your consciousness.
- 482) But the truth is that you human beings of Earth of today no longer know what your consciousness actually is, because on account of the wrong teachings of your wrong prophets, religions, ideologies and philosophies you have put the spirit, i.e. the spirit-form in its place, which you erroneously and wrongly assume to be responsible for your ideas, thoughts, feelings as well as your activity, actions and doing; but that is not the truth, because not your spirit, i.e. not your spirit-form is responsible for this, but your consciousness, for which and for whose entire activity and the thereout resulting intellect and rationality you yourselves bear the full responsibility.
- 483) Truly, your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form is not identical with your consciousness and is not of an earthly, material



kind but rather of a pure creational-spiritual nature and untouchable for you; nevertheless, you erroneously assume that your consciousness-given intellect and your rationality are of a spiritual nature, and with this assumption you cling to a traditional irrational teaching of a religious, ideological and philosophical kind which finishes off your intellect and your rationality and brings about a downfall into non-understanding and truth-unknowledge, to which you cling and cannot perceive and recognise the real truth.

- 484) Your earthly existence requires the fulfilment of the life-sense which consists of bringing your consciousness-evolution to the highest possible level of love, knowledge and wisdom; that is the sense of the life and the fulfilment, into which all furthering values of the consciousness-development must be brought for the purpose of this, that therethrough also your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form can take over these high values, to ultimately bring them into the Creation Universal Consciousness which as a result also evolves; but be conscious that all love, all knowledge and all wisdom, which you create for yourselves and which go over into your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form, are always only relatively absolutely fully developed as are also the love, the knowledge and the wisdom of the Creation Universal Consciousness; truly, there is nothing absolutely fully developed but only relatively absolutely fully developed, because everything is in constant motion and develops always further and higher, including you with your consciousness, your spirit, i.e. your spirit-form in its spiritual-creational energy and power, and the Creation Universal Consciousness in its spiritual-energetic BEING; that is the truth which you must realise, recognise and know, because this truth is an eternity-value, an all-time-value and hence nothing that is only passing.
- 485) And if you want to act, and howsoever you want to act, whatever you are striving for, and whatever you are making an effort for, always ask yourselves first whether the whole corresponds to the effective relative truth, because truth too is not absolutely fully developed, but is always only relatively given, and indeed because the one truth always entails the next following truth; because truly the truth is also in swinging motion, hence it constantly widens if new knowledge and new wisdom come to it; therefore also the real truth of all truth is not absolutely but only relatively absolutely fully developed, although for you human beings it nevertheless builds the highest value of the currently fathomable and reachable truth which however through the learning can in turn be worked through with further knowledge and further wisdom to a new relative highest level of the truth.
- 486) Truly, also the real truth of all truth is in constant swinging motion, because a widened knowledge and a widened wisdom lead to new truth-cognitions, each of which in its relative highest level builds the real truth of all truth; therefore, the real truth of all truth keeps widening further and further, and indeed entirely according to the increasing evolution which also always reaches its highest relative level, which in turn reaches a new relative highest level when new knowledge and thereout resulting wisdom comes to it; the evolution of love, knowledge and wisdom as well as the real truth of all truth thus never come to an end, but continue to increase ever further and higher into all duration of the endlessness.
- 487) Therefore, if you want to act consciously, no matter what you are striving and endeavouring for, then ask yourselves about the true relative value and the relative real truth of all truth which results out of the whole, so that you may really find everything in the right wise and know that every real truth of all truth as well as every value of the knowledge and the wisdom is always only a level that leads to the next higher level, because through swinging motion everything constantly develops further and never comes to an end in all endlessness of the endless duration; and all this is not all too difficult to understand, if only you make a conscious and willing effort to gain the understanding.
- 488) Do not rely on the wrong teachings of the religions, ideologies and philosophies and not on the useless striving for pseudo-cognitions of the same kind as they are presented to you, because truly, they are a hindrance to the climb up to your consciousness-evolution, because they prevent the truth-fathoming in you and bring the motion to a standstill, and as a result each progress and each development is thwarted and cannot be brought to success.
- 489) Also with regard to your sciences you shall thoroughly think about them, because through them you cannot unfold your swings of the motions, rather they are badly curtailed and destroyed through them, because they run after wrong cognitions and do not perceive and do not recognise the real truth of the Creation Universal Consciousness and its laws and recommendations nor their effects, but instead try to explain everything only on the basis of their scientific-physical cognitions, which relate to the purely material factors and do not pay attention to, nor understand, and consequently also cannot explain, all the fine-fluidal and spirit-energetical.
- 490) Truly, the whole truth of all truth does not lie in the material sciences alone, but fundamentally and first and foremost in the spirit-energetical realm which is created through the Creation Universal Consciousness; and the truth of all truth does not lie in complicated physical, religious, ideological, political and philosophical formulas, but in the simplicity of all things as they are given through the creational laws and recommendations; and therefore, the true simplicity also lies in the thoughts and feelings and in the truthfully activity of you human beings which is in accordance with the Creation, just as the greatness lies in you



yourselves through which you unfold the might of your responsibility and integrate it into the following of the laws and recommendations of the Creation Universal Consciousness, which you shall strive for consciously and in love; but you humankind of Earth, you have turned away from the creational truth and instead turned to your religions, ideologies, philosophies and your material sciences and believe yourselves great in your purely material rationality- and intellect-based knowledge.

- 491) Truly, you have bound yourselves to your material sciences and your belief in gods, tin gods and idolised human beings and have obstructed yourselves against the real truth of the existence of the Creation and its laws and recommendations.
- 492) Consider this, of what use is it to you, if you squander away the time of your earthly life with the attempt of wanting to find out when and how such a tiny creature as a louse came into being and how long it will continue to exist for, if you thereby completely forget to research the creational laws and recommendations and to live according to them and according to the truth which is given therein; truly, your entire material searching and researching is of no use to you, if you leave the creational-spiritual energy and power and hence the highest possible truth of all truth out of your attention.
- 493) Truly, you must seriously and thoroughly examine one thing after the other to find out which value it brings you as excellence.
- 494) And if you examine everything very accurately, then you will suddenly recognise that everything therein that today does not take place according to the creational laws and recommendations breaks down like a useless house of cards, and shows you that your earthly existence, which is given to you as a gift for your consciousness-evolution, is, with regard to the evolution, the learning of the truth, the creating of the love, knowledge and wisdom, truthfully much too precious to leave unused even for a single minute.
- 495) Do not wallow in your vanity and your gambling, because they have nothing in them through which you would be able to raise yourselves evolutively and to the effective truth, because vanity and gambling are only empty and dead in themselves.
- 496) Do not be megalomaniacal and do not assume that you could raise yourselves up to the Creation Universal Consciousness, because even if you become very knowing and wise and can manipulate the life and change it through genetic engineering, you are nevertheless only creations, i.e. created creations of the Creation Universal Consciousness, and you will never get beyond that as material human beings.
- 497) Truly, in the Creation Universal Consciousness, in which you live as its creations, you shall complete, in fulfilment of its laws and recommendations, actions and an activity of the evolution of your consciousness; therefore, you shall step out of your delusion of your self-boastfulness and fulfil your duty.
- 498) If you look at and consider yourselves, then you are only like sounding ore with your wrong knowledge in the unknowledge of the effective creational truth of all truth, whereas your real existence should be an aliveness and a furthering of your evolutionary task.
- 499) And if you enjoy life and thankfully direct your senses upon it and upon the truth, then you stand higher than those who knowingly take apart their existence and unconcernedly go forth without recognising the greatness of the Creation.
- 500) Look around you, you human beings of Earth, because it depends on how you realise the life, your own activity and your fellow human beings and what they mean to you in reality and what value they have for you.
- 501) And if you look at and consider your life, your activity and your fellow human beings, the nature and its life forms as well as the whole world, then you find only little that is really worthy of a true humankind, because you have destroyed everything – your honour and dignity, your true being human, your life in accordance with the creational laws and recommendations, your forests, grasslands, wetlands, meadows, your creeks, rivers, streams, lakes and seas as well as your climate, just as you have exterminated many animals, birds, fishes and all sorts of creatures and continue to do so through your unintellect and irrationality and your continued cultivation of the all-destroying overpopulation.
- 502) Truly, you are like unusable servants in a paradisiacal garden in which you destroy and eliminate everything, instead of taking care of it, building it up, and bringing it to the blossoming and bearing of good fruits.
- 503) You waste your lifetime with vanity, egoism, hatred, jealousy, unpeace, unfreedom, and disharmony, with strife, war, lying and deception as well as with murder, manslaughter, torture, punishment, destruction and extermination, but also with senseless gambling, thereby adorning your high ability, which lies in you as a creational gift, with cheap bric-à-brac, with wrong wishes, hopes and desires of all kinds.
- 504) Wake up, you human beings of Earth, so that you can create for yourselves a worthy consciousness-evolution and no longer go through life desperately poor with regard to your truth-knowledge; create for yourselves – through the finding and following of the truth of all truth – an inexhaustible treasure during your earthly life, so that you are in yourselves like king and emperor and reign over your existence with the sceptre of the true love, the knowledge and the wisdom.
- 505) Do not remain desperately poor in your truth-knowledge and do not think that the material knowledge alone



is sufficient to further the evolution of your consciousness, because if you think in this wise, then you are unworthy of the life and are king and emperor of your own inner darkness and unknowledge, so you childishly wield a sceptre of the dalliance and illusion and put on a crown of the arrogance and vanity and therewith prove your lack of intelligence.

- 506) What you necessarily have to research is, first and foremost, only all that which you need for the recognition of the truth in yourselves and for the evolutive climb up of your consciousness, in which case you need the movement of the learning which is of most important significance for the furtherance of your truth-finding and consciousness-evolution.
- 507) In everything that you go about, do and undertake, you must ask yourselves what advantage and value the whole brings for you yourselves as well as for your fellow human beings.
- 508) And it is necessary that you recognise your destination and fully adhere to it, so that you comprehend that you have to follow and fulfil it in your life.
- 509) Truly, if you fulfil a great action on your world, then you will be honoured, provided that you are not envied for it; such glory usually stays with you till your earthly end and often even beyond it over decades, centuries or even millennia; but that is a pure human work of the remembrance and often even of the glorification, and indeed not seldom with regard to a wrong understanding of the fact that human beings and their actions and their activity shall not be glorified, but only kept in honourable remembrance and be thought of in dignity, wherethrough no glorification and no person- or human-cult shall be practised.
- 510) A glorification of human beings, gods and tin gods is just as perverse as a glorification of the Creation Universal Consciousness which indeed represents in its entire BEING a magnificence, but shall not be glorified nevertheless; used in connection with the Creation Universal Consciousness, the term magnificence does not mean glorification, but grace, beauty, true love, fairness and attraction, whereas glorification means worship, servitude, humility, cheering and adulation.
- 511) Glorification is the fruit of your wrong human view, your wrong assessment and erroneous evaluation of the reality which you have made into a tradition and transfer to all and everything that you deem to be higher than yourselves.
- 512) Your circling motion is extremely sluggish, which is why the interactions are only triggered slowly and not with easiness, so they generally only ensue step-by-step and no longer let you recognise the causes that lead to the interaction from which you very often have to suffer, because they are of a negative, bad and evil nature.
- 513) The interactions which arise out of your motions of your thoughts and feelings as well as out of your actions, deeds and out of your entire activity are always measured according to their viewpoints; through your human view you let so many thoughts, feelings, actions, deeds and many activities appear great, even though they are truthfully insignificant and worthless, whereas you do not value so many other things, in which truthful greatness inheres, in their good and great excellence.
- 514) The higher you develop the consciousness-based evolution, the easier and clearer your understanding and the quicker your reward of the knowledge and the wisdom will be, because your human consciousness rises faster and faster in its evolution, if you consciously have a good volition thereto; and if this good volition is given in you, then even a single small and really good action pulls you in that moment upwards into the highest inner heights of the joy, peace, freedom and harmony; and you can make use thereof in remembrance, out of which it follows that you climb higher and higher and that you acquire new knowledge and new wisdom, together with your in you growing true love to yourselves, to your fellow human beings, to the life, to the Creation Universal Consciousness and to all its created creations, laws and recommendations and to everything existing in every form.
- 515) And if you reach this state, then you can no longer remain in stagnation, because you make an effort, in a conscious, willing and incessant wise, to follow the motion of the consciousness-evolution in order to rise continuously higher in it; however if you stand still in the ripening of your consciousness, then the ripeness will begin to rot, because it is not supplied with new energy and power, instead these are used up again and there-through a decay-process is triggered.
- 516) If you human beings of Earth see yourselves in the true reason of your existence, then you are equal to a fruit of the Creation Universal Consciousness which you yourselves must bring to the ripening in your consciousness-evolution, just like a fruit on a tree for which the tree is the creational existence, although the fruit must nevertheless bring itself to the ripeness.
- 517) Consider however, that as fruit of the Creation Universal Consciousness, you are not the Creation Universal Consciousness itself but always remain its fruit, but you carry the capability in you to develop yourselves to the ripening of your consciousness-evolution in order to therewith enrich the tiny part of the Creation in you, i.e. your spirit, and this spirit in turn enriches the Creation itself, but still you are not the Creation itself.
- 518) Your consciousness-evolution is the sense of your existence, and this sense is integrated into the automatic impulsion and course of the universal laws of the Creation through which you are given the capability to be



evolutively active in your consciousness yourselves in order to fulfil the sense and therewith the mission of your life.

- 519) Truly, despite the automatic impulsion to the fulfilment of the life-sense as it is given through the laws of the Creation, you human beings are nevertheless free in your will, actions, deeds, activity, determining and deciding, so the laws of the Creation do not impose any coercion on you.
- 520) In this freedom of your will, you are not only given the determining and deciding with regard to your consciousness-evolution, but also the motion of your procreation which you shall however only use for the preservation of your species and not for the excessive population growth, because it is also your task to protect, preserve and further your earth and its nature and climate as well as all animals and other creatures, not however to destroy them as you are doing through the vermin-like cultivation of your humankind.
- 521) Truly, as human beings of Earth you have to fulfil a great task with regard to your consciousness-evolution and your world and its nature, climate and all animals/creatures; and know: There is nothing in the Creation Universal Consciousness which would be integrated into a task without motion and would not be integrated into the Creation-given laws and recommendations, so even in the putrefaction there is motion, furtherance and benefit, because therethrough, through the passing, new things emerge again.
- 522) Therefore, be heedful in all things and be conscious that you also hold yourselves in the height attained, once you have climbed up in your consciousness-evolution; you must not take a rest and not allow any thoughts and feelings to arise of you having done enough for some time, but instead you must continuously move on like the hovering falcon in the air, which in doing so saves itself from the fall and at the same time looks out for new food.
- 523) Truly, in everything lies simple creational laws and recommendations, in the fine-fluidal and in the high-fine-fluidal spiritual as well as in the most coarse-material, and indeed these laws and recommendations cannot be changed or bent; they act and must be paid attention to, and indeed both in the thin shining of the fine- and high-fine-fluidal, in which the acting is lighter and faster, and in the inert and coarse-substantial, in which it is correspondingly slower, but in either case they are in constant motion and indeed it is so.
- 524) There is such a simplicity given in the effects and outcoming effects of the creational laws and recommendations themselves that no special education is required to find it, to correctly recognise it and to comprehend it, because only a healthy intellect and a clear rationality suffice thereto.
- 525) Each of you human beings of Earth has a creationally given capability thereto, if only you want to set it consciously in motion and perceive it and use it; and truly, every perception is very easy, if you consciously, heedfully and attentively observe, because you only make it heavy for yourselves through your knowledge-conceit,
i.e. through your imagined knowledge-superiority, as a result of which you like to form in an overly boastful wise the simplest thing in academic and abstract terms and words in order to shine and to appear brilliant and to boast in front of your fellow human beings; and you do not realise that through doing so you make yourselves ridiculous and to fools, disgrace yourselves and thus reveal your effective lack of intelligence and your unintellect; it does not come to your mind to explain the simplicity of a thing as simply as it is, using simple words, and that all your fellow human beings – even those who are academically not highly educated – understand everything exactly; and truly, that is megalomania through which you clumsily splash around, in the matter of the truth of all truth, as in clear water, and at the same time, through your bumptiousness, you do not realise how you trample dirt and rubbish into everything and make the originally clear water into a muddy sludge, in which nothing is no longer clearly recognisable
- 526) Many amongst you human beings of Earth live in a completely wrong learning and as a result you neglect to fill in your assigned to you place in the Creation Universal Consciousness as well as in its laws, recommendations, created creations and in everything existent as a jointly swinging and rightly acting Wesenheit.
- 527) The creational laws and recommendations are so formed that you shall live according to them and come to your senses through following them, so that you may fulfil your task with regard to your consciousness-evolution and thus give enrichment to your spirit and through this spirit to the Creation itself; but if you do not do this, then you will become rotting fruit, and will putrefy and decompose.
- 528) Through the effects of the creational laws and recommendations it always proves what you move rightly in your existence or what you act upon wrongly, because the effects arise according to how you act.
- 529) You amongst you human beings of Earth who struggle with things through which no climb up through evolution of the consciousness can take place, you are wasting your time, energy and power, because you deviate from the motion of the creational swinging waves through which the healthy and necessary harmony is given you, namely because you disturb yourselves in this harmony.
- 530) Learn, therefore, to recognise in perception, the motion of the simplicity of the creational laws and



recommendations, and to appreciate and use them in their entire greatness; but if you do not act in this wise, then you will shatter your own activity with regard to your evolution and the finding of the effective real truth of all truth, because on the way of your development you stand in the way of yourselves and you flush yourselves away as a pernicious hindrance.

- 531) Learn that the motion in all things is the most important factor of each development, which is given in the Creation Universal Consciousness, because it itself has, as a motion of an idea of the Primal-Creation, arisen from out of itself as an at all times stirring motion and is kept in it and constantly renewed.
- 532) And just as the progress of the motion is in the Creation itself, so the progress of the motion must also be in yourselves as well as in your world, for which you must constantly be concerned.
- 533) You human beings of Earth who have been swinging in the laws and recommendations of the Creation which have been given since the primal beginning, you shall not dally away your time by going through life in wrong intellectual and rational rumination, nor shall you destroy the motion of the development that is given through the creational energy and power, through which you, together with the truth-finding and its following, further your consciousness-evolution.
- 534) It is urgent that you finally fathom all conceivable creational laws and recommendations, learn about them and direct yourselves according to them, because if you do not use your earthly activity to fathom, to find and to follow the truth of all truth and hence reach a high consciousness-based evolutionary fulfilment, then you cannot truly exist in the life, because it inevitably must break down and bring terrible disadvantage in accordance with the effects of the laws and recommendations of the Creation, so the true love, peace, freedom and harmony as well as joy and happiness pulverise in you, just like a stepped-on, overripe and poisonous puffball that wildly spreads its spores and infiltrates its surroundings with them; this happening is entirely factual and simple, but for you human beings of Earth the effect is of tremendous dreadfulness, because just as the poisonous puffball spreads its poisonous spores, so you create in you and amongst your whole humankind, through your truth-foreignness and your truth-unknowledge and through your non-following of the Creation-given laws and recommendations, hatred, crime, torture, murder and manslaughter, terror, unfreedom, unpeace and disharmony as well as wars, strife, jealousy and a felonious overpopulation through which you destroy the climate and the nature of your world and call forth all evil and all conceivable Ausartung.
- 535) Truly, for you human beings of Earth, there remains only one thing to do, namely to fathom the creational laws and recommendations and to absolutely direct yourselves according to them; and if you find and recognise the truth of all truth and therewith also the effects of the Creation-given laws and recommendations, then follow them; and if you therethrough reach a certain evolutionary height in terms of your consciousness, then bind yourselves to adhering to them through making a continual effort, because otherwise it goes quickly downwards again with you.
- 536) Consider, each one of you who cannot keep himself or herself on his or her step must leave that step again backwards, because each of you can only be what and who he or she really is, whereas what he or she was before is of no significance because, through the motion of the time, it has flowed into the past.
- 537) That which was, is gone and is not recallable again for all the future time, because it is a past change and is no longer existent.
- 538) Only what is, has validity and value as does everything that arises out of what exists, and this applies in all eternity and all-great-time.
- 539) Therefore, you human beings of Earth, educate yourselves – and indeed in your present and in your future – in every kind and wise always through your real creational nature, which is given to you, so that you bring your self-created form of the inner nature, your individuality, to bear according to the creational ideal.
- 540) Truly, without constant motion in every respect of the good and positive there is no stability for you in your existence; and truly, you cannot bask in the glow of your ancestors, because instead of glow there was blindness amongst them too just as there is amongst you, therefore you must first bring everything to glow and polish it up; thereby each one of you stands for himself or herself, because the wife cannot do anything for her husband nor can he do anything for her, so the children cannot do anything for their parents nor the parents for their children, just as no fellow human being can do anything for the other one, because each one of you must do everything in and for himself or herself alone, because each one of you only has his or her present to himself or herself; and that you fall into rumination over this and over yourselves does not bring any benefit for you, because you only have to recognise that everything is anchored in this wise in the effects of the creational laws and recommendations which corresponds to the strength of the character and of all virtues of the Creation Universal Consciousness, so that each one of you and each life form in general has exactly the same rights and his or her own responsibility to bear just like everyone else; so you shall not fall in senseless rumination over this, but instead each one of you shall turn to the unchangeable truth as it is pre-given through the Creation and its laws and recommendations.



- 541) Consider, if you spend your days on Earth ruminating over yourselves then you will never be able to climb upwards in the evolution of your consciousness, because you are held back through the senseless rumination.
- 542) Do not assume that a rumination over yourselves and a pure observation of yourselves is something very special, great and valuable, because that is not the case at all and does not bring you further in your consciousness-evolution.
- 543) Truly, you have many terms and words for your ruminating over yourselves, but they all mantle the actual sense of the case, namely to get to know yourselves in all your thoughts, feelings, passions, habits, capabilities and possibilities etc., in order to get to the core of the case which is given therein that you use all perceptions, cognitions, and cognisances as well as the knowledge, the practical experiences and the living of them, as well as the wisdom resulting out of it all for turning to the truth of all truth, to the Creation and its laws and recommendations, which are to be fulfilled and through which you really learn and advance your evolution of the consciousness.
- 544) But you are many amongst you, you who do not use your thoughts and feelings in an evolutionary kind and wise, but instead let them deteriorate in senseless rumination; you wrongly ruminate around in remorse and humility and you try, through rumination, to discover your errors and to find a way to avoid them; but there is no progress in this, because the constant rumination leads to no success and to no end, because the rumination remains a rumination.
- 545) What you have to do is not a ruminating, but a conscious using of your thoughts and feelings as well as your intellect and your rationality, through which you must search for the way of the truth in yourselves which is the truth and the culmination-point itself, so that through it you find the truth of all truth which is given in the Creation Universal Consciousness as well as in its laws and recommendations; and only then, if you take this way and give up your constant rumination, will you create in you a state of true love, joy, peace, freedom and harmony, because this is how it is pre-given through the effects of the laws and recommendations of the Creation.
- 546) So go the right way, however never go the wrong way of the rumination which does not lead up to the truth and consciousness-evolution but down into the darkness of the knowledge-untruth, not-knowing and irresponsibility, because through rumination you bind yourselves to something in which you go around in circles and never find a fulfilment, because you inevitably only look at yourselves in the wise, so that you only perceive those things about yourselves that seem pleasant to you, and this prevents you from striving for and reaching higher fulfilments in terms of the evolution of your consciousness.
- 547) While ruminating you become morose and lose your laugh which in its open and honest joy and heartiness is the biggest and strongest enemy of the darkness of your thoughts and feelings.
- 548) With this, not the laughing in schadenfreude is meant, but the releasing laugh of one's own joy and kindness, as it arises through one's own inner freedom, one's own inner peace and one's own harmony, because open and evolutionary thoughts and feelings are given which connect themselves with the real truth and the creational laws and recommendations.
- 549) Whereas open thoughts and feelings connect themselves through the truth in an evolutionary wise with the reality and create in you joy, love, happiness, harmony, peace, freedom and kindness, the rumination has the opposite effect in that it presses you down, keeps you down and pulls you further and further down into that darkness in which you live in tribulation and where you create all the terrible things of the Ausartungen, such as hatred, revenge, retaliation, strife, jealousy, war, murder, torture, felonious acts, criminality, ruin, destruction and elimination.
- 550) Truly, if you continuously ruminate instead of directing your thoughts and feelings upon the real truth and your evolutionary progress, then you have no conscious volition to really experience and live the truth, because in your rumination, you are only wallowing in vanity, wrong ambition and in your conceit, in your haughtiness, in your supposed superiority and in your being presumptuous.
- 551) Truly, if you give in to your rumination, then this is not a longing for the truth about yourselves as well as with regard to the Creation and the effects of its laws and recommendations, but rather it is your own pure pathological craving for overbearingness which creates in you the motivation for your rumination, and indeed in a wise that is re-igniting the whole time and again and uncontrolledly continuing it.
- 552) Your rumination over yourselves is pure self-torment, in which you create and endure over and over again the same thoughts and feelings in a rotating wise, while you observe everything with fervour and even effective fanaticism and are not able to bring the alternating pros and cons under control.
- 553) All these processes of your rumination get into your psyche both as vexation and as consolation, as a result of which it gets into confusion and via the consciousness brings forth again wrong thoughts and feelings and you wrongly assume that something has been «overcome» once more, which is, truthly, however not so, but only springs from a mood of self-gratification and does not mean that you have advanced or developed one step.
- 554) The whole corresponds truthly to a wrong self-ascertainment, because it only ascertains what is thought up as



imagination, therefore such an ascertainment is nothing more than a self-deception.

- 555) In reality, through this, not a single step of the progress and cognition with regard to yourselves and with regard to the truth of all truth as well as the creational laws and recommendations is reached, but only a self-deception; and truthly, you make this error over and over again, even if you wrongly assume that it is no longer the same error, because usually when an error is resolved this leads to a progress, since the erroneousness is reduced more and more until it ultimately is resolved; however, the error that you make with regard to the entire connections of your rumination is thus unchanged always the same and only changes in its form, although it neither minimises nor reduces, if you do not give up and free yourselves from your rumination.
- 556) So if you do not end your rumination, you will never get ahead, even if according to your own wrong observation you assume that you are overcoming one error after the other; truthly, in your rumination you always go only in circles around yourselves while the long-established fundamental problem continuously expands and continues to create new forms.
- 557) If you always observe only yourselves ruminatively, then you resemble the mythological Hydra, a serpent-like monster with nine heads which grow back as soon as they have been hacked off, so that the fight never ends and one can never gain victory.
- 558) Just as the mythological Hydra grows an identical new head, so do your thoughts and feelings of the same kind, if you indulge in the rumination, which is in any case always senseless; however, what you can achieve with your rumination, is unreality, because as a rule rumination leads to assuming and visionarily seeing things that are not reconcilable with the clear reality and are thus purest illusions, through which you also regard, in a delusion-based wise, fabricated godheads, tin gods, angels, saints and demons as non-coarse-substantial natures, to whom you fall prey in confused and irrational belief.
- 559) Consider, only when you joyfully, freely and consciously strive for the high culmination point of the truth-finding, direct yourselves towards this destination and thereby do not have your thoughts and feelings constantly directed only upon yourselves, can you advance and reach the high culmination-point of the truth-recognition and truth-following.
- 560) And consider that you cannot make progress without throwbacks and that in your search for the truth and when following it you will keep falling, because making errors is unavoidable when learning and therefore you must become more and more attentive and heedful during your learning process; but with every throwback and fall you must rise again until you reach the security that keeps you from throwbacks and falls; that is the way which you as human beings must go, and upon which you must not be faint-hearted and must not be wailing and not be complaining, but instead you shall always newly and freshly turn towards the endeavour; and if you do that, then the moment will unexpectedly come when you suffer no more throwbacks and you no longer have to fear them, because you will have amply taken in everything that you have learned and because you amply follow the creational laws and recommendations.
- 561) Know however: you can only take in and follow the things to be learned by really perceiving everything and gaining thereout an effective cognition and the necessary cognisance as well as the knowledge thereout, which you must bring to your practical experience and then live it, out of which you then gain the essence, the true wisdom.
- 562) The observing alone is not enough, and neither is the ruminating, because this will not lead you to the real and true perception and hence also not to the developmental process up to the wisdom, because through observing alone, as well as through the senseless ruminating, you put yourselves outside of each truthly perception, outside of the cognition, cognisance, knowledge, experience and its living, as well as outside of the wisdom; through the observing alone as well as through the senseless ruminating you take apart and deconstruct everything because you look at everything as if it was something strange, instead of directing yourselves fully and amply upon everything in a conscious and perceiving wise.
- 563) And when you look at yourselves in order to see yourselves how you really are, then you must not just simply observe yourselves, but instead you must remain neutral and stand outside of your thoughts and feelings, because only then can you truthly consciously perceive yourselves in all things as they really are given in you.
- 564) If you fall prey to the rumination, then you only serve your intellect which you use to go around in circles, because through your intellect you hold back the entire developmental process from the real perception to the wisdom, because you leave the rationality out of your attention which would let you perceive everything; you do not let the effects of all the outer happenings out of the world of the coarse-substantial, the material, get into your rationality, but instead you only store everything in your inadequate intellect which without rationality cannot separate and analyse the truthly facts, and as a result neither a clear perception, nor cognition, cognisance and no knowledge as well as no practical experience, no living-experience and no wisdom can come about.
- 565) Not only in the intellect, but also in the rationality, all things are called up for the collection, because only together can intellect and rationality hold fast to something effectively and work it out to a result; but you



are conceited and take everything apart and cut it into pieces with your inadequate intellect, and consequently it does not reach the rationality through which the possibility is first given that everything is really perceived, taken in, processed and made into the cognition and cognisance as well as into the knowledge, and into the practical experience and the living of it, and into the wisdom.

- 566) Know, just as your human consciousness, through its activity, sets everything free in a logical wise from the inside to the outside via the intellect and the rationality, so that it really does reach the outside, and indeed in whatever form, so everything from the outside can also only reach the consciousness again via the way of the intellect and the rationality and be processed by the consciousness as perception, cognition, cognisance, knowledge, practical experience, living experience and wisdom.
- 567) The impression of all outward happenings out of the material, i.e. the coarse-substantial must always reach the consciousness by coming from the outside via the intellect and the rationality, and indeed irrespective of which one of the sense-forms is taking something in.
- 568) Truly, there is no other way, because if the activity of the consciousness must go the exact same way in the opposite direction, i.e. towards the outside, then this too can only happen via the intellect and the rationality, because only together can intellect and rationality create a logical result; the intellect alone cannot create any result at all without the co-operation of the rationality, because the intellect alone leads in its activity to a rotation, to a rumination, i.e. to a going around in circles.
- 569) If you are ruminators, you crampfully hold fast to the impressions of the outer happening solely in your intellect and you take it apart and deconstruct it with your intellect, and in doing so you do not pass on anything or only a tiny part to your rationality, in which case the thought-activity distorts this tiny part with *Gewaltsamkeit*, which has the consequence that the realness, as it was, loses its reality.
- 570) This means that the rumination cannot bring about any progress nor any development, i.e. evolution of the consciousness which can only become real truth and reality through the entire process of the effective and conscious perception, cognition and cognisance, knowledge, experience and the living of it, and wisdom.
- 571) Therefore it is recommended to you not to fall prey to the rumination, but instead to fully perceive, take in, process and live through everything in you, because only therethrough does everything consciously stream into your intellect and in your rationality and become a conscious and strong factor of the evolution and widen your real capability of understanding things, so also with regard to the creational laws and recommendations, the following of which is of greatest importance for your consciousness-based development and the becoming human in the real and true sense.
- 572) But truly, under the truth of these things you understand something that is wrong, because you only make demanding wishes to the life and you do not want to give anything to it in your conceit, through which you are no longer able to form anything in a healthy and correct wise, but only indulge in a belief in an invented god, tin god and in human beings whom you raise to the status of divinities and worship.
- 573) In your belief you hope for the kingdom of your god or that of a tin god or idolised human being, and even when just thinking about it, a joyful trembling goes through you, because you indeed hope for love, joy, a present and happiness from your worshipped ones, because the wrong and irrational teachings that are directed towards them present you the illusion of longing for their supposed help and goodness and an ability to restfully enjoy.
- 574) But owing to your deficient state of your intellect and your rationality, the majority of you earthly humankind are unable to comprehend that the wrong prophets and teachers as well as their priests and other representatives dupe you, and with regard to the effective truth of all truth, and hence also in respect to the Creation and its laws and recommendations, cheat you and thus subjugate you into absolute belief-obedience.
- 575) Truly, the creational laws and recommendations do not demand of you that you must turn to the effective truth of all truth, they only recommend it, so you yourselves must decide over it and choose the right way; these laws and recommendations also do not demand and recommend that you shall sink into rumination and turn away from the truth, because on the contrary, the recommendations are such that you have to consider everything thoroughly, so that you may turn to the truth of the Creation and its laws and recommendations and their following.
- 576) The recommendation of the Creation-given laws and recommendations is that you consciously in your own volition and in your completely free decision direct yourselves in your determinations, wishes and expectations totally towards the truth of all truth and the creational laws and recommendations.
- 577) Only if you follow the truth of all truth which is pre-given through the Creation and its laws and recommendations, will true love, freedom, harmony and true peace arise in you, because then everything disturbing, impeding and confusing falls away and is kept away.
- 578) You alone as human beings bring about everything, namely the good and the evil, the negative and positive, because you alone are responsible for all and everything, whatever you create in terms of thoughts and



feelings as well as in terms of actions, deeds and all your activity.

- 579) You alone are the ones that bear the responsibility for the forming of your life, your life-conduct, your thinking-directions and determinations, so you yourselves have to make an effort for a right guidance and forming of your existence.
- 580) You alone bear the responsibility for your behaviour in every respect, so you are also responsible for your state of the righteousness and unrighteousness, of the conscientiousness and consciencelessness, of the fairness and unfairness as well as of the dignity and deference and of the dignitylessness and deferencelessness.
- 581) Consider thereby that in every good, progressive and evolutionary respect, you cannot force anything and nothing is given to you for free, but that instead you must willingly and consciously work hard for everything yourselves, and truly the work in acquiring all of the good and high values is rich in deprivation, because with regard to the real truth of all truth, what is recommended for the acquiring work, is hard and inexorable.
- 582) But truly, the creating of all the high values of the life and the following of the creational laws and recommendations is also worthwhile, because the reward is true love, freedom, harmony and peace as well as virtuousness, conscientiousness, righteousness, fairness and being-fair in true dignity and deference.
- 583) Therewith, all you human beings of Earth, opens up the 'Goblet of the Truth', the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life, and the 'Teaching of the Prophets' as a comprehensive prophetic and true teaching book, that it may redound to the prosperousness of your consciousness-evolution and to your well-being of life, so that you do not continue to go forth in evolutionary consciousness-darkness and you no longer curse yourselves, but instead go towards the light of the truth of all truth and follow and fulfil the laws and recommendations of the Creation Universal Consciousness; and in this wise you shall do, so that true love, freedom, harmony and peace may come about in you yourselves and amongst your whole humankind and that you may free yourselves from your unrighteousness, consciencelessness, irresponsibility, unfairness, hatred, revenge and retaliation, murder, terror, war and from everything that is unfair, evil and ausgeartet which you have imposed upon yourselves as a curse since time immemorial.



To the Boon and Development – not to the Bane

The “Goblet of the Truth” you have now studied,
have removed evil and untruths out of you,
for your good, your honour and for the life,
have given the truth its true value,
the creational laws their right,
shown your way to the peace and joy,
and you have also learnt a great deal out of this book,
and everything to your boon – not to the bane.

Semjase Silver Star Centre, 13 July 2008, 10:43 p.m.

Billy



Epilogue

("Goblet of the Truth", chapter 3, verse 58)

«Listen to the good tidings of each word of your true prophets, and be honoured to be allowed to receive the words and the tidings of the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life through the prophets, so that you yourselves also go out into the world and bring the words and the tidings of the truth to all those who want to hear it and make it their own.»

Dear Reader,

It is a high honour for me to be allowed to write the epilogue to Billy's «Goblet of the Truth» with the entire teaching of the prophets, which you have just reached the end of. It is a wonderful, indeed overwhelming work. If the human beings of Earth follow the wise words of the teaching of the prophets, they will enable themselves to the creational wisdom and to the being human in the real and true sense.

Perhaps you sampled the individual chapters and verses in small, digestible portions, thought about them and, in doing so, wandered through all the consciousness-based heights and depths, were stirred up, struggled and fought with yourself, were joyful, beset by doubts, made infuriated, waited patiently – and nevertheless continued to read. Or you, untiring and thirsty for knowledge, consumed verse after verse in one go, forgetting time as you did so. It makes no difference whether you selected one way or another, all that matters now are your thoughts and your feelings. Are you like me? My body is flooded with a feeling of happiness that permeates every cell of my being. I could repeat any number of verses that triggered a sensation of joy throughout my body, whether due to their linguistic beauty, their worthy proposition or their learning effect. It was a sensation similar to what I sometimes feel when listening to the belcanto of Maria Callas. I read them over and over again. Chapter 28 was particular striking for me. What Billy declares there in 583 verses is so powerful and profound that every scientist and, indeed, every human being should hurry to study them. When we are fully relaxed and also entirely impartial, we sense that our consciousness and our psyche, and everything about us and in us, feel well while enjoying such a digestible nutrition for the consciousness. I cannot find the right words truly to describe this status, because my vocabulary is a mere shadow of that of the prophet of the new time who completed this incomparable masterpiece: «Billy» Eduard Albert Meier, BEAM.

The «Goblet of the Truth» is the law- and recommendation-book of the Creation. In contrast to all our legal books on Earth, it does not contain any requirements, quite apart from any threats of punishment, as is usually the case amongst human beings with a religious and sectarian orientated thinking and the therewith connected brutality and pathological craving for might, profit and revenge – something that is evidenced by the fact alone that it is allowed, indeed encouraged, for Earth and its human beings to be tormented and destroyed through a huge overpopulation.

The «Goblet of the Truth» has the following to say about this (chapter 3, verse 74):

«And what the prophets announce (teach) in these things are signs (evidence) of the laws and recommendations of the Creation, and so may everything be wise admonishment.»

(Chapter 3, verse 75)

«And what the teaching of the prophets brings is the truth of all truth, and therefore there is no doubt in it, because it is the teaching of the laws and recommendations of the Creation so that you may follow it.»

The verses in the «Goblet of the Truth», the teaching of the prophets, speak to the inner, creational logic of the human beings and further their conscious considering. If one reads the verses, it appears to one – depending on one's consciousness-based evolution-state – that everything is totally clear, logical and practicable, and one asks oneself why we human beings of Earth do not live accordingly and, on the basis of the truth-content of the statements made, do not immediately eradicate our weak points and the wrong things in our laws and our behaviour through the power of our cognition. What is the purpose of political parties and other ideologies, sects and/or religions if the idea of the Creation for the thinking and behaviour of its creation Omedam – i.e. human being, the fulfiller of the law – exists in black and white in



form of the teaching of the prophets? I know that my view is still naïve for the time being, and we stalwarts and those who come across us and join us will have to go through hard times for centuries still to come until the unknowing become knowing and the outlook for a global peace comes into reach. Everyone who comes after us will be totally on his or her own; no-one will then be able to turn to Billy and take from his untiringly and inexhaustibly lived, effective love, patience, tolerance, deep feelings for the others, harmony, his knowledge and wisdom, and gain thereout encouragement, consolation and cognition. When I consider how often Billy has patiently and extensively answered practically the same questions for me time and time again – although I could also have found the answers in the spiritual teaching – I feel miserable and fight against upcoming tears. I feel like the baton is being passed in a relay race: We from the FIGU have long been able to train ourselves for the handover with his support directed towards our ability and knowledge, and yet we will not know whether we have prepared ourselves sufficiently until the baton is actually passed, because we too have often set the wrong priorities in the life.

The last prophet in the line of the true prophets, Billy, received the determination from his first prophet-personality, Nokodemion, to write down the teaching of the truth, the teaching of the spirit, the teaching of the life in the form of the 'Goblet of the Truth' for posterity. (None of the preceding great prophet-personalities in the same reincarnation-line, whether Henok (Enok), Elia (Elijah), Jesaia (Isaiah), Jeremia (Jeremiah), Jmmanuel or Muhammad, left behind any parts of the teaching written in their own hand – despite the ability to write. This fact and the illiteracy of the human beings at that time were certainly some of the reasons why the total falsification of the whole teaching of the prophets was able to occur.)

The 'Goblet of the Truth' has the following to say about this (chapter 22, verse 42):

«Unfortunately, for one thing, the teaching has been falsified by scribes according to their own whim after they had been tasked through the prophets to record the teaching in writing so as to deliver it up to the future, and for another thing the teaching was calumniated as the work of the evil by those who set themselves against the 'Teaching of the Prophets', just as they persecuted the prophets and threatened their life and decried their signs, i.e. evidence they gave as magic; therefore the bulk of your earthly humanity has been excluded from the existing and illuminating truth.»

Unfortunately, the era of the great prophets on Earth is coming to an end with the 'Goblet of the Truth'. Billy is giving us his comprehensive work, which is one that no-one else has ever achieved before or will ever achieve again. Everything that he has written will survive the time with our help and will lay the foundation for the Earthly humanity to enjoy peace, true love, freedom and harmony one day. Our maltreated and tormented Earth will once again bear fruit and blossom with life, because the future human beings of Earth will follow the teaching of the prophets, thus using their enriched block rationality-intellect and not only end the senseless (religious) wars but also keep the population numbers in check through a suitable birth control.

The 'Goblet of the Truth' has the following to say about this (chapter 2, verse 354):

«Now, those who drink out of the river of the untruth are deepening themselves in (in bondage to) the lie, but those who drink from the wellspring of the truth promise to lead their present existence in righteousness (conscientiousness) and equitableness (fairness); and the righteous (conscientious) ones and the equitable ones (fair ones/responsible ones) and all those who have knowledge of the truth have great power against all attacks by the unknowing and inequitable ones (unfair ones/irresponsible ones), because they know with certainty that they will lead a joyful and a good life through the truth; and therefore the knowing ones in the truth as a small group will achieve victory over all large groups of the inequitable ones (unfair ones/irresponsible ones) and the unknowing ones in the peaceful struggle for the real truth, because the prosperousness of the truth is on the side of the stalwarts.»

In May 2008, a small number of conscientious and responsible ones are faced by the superior numbers of about 7.5 thousand million unknowing and irresponsible ones. However, the conscientious and responsible ones will accomplish it. We of the FIGU and our friends will stick together even in stormy times and continue Billy's great work undeteringly. More and more human beings will come to us and help us and our successor-personalities in continuing the great task – namely of creating peace, true love, freedom and harmony on our Earth – with courage and verve, bringing it to a rightful success. And, because Billy's spirit-form and consciousness-block are also respectively integrated in a normal cycle of reincarnation and



incarnation, his successor-personality will certainly join up again one day. Even if his successor personality will be a simple worker and no longer a prophet, the human beings living then will hopefully realise what a high truthfully knowledge this man possesses. This is because it is not prestige, might or professional function that is decisive, but rather our thinking and feeling and the kind and wise of our life-conduct – and, of course, the impulses stored in the (external) storage-banks and in the memory of our subconsciousness. The essence, in other words the highest value in knowledge, experience and wisdom of our predecessor-personalities is transferred into the memory of the subconsciousness in the realm of the other world when building up the new consciousness-block through the overall consciousness-block. There, it is ready to be activated by the new human being after his or her physical birth through conscious searching and research. Only through catching the fine intuitive impulses out of the subconscious – whether out of the fund of the predecessor or the acute-actual swinging wave of the subconsciousness of the human beings – and through our consciously working with it further, do our involved consciousness-forms and the memory of our consciousness develop more highly.

Every single human being needs to bestir himself or herself and build up a motivation for learning and striving in order to evolve his or her consciousness-forms or consciousness levels iota by iota, following the creational will. Human beings cannot do otherwise, because the evolution – even that of the consciousness! – corresponds to a creational law. Everything in the entire universe consists of the motion of impulsations (something goes in, something develops); without motion, nothing would exist. It will take millions of years until the spirit-form and the consciousness-block are no longer respectively reincarnated and incarnated with a new consciousness and a new personality, and during this long time the human being must work himself or herself upwards in consciousness through seven great evolutionary levels with many sub-levels – all of which radiate their specific colour. Unfortunately, the consciousness state of many human beings of Earth is still very underdeveloped, which means almost all of them are still trapped in belief, veneration, worship, confusion, irrationality, unintellect, falseness, lie, destruction, resentment and vice – which corresponds to the lowest colour radiation value, namely pink. Step by step, every one of us, irrespective of our current level, must work himself or herself upwards to the wisdom through our own searching, researching, fathoming, recognition, cognisance, cognition, knowledge, practical experience/living experience. On the highest level that can be achieved by us human beings, all our consciousness-forms radiate in the clearest blue, i.e. our consciousness-forms will then have attained the values of the level of truth, knowledge, wisdom, power, love, deference, fulfilment, protection, might, creational will and creation. A sublime goal. Naturally, human beings also need corresponding professional training and general knowledge in order to be able to look after themselves and their dependants in the particular life, but what makes a human being a real human being is his or her conscious striving for cognition of the creational values and putting them into practice in everyday life. And this is precisely where the *«Goblet of the Truth»* and the entirely comprehensive teaching of the truth, teaching of the spirit, teaching of the life provides assistance.

Even if during your reading of the *«Goblet of the Truth»* you were not able to catch any fine intuitive impulses out of the memory of your subconsciousness and therefore were not able to profit from the essence of the creational-oriented thought-work of your previous personalities –and belief-impulses inherited from your parents are possibly located in your temporal and rear frontal lobes –, then do not do the same as those who have been and still are wallowing in their unknowledge, their belief and their delusion, rather follow the wise admonishments in the *«Goblet of the Truth»* so that you and your descendants (children) and also your successor-personalities, and with them also all other human beings, come ever closer to a lasting peace, true love, freedom and harmony on our earth. Namely, when the critical mass of the stalwarts has been reached, the unknowing ones will lose their pernicious influence. Only someone who has the truth on their side and who acts accordingly, is well advised and will reap a full harvest of peace and beauty.

The *«Goblet of the Truth»* has the following to say about this (chapter 28, verse 582):

«But truly, the creating of all high values of the life and the following of the creational laws and recommendations is also worthwhile, because the reward is true love, freedom, harmony and peace as well as virtuousness, conscientiousness, righteousness, fairness and being-fair in true dignity and deference.»



Glossary of the German Terms

Ausartung *noun – plural Ausartungen*

- a very bad get-out of the control of the good human nature

ausgeartet *adjective*

- having got out of the control of the good nature or of a good kind/form

Gemüt *noun*

- the Gemüt is the spirit-form's counterpart of the material body's psyche. It is that spiritual block and factor which, in the spirit-body of a life form, in this case a human being, regulates and looks after the material-consciousness-based feeling and the material-consciousness-based thoughts in itself, in negative or positive consequence.

Gewalt *noun*

- «Gewalt» is the brutal execution of elemental might and force, but it is far above all might and all force.

«Gewalt» exists in different and relative forms, one example being a «gewalttätige Gesinnung» – which is an expression from the character, personality, thoughts, feelings and emotions that shows the inclination to act with Gewalt.

Explanation from Ptaah - Gewalt has nothing to do with the terms «heftig» (violent) and «Heftigkeit» (violence), because the old-Lyranian term with regard to «Gewalt» means «Gewila», and it is defined as using, with all the coercive means that are at one's disposal, physical, psychical, mental, and consciousness-based powers, abilities and skills, in order to carry out and carry through terrible actions and deeds.

gewaltsam *adjective*

- with Gewalt

Gewaltsamkeit *noun*

- the state or quality of being with Gewalt
- a deed or behaviour that is gewaltsam

Gewaltlosigkeit *noun*

- the state or quality of being without Gewalt

gewaltsame Gewaltlosigkeit

- Something that is achieved in rationality and logic represents a «Gewaltsamkeit». Rationality and logic stand for rightness against the illogical/unright, which is being confronted mightfully; however, in a form that is not destructive but constructive, i.e. gewaltlos (without Gewalt).

Wesen *noun – plural Wesen*

- A Wesen is an independently existing life form with its own individuality and personality in an impulse-based, instinct-based or conscious consciousness-form with evolution-possibilities that are specifically directed towards everything, and with its own physical, psychical (relating to the psyche), conscious, part-conscious, unconscious, impulse- or instinct-based development-forms (human being, animal, creature and plants).

Wesenheit *noun – plural Wesenheiten*

- An immaterial or material existence-form without a self-determining possibility of evolution, in which case, however, this possibility can be given to a certain extent, such as with the Creation universal consciousness, certain energies, stones, water and gases etc.



**This translation is provided as a convenience.
Only the German version of this text is legally binding.**

Attribution – NonCommercial – NoDerivs (by-nc-nd) 3.0 Switzerland

CREATIVE COMMONS CORPORATION IS NOT A LAW FIRM AND DOES NOT PROVIDE ANY LEGAL SERVICES. DISTRIBUTION OF THIS LICENSE DOES NOT CREATE AN ATTORNEY-CLIENT RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE RECIPIENT AND CREATIVE COMMONS. CREATIVE COMMONS MAKES NO WARRANTIES REGARDING THE INFORMATION PROVIDED AND DISCLAIMS ALL LIABILITY FOR ANY DAMAGE RESULTING FROM ITS USE. THIS EXCLUSION OF GUARANTEE AND LIABILITY ALSO COVERS INDIVIDUALS AND ENTITIES THAT HAVE COOPERATED IN THE ADAPTATION OF THE LICENSE TEXT INTO SWISS LAW.

License

By exercising the rights granted by this License You agree to the Terms and Conditions of the License in a legally binding manner. As far as this License is considered a contract, the Licensor shall grant You the rights mentioned in the License free of charge and in exchange for Your acceptance of the binding force of the Terms and Conditions of the License.

The **"Licensor"**, i.e. the individual or entity that offers the Subject of the License under the terms of this License and **"You"**, i.e. the individual or entity, who exercises the uses of the Subject of the License described in Section 3 of this License and did not previously violate the Terms and Conditions of this License with respect to the Subject of the License or who obtained the express authorization of the Licensor to exercise the rights granted by this License despite the previous violation thereof, agree the Terms and Conditions of Use of the Subject of the License by means of this Creative Commons Public License ("CCPL" or "License") the following, in particular:

1. Definitions

- a) **"Subject of the License"** shall mean a work protected by copyright or a performance protected by neighbouring rights.
- b) A **"Collection"** in terms of this License shall be a work in which the Subject of the License along with other works or elements are assembled into a collective whole, irrespective of whether the Collection itself is copyrightable by reason of the arrangement or selection of contents or not. Also databases shall be considered Collections, irrespective of whether the database as such is copyrightable by reason of the arrangement or selection of contents or not. The incorporation of the Subject of the License into a Collection shall not be considered a modification of the Subject of the License.
- c) An **"Adaption"** in terms of this License shall be any modification to the Subject of the License, in particular a rearrangement, derivative work, amendment, adjustment or translation, provided that the Subject of the License's individual character remains recognizable. The incorporation of the Subject of the License into a Collection shall not be considered a modification of the Subject of the License.
- d) **"Holder of Rights"** shall be the author of the Subject of the License, the holder of neighbouring rights or any other person who has acquired rights of use with respect to the Subject of the License and that allow the granting of rights of use or the assignment of rights of use to third parties.
- e) A **"Work"** is an intellectual creation with individual character.
- f) A **"Neighbouring Right"** shall be a right to a cultural performance which is not protected as a Work, such as a creation of a performing artist, manufacturers of audio and video material, or broadcasting companies.
- g) **"Public Performance"** shall be the performance of the Subject of the License, either directly or by any other means, the performance, making it perceptible or accessible elsewhere in a manner that people have access from other places and at the time of their choice.
- h) **"Reproduction"** shall mean the production of temporary or lasting reproductions of the Subject of the License; it also includes the process of the first physical recording of the Subject of the License and the production of reproductions of these recordings as well as the transfer of the Subject of the License to audio or video or to another electronic medium in digital or analogue form.
- i) **"Distribution"** shall mean making the Subject of the License publicly available or placing it on the market in the original or in the form of reproductions, i.e. in physically recorded form.
- j) **"Commercial"** shall mean primarily meant for or directed at commercial advantage or monetary compensation. The exchange of the Subject of the License for other works or performances protected by copyright by means of digital file sharing shall not be deemed commercial, provided that no payment



or monetary compensation is made in connection with the exchange of the Subject of the Licence.
“**Non-commercial**” shall have a corresponding meaning.

2. Limitations of Copyright Law

This Licensing Agreement shall not affect any rights arising from limitations that are provided for in connection with the exclusive rights of the Holder of Rights under copyright law (personal use, exhaustion principle) or by other provisions of the applicable laws.

3. Licensing

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, the Licensor hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive and perpetual (i.e. for the duration of the copyright or the related property right) license to exercise the rights in the Subject of the License as stated below:

- a) to reproduce the Subject of the License, to incorporate it into one or more Collections and to reproduce it as incorporated in the Collection;
- b) to distribute the Subject of the License or copies thereof, to display or perform it publicly, to broadcast, transmit or otherwise make it perceivable by way of radio, television or similar facilities, including by wire. These rights shall also be applicable where the Subject of the License has been incorporated into a Collection;

The above rights may be exercised for all types of use and in all media and formats, whether now known or developed in the future. These rights shall include the right to make all such modifications as may be technically necessary to exercise these rights in other media and formats.

4. Conditions

The rights set out in Section 3 shall be subject to the following conditions:

- a) Each time a right under this License is exercised, You shall include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) for, this License. Upon exercising the right under this License, You shall keep all notices intact that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You shall not make any agreements which seek to tighten the terms of this License or restrict the rights granted to a third party. You shall not grant any sub licenses. You shall not incorporate any technical protection features into the Subject of the License that may hinder the user of the Subject of the License in exercising the rights granted by this License. Section 4 a) shall also apply where the Subject of the License is part of a Collection. However, this shall not require that the Collection as such be made subject to the terms of the License. If You include the Subject of the License in a Collection, You shall – upon the request of the Author or the Licensor – be bound to remove any reference to the Author or the Licensor as far as this is possible and desired, and at first request. Where references are to be removed upon such requests, duties under Section 4 c) shall not apply.
- b) You shall not exercise the rights set down in Section 3 for commercial purposes.
- c) On using the Subject of the License, be this alone or as part of a Collection, You shall keep all copyright notices intact or at least make reproduce these notices to the extent reasonable for the technical procedure and medium You are utilizing, except in the case that a request has been made in accordance with the penultimate subsection of Section 4 a) to remove references.
 - In particular, You (i) shall indicate the name (or the pseudonym) of the Author as well as the name of any third parties the Holder of Rights has included in the copyright notice.
 - If You (ii) are aware of the title of the Subject of the License You shall be obliged to indicate it.
 - If the Licensor (iii) has supplied an internet address (e.g. in the form of a Uniform Resource Identifier, URI) containing information on the License or copyright notices, You shall indicate such information as far as reasonably possible.

The notices in accordance with this Section 4 c) may be made by any means suitable. With respect to Collections, such notices shall be just as visible with respect to position and form as is the case for other Holders of Rights where such notices are made for all contributing licensors.

For the avoidance of doubt: The notices set out under Section 4 c) may only be used in the manner set forth in this section and for the purpose of attributing the Work to its Author, Licensor or third party whom the Author or Licensor had included in the copyright notice for attribution. On use of the Subject of the License, You shall not give the impression, either implicitly or explicitly, that support or approval by these persons has been provided nor shall You give the impression that any other form of connection between You and



these persons exists without prior and separate written consent from the persons concerned.

- d) With respect to the compensation for the use of the Subject of the License the following shall apply:
- i. Indispensable statutory claims for compensation: If indispensable claims for compensation as consideration for statutory licenses are provided or if there is a flat-rate system (e.g. for blank media) the Licensor shall reserve the exclusive right to collect the respective compensation for each exercising of a right under this license by You.
 - ii. Compensation in case of compulsory licenses: If compulsory licenses outside this license are intended and concluded the Licensor shall reserve the exclusive right to collect the respective compensation should You use the Subject of the License for purposes other than the ones defined as non-commercial in Section 4.b) but shall waive the right to compensation for all other uses in accordance with the license.
 - iii. Compensation in other cases: With respect to the use of the Subject of the License in Accordance with the License by You that is not covered by the above paragraphs (i) and (ii) the Licensor shall waive the right to compensation, irrespective of whether the collection of a compensation by the Licensor or by a collecting society would be possible. However, the Licensor shall reserve the exclusive right to collect the respective compensation (either directly or through a collecting society) should You use the Subject of the License for purposes other than those defined as non-commercial in Section 4 b).
- e) Your right to use the Subject of the License has its statutory limitation in the personal rights (copyright) of the Holder of Rights whose legal intellectual and personal interests or whose respect or reputation, respectively, shall not be impaired by the use without prior written consent obtained from the persons concerned.

5. No warranty

IN THE ABSENCE OF ANY WRITTEN UNDERTAKING FROM THE LICENSOR TO THE CONTRARY, THE LICENSOR SHALL ASSUME NO WARRANTY FOR THE RIGHTS GRANTED.

6. Exclusion of Liability

BEYOND THE WARRANTY PROVIDED IN SECTION 5, THE LICENSOR SHALL BE LIABLE ONLY FOR DELIBERATE ACTS AND GROSS NEGLIGENCE. ANY OTHER LIABILITY SHALL BE EXCLUDED AS FAR AS POSSIBLE UNDER APPLICABLE STATUTORY PROVISIONS. THE LICENSOR SHALL UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES BE LIABLE FOR THE ACTS OF ITS AGENTS. THIS EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY SHALL ALSO APPLY WHERE YOU HAVE INDICATED THE POSSIBILITY OF DAMAGE.

7. Termination

- a) This License and the rights granted hereunder shall terminate automatically and immediately in the event that You violate the terms of this License. However, the license relationship that subsequently occurred with natural and legal persons who obtained Collections comprising the Subject of the License shall continue to exist as long as they comply with the terms and conditions of the License. Sections 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 shall remain binding even after termination of this License.
- b) The rights granted under this License shall be granted for an unlimited period of time (however, only for as long as the Subject of the License is protected under the applicable copyright or neighbouring rights law). Notwithstanding the above, the Licensor shall reserve the right to release the Subject of the License at any chosen time under a new license or to stop distributing the Subject of the License completely. The change of license shall not affect a revocation of this License (or any other licensing act based on this License). The License shall continue in full force and effect until terminated in accordance with Section 7 a) above.

8. Miscellaneous

- a) Each time You use the Subject of the License or a Collection based on Section 3 of this License, the Licensor shall grant to the recipient of any resulting reproduction a license to the Subject of the License at the same terms and conditions as this License granted to You.
- b) If any provision of this License should be invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, the remaining provisions of this License shall remain valid and enforceable and the invalid provision shall be replaced by a valid provision which comes closest to the intended purpose of the invalid provision.
- c) No provision of this License shall be deemed to have been waived and no breach sanctioned before the



party charged by the waiver or sanction has confirmed the waiver or sanction in writing and by its signature.

- d) This License shall constitute the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Subject of the License. There are no ancillary understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Subject of the License. The Licensors shall not be bound by any additional provision that may appear in any communication from You. This agreement shall not be modified without the mutual written and signed agreement between the Licensors and You to this end.

Creative Commons is no party to this Licensing Agreement and makes no warranty in connection with the Subject of the License. Creative Commons shall not be liable on any legal theory for any damage suffered by You as a result of the use of the Subject of the License or this License, irrespective of whether the damage is direct, indirect or consequential. Notwithstanding the above, Creative Commons shall have all rights under this License where it has expressly identified itself in the License as Licensors of the Work.

Except for the limited purpose of indicating to the public that the Subject of the License is licensed under the CCPL, Creative Commons does not allow the parties to use the trademark "Creative Commons" or any other trademark or logo of Creative Commons without prior written consent from Creative Commons. Any permitted use must then follow in compliance with Creative Commons' then current trademark usage guidelines. Creative Commons' trademark usage guidelines are published on its website or are made available upon request.

Creative Commons can be contacted under <http://creativecommons.org>

Remark by Creative Commons